680-83
688-93
96-97
709 15

3

Mon
L.W. No!
Wed. aparece en la puerta Alfonso

Mon. Par soy Mr. Cecil Graham
W. Mamá

F mamá Velasco ah. mercedes

A TEXT-BOOK

OF

MODERN SPANISH

AS NOW WRITTEN AND SPOKEN IN CASTILE
AND THE
SPANISH-AMERICAN REPUBLICS

BY

MARATHON MONTROSE RAMSEY, A.M.

Professor of Romance Languages in the Columbian University

THIRD EDITION

NEW YORK
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

Copyright, 1894,
BY
HENRY HOLT & CO.

May, 1929

PRINTED IN THE U. S. A.

INTRODUCTION.

THE peninsula bounded by the Pyrenees, the Mediterranean and the waters of the Atlantic is a geographical unity, but a unity in no other respect. From the remotest ages it has been the battle-ground of races, religions and languages the most diverse. Basques, Celtiberians, Phœnicians, Romans, Suevi, Goths, Franks, Arabs and Mauritanians have successively contributed to the population, the language and the monuments of the peninsula. The mountainous nature of the country and its long separation into kingdoms and provinces have prevented a feeling of national unity and fostered local rivalries and jealousies. The inhabitants of the several districts regard themselves as Castilians, Andalusians, Catalonians or Galicians rather than as Spaniards. They refuse to their sovereign the title of King of Spain, and place a confederate stamp upon his official designation "*Rey de las Españas,*" King of *the Spains.*

The comprehensive words "Spain" and "Spanish" are misleading except when used as geographical or political designations; for the diversity of the climate and natural features of the country is equalled by that of the characteristics and language of the inhabitants. Strictly speaking there is no *Spanish* language. To say nothing of Portuguese, the diversities of dialect are so great that Catalán, Andaluz and Gallego are mutually unintelligible; and all degrees of variety lie between these extremes. The central position of Castile, and the political ascendency acquired by it as early as the XIth century have caused the dialect there spoken to be acknowledged as the typical language of Spain. It has been cultivated

with the greatest care and embodies the most extensive and valuable part of the literature of all Spain. It is to Castilian that foreigners refer when they speak of "Spanish." It is generally in Spain, and in Spanish America universally, spoken of as *la lengua castellana.* In this work the English terms "Spanish" and "Spanish language" will be employed as synonymous with *el castellano* and *la lengua castellana.*

As Spain enjoyed fully 600 years of peace and prosperity as a Roman province, it became more thoroughly Latinized than any other part of the Empire outside of Italy. It moreover was accorded a gentler colonial policy than any other province. Everything possible was done to conciliate the good will, to further the interests and to secure the loyalty of the Spaniards. Cities were founded and placed upon the footing of the highly favored municipalities of ancient Latium; and Spain became the richest and most important Roman province. Not only were the material interests of its people thus carefully fostered, but every attention was given to learning and literature.* Latin of the very purest type was spoken in Spain; her orators were admired even in the Forum at Rome, and among her authors were classics like the two Senecas, Lucan, Martial and Quintilian. Spain had thus the advantage of having for the basis of her language a pure classic Latin, which probably no other dependency outside of the immediate vicinity of Rome ever possessed in like degree. To this circumstance it is partly to be attributed that the Spanish is in its most prominent feature, the inflections, much nearer the Latin than its more direct descendant, the Italian; and that were it not for the simplification of orthography introduced by the Spanish Academy, Spanish would have the honor (which now belongs to its near neighbor, the Portuguese) of being the most like Latin of all the Romance languages.

Two other languages have had a large influence in the formation of Spanish—the Gothic, which is also found largely in all the other languages of the Latin stock, and the Arabic,

---

*M. Schele de Vere, "Grammar of the Spanish Language," 1854, p. 198.

which Spanish and Portuguese alone possess. The Arabs (or Moors, as they are usually called) held possession of a large part of the Iberian peninsula for nearly 800 years, and their intellectual superiority could not fail to produce a powerful and lasting impression on the language and character of the conquered nation.

The tendency of all language is to become simplified by use. The "numbers infinite of many-lettered" forms assumed in successive ages by the Sanskrit verb became 1,400 or less in classic Greek; its younger sister, the Latin, had a maximum of 395, while the modern Spanish verb has at the utmost 62 distinguishable forms.* Spanish, moreover, has lost all case distinctions except in three pronouns, while the comparison of adjectives and adverbs now applies to but eight words.

The simplified condition of the language as now written does not justify the devoting of a large part of a text-book to the mere forms and definitions of words, reserving their usage for a second part called "syntax" (*putting together*), as was necessary in Greek and Latin, and has generally been followed blindly by modern grammarians. In this work the forms of words and their uses are exhibited together.

It may be necessary to state that Spanish, as written and spoken by sixteen independent nations and two island colonies in the new world, is no further different from the mother tongue of Castile than the English of the educated classes of the United States differs from that spoken at the court of St. James. Some slight variations of pronunciation, still slighter changes of spelling, and an occasional word of native Indian origin, are about the only distinguishing features in both cases.

The present course of events, tending to bring the United States into more intimate relations with the Latin republics of the South, calls for instruction in the Spanish language, more practical and in greater detail than is afforded by any work now

---

* See Chapter XII, p. 269.

in use.* An effort has been made to combine in the following pages as far as possible the special advantages of a progressive series of lessons and exercises, and of a systematic treatise on grammar. The beginner will find the first elements of the language exhibited so simply as to offer no difficulty or discouragement at the outset; and great pains have been taken to explain each point when first presented. The work is thus progressive in its method, and no statement presupposes the knowledge contained in a subsequent one. The only knowledge presupposed is an acquaintance with the most general distinctions and terms of grammar common to all languages.

It is obvious, however, that in such a method only the simplest principles and sentences can be exhibited in the beginning. The irregularities, anomalies and apparent absurdities which cause the beginner so much perplexity, are deferred until added knowledge and experience prepare him to grapple with them. As an example, the nominatives of the personal pronouns are shown in the second lesson; the objective forms are deferred to the first chapter of Part III; while the complexities of their enclitic use and duplicate objective forms are withheld until Chapter XXVII. The forms and uses of the various moods and tenses are learned and practised, one at a time, before any complete paradigm is presented; and the most useful irregular verbs are inserted by degrees before they are considered as a class.

To one who bestows only a hasty glance, this postponement of difficulties may give the impression that the work has no method or arrangement, when in fact its arrangement has been the subject of a special care and study, the constant endeavor having been to introduce nothing at a point where it cannot be appreciated.

Although the work is divided into three parts, it must not be imagined that any one of them forms a complete treatise independent of the others. Part I contains the principles of

* It is hoped that at no very distant day this work may be followed by a corresponding "Text-Book" for acquiring Portuguese, a language spoken in South America over an area larger than that of the United States.

orthography and pronunciation which must be thoroughly assimilated before the study of the grammar and lexicology of the language is commenced. Part II contains twenty Lessons of moderate length, with exercises, which lead gradually up to the more extended treatment contained in Part III. Part III is divided into twenty Chapters of length varying with the requirements of the subjects under consideration, with exercises at intervals. It is not intended that each or any of these chapters is to be assigned as a *lesson*. Let the student undertake so much as his circumstances enable him to learn thoroughly. The author believes that Exercises, to test the student's progress at every step, and give opportunity to practise what he has learned, are among the most important agencies in education, and ought never to be evaded. He has, however, in preparing them, endeavored to avoid tedious and puerile iteration. Exercises in translating from Spanish into English have been omitted, from a conviction that this purpose can be better attained by a Progressive Reader, beginning with sentences of the most elementary character. Such a reader is now in preparation.

The work will also be found available as a systematic grammar and book of reference. By means of the Index, the student can find any particular point (as, for example, the neuter article or the pluperfect subjunctive) without having to read anything else.

The author desires to express his gratitude and indebtedness to Dr. José Ignacio Rodríguez, of the Bureau of the American Republics, to Mr. Edmundo J. Plaza, Secretary of the Mexican Legation at Washington, to Prof. M. Schele de Vere, of the University of Virginia, and to Mr. Bernardino Goicoechea, of New York, for valuable suggestions made during the preparation of this work.

COLUMBIAN UNIVERSITY,
WASHINGTON, *March*. 1894.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	iii
CONTENTS	ix

PART I. ORTHOGRAPHY AND PRONUNCIATION.

The alphabet	1
Vowels	2
Diphthongs and triphthongs	2
Consonants	5
Double letters	9
The accent	9
Division of syllables	15
Capitals and punctuation	16

PART II. PRELIMINARY LESSONS.

LESSONS:

I.	First principles: Article, noun and verb	18
II.	The personal pronoun as subject	21
III.	The negative **no**; prepositions **á** and **de**; conjunctions **y**, **ó**, **mas**, **pero** and **sino**	24
IV.	The plural of nouns. Possessive pronoun of the third person	27
V.	Present indicative of the model verbs	31
VI.	**Venir**, **ir**, **dar**, **hacer**, **decir**, **ver**	35
VII.	Adjectives	38
VIII.	Apocopation of adjectives. **Donde**, *where*	42
IX.	Words common to Spanish and English	46
X.	**Ser** and **estar**	50
XI.	Compound prepositions. Agreement of adjectives	55
XII.	Indefinite pronouns	60
XIII.	Derivative adverbs	65
XIV.	The past participle and the perfect tense	70

LESSONS: PAGE

XV. Use of the articles 75
XVI. Spanish forms of address 80
XVII. The gender of nouns 85
XVIII. Substantive combinations. Compound nouns. Composite adjective expressions 90
XIX. Remarks on certain important verbs and adverbs . . . 96
XX. The future and future-perfect tenses. Relative use of **quién** and **qué**. Prepositions **hacia** and **hasta** . . . 102

PART III. MORE EXTENDED TREATMENT.

CHAPTERS:

I. The Personal Pronouns: Declension. Use of the cases. Gender. Reflexive pronouns. Terminal dative and accusative. Redundant construction. Employment of **usted** and its substitutes. Two pronouns as objects. Accusative of substitution 107
II. Numerals and Numerical Values: Cardinal, ordinal, collective, distributive, partitive or fractional, and multiple numerals. Numeral adverbs. Indefinite numeral expressions. Time and its designations. Manner of expressing dimensions 128
III. Possessive pronouns. Interrogative pronouns and adverbs. Demonstrative pronouns. The logical pronoun **el**. Adjectives and pronouns used absolutely 149
IV. The imperfect and aorist (past definite) tenses. Distinction between aorist and perfect. Distinction between aorist and imperfect 166
V. Parts of the body 175
VI. The prepositions **para** and **por** 179
VII. The present participle and the gerund 187
VIII. Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs: Comparison of inequality. Comparison of equality. The superlative of comparison. The absolute superlative 195
IX. Adjective pronouns 217
X. Relative pronouns 240
XI. Negatives 255
XII. Compound Tenses: Perfect; pluperfect; aorist pluperfect; future perfect; perfect infinitive; perfect gerund. The imperative mood. Order of words 268
XIII. Classes of Verbs: Transitive, reflexive, reciprocal, and intransitive verbs. Transitive verbs used intransitively. The passive voice. Reflexive substitute for passive. Impersonal verbs. Inceptive verbs. Periphrastic verbal expressions 278

CHAPTERS: PAGE

XIV. **Haber** and **hacer** used impersonally 308

XV. The Subjunctive Mood: Present and perfect subjunctive. The subjunctive in subordinate clauses: after verbs of causing; after expressions of emotion and feeling; after impersonal verbs and expressions; after expressions of denial or doubt; after a relative; terminations in **-quiera**; after conjunctive expressions. Imperfect, aorist and pluperfect subjunctive. Future and future-perfect subjunctive. The subjunctive in independent clauses: the subjunctive used as imperative; alternative expressions . 318

XVI. The Conditional future and future perfect. Imperfect, aorist and pluperfect subjunctive as substitutes. Conditions with implied negation 345

XVII. Correspondence of tenses. Tense equivalents. The subjunctive contrasted with the indicative and infinitive . 355

XVIII. The auxiliary verbs **deber** and **poder** 368

XIX. Inflection of the model verbs. Orthographic changes in regular verbs 387

XX. Inflection of the irregular verbs 398

XXI. Defective verbs. Irregular past participles. Alphabetical index of the irregular and defective verbs 427

XXII. Idiomatic uses of certain verbs and verbal expressions . . 446

XXIII. Particular uses of the tenses 462

XXIV. Word-Making: Diminutive and augmentative terminations. Derivatives. Prefixes 478

XXV. Peculiarities of Nouns: Gender; number. Distinctions between subject and object 515

XXVI. Employment and omission of the articles. The neuter gender 530

XXVII. Further remarks on the objective personal pronouns: Enclitic use. Redundant use. Alternative objective forms 546

XXVIII. Adverbs. Conjunctions. Interjections 559

XXIX. Remarks on the use of certain prepositions. Prepositions required by verbs, adjectives, and nouns 573

XXX. The laws of agreement 590

APPENDIX: Social and epistolary usages 610

Derivative geographical adjectives 616

GENERAL VOCABULARY 621

INDEX 647

TEXT-BOOK OF MODERN SPANISH.

PART I.

ORTHOGRAPHY AND PRONUNCIATION.

THE ALPHABET.

1. The alphabet recognized by the Spanish Academy[1] contains 25 simple and 4 compound letters, which are alike regarded as representing distinct sounds. To these may be added **w**, employed only in foreign words, to which use **k** also is confined.

The forms of the letters are the same as in English:—

CHARACTERS.	NAMES.	PRONUNCIATION.	CHARACTERS.	NAMES.	PRONUNCIATION.
a,	a,	*ah.*	**n,**	ene,	*aï'ney.*
b,	be,	*bay.*	**ñ,**	eñe,	*ain'yey.*
c,	ce,	*thay.*	**o,**	o,	*oh.*
ch,	che,	*chay.*	**p,**	pe,	*pay.*
d,	de,	*day.*	**q,**	cu,	*coo.*
e,	e,	*ay.*	**r,**	ere,	*aï'rey.*
f,	efe,	*aï'fey.*	**rr,**	erre,	*air'rey.*
g,	ge,	**hay.*	**s,**	ese,	*aï'ssey.*
h,	hache,	*ah'chey.*	**t,**	te,	*tay.*
i,	i,	*ee.*	**u,**	u,	*oo.*
j,	jota,	**ho'tah.*	**v,**	ve,	*vay.*
k,	ka,	*kah.*	**x,**	ekis *or* equis,	*aï'kees.*
l,	ele,	*aï'ley.*	**y,**	ye *or* y griega, (*i.e., Greek y.*)	*yay* or *ee greeay'ga.*
ll,	elle,	*aïl'yey.*	**z,**	zeta,	*thay'tah.*
m,	eme,	*aï'mey.*			

* Guttural *h*, pronounced like the German ch in **Buch**. Its sound will be represented in this work by *'h*.

[1] The Royal Spanish Academy, founded in 1713 by the Duke d'Escalona, is composed of 30 members. Its object is to improve and preserve the Spanish language. The Grammar and Dictionary published by it are the standards of the language.

2. The sound of each letter (simple or compound) is invariable, except **c** and **g**, which as in English have two sounds each.

In addition to **ch, ll, ñ** and **rr,** old editions of early Spanish works contain three more compound consonants: *ç, ph* and *th*; but these are now obsolete.

VOWELS.

3. Great importance is attached to the vowels in Spanish; their sounds are full and clear, while those of the consonants are often obscure or even suppressed. They have the following values:—

A sounds like *a* in *ah.*[1]
E " " *a* " *hay.*
I " " *ee* " *bee.*
O " " *o* " *hope.*
U " " *u* " *rule.*

These vowels, although somewhat fainter when not accented, always retain the same character of sound.

Y, when a vowel, is equivalent to **i.**

REMARK.—**Y** is considered a vowel only when standing alone, as in **y**, *and*; or at the end of a word, as in **ley**, *law.* It never occurs between consonants, its place being then taken by **i**; as: **sistema**, *system*; **oxígeno**, *oxygen.*

In Chile **y** is almost universally discarded as a vowel, **i** being used instead—a usage which is quite general in the other Pacific republics of Peru, Ecuador, Colombia and Venezuela.

DIPHTHONGS AND TRIPHTHONGS.

☞ The student is advised to pay particular attention to this subject, as a thorough knowledge of it is necessary in order to understand the laws of the written accent.

4. Spanish diphthongs and triphthongs are indivisible combinations of vowels pronounced as single syllables, laying the stress on the more sonorous vowel and passing rapidly over the weaker or less sonorous. If both vowels are weak (**i** and **u**), the stress is laid on the last of the two; as: *ru***i***do, vi***u***do.*

5. The gradual scale of the sonority or strength of the vowels is the following: **a, o, e, i, u.**

---

[1] The sound of the Spanish **a** is midway between the English *a* in *father* and that in *fat.*

A, **o**, **e**, are called *strong vowels*; **i**, **u**, *weak vowels*.

6. Diphthongs cannot be formed from the strong vowels alone, but must be composed of one of the strong vowels uniting with one of the weak, or of the two weak vowels **i** and **u** combined. It makes no difference which of the vowels comes first.

Where two strong vowels come together, each is considered as a separate syllable: **real, héroe, oasis**, etc.

7. Triphthongs must always be composed of one strong vowel between two weak ones.

8. The following is a list of all the diphthongs and triphthongs in the language, the diphthongs in the one column being the reverse of those in the opposite. All other combinations of vowels are pronounced as separate syllables.

DIPHTHONGS.

ai, ay :	aire, hay.	**ia** :	seria, diablo.
au :	pausa, caudal.	**ua** :	cuanto, agua.
oi, oy :	sois, hoy.	**io** :	estudio, atención.
ou :	bou.[1]	**uo** :	evacuo, evacuó.
ei, ey :	pleito, ley.	**ie** :	piedra, anuncie.
eu :	feudo, deuda.	**ue** :	pues, fuego.
iu :	viuda, triunfo.	**ui, uy** :	ruido, muy.

TRIPHTHONGS.

iai : apreciáis.	**uai, uay** : averiguáis, Paraguay.
iei : apreciéis.	**uei, uey** : averigüéis, buey.

REMARK.—No Spanish words end in any of the diphthongs **au, ou, eu, iu,** except the instance given above.

9. It has been shown that **y** is equal to **i**. Whenever a diphthong or triphthong ending in **i** comes at the end of a word, the **i** is changed to **y**, as exhibited above.

This, however, is not the general usage in the republics of Chile, Peru, Ecuador, Colombia and Venezuela.

10. The diphthongs **ue**, **ie**, cannot begin words; **ue** is preceded by **h** (silent)[2], while the **i** of **ie** is changed to **y**. These

[1] This is the only example of this diphthong in the language.

[2] This usage is a relic of an old rule, made necessary long ago when **u** represented both the sound of *v* (consonant) and *u* (vowel), in order to show that in such case **u** had the vowel sound. It is now adhered to merely from custom.

changes do not affect the pronunciation, and are merely a requirement of Spanish orthography:—

hueso, bone;	**huevo**, egg;	**huérfano**, orphan;
yerro, error;	**yendo**, going;	**yegua**, mare.

REMARK.—There are words beginning with **hie**, but they do not come under this principle; with them the **h** is, or represents, an original part of the word:—

hiena,	GR. *ὕαινα*,	hyena;
hiedra,	LAT. *hedera*,	ivy;
hierro,	" *ferrum*,	iron;
hiel,	" *fel*,	gall;
hielo,	" *gelu*,	frost.

11. Vowels coming together which are not diphthongs, are nevertheless very much run together in speech. This also occurs in the case of concurrent vowels in different words, and where two vowels are separated by silent **h**, and occasions the foreigner much perplexity at first on hearing the spoken language. *E.g.*:—

la sola idea,	mi acción,	suba usted,	¿sabe usted?
sólo eso,	mi hija,	ahora,	la hora.

REMARK.—The assimilation is more complete when the concurrent vowels are identical; as:—

sería agradable,	de eso,	mi ida,	esta acción.

12. A diphthong or triphthong being considered as a single syllable, it is sometimes necessary to place the written accent over that syllable. In that case the written accent must be placed over the stronger vowel; when placed over the weaker one, the diphthong or triphthong is dissolved and becomes two syllables. Thus **uo** in **continuo**, *continuous*, and **continuó**, *he continued*, is a diphthong, but not in **continúo**, *I continue*; so **ia** in **seria**, *serious*, is a diphthong, but not in **sería**, *would be*.

13. If both vowels of a diphthong are weak, the accent-mark must be placed over the last vowel; if placed over the first, the diphthong is dissolved. Thus **ui** in **huido**, **fuí**, is a diphthong, but not in **fúido**.

REMARK.—The learner is cautioned against allowing the **u** of the diphthong **ui** to be heard as a vowel; it should have the consonant value of the English *w*:—

luir,	pronounced	*lweer,*	not *loo-ir.*
muy,	"	*mwee,*	" *moo-ee.*
huir,	"	*weer,*	" *oo-eer.*
constituir,	"	*constitweer,*	" *constitoo-eer.*

14. Where several words are formed from the same stem, it will be found that the vowels **e** and **o** are often changed to **ie** and **ue** respectively when they receive the accent in pronunciation; and, conversely, when the diphthong is relieved of the accent, the original vowel resumes its place. This alternation pervades the language, being especially noticeable in the forms taken by Latin words in Spanish, and in the formation of derivatives; but it does not apply in every case. Examples:—

LATIN.	WITH ACCENT.	WITHOUT ACCENT.
Festa.	Fiesta, *feast.*	Festivo, *festive.*
Certum.	Cierto, *certain.*	Certidumbre, *certainty.*
Refero.	Refiero, *I refer.*	Referencia, *reference.*
Arden[t]s.	Ardiente, *burning.*	Ardentía, *phosphorescence.*
Cornu.	Cuerno, *horn.*	Cornudo, *horned.*
Forum.	Fuero, *forum.*	Forense, *forensic.*
Hortus.	Huerto, *kitchen-garden.*	Hortaliza, *garden-truck.*
Fon[t]s.	Fuente, *spring, fountain.*	Fontanoso, *containing springs.*

15. When an initial **e** or **o** is thus expanded, the resulting diphthongs **ie** and **ue** are respectively changed to **ye** and **hue** (in accordance with the orthographic requirement given at § 10):—

LATIN,	*equa;*	SPANISH,	yegua, *mare.*
"	*error;*	"	yerro, *error.*
"	*ovum;*	"	huevo, *egg.*
GREEK,	ὀρφανός.	"	huérfano, *orphan.*

16. CONSONANTS.

F, k, l, m, n and **p** have the same value in Spanish as in English.

B has nearly the same but not quite so forcible a sound as

in English; the lips are not pressed so closely together in pronouncing it, which causes it often to be confounded with **v**.

REMARK.—The Spanish Academy Grammar, 1888, (p. 353,) says that "in the greater part of Spain the pronunciation of **b** and **v** is the same, although it ought not to be."

C has two sounds. Before **e** and **i** it is pronounced like *th* in *thin*. In all other cases it has the sound of *k*.

REMARK.—The pronunciation of **c** and **z** like *th* is comparatively modern, dating from the last half of the XVIth century. It is peculiarly Castilian, as distinguished from the common speech of Andalucía, Cataluña and Galicia; it has not found its way into Portuguese, and in Spanish America it is generally regarded as affected and pedantic. In the last-named quarter of the globe the usual pronunciation of **c** before **e** and **i**, and of **z** in all cases, is that of *c* in *city, precede.*

C is frequently omitted before **c** and **t** in pronunciation, and by the illiterate in writing; as: *ación* for **acción**, *direto* for **directo**. This elision has been the cause of many shortened forms which are now correct; as: **contrato**, *contract;* **objeto**, *object;* **afición**, *affection.*

Ch is now everywhere pronounced like *ch* in *church*. It formerly represented also the *k* sound of the Greek *ch* (χ), but this is now written in the manner prescribed for the sound of *k* in the table at the end of this subject.

D has never the decided English sound of *d*, but has a tinge of the sound of *th* in *then*. Between vowels and at the end of words this sound is more apparent, becoming almost exactly like *th* in *then*.

REMARK.—Both **d** and **t** before **r** have the forcible sound, obtained by pressing the tongue against the teeth, much heard in the Irish brogue.

D is often elided in familiar speech when occurring between vowels or at the end of words; as: *pegao* for **pegado**, *sentío* for **sentido**, *tomá* for **tomad**, *Madrí* for **Madrid**, *usté* (even *uté*) for **usted**, etc. Two identical vowels coalesce when thus brought together; as: *pue* for **puede**, *to* for **todo**, *na* for **nada**. Of these, the contraction **ado** = *ao* is the most frequent; the remainder are almost wholly restricted to illiterate, or provincial, people.

G has two sounds. Before **e** and **i** it has the sound of strongly aspirated *h*, nearly like the German **ch** in **Buch**. In all other cases it sounds like *g* in *go*.

In order to obtain the latter sound of **g** before **e** and **i**, **u** is interpolated between **g** and the vowel. In this case the **u** is

silent; if it is required to be pronounced, a diæresis (¨) is placed over it; as: **agüero, vergüenza.**

Among the common people **g** and **b** are interchangeable before **u**, or are even silent altogether. Thus **aguja** is transformed into *abuja* or *ahuja*; and conversely **abuelo** becomes *agüelo* or *ahuelo*, and **bueno**, *güeno* or *hueno*. By analogy **hueco, huero, huerta**, become *güeco, güero, güerta*.

H has a slight trace of aspiration before the diphthong **ue**. In all other cases it is entirely silent (except in the combined character **ch**).

J has the same sound which **g** has beforé **e** and **i**; as: **enjambre, hijo, juego.**

Remark.—In Chile, Peru and Ecuador, and indeed throughout most of the Pacific coast of South America, it is common to use **j** in all cases where the guttural sound occurs, hence using it instead of **g** before **e** and **i**; as:—

jeneral *for* **g**eneral, vijía *for* vigía, pájina *for* página.

Ll has the sound of the letters *lli* in the English *million*, which is written in Spanish **millón.**

In Andalucía and many parts of Spanish America (as, for instance, Cuba and Mexico) **ll** is pronounced like *y* in the English *beyond*; hence **caballo** = *cabayo*, **pollo** = *poyo*. But this pronunciation is not reckoned the most elegant.

N. In Andalucía, Galicia, Cataluña and many parts of Spanish America, notably Cuba, final **n** is given a nasal sound almost identical with the French *an, on*, etc. But this the student is not advised to adopt.

Ñ[1] has the sound of the letters *ni* in the English *pinion*, written in Spanish **piñón.**

Note.—The mark over **ñ** is called **tilde** in Spanish.

Q only occurs before **ue** and **ui**, and sounds like **k**, the following **u** being always silent.

R is rolled more than in English, although but very little more between vowels; as: **ara, toro, tiren.** It is very forcibly rolled at the beginning and end of words, and after **l, n** and **s.**

Rr. Both letters in this are to be distinctly sounded.

Remark.—Especial care must be taken to distinguish between **r** and **rr**, as very ludicrous mistakes are liable to arise from confusing them; thus **pera** is a *pear*, **perra**, a *female dog*.

[1] The termination **ny** in proper names of Catalán origin should be pronounced like **ñ**; thus **Fortuny** = *Fortúñ*, **Duany** = *Duañ*.

S has always the hissing sound of *s* in *say, case.*

REMARK.—No word or syllable in Spanish begins with **s** followed by a consonant, and the Spaniards experience great difficulty in uttering such a combination without prefixing a vowel.

S at the end of syllables is frequently dropped or pronounced like aspirated *h*, in Andalucía and in districts settled from that province. Thus: *Eh'pañol* for **Español**, *deh'pués'* for **después**, *¡á lo' hueno' corru'co' de almendrah'!* for **¡á los buenos corruscos de almendras!** *here's your nice macaroons!* a familiar street-vender's cry. This is restricted to the uneducated classes, or to familiar language.

V is pronounced as in English, except that the upper teeth do not press the under lip in uttering it.

REMARK.—**V** is often, although incorrectly, given the sound of *b*.

W (called **doble u**) is pronounced according to its value in the language from which the word containing it is taken. Hence **Wágner** = *Vágner*, and **Wáshington** = *Váshington.*

X has the sound of *x* in *wax, axle.*

REMARK.—In many words **x** had formerly the guttural sound of the Spanish **j**, but according to modern orthography the **x** in those words is replaced by **j**. Thus what were formerly written *xefe, baxo, relox*, are now spelled **jefe, bajo, reloj** [1].

The prefix **ex**, when followed by a consonant other than **h**, is often replaced by *es*, as *escelente* for **excelente**. The Spanish Academy strongly condemns this practice; nevertheless it is a very general usage, especially in pronunciation.

Y is a consonant only at the beginning of a word or syllable; it then has the same value as in English, but is more emphatically pronounced.

In many localities **y** has nearly the sound of *z* in *azure* (the French *j*), and even that of English *j* in *joke.*

Z sounds like *th* in *thin.* With the exception of its own name and a few rare words, it never occurs before **e** or **i**, but only before **a**, **o** and **u**, and the consonants **b**, **c**, **g**, **m** and **n**.

In Andalucía and Spanish America **z** is given the sound of *ss*, as has been explained under **C**.

---

[1] **Reloj** (from the Latin *horologium*) is the general term for *time-keeper*, and includes both *watch* and *clock.* The final **j** is now silent—the only instance of a silent letter other than **h** in literary Spanish. The word is therefore sometimes written **relô**; its plural is regular—**relojes.**

17. TABLE SHOWING THE MANNER OF REPRESENTING CERTAIN CONSONANTAL SOUNDS BEFORE THE SEVERAL VOWELS.

	a	e	i	o	u
Sound of *k*	ca	que	qui	co	cu
Sound of *th*	za	ce	ci	zo	zu
Sound of *g*	ga	gue	gui	go	gu
Sound of *'h*	ja	ge	gi	jo	ju
Sound of *kw*	cua	cue	cui	cuo	
Sound of *gw*	gua	güe	güi	guo	

DOUBLE LETTERS.

18. The Spanish Academy has suppressed double letters where one alone is pronounced.

19. **C**, **n** and **r** are the only consonants now doubled, and that only when both are sounded; as: **acción, ennoblecer, perro.**

20. **Cc** can occur only before **e** and **i**, and is pronounced *k'th*; as: **accesible, occidente.**

21. **Ll** is not considered a double letter, but a distinct sign for a particular sound.

22. Latin and English *mm* stand as **nm** in Spanish:—

inmersión, *immersion*; inmenso, *immense*; inmortal, *immortal.*

23. Only the strong vowels (**a, e, o**) occur doubled; as:—

contraalmirante, lee, creencia, cooperan.

THE ACCENT.

☞ More space must be given here to the subject of accent than is usual in Spanish text-books of this character, as the entire system has lately been changed (*Grammar, Span. Acad.*, 1888), and the author is not aware (1891) of the existence of any other grammar or method in English giving what is at present the only authorized system of accentuation.[1]

24. In Spanish as in English, in words of two or more syllables, some one is pronounced more forcibly than the others. This forcible utterance will be called *accent*; the mark for showing it in writing or print (') will be called the *written accent* or *accent-mark.*

[1] A treatise on the "New System of Spanish Accentuation," by H. R. Lemly, U. S. Army, was published in 1890 by Ginn & Co., and may be consulted for more exhaustive details.

As it would be too laborious in writing to place an accent-mark over every word, and as words of similar terminations are generally accented alike, they have been grouped into classes, which, from their uniformity, do not need the written accent; only words that are in some way exceptional require it.

25. The various ways of making this classification have caused the changes which have taken place during the last two centuries in the system of written accentuation. The one last adopted is the most logical and intelligible. It proceeds upon the following general principles:—

a. The greater part of words ending in a vowel are accented on the penultimate.

b. The greater part of words ending in **n** or **s** are accented on the penultimate. (Because most words ending in **s** are plurals, and the adding of **s** or **es** in the plural does not change the original accent; and most words ending in **n** are parts of verbs, and nearly all parts of verbs are accented on the penultimate.)

c. The greater part of words ending in other consonants than **n** or **s** are accented on the last syllable.

d. Words accented on any syllable before the penultimate are comparatively rare.

26. From which general principles are deduced the following rules governing the written accent:—

1. All words ending in a vowel, or in **n** or **s**, which are accented on the penultimate, bear no accent-mark :—

teme,	margen,	martes,
toma,	imagen,	crisis,
suspiro;	volumen;	vecinos.

2. All words ending in a vowel, or in **n** or **s**, which are accented on the last syllable, must bear the accent-mark on that syllable :—

café,	motín,	atrás,
amó,	vaivén,	revés,
Perú,	renglón,	pedís,
contendrá;	alquitrán;	además.

3. All words ending in a consonant other than **n** or **s**, and which are accented on the last syllable, do not bear the accent-mark :—

alud,	reloj,	peral,
esperar,	altivez,	verdegay,
Abdallah,	Edom.	Habacuc.

REMARK.—Final **y**, although sounded as a vowel, is considered a consonant for the purposes of accentuation.

4. All words ending in a consonant other than **n** or **s**, and which are accented on the penultimate, must bear the accent-mark :—

áspid,	ángel,	mármol,
ítem,	cráter,	nácar,
clímax,	lápiz,	alférez.

5. All words accented on a syllable previous to the penultimate, must bear the accent-mark :—

ciénaga,	músico,	héroe,
artículos,	pirámide,	régimen,
línea,	atmósfera,	paseábamos.

27. It is to be remembered that a diphthong is only formed either by the weak vowels **i** and **u** combined, or one of them combined with one of the strong vowels;

That a triphthong is made only by a strong vowel coming between two weak ones;

That two strong vowels together make two distinct syllables;

That accenting the weak vowel of a diphthong, or the first of the vowels if both are weak, dissolves the diphthong; and likewise that accenting either weak vowel of a triphthong dissolves it.

28. These peculiarities give rise to the following special rules for words containing diphthongs or triphthongs:—

1. The presence of a diphthong or triphthong in a syllable which would naturally be accented, does not affect the accentuation of the word :—

heroico,	envainan,	enviuda,
piocha,	empeine,	arruina,
cuenca,	Ceuta,	pierden.

2. If a syllable requiring the written accent contains a diphthong or triphthong, the accent must be placed over the strong vowel ; or, in the case of a diphthong, if both are weak, over the last vowel :—

buscapié,	piélago,	después,
parabién,	huéspedes,	estudiáis,
Benjuí,	Cáucaso,	semidiós.

REMARK.—To this head belong monosyllabic aorist tenses containing diphthongs ; as : **fué, fuí, dió, vió.** (For reason, see § 33 *a*.)

3. Whenever the weak vowel of a triphthong or diphthong is accented, or the first vowel when both are weak, the accent-mark must be placed over

said vowel to show that there is no diphthong or triphthong, as the case may be:—

ataúd,	país,	raíz,	poesía,
días,	mío,	acentúo,	creído,
continúan,	poesías,	decíais,	temíais,
roído,	dúo,	leía,	alelíes,
aúlla,	saúco,	egoísmo,	período,
increíble,	paraíso,	flúido,	circúito.

29. The tenses of the verb which bear the accent-mark, retain it when one or more pronouns are added to them (§ 334):—

fuése,	vióse,	rogóles,
pidiómelo,	conmovíla,	andaráse.

30. When one or more pronouns are added to any part of a verb so as to shift the accented syllable to the antepenultimate, or still farther from the end, the accent must be then marked:—

dándomelos,	comérselo,	habiéndoseme,
conseguírnoslos,	consiguiéndonoslas,	castíguesemele.

31. When two Spanish words are combined, each retains its original accent, whether written or not; so also an adverb formed from an adjective by adding **mente**:—

décimoséptimo,	ferrocarril,	quemacabos;
cortésmente,	naturalmente,	lícitamente.

32. The preposition **á** and the conjunctions **é, ó, ú**, bear the accent-mark from custom, and not for any orthoepic reason.

33. No words of one syllable bear the written accent, with the exception of the above vowels and the two classes of words following:—

a. Monosyllabic aorist forms of verbs. (Because any part of the aorist tense accented on the final syllable must bear the written accent):—

fuí,	fué,	dí,	ví,	vió,	rió.

b. Where there are two monosyllables of identical form, the more emphatic one is distinguished by the written accent. When so used, the accent is termed *diacritic*:—

dé, give, (*subjunct. of* **dar**.)	**de**, of, from.
él, he, him.	**el**, the.

há, ago.	ha, has.
hé, behold, (*imperat.*)	he, I have.
mí, me.	mi, my.
más, more.	mas, but.
sé, I know; be thou.	se, one's self.
sí, yes, one's self.	si, if.
són, sound.	son, are.
té, tea.	te, thee.
tú, thou.	tu, thy.
vé, go, (*imperat. of* ir.)	ve, sees, (*present of* ver.)

34. The diacritic accent is further used to distinguish:—

bájo, I descend.	bajo, low, below.
cómo, I eat.	como, as.
luégo, therefore.	luego, afterwards.
sólo, only, (*adv.*)	solo, alone, (*adj.*)
suéño, I dream, (*verb.*)	sueño, dream, (*noun.*)
sóbre, exceed, (*verb.*)	sobre, over, (*prep.*)
úno, úna, unite, (*verb.*)	uno, una, a, an, one, (*art. and num.*)

35. To distinguish demonstrative pronouns used substantively:—

éste, this one.	este, this.
ése, that one.	ese, that.
aquél, that one yonder.	aquel, that [yonder].

36. To distinguish the interrogative or exclamatory from the relative use of pronouns and adverbs:—

cómo, how?	como, as.
cuál, which?	cual, which.
cuán, how!	cuan, as.
cuándo, when?	cuando, when.
cuánto, how much?	cuanto, as much.
cúyo, whose?	cuyo, whose.
dónde, where?	donde, where.
qué, what?	que, that, which.
quién, who? whom?	quien, who, whom.

37. And finally when any of the pronouns or adverbs in the preceding section are repeated as correlatives:—

Cuándo por una parte, cuándo por otra.	Now in one place, now in another.
Quién lloraba, quién rezaba.	One wept, another prayed.
Cuáles leían, cuáles fumaban.	Some were reading, others smoking.

38. There are many pairs of words composed of the same letters, but accented differently both in speaking and writing. In these the accent is not diacritic, but distinguishes the pronunciation. *E.g.:—*

tenia, tenía;	cortes, cortés;	anden, andén;
pie, píe;	veras, verás;	picaron, picarón.

39. The adverb **aun**, when it follows the verb to which it belongs, is pronounced in two syllables, and the dissolution of the diphthong is shown by the accent-mark: **aún**. When it precedes the verb it is a diphthong and has no accent-mark:—

¿Aun no ha llegado? No ha llegado aún.

40. In English one syllable of a word is often accented at the expense of the vowels in the other syllables; thus *reciprocal* is pronounced so that it is impossible to tell what are the precise sounds of the last two vowels. But in Spanish the original quality of a vowel is never changed or lost because it does not receive the principal accent.

Hence, for example, **político**, **naturalmente**, **liberalísima**, **animalito** should not be pronounced *pŏlittyco*, *nattŭrŭlmenty*, *lib'rŭlissymŭh*, *annĭmŭlleeto*; but *poh-lee'-tee-coh*, *nah-too-rahl'-main'-tey*, *lee-bay-rah-lee'-see-mah*, *ah-nee-mah-lee'-toh*.

41. Especial care should be exercised by the English-speaking foreigner in distinguishing the vowel terminations of Spanish words, especially **o** and **a**, pronouncing them clearly, yet without stress when not accented. The change of a final vowel often constitutes the only difference between two inflectional forms of a verb, or two nouns of widely different meaning; while the distinction of gender depends entirely upon the vowels **o** and **a**. The following pairs of nouns may serve as an example and an exercise:—

abuelo, grandfather.	**abuela**, grandmother.
barro, mud.	**barra**, bar, ingot.
cardo, thistle.	**carda**, wool-card.
cargo, charge, employment.	**carga**, load.
copo, snowflake.	**copa**, wineglass.
cuarto, a room, apartment.	**cuarta**, a quarter.
dicho, a saying.	**dicha**, luck.
duelo, a duel.	**duela**, barrel-stave.

grano, grain.	**grana**, cochineal.
hilo, thread.	**hila**, lint.
huelgo, breath, wind.	**huelga**, strike (*of laboring men*).
músico, musician.	**música**, music.
naranjo, orange-tree.	**naranja**, orange (*fruit*).
puerto, port, harbor.	**puerta**, door, gate.
seno, bosom.	**sena**, senna.
tino, skill, tact.	**tina**, vat, bathtub.
velo, veil.	**vela**, candle.

42. The following words will exercise the learner in pronunciation, as well as serve for examples of the present system of accentuation. To aid him in distinguishing the syllable to be accented, the accented vowel is in bold-face type when not indicated by the written accent:—

Querétaro, vástago, búscame, monosílabo, crepúsculo; Panamá, consagré, partí, partió, frenesí, baladí, quinqué, biricú; máscara, sábado; Bolívar, áspid, cónsul, memorándum, Madrid, arroz, zarzal, mujer; aman, amarán, partirán, sartén, almidón, atún, ningún, alguien, virgen, orden, origen, resumen, colon, Colón, batan, batán, amen, amén; bien, también, cien, recién; letras, vidas, además, compás, portugués, Dios, semidiós, pues, después, obús, énfasis, montes, montés, delfines, delfinés, tomas, Tomás, fines, finés; averiguáis, averiguaréis.

Pirineos, Mediterráneo, bajaes, bacalao, empleo, corroen, canoa, deseos, aérea, erróneo, hectárea, baúl, desvarío, tenían, lidian, lee, lea, ley, leí, insinúan, decíais, delirio, sitio, acaricia, atestigua, fatuos, amortiguan, averigüé, veréis, acaricié, gradue, gradúe, caen, Caén, hay, ahí, Túy, muy, Luis, cáustico.

43. DIVISION OF SYLLABLES.

This is only required in dividing a word at the end of a line, and the usage differs essentially from the English.

1. The fundamental principle is to make syllables end in a vowel as far as possible; therefore a single consonant occurring between vowels is joined to the vowel or vowels following:—

ca-ra-co-les, flu-xión, re-ba-ño, fle-xi-bi-li-dad.

2. The characters **ch**, **ll**, **rr** and **ñ**, being considered as simple consonants, follow the above rule:—

mu-cha-cho, ba-ta-lla, bu-lló, ba-rre-ño, ci-ga-rro.

REMARK.—Double **c** and **n** are divided as in English:—

ac-ce-so, ac-ción; en-no-ble-cer, in-ne-ga-ble.

3. Prepositional prefixes form separate syllables, as in

ab-ne-gar, ex-pre-sar, des-a-gra-da-ble, con-ce-bir.

Except when the prefix comes before s followed by a consonant, in which case the s is joined to the prefix:—

abs-te-ner,	cons-tan-te,	ins-pi-rar,	pers-pi-ca-cia.
ab-sol-ver,	con-sul-tar,	in-sis-tir,	per-se-guir.

4. Vowels forming a diphthong or triphthong must not be separated:—

jui-cio, a-güe-ro, guar-dia, des-pre-ciéis.

Concurrent vowels which cannot form diphthongs or triphthongs, and diphthongs or triphthongs dissolved by the accent-mark, form separate syllables:—

le-er, re-al, ata-úd, tra-ído, da-rí-ais.

5. The liquid consonants **l** and **r**, when preceded by any consonant other than **s**, must not be separated from that consonant, except in uniting parts of compound words. Thus:—

ha-blar,	po-dría,	cé-le-bre,	si-glo.
sub-lu-nar,	sub-ra-yar,	ab-ro-gar,	es-la-bón.

6. Two separable consonants standing between vowels are divided; as:—

ac-ta, cuer-da, yer-ba, chas-co, pron-to.

7. When a syllable consists of a single vowel, it should not stand alone at the end or beginning of a line, as would be the case in **o-cupar, a-rreglar, ganzú-a.**

CAPITALS AND PUNCTUATION.

44. The use of capitals is the same as in English, with the exception that no adjective, whatever be its derivation, begins with a capital, except in titles or at the beginning of a sentence:—

El continente sud-americano.	The South American continent.
La bandera chilena.	The Chilian flag.
Las hermosuras sevillanas.	The Seville belles.
Las tablas alfonsíes.	The Alphonsine tables (*astronomical*).

45. But when adjectives of this class are used as nouns, they are capitalized:—

Los Sud-Americanos.	The South Americans.
Un Chileno.	A Chilian.
Las Gaditanas.	The women of Cadiz.
Las hermosas Sevillanas.	The beautiful Seville women.

46. The pronoun **yo**, *I*, is written with a small initial except at the beginning of a sentence or quotation:—

Dijo el duque, "Yo, y yo sólo, soy el dueño aquí."	Said the duke, "I, and I alone, am master here."

47. The punctuation is the same in both languages, except that in the case of an interrogation or exclamation, an inverted point (¿ ¡) is placed at the beginning of the sentence or clause in addition to the usual sign at the end, as will be seen throughout this work. In this way the reader is apprised in advance as to the nature of a sentence, and can modulate his voice accordingly.

There is a growing tendency to dispense with the inverted mark before words which, by bearing the diacritic accent, show that they are used interrogatively or exclamatorily:—

Cuándo será? Quién lo ha dicho?	When will it be? Who said it?
Qué lástima! Qué desdichado soy!	What a pity! How unlucky I am!

PART II.

PRELIMINARY LESSONS.

LESSON I.

FIRST PRINCIPLES: ARTICLE, NOUN AND VERB.

48. The articles in Spanish, as in all the languages of the European Continent which have any, vary in form to indicate gender and number. The following is the singular:—

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
DEFINITE ARTICLE:	**el**, the;	**la**, the.
INDEFINITE ARTICLE:	**un**, an *or* a;	**una**, an *or* a.

49. Masculine nouns require a masculine, feminine nouns a feminine, article:—

El hombre, the man.	**La niña**, the girl.
Un hombre, a man.	**Una niña**, a girl.

EXCEPTION.—Feminine nouns beginning with accented **a** or **ha** take the masculine article **el** in the singular, instead of the feminine **la**, when it immediately precedes. This is merely to avoid the concurrence of two distinctly pronounced **a**'s, and does not by any means change the gender of the noun:—

El agua, the water.	**El arpa**, the harp.
El hacha, the axe.	**El aya**, the governess.
but	
La ambición, the ambition.	**La alhaja**, the jewel.

REMARK.—This change is not made before adjectives of like form:—**la alta casa**, *the high house.*

50. At present, in popular style, **un** is often used for **una** under the same circumstances; but this has not been sanctioned by the Spanish Academy:—

Un hacha, an axe. **Un arpa**, a harp.

51. There are in Spanish three genders: the masculine, the feminine and the neuter. The latter applies only to pronouns, adjectives and participles. (See § 224.) Every noun, whether denoting an animate or an inanimate object, or an abstract idea, is either masculine or feminine.

Vocabulary.

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
El padre, the father.	**La madre**, the mother.
El azúcar, the sugar.	**La rosa**, the rose.
El té, the tea.	**La flor**, the flower.
El café, the coffee.	**La cruz**, the cross.
El burro, the donkey.	**La casa**, the house.
El grano, the grain.	**La chimenea**, the chimney.
El balcón, the balcony.	**La tinta**, the ink.
El revólver, the revolver.	**La pistola**, the pistol.
yo,	I.
él,	he.
ella,	she.

52. Verbs are indispensable for saying anything. The two most suitable for the learner to begin with are **tener**, *to have*, and **querer**, *to want*.

POSITIVE FORM.

Yo tengo, *I have.*	Ella tiene, *she has.*
Yo quiero, *I want.*	Ella quiere, *she wants.*
Él tiene, *he has.*	El burro tiene, *the donkey has.*
Él quiere, *he wants.*	El burro quiere, *the donkey wants.*

INTERROGATIVE FORM.

¿Tengo yo? *have I?*	¿Tiene ella? *has she?*
¿Quiero yo? *do I want?*	¿Quiere ella? *does she want?*
¿Tiene él? *has he?*	¿Tiene el burro? *has the donkey?*
¿Quiere él? *does he want?*	¿Quiere el burro? *does the donkey want?*

53. A question is regularly formed in Spanish as above by placing the verb before its subject, which in English is done only in the case of the verbs *be*, *have*, and the auxiliaries.

Although the usage of modern English is to retain the affirmative order with all other verbs, and prefix *do*—"*do* you want?" "*do* you eat?" and not "want you?" "eat you?"—this latter order was more common in English of a few centuries ago; *e.g.*:—

"Ride you this afternoon? . . . Goes Fleance with you?"
MACBETH, *Act iii, Sc. 1.*

"Thinkest thou that David doth honour thy father?"—2 *Sam.*, x. 3.

54. The Spaniards never use any auxiliary corresponding to the English *do*, in any of its parts.

55. As the terminations of Spanish verbs vary for each person, the subject pronouns are usually dispensed with, except when required to give emphasis or prevent vagueness. In interrogative sentences it is generally better to retain the pronouns:—

¿Tiene el hombre un revólver?	Has the man a revolver?
Sí, tiene.	Yes, *he* has.
¿Quién tiene un burro?	Who has a donkey?
Yo tengo un burro.	I have a donkey.
¿Qué quiere ella?	What does she want?
Quiere la rosa.	*She* wants the rose.

y,	and.	**mi,**	my.
sí,	yes.	**su,**	his.
no,	no.	**su,**	her.

¿Qué?	What? which?
¿Qué quiere su padre?	What does his father want?
¿Qué rosa tiene la niña?	Which rose has the girl?
¿Quién? ¿quién tiene?	Who? who has?
¿Quién tiene mi pistola?	Who has my pistol?

EXERCISE I.

What has the man? He has tea and coffee. What does he want? He wants sugar. Which sugar does he want? He wants my sugar. Has the donkey the grain? He has the grain and wants water. Which rose does the girl want? She wants my rose. Does she want the harp? No, her mother wants the harp; she wants the jewel. What jewel? The cross. Has her house a chimney? Yes, it has. Who has a flower? The governess has a flower. Has the man a pistol? Yes, and he wants a revolver. Has the girl a harp? Yes, she has. Who has the donkey? My father has the donkey. What does my father want? He wants tea and sugar. Does the donkey want tea and sugar? No, the donkey wants grain and water. The man has ambition. Who has a house? My mother has a house, and the house has a balcony. The man has ink, the donkey has grain, and I have tea, coffee and sugar.

LESSON II.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUN AS SUBJECT.

56. Spanish, in common with most languages, originally had only two personal pronouns of the second person: **tú**, *thou*, for the singular, and **vos**, *ye*, for the plural. But it is equally true that in those languages these two pronouns have either become obsolete or their use is greatly restricted, while other expressions have taken their places in polite intercourse. At present the following are in use in Spanish:—

Pronouns of the Second Person.	Sing.	**Tú,**	Thou, you.
		Vos,	You.
		Usted,	You.
	Plur.	**Vosotros,** (*masc.*) / **Vosotras,** (*fem.*)	Ye, you.
		Ustedes,	You.

57. Tú, *thou*, (generally to be translated *you*,) is used only: in sacred or poetical style; when addressing near relations, very intimate friends, small children, and animals; and by a Spaniard in speaking to servants. The foreigner, however, should not treat servants so familiarly.

58. Vos, *you*, (now used only as a singular, although still joined to the second person plural of verbs,) is employed: in representation of antique style; by children to elderly relatives; in anger or contempt, to inferiors; in translations from English and French, to represent the second personal address of those languages; and interchangeably with **tú** in addressing the Deity.

59. Vosotros, -as, (formed by adding **otros, -as**, to **vos**,) is the plural of **tú** and **vos**, and is used in addressing two or more persons to whom **tú** or **vos** would apply. It is, moreover, sometimes used by public speakers and in the pulpit.

60. Usted (*plur.* **ustedes**) represents the conventional English *you* under all circumstances. It is the universal address of society, and the only one the foreigner is ever likely to employ or hear addressed to him, unless he marries a native or does something similar. It is a contraction of the obsolete **vuestra merced,**

your grace, (*plur.* **vuestras mercedes**,) and therefore requires the verb in the third person, as would be the case in English if we were to use the same way of addressing people.

Compare for example the usage in speaking to a judge or nobleman: *your Honor has said . . .* ; *does your Lordship believe . . .* ?

It is generally abbreviated to **V.** or **Vd.** for the singular, and **VV.**, **Vs.** or **Vds.** for the plural. These signs are always to be read **usted**, **ustedes**, just as *Mr.* in English is read *mister*, and *M.* in French, *monsieur*.

61. The remaining personal pronouns are:—

Nos,	**We.**
Nosotros, (*masc.*) / **Nosotras**, (*fem.*)	**We.**
Ellos, (*masc.*) / **Ellas**, (*fem.*)	**They.**

62. Nos is no longer used in the nominative case except by sovereigns, tribunals, officers of Church and State, etc., when speaking or writing in their official capacity, and by authors and editors, in the same manner as the English royal and editorial *we*.

63. Nosotros, -as, (formed by adding **otros, -as,** to **nos,**) is to be used for *we* in its proper sense, the masculine form referring to males, the feminine to females; the masculine **nosotros** is used in speaking as the mouthpiece of a mixed company.

Nevertheless, a lady commonly says **nosotras** of a mixed company; which, although not theoretically correct, probably arises from the habit of saying **nosotras** in girlhood, speaking of herself and playmates—*we girls*.

64. Ellos applies to men and to mixed companies; **ellas**, to females only.

65. We are now prepared to conjugate the entire present indicative of the two verbs **tener** and **querer**:—

SINGULAR.

Yo tengo,	**I have.**	**Yo quiero,**	**I want.**
Tú tienes,	**thou hast.**	**Tú quieres,**	**thou wantest.**
Él / Ella / Vd. tiene,	**he / she** has. / **you have.**	**Él / Ella / Vd.** quiere,	**he / she** wants. / **you want.**

PLURAL.

Nosotros / Nosotras	tenemos,	we (*m.*) / we (*f.*)	have.	Nosotros / Nosotras	queremos,	we (*m.*) / we (*f.*)	want.
Vosotros / Vosotras	tenéis,	ye (*m.*) / ye (*f.*)	have.	Vosotros / Vosotras	queréis,	ye (*m.*) / ye (*f.*)	want.
Ellos / Ellas / Vds.	tienen,	they (*m.*) / they (*f.*) / you (*m. and f.*)	have.	Ellos / Ellas / Vds.	quieren,	they (*m.*) / they (*f.*) / you (*m. and f.*)	want.

66. As explained above, pronouns and verbs of the second person, whether singular or plural, are of no practical use to the learner of Spanish. They will therefore generally be omitted from the examples, but must of necessity be included in the tables and presentation of forms in the text of the book. The amount of attention to be paid to them is left to the discretion of the learner or his teacher.

Vocabulary.

El comerciante, the merchant.	**La mujer**, the woman ; wife.
El amigo, the friend.	**La criada**, the servant-girl.
El hijo, the son.	**La vaca**, the cow.
El muchacho, the boy.	**La leche**, the milk.
El jardín, the garden.	**La botella**, the bottle.
El carro, the cart.	**La taza**, the cup.
El coche, the coach, carriage.	**La cuchara**, the spoon.
El caballo, the horse.	**La mula**, the mule.
El vino, the wine.	**La sidra**, the cider.
El cigarro, the cigar.	**La petaca**, the cigar-case.
El mapa, the map.	**La cerveza**, the beer.

Composition.

Vds. tienen agua y quieren sidra.	You (*pl.*) have water and want cider.
Sí, y V. quiere cerveza.	Yes, and you want beer.
¿Qué tienen ellas ?	What have they (*f.*)?
Tienen una casa y un jardín.	They have a house and [a] garden.
Su mujer quiere un caballo y un coche.	His wife wants a horse and carriage.

EXERCISE II.

Have you a donkey? No, I have a horse. What have we? We have a house and a garden. Who has a cigar? My friend has a cigar. Have you (*pl.*) wine? No, we have cider. What have they (*f.*)? They (*f.*) have a harp. Who has the map? The boy has the map. What does my father

want? He wants his cigar-case. Have you (*pl.*) tea and coffee? Yes, we have tea and coffee, and we want milk and sugar. Has the servant-girl the tea or (ó) the coffee? She has the beer. Who has a cow? My wife has a cow. Do you want sugar? No, I have sugar, I want a spoon. Does the mule want a cigar? No, I want a cigar; the mule wants grain. Does the governess want wine or (ó) cider? She wants beer. Who has a cart and who a carriage? They (*m.*) have a cart, and we (*f.*) have a carriage. Has the boy the cup? No, he has the bottle. What bottle has he? My bottle. We (*m.*) want a bottle and they (*f.*) want a cup; we (*m.*) want wine and they (*f.*) want milk.

LESSON III.

THE NEGATIVE **NO**; PREPOSITIONS **Á** AND **DE**; CONJUNCTIONS **Y, MAS, PERO** AND **SINO**.

Hoy, to-day.	**Sí señor**, yes, Sir.
Á, at, to.	**No señor**, no, Sir.
De, of, from.	**También**, also, too.
Ó, or.	**Ahora**, now.
No, not, no.	**Al presente**, at present.

67. To render a sentence negative, **no** is placed immediately before the verb; in the absence of a verb it usually follows the word which it negatives:—

No tengo el azúcar.	I have not the sugar.
No tengo cigarros.	I have no / I haven't any } cigars.
El burro no quiere agua.	The donkey does not want water.
¿No tiene V. un revólver?	Have you not / Haven't you } a revolver?
Ahora no. Al presente no.	Not now. Not at present.
Yo no. Él no.	Not I. Not he.

68. It is not usual to employ a word corresponding to the English *any* in such connections as the following:—

¿Tiene V. azúcar?	Have you *any* sugar?
¿Tiene él cigarros?	Has he *any* cigars?
No tenemos tinta.	We haven't *any* ink.

69. When the masculine singular form of the definite article, **el**, comes immediately after the prepositions **á** or **de**, the **e** is elided, and **á el, de el**, become respectively **al, del**. These are now the only contractions of the kind in the language:—

Al coche; **del** jardín.	To the carriage; from the garden.

70. There is no separate form for the possessive in Spanish. The preposition **de**, preceding the name of the possessor, is used instead. The name of the thing possessed is put before that of the possessor:—

El sombrero del muchacho.	The boy's hat.
La casa de mi padre.	My father's house.
El sombrero del hijo de mi amigo.	My friend's son's hat.

71. There are no adjectives in Spanish to indicate the material of which an object consists. The name of the material must follow the name of the object, the two words being connected by the preposition **de**, *of*:—

La cortina de lana.	The woolen curtain.
La casa de ladrillo.	The brick house.
La corona de oro de la reina.	The queen's golden crown.

72. For the sake of avoiding the concurrence of two like sounds, **y**, *and*, is changed to **é** when the following word begins with **i** or **hi**, and similarly **ó**, *or*, becomes **ú** before initial **o** or **ho**:—

Español é inglés.	Spanish and English.
Padre é hijo.	Father and son.
Plata ú oro.	Silver or gold.
Vida ú honor.	Life or honor.

73. **Y**, however, does not change before words beginning with **hie** or with **y**; as:—

Madera y hierro.	Wood and iron.
Él y yo.	He and I.

74. There are three words in Spanish to represent the conjuction *but*, namely **mas**, **pero** and **sino**. The two former are interchangeable, except that **mas** belongs rather to the literary style. **Sino** is of limited application, being only used to introduce a positive in direct contrast to a preceding negative, and is equivalent to the English *but on the contrary*. The same verb that preceded is understood but *not repeated* after it:—

Tengo una pistola, pero no tengo un revólver.	I have a pistol, but I have not a revolver.
No tengo un revólver, sino una pistola.	I have not a revolver, but a pistol.
El burro no quiere vino, sino agua.	The donkey does not want wine, but water.
Tengo café mas no tengo leche.	I have coffee, but have no milk.

75. In the following expressions, **tener**, *to have*, is used with nouns where in English *to be* is employed with adjectives. The Spanish usage agrees with that of all the languages of Latin origin:—

Tener hambre, to be hungry.	**Tener miedo**, to be afraid.
Tener sed, to be thirsty.	**Tener razón**, to be right.
Tener calor, to be hot, warm.	**Tener calma**, to be calm.
Tener frío, to be cold.	**Tener sueño**, to be sleepy.

Vocabulary.

El oro, the gold.	**La plata**, the silver.
El cobre, the copper.	**La moneda**, the coin.
El hierro, the iron.	**La madera**, the wood.
El ladrillo, the brick.	**La lana**, the wool.
El algodón, the cotton.	**La seda**, the silk.
El traje, the dress, costume.	**La muselina**, the muslin.
El velo, the veil.	**La bata**, the dressing-gown, wrapper.
El alfiler, the pin.	**La sortija**, the ring.
El sobre, the envelope.	**La carta**, the letter.
El papel, the paper.	**La tinta**, the ink.
El lápiz, the pencil.	**La pluma**, the pen.
El perro, the dog.	**La zorra**, the fox.

Composition.

¿No tenemos vino?	Have we no wine?
No tenemos vino.	We have no wine.
Nosotros tenemos moneda de oro y de plata.	We have gold and silver coin.
Ellos no tienen moneda de oro, sino de plata.	They have not gold but silver coin.
Tengo una flor del jardín de mi amigo.	I have a flower from my friend's garden.
¿Tienen ellas una casa de madera ó de ladrillo?	Have they a frame or a brick house?
El muchacho tiene hambre y frío.	The boy is hungry and cold.
La zorra tiene miedo del perro.	The fox is afraid of the dog.

Exercise III.

What house has the boy's father? He now has a brick house. We also have a brick house. Have you any gold coin? No, Sir, I have not gold but copper coin. What dress has the girl? She has a muslin dress, but her mother has a silk dress. Has the boy any paper? He has paper, but he has no ink at present. Have you any wine to-day? Not at present. Does the man want wine or beer? He wants beer and wine too. What pen do you want? A gold pen. What does the girl's governess want?

She wants a gold ring and a silk veil. The mule is not hungry, but thirsty. The girl wants a rose from my garden. Do you want a donkey? Not to-day. I am not afraid of the dog. Are you (*pl.*) warm or cold? We are warm. My house has a balcony of wood and iron. The boy has a pen, but he wants a pencil. The boy does not want a pen, but a pencil. The girl has a letter, and wants an envelope. Does she want a copper envelope? No, she wants a paper envelope. The girl is cold, and wants her woolen wrapper. My father wants his dressing-gown, a bottle of wine and a cigar.

LESSON IV.

THE PLURAL OF NOUNS. POSSESSIVE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON.

76. In the plural, the definite article has the following forms, agreeing with the nouns which they accompany:—

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
Los, the.	**Las**, the.
Los hombres, the men.	**Las niñas**, the girls.

77. The plurals of all Spanish nouns, pronouns, adjectives and participles end in **s**. We shall here consider the nouns under the following subdivisions:—

1. Nouns ending in an unaccented vowel or diphthong, merely add **s**:—

El caballo, the horse.	**Los caballos**, the horses.
La casa, the house.	**Las casas**, the houses.
El indio, the Indian.	**Los indios**, the Indians.
La tribu, the tribe.	**Las tribus**, the tribes.

2. Nouns of more than one syllable, ending in accented **e**, **o**, **u**,—and the monosyllable **pie**, *foot*,—likewise add **s**:—

El canapé, the couch.	**Los canapés**, the couches.
El landó, the landau.	**Los landós**, the landaus.
El tisú, the tissue.	**Los tisús**, the tissues.
El pie, the foot.	**Los pies**, the feet.

3. Those ending in a consonant insert **e** as a connecting vowel before adding **s**:—

El balcón, the balcony.	**Los balcones**, the balconies.
La flor, the flower.	**Las flores**, the flowers.

REMARK.—Final **c** is changed to **qu**, to preserve the hard sound before **e**; and final **z** is changed to **c** (§ 17):—

El frac, the dress-coat (swallow-tail).	**Los fraques**, the dress-coats.
La cruz, the cross.	**Las cruces**, the crosses.

4. Those ending in accented **a**, **i**, or an accented diphthong ending in **y**, add **es**:—

El bajá, the pasha.	**Los bajaes**, the pashas.
El rubí, the ruby.	**Los rubíes**, the rubies.
El rey, the king.	**Los reyes**, the kings.

REMARK.—The following words of foreign origin are exceptions: **papá, papás**; **mamá, mamás**; **sofá, sofás**; and a few others of rare occurrence.

5. The names of the letters of the alphabet (which are all feminine) add **es**:—

Las aes, bees, ees, íes, oes, úes.	The *a*'s, *b*'s, *e*'s, *i*'s, *o*'s, *u*'s.

6. Unaccented endings in **is** and **es** in words of more than one syllable; pure Latin terms; and family names ending in **z** not accented on the last syllable, admit of no change. The article suffices to distinguish the plural from the singular:—

La crisis, the crisis.	**Las crisis**, the crises.
El paréntesis, the parenthesis.	**Los paréntesis**, the parentheses.
El lunes, Monday.	**Los lunes**, Mondays.
El déficit, the deficit.	**Los déficit**, the deficits.
El ultimátum, the ultimatum.	**Los ultimátum**, the ultimata.
Martínez (*a family name*).	**Los Martínez**, the Martinez.

Among scientific writers there is a growing tendency to make **-ses** the plural of Greek words ending in **-sis**—as is done in English.

78. The addition of **s** or **es** in forming the plural does not change the natural accent of the words. But the addition of **es** does affect the *written* accent of words ending in **n**, **s** or an accented vowel; for as it adds another syllable, it throws the accented syllable one place farther from the end:—

El cañón, the cannon.	**Los cañones**, the cannons.
El joven, the young man.	**Los jóvenes**, the young men.
La virgen, the virgin, maid.	**Las vírgenes**, the virgins.
El semidiós, the demigod.	**Los semidioses**, the demigods.
El bajá, the pasha.	**Los bajaes**, the pashas.

REMARK.—There are two exceptions: **el carácter**, *character*, which in the plural is **caracteres**; and **el régimen**, *government, rule*, which becomes **regímenes**.

79. There is but one possessive pronoun for both the singular and plural of the third person, and consequently, as has been already shown (§ 60), it must also do duty for the second person:—

Su, *plur.* **sus.**	His.
	Her.
	Its.
	Their.
	Your.

80. As **su** corresponds to so many different nominatives, it is often equivocal; and whenever there is danger of ambiguity the possessor requires to be more clearly specified. This is done by replacing **su** by the definite article before the noun, and placing the appropriate personal pronoun, preceded by **de**, after the noun:—

SINGULAR.	La casa de él.	His..... house.
	La casa de ella.	Her..... house.
	La casa de ellos.	Their (*masc.*) house.
	La casa de ellas.	Their (*fem.*) house.
	La casa de usted.	Your (*sing.*) house.
	La casa de ustedes.	Your (*plur.*) house.
PLURAL.	Las casas de él.	His..... houses.
	Las casas de ella.	Her..... houses.
	Las casas de ellos.	Their (*masc.*) houses.
	Las casas de ellas.	Their (*fem.*) houses.
	Las casas de usted.	Your (*sing.*) houses.
	Las casas de ustedes.	Your (*plur.*) houses.

REMARK.—As in Spanish all existing things are either masculine or feminine, *its*, in the above connection, must be **de él** or **de ella**.

81. The learner can easily judge when the ambiguity would be such as to require **de él, de ella**, etc., which is really very seldom. On the other hand, **de V.**, or **de VV.**, is always employed, both for clearness and courtesy, unless it has previously appeared in the sentence,—in which case it is generally not repeated.

REMARK.—A redundant construction, **su casa de él, su casa de V.**, is also met with. **Su casa de él, de ella**, etc., however, is considered an inelegant repetition; while **su casa de V., de VV.**, is permissible, **usted** being considered as added in such cases by way of compliment. Yet **la casa de V.** is preferable.

82. In questions, when the subject is not a pronoun, the object is more elegantly placed before it, provided the clause containing it is not longer than that containing the subject:—

¿Tiene él vino?	Has he any wine?
¿Tiene vino | el_hombre?	Has the man any wine?
¿Tiene el_hombre | un_cigarro?	Has the man a cigar?
¿Tiene un_cigarro | su_padre_de_V.?	Has your father a cigar?
¿Tiene su_padre_de_V. | una_pipa_y_tabaco?	Has your father a pipe and tobacco?
¿Tiene cigarros_y_tabaco | el_hijo_de_su_amigo_de_V.?	Has your friend's son cigars and tobacco?
¿Tiene el_hijo_de_su_amigo_de_V. | la_corona_de_oro_y_las_alhajas_de_la_princesa?	Has your friend's son the gold crown and jewels of the princess?

Vocabulary.

El reino, the kingdom.	**La reina**, the queen.
El príncipe, the prince.	**La princesa**, the princess.
El dinero, the money.	**La corona**, the crown.
El pan, the bread.	**La sopa**, the soup.
El tabaco, the tobacco.	**La pipa**, the pipe.
El sombrero, the hat.	**La bota**, the boot.
El retrato, the portrait.	**La perla**, the pearl.
El sofá, the sofa.	**La mesa**, the table.
El libro, the book.	**La cortina**, the curtain.
El vestíbulo, the vestibule.	**La alcoba**, the alcove.
El piano, the piano.	**La guitarra**, the guitar.
El violín, the violin	**La violeta**, the violet.

Composition.

¿Qué libros quieren los hijos de V.?	What books do your sons want?
Quieren sus libros de Vds.	They want your (*pl.*) books.
Y yo quiero los libros de ellos.	And I want their books.
¿No tiene el amigo de V. una botella de tinta?	Has not your friend a bottle of ink?
Sí, y una botella de cerveza también.	Yes, and a bottle of beer too.
¿Quieren libros los hijos de V.?	Do your sons want books?
¿Tiene un vestíbulo la casa de su padre de V.?	Has your father's house a vestibule?
Mi casa no tiene cortinas de seda sino de lana.	My house has not silk but woolen curtains.

Exercise IV.

The girls have roses and violets, but they want jewels—gold rings, pearls and rubies. The princess has a gold crown. Do you want the princess? No, Sir, not I. My friend's father's house has alcoves and brick chimneys; it also has iron balconies. Has your mother a cart and mules? No, she has a carriage and horses. Does the boy's mother want a garden? Yes, she wants a flower-garden (a garden of flowers). What have the boys? They have a donkey now, but they want horses, cigars and revolvers. Who wants paper and pens? The girls want paper and pens, and also envelopes and ink. The prince wants the crown of his father, the king. The pasha wants his boots, a pipe and tobacco, and a bottle of beer. What does the girl want now, soup? No, she wants some bread and a cup of milk. Do you (*pl.*) want sofas or couches? We want tables. My mother has a portrait of the queen. What do the Indians want? At present they want money and tobacco. What flowers has the girl? She has a crown of roses. The young men have dress-coats and silk hats. Has the prince a kingdom? Yes, he now has his father's kingdom.

LESSON V.

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE MODEL VERBS.

83. All Spanish verbs in the infinitive end in **ar**, **er** or **ir**. They are divided into three classes or conjugations according to these terminations:—

1st Conjugation:	Compr-**ar**,	to buy.
2nd "	Vend-**er**,	to sell.
3rd "	Viv-**ir**,	to live.

a. The vowels **a**, **e** and **i** are characteristic of the respective conjugations.

b. The first conjugation includes nine-tenths of all the verbs in the language.

84. By cutting off the terminations **ar**, **er**, **ir**, from the infinitive, we obtain the stem of the verb, to which the terminations of the various moods and tenses (except those of the future and conditional future) are to be added.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

Sing.	1st person.	Yo	compr-**o**,	vend-**o**,	viv-**o**.
	2nd person.	Tú	compr-**as**,	vend-**es**,	viv-**es**.
	3rd person.	Él, Ella, Vd.	compr-**a**,	vend-**e**,	viv-**e**.
Plur.	1st person.	Nosotros	compr-**amos**,	vend-**emos**,	viv-**imos**.
	2nd person.	Vosotros	compr-**áis**,	vend-**éis**,	viv-**ís**.
	3rd person.	Ellos, Ellas, Vds.	compr-**an**,	vend-**en**,	viv-**en**.

Note.—These verbs will be called the three *model verbs*. Like them are conjugated all the verbs of the language, except about 300 which deviate in some particulars and are hence called irregular.

85. With the exception of four forms,—the infinitive, the first person and second person plural of the indicative present, and the second person plural of the imperative (the first three being shown above),—the terminations of the second and third conjugations are identical throughout; and hereafter but one column of forms will be given for both.

86. The present indicative, as given above, corresponds to three English forms; thus:—

Hablo, { I speak. / I do speak. / I am speaking.

87. Conjugate the present indicative of the following verbs according to the models given above:—

Llamar, to call.
Hablar, to speak, talk.
Estudiar, to study.
Necesitar, to need.
Tomar, to take.
Mandar, to send.
Buscar, to seek, look for.
Desear, to desire, wish.
Tocar, to touch; (speaking of a musical instrument,) to play.
Correr, to run.
Temer, to fear, be afraid of.
Beber, to drink.
Comer, to eat.
Aprender, to learn.
Leer, to read.
Abrir, to open.
Pulir, to polish.
Residir, to reside, live.
Recibir, to receive.

88. It is a peculiarity of Spanish that the direct object of an active verb is preceded by the preposition **á** when denoting a

person, an intelligent animal, or anything personified. **Á** is then merely a grammatical expedient and is not to be translated:—

Mando **á** la criada.	I send the servant-girl.
Mando una carta.	I send a letter.
Llama **al** muchacho y **al** perro.	He calls the boy and the dog.
El muchacho teme **á** su padre.	The boy fears his father.
La niña teme el frío.	The girl fears the cold.
Busco **á** mi caballo.	I am looking for my horse.
Busco mi sombrero.	I am looking for my hat.

REMARK.—**Tener** and **querer** are exceptions, since they only take **á** after them when they have the special meanings of *to hold* and *to love* respectively. Hence the following contrasts:—

Tengo un caballo, I have a horse.	**Tengo á un caballo**, I am holding a horse.
Quiero una criada, I want a servant-girl.	**Quiero á una criada**, I love a servant-girl.

NOTE.—There are also cases where **á** is omitted to avoid either cacophony or ambiguity. These are exhibited in Chapter XXV of Part III.

89. The preposition **á** serves also to indicate the indirect object of verbs; it has then a true prepositional value and is to be translated accordingly:—

El padre habla á su hijo.	The father speaks to his son.
Mandan las cartas al rey.	They send the letters to the king.

90. When the verb has two or more joint subjects of either number, it is regularly put in the plural; if the subjects are of different persons, the verb is put in that person which is said to take precedence. The second person takes precedence of the third, while the first person outranks both. Thus:—

V. y yo estudiamos.	You and I study.
Mi padre y yo vivimos en una casa de ladrillo.	My father and I live in a brick house.
Tú y el aya compráis flores.	Thou and the governess buy flowers.
La niña y su madre leen un libro.	The girl and her mother are reading a book.
V. y su hijo venden sus caballos.	You and your son sell your horses.

REMARK.—Courtesy requires the pronoun of the person addressed to be always placed first, as is the case in English.

Vocabulary.

¿Cuándo? when?	Siempre, always.
Cuando, when.	Tarde, late.
¿Por qué? why?	Temprano, early.
Porque, because.	Aprisa, fast, quickly.
Sin, without.	Despacio, slowly.
Con, with.	Además, moreover, besides.
En, in, on.	Mañana, to-morrow.

Composition.

¿Qué libros compran las mujeres?	What books do the women buy?
¿Qué come el burro?	What does the donkey eat?
¿Qué estudian los hijos de V.?	What are your sons studying?
¿Toca la niña el piano?	Does the girl play the piano?
Sí, y además toca el violín y la guitarra.	Yes, and besides she plays the fiddle and the guitar.
Recibimos, abrimos y leemos las cartas.	We receive, open and read the letters.
¿Bebe V. cuando tiene sed?—Sí, siempre.	Do you drink when you are thirsty? —Yes, always.
El muchacho corre siempre á su madre cuando tiene miedo.	The boy always runs to his mother when he is afraid.

Exercise V.

Does your son learn fast? No, he always learns slowly. What is the boy eating? He is eating bread and soup, and is drinking a cup of milk. Why does he eat and drink? Because he is hungry and thirsty. Does the soldier drink wine or water? He drinks wine, beer or cider, but not water. What does your mother buy? She buys a woolen dress. The servant-girl polishes the silver spoons with flannel. The man opens the book and reads. Do the men speak fast or slowly? They speak fast. The girl receives a letter from her father. What are you looking for? I am looking for my boots. They (*f.*) are looking for their servants. Where do you live now? I live in a brick house with iron balconies. When do you want my horse? To-morrow. What do you (*pl.*) sell? We sell curtains, sofas, couches and tables. Do you love the princess? Not I. Who is holding my horse? I, Sir. Where does your friend live now? He lives with his father. The young men study late. The mother calls her sons early. They take their books and study. The girl reads with her governess. The young men play the violin. Do you write letters without ink? Yes, because I always write with [a] pencil. The boys do not learn because they do not study.

LESSON VI.

VENIR, IR, DAR, HACER, DECIR, VER.

91. The learner will observe upon comparison that **tener** and **querer** are not inflected like the model verb of their conjugation. They belong to the class of *irregular verbs*, or verbs which deviate in some way from the conjugation of the models **comprar, vender** and **vivir.**

92. Although comparatively not very numerous, the irregular verbs comprise some of the most useful and common verbs of the language. The following are among the most necessary, and their inflection must be learned separately in each case:—

93. Venir, *to come,* has the same irregularities as **tener** in the indicative present:—

SING.	1. **Vengo**, I come. 2. **Vienes**, thou comest. 3. **Viene**, he comes.	SING.	1. **Tengo**, I have. 2. **Tienes**, thou hast. 3. **Tiene**, he has.
PLUR.	1. **Venimos**, we come. 2. **Venís**, ye come. 3. **Vienen**, they come.	PLUR.	1. **Tenemos**, we have. 2. **Tenéis**, ye have. 3. **Tienen**, they have.

94. Ir, *to go,* forms its present indicative upon a primitive stem **va**; both it and **dar,** *to give,* add a **y** in the first person singular:—

	Ir, to go.		**Dar**, to give.
SING.	1. **Voy**, I go. 2. **Vas**, thou goest. 3. **Va**, he goes.	SING.	1. **Doy**, I give. 2. **Das**, thou givest. 3. **Da**, he gives.
PLUR.	1. **Vamos**, we go. 2. **Vais**, ye go. 3. **Van**, they go.	PLUR.	1. **Damos**, we give. 2. **Dais**, ye give. 3. **Dan**, they give.

95. Hacer, *to make, to do,* and **decir,** *to say, to tell,* change **c** to **g** in the first person singular indicative present; **decir** moreover changes the **e** of the stem to **i** in all but the first and second persons plural:—

	Hacer, to make.		**Decir**, to say.
SING.	1. **Hago**, I make. 2. **Haces**, thou makest. 3. **Hace**, he makes.	SING.	1. **Digo**, I say. 2. **Dices**, thou sayest. 3. **Dice**, he says.
PLUR.	1. **Hacemos**, we make. 2. **Hacéis**, ye make. 3. **Hacen**, they make.	PLUR.	1. **Decimos**, we say. 2. **Decís**, ye say. 3. **Dicen**, they say.

96. Ver, *to see,* was formerly *veer,* and still retains the **e** in the first person indicative present. Its derivative **proveer,** *to foresee, provide,* is regular throughout:—

SING.	1. **Veo,** (*not* vo,) I see.	SING.	1. **Proveo,** I provide.
	2. **Ves,** thou seest.		2. **Provees,** thou providest.
	3. **Ve,** he sees.		3. **Provee,** he provides.
PLUR.	1. **Vemos,** we see.	PLUR.	1. **Proveemos,** we provide.
	2. **Veis,** ye see.		2. **Proveéis,** ye provide.
	3. **Ven,** they see.		3. **Proveen,** they provide.

97. The greater number of verbs which govern an infinitive, do so directly without any connecting preposition:—

Deseo leer.	I wish *to* read.
Él necesita comer.	He needs *to* eat.
Ella quiere tocar el piano.	She wants *to* play the piano.
Los muchachos temen hablar.	The boys are afraid *to* speak.

98. Others require a preposition before the infinitive. This preposition will be given in the vocabularies in parenthesis after each verb, and examples of its use will be found in the *Composition* preceding the exercises. If no preposition be so given, the verb governs an infinitive directly, if its meaning permits it to govern one at all.

99. Ir, venir and **aprender** require **á** when followed by an infinitive:—

Voy á abrir la ventana.	I am going *to* open the window.
Viene á ver á mi padre.	He comes *to* see my father.
Ella quiere aprender á tocar la guitarra.	She wants to learn *to* play the guitar.

100. Both **ir** and **venir** are used in the present tense with a reference to the near future, thus corresponding to the English mode of expression:—

Voy á la ciudad mañana.	*I am going* to the city to-morrow.
Mi padre no viene hoy.	My father *is* not *coming* to-day.

101. Ir, with an infinitive, has the same meaning of intention or purpose which is expressed by *going to* in English:—

¿Qué va V. á hacer?	What are you going to do?
Voy á escribir una carta ahora.	I am going to write a letter now.

102. Querer, used with an infinitive in asking a favor, corresponds to the English *will*, which must not be confounded with the true future:—

¿Quiere V. abrir la ventana?	Will you open the window?
¿Quiere V. tomar una taza de té?	Will you take a cup of tea?

REMARK.—Such an expression as *will you be at home to-morrow?* requires the future tense, which will be presented in due time.

103. Dar requires the preposition **á to** be invariably placed before the person *to whom* anything is given (indirect object), if the same be represented by a noun:—

Doy el dinero al hombre.	I give the man the money.
Voy á dar grano á la mula.	I am going to give the mule grain.
Mi madre da una flor á la niña.	My mother gives a flower to the girl.

104. Decir, *to tell*, requires the preposition **á** to be placed before a noun representing the person to whom anything is told; moreover the conjunction **que,** *that*, must introduce the thing said. These two connective particles are never omitted in Spanish as they often are in English:—

¿Qué va V. á decir á su hijo?	What are you going to tell your son?
El muchacho dice á su padre que no quiere estudiar su lección.	The boy tells his father [that] he doesn't want to study his lesson.

Vocabulary.

El coronel, the colonel.	**La carne**, the meat.
El canasto, the basket.	**La vela**, the candle.
El cuchillo, the knife.	**La manzana**, the apple.
El sótano, the cellar.	**La puerta**, the door.
El vaso, the tumbler, glass.	**La ventana**, the window.
El paño, the cloth.	**La capa**, the cloak.
El botón, the button.	**La corbata**, the cravat, necktie.
El ejercicio, the exercise.	**La lección**, the lesson.
El cometa, the comet.	**La estrella**, the star.
El arrabal, the suburb, ward.	**La ciudad**, the city.

Composition.

¿Qué hace el muchacho?	What is the boy doing?
Hace un botón de madera con su cuchillo.	He is making a wooden button with his knife.
¿Quieren las niñas aprender á tocar el piano?	Do the girls want to learn to play the piano?

Veo á una mujer en la ventana con una vela.	I see a woman in the window with a candle.
Mi padre viene del jardín con su amigo; ellos van ahora á beber un vaso de vino en el balcón.	My father is coming from the garden with his friend; they are going now to drink a glass of wine on the balcony.
Yo temo beber aprisa.	I am afraid to drink fast.

EXERCISE VI.

The servant gives the meat to the dog. I am going to look for my cloak because I am cold. Why do you (*pl.*) always want to open the windows? Because we are always warm. The son comes to take tea with his mother. What does the father say to his son? He says he is going to the city to-morrow. Will your friend take a glass of wine? My friend does not take wine. Who is coming to-day? The colonel and his son are coming. What do you see? I see a bottle of wine. What do you (*pl.*) want to do now? We want to see your flower-garden. What do I need to provide? You need to provide a basket of wine, and glasses. The cows do not give milk now. Who wants to learn to play the guitar? The boy is making a wooden spoon with his knife. I am afraid to open the door because I am cold. Why are you going to call the servant-girl? Because I want a cup of coffee. Do you (*pl.*) see the comet? We see the stars but not the comet. What do you say? I say you do not learn because you will not study.

LESSON VII.

ADJECTIVES.

105. Adjectives in Spanish, like articles, vary in form to indicate gender and number, taking those of the nouns to which they relate. This is called *agreeing* with a noun.

106. They form their plurals in both genders in the same manner as nouns. (See Lesson IV.) The distinction of gender depends upon the following two principles:—

1. The greater number of adjectives end in **o** in the masculine, and **a** in the feminine singular, adding **s** in the plural:—

Fresco, fresca; frescos, frescas.	Fresh, cool.
Claro, clara; claros, claras.	Clear, light.

2. Those which do not end in **o** in the masculine singular, have the same ending for both genders:—

Cortés, corteses.	Courteous, polite.
Dulce, dulces.	Sweet, mild.
Útil, útiles.	Useful.
Belga, belgas.	Belgian.

107. The last principle has the following exceptions:—

a. Adjectives which end in a consonant and signify nationality, add **a** in the feminine:—

Inglés, inglesa.	English.
Español, española.	Spanish.
Andaluz, andaluza.	Andalusian.

b. Those ending in **án** or **ón**, add **a** in the feminine:—

Holgazán, holgazana.	Idle, lazy.
Preguntón, preguntona.	Inquisitive.

c. Those ending in **or** which do not have a *comparative* value, add **a** in the feminine:—

Emprendedor, emprendedora.	Enterprising.
Hablador, habladora.	Talkative.

REMARK.—Such words as **exterior**, **inferior**, **mejor** (*better*), **peor** (*worse*), **anterior**, **superior**, having a comparative value, are the same in both genders.

d. The augmentative and diminutive terminations[1] **ote** and **ete**, become **ota** and **eta** in the feminine.

REMARK.—The last three classes (*b*, *c* and *d*) comprise very few words.

108. Give all the forms of the adjectives in the following

Vocabulary.

Bonito, pretty.	**Rico**, rich.	**Francés**, French.
Pequeño, little.	**Pobre**, poor.	**Alemán**, German.
Feliz, happy.	**Ciego**, blind.	**Persa**, Persian.
Soberbio, proud.	**Negro**, black.	**Griego**, Greek.
Nuevo, new.	**Blanco**, white.	**Ruso**, Russian.
Viejo, old.	**Azul**, blue.	**Europeo**, European.
Oloroso, fragrant.	**Largo**, long.	**Marroquí**, Moroccan.

109. Adjectives of nationality are used to represent the language or a native of the country indicated. In the latter case

[1] Augmentative and diminutive terminations constitute one of the most marked peculiarities of Spanish. They assume many forms and embrace a variety of shades of meaning which cannot be mastered by a beginner. For their treatment, see Part III, Chapter XXIV.

they are considered as nouns and are written with a capital; as has been shown (§ 44), no adjective begins with a capital, except of course in headings, titles, etc.:—

Mi padre habla francés y alemán.	My father speaks French and German.
El Inglés habla español, y el Español inglés.	The Englishman speaks Spanish and the Spaniard English.

110. The adjective in Spanish is generally placed after the noun, especially when of primary importance; thus when denoting a physical quality (color, size, shape, strength, etc.), or nationality, when much longer than the noun, or when qualified by a long adverb, it follows the noun:—

Café negro y té verde.	Black coffee and green tea.
Bebemos vinos franceses.	We drink French wines.
Las mujeres habladoras y los hombres holgazanes.	The talkative women and the lazy men.

111. On the other hand, when the adjective is used as a mere general epithet, is of shortened form, of weak sound, or is employed oratorically, or in a secondary, figurative or poetic sense, it preferably precedes the noun:—

El pobre indio.	The poor Indian.
Un dulce céfiro.	A mild zephyr.
Los soberbios reyes.	The proud kings.

REMARK.—There are many adjectives of an intermediate character which may be used either way, the Spaniard being guided in their location by his own ideas of style and euphony, and the amount of emphasis to be imparted.

112. The tendency of an adjective placed before its noun is to express its quality as belonging to the noun as a matter of course, and not distinguishing one individual from another, which it does when placed after the noun:—

Las olorosas flores.	The fragrant flowers. (*Fragrancy being considered an inherent quality.*)
Las flores olorosas.	The fragrant flowers. (*Those varieties which are fragrant.*)
Los salvajes indios.	The savage Indians. (*Indians in general, considered as uncivilized.*)
Los indios salvajes.	The savage Indians. (*Those Indians who are in a savage state.*)
Mis nuevos vestidos.	My new clothes.
Mis vestidos nuevos.	My *new* clothes.

113. When two adjectives relate to one noun, they are placed according to the above principles; so that both may come before, one before and one after, or both may follow the noun. When both follow, they must be separated by the conjunction **y**, *and*. If there be more than two adjectives, they all preferably follow the noun, the last two being separated by **y**, *and*:—

Compro libros nuevos y útiles.	I buy new and useful books.
Una pequeña taza azul.	A little blue cup.
El pobre caballo ciego.	The poor blind horse.
¡ Pobre y pequeña niña !	Poor little girl.
Un hombre pobre y desgraciado.	A poor and unfortunate man.
Un velo largo y negro.	A long, black veil.
Tiene una casa pequeña y bonita.	He has a pretty little house.

114. In both Spanish and English, the adjective most permanently connected with the noun, stands nearest to it; but as in Spanish both adjectives usually follow, the order is apparently reversed:—

Un soldado viejo y borracho.	A drunken old soldier.
Las niñas bonitas y felices.	The happy, pretty girls.
El Banco Nacional Central.	The Central National Bank.

REMARK.—More definite rules on the position of adjectives, intended for the advanced student, will be found in Part III, Chapter XII. The above directions are deemed sufficient for the present. In case of doubt, the learner will be safe in placing the adjective last.

115. The full inflection of the possessive pronouns is given below. **Mi**, **tu** and **su**, from their terminations, can have but one form for both genders, while **nuestro** and **vuestro** vary like any adjective in **o**:—

SING.	**Mi.**	My.
PLUR.	**Mis.**	
SING.	**Tu.**	Thy.
PLUR.	**Tus.**	
SING.	**Su.**	His, her, your, their, its.
PLUR.	**Sus.**	
SING.	**Nuestro, -a.**	Our.
PLUR.	**Nuestros, -as.**	
SING.	**Vuestro, -a.**	Your.
PLUR.	**Vuestros, -as.**	

Composition.

Agua clara y fresca.	Clear, cool water.
El Persa vende babuchas marroquíes.	The Persian sells Morocco slippers.
Mi casa vieja (*or* mi vieja casa) necesita cortinas nuevas (*or* nuevas cortinas).	My old house needs new curtains.
Mi hijo pequeño tiene flores bonitas (*or* bonitas flores).	My little son has pretty flowers.
¿Qué tiene V. bonito?	What have you pretty?
Tengo bonitos vasos belgas.	I have pretty Belgian tumblers.
Queremos ver los arrabales nuevos de la ciudad.	We want to see the new wards of the city.

EXERCISE VII.

My mother gives money to the little blind boy. The lazy boy learns slowly. I need to buy a new necktie. Do you eat soup with a small spoon? The rich Englishman drinks French wine. The boy is looking for his father's long black pipe. My father is going to buy a new brick house. The happy, pretty girls are studying their lessons on the balcony. We always buy English cloth. The French say that the Russians eat candles. The boy does not want to study the long lesson. The old fox does not fear the dogs. I have useful books. I see a portrait of a pretty girl. The girls are looking for blue violets in the garden. The governess and the servant-girl are afraid to live in the old house. When the young men come to our house they play the violin and the guitar, and I play the piano. The Americans do not love the English. The little boy is thirsty and wants a glass of cool water. The Spaniard has a black cloak and a blue cravat. The poor German prince wants the money of the rich American [lady].

LESSON VIII.

APOCOPATION OF ADJECTIVES; DONDE, WHERE.

116. Four adjectives assume a shortened form when standing immediately before certain nouns:—

Bueno, good.	**Grande**, great, large, big.
Malo, bad.	**Santo**, holy, blessed.

REMARK.—This shortening is called *apocopation*, and will be found to occur in several other words of the language.

117. **Bueno** and **malo** drop the final **o** when immediately preceding any noun in the masculine singular:—

Buen azúcar ; buen café.	Good sugar ; good coffee.
Mal tiempo ; mal vino.	Bad weather ; bad wine.

118. **Grande**, when used to indicate eminence and not size, drops the final **de** when placed immediately before a singular noun of either gender beginning with any consonant but **h**. In popular usage **de** is often dropped before all singular nouns:—

Un gran general.	A great general.
Un gran día ; una gran cosa.	A great day ; a great thing.
Un grande amigo, *or* un gran amigo.	A great friend.
Un grande hombre, *or* un gran hombre.	A great man.
Una grande ocasión, *or* una gran ocasión.	A great occasion, a grand affair.

119. The full form is even sometimes used before consonants, when great emphasis is intended (the natural effect of emphasis being to give to a word its fullest form):—

Un grande sacrificio.	An immense sacrifice.
Una grande desgracia.	A tremendous misfortune.

120. When used to express size, **grande** regularly stands after the noun to which it belongs (§ 110):—

Un hombre grande ; una mujer grande.	A large man ; a large woman.
Una casa grande ; un perro grande.	A large house ; a big dog.

121. Strictly, these three adjectives do not assume the shortened forms if any word comes between them and their nouns. Nevertheless such a construction will occasionally be met with, especially in conversation; the question of correctness may be generally evaded by changing the order of the sentence:—

Un bueno y cariñoso padre. Un buen y cariñoso padre. Un padre bueno y cariñoso.	A good and loving father.
Un mal, imprudente mozo ; *better*, un mozo malo é imprudente.	A bad, imprudent young man.
Un grande y estimable amigo, *or* un gran y estimable amigo.	A great and estimable friend.

REMARK.—No adjective is ever curtailed when it follows the noun, or when the noun to which it refers is not expressed.

122. The masculine singular **Santo**, as the title of a holy man, is abbreviated to **San**, unless the name of the saint begins with **To-** or **Do-**. In all other forms and uses of the word, it is left unabbreviated:

San Pedro, St. Peter.	**San Pablo**, St. Paul.
Santo Tomás, St. Thomas.	**Santo Domingo**, St. Dominic.
but	
El santo padre, the Holy Father.	**Santa Ana**, St. Anne.

REMARK.—The name of the island of St. Thomas (West Indies) is written and pronounced **San Tomas**, out of deference to foreign usage, as it has always been held by others than Spaniards.

123. The interrogative **dónde**, *where*, must be preceded by the preposition **á** when it denotes *motion to* a place, and by **de**[1] when *origin* or *egress* is intended. These two forms correspond exactly to the old English *whither* and *whence*. When it expresses stationary position it should strictly be preceded by **en**, but this is not always observed when the idea of *being in* is not contained in the sentence:—

¿Á dónde va V.?	Where are you going? (whither go you?)
¿De dónde viene V.?	Where do you come from? (whence come you?)
¿En dónde vive V.? *or* ¿dónde vive V.?	Where do you live?

124. **Donde** is also used relatively, as in answering a question, in which case it does not bear the written accent. (§ 36.) The application of prepositions is the same as for its interrogative use:—

La casa á donde voy.	The house where I am going.
La ciudad de donde vengo.	The city from which I come.
El arrabal en donde resido.	The suburb where I live.
Vengo de donde V. viene.	I come from where you come from.
Vivo en donde (*or* donde) V. vive.	I live where you live.

[1] **De donde**, *whence*, is a queer reduplication, similar to the English pleonasm *from whence*. The Latin *unde* meant *whence*, but its value became lost in early Spanish, and was represented by *de onde*; which in turn became condensed into the modern **donde**, *where*. A second **de** must now be preposed in order to restore the initial meaning; so **de donde** is literally *from from whence*.

125. País, campo, tierra, patria.—**País** is a country in its political or natural aspect; **campo** in its primitive sense is a *field*, and means also the *country* in its agricultural aspect as distinguished from the town or village. **Patria** is one's native land as distinguished from other countries (**países**). **Tierra** means earth, soil, land, the earth, or a large tract of country.

126. Mandar (with the meaning of *to order*) immediately followed by an infinitive, is equivalent to the English *have* with a past participle, in cases where a person causes something to be done:—

Mando hacer una capa nueva.	I am having a new cloak made.
Manda limpiar sus botas.	He has his boots blacked.
Queremos mandar pintar nuestra casa.	We want to have our house painted.

Vocabulary.

El capitán, the captain.
El soldado, the soldier.
El fusil, the musket, gun (*mil.*).
El mozo, the youth, lad; waiter, waiting-man.
El café, the café, coffee-house.
El sastre, the tailor.
El testigo, the witness.
El dinero, the money.
El idioma, the language.

La tienda, the tent; the store.
La escopeta, the gun, shotgun.
La pólvora, the [gun-] powder.
La propina, the tip (given to servants).
La bala, the ball, bullet.
La prensa, the press.
La desgracia, the misfortune.
La cosa, the thing.
La isla, the island.

Arrojar, to throw away.
Gastar, to waste; to spend.
Enseñar (á), to teach.
Pintar, to paint.
Cargar, to load, charge.
Disparar, to fire, discharge.

Notar, to notice.
Cambiar, to change.
Copiar, to copy.
Limpiar, to clean.
Llenar, to fill; **llenar de**, to fill with.

Composition.

Llena de manzanas el canasto.	He fills the basket with apples.
Los soldados cargan sus fusiles con bala.	The soldiers load their pieces with ball.
El padre enseña á leer á su hijo.	The father teaches his son to read.
Arrojo las manzanas malas.	I throw away the bad apples.
La niña pequeña tiene miedo del perro grande.	The little girl is afraid of the big dog.
El general manda copiar las cartas.	The general orders the letters to be copied.

EXERCISE VIII.

In what country does your son live? He is living now in the island of San Domingo. Your friend sells bad coffee. Where is your father going? He wants to go to the island of St. Thomas, but he has no money at present. I am going to have the silver spoons cleaned. A great general does not fear misfortunes. Where do you (*pl.*) come from? We come from the café, and are going to the country. Do you always give tips to the waiters of the café? Yes, when they give me good coffee. My friend says that you have a good portrait of my father. The boy is afraid to fire the soldier's gun. My son always wastes his money in useless things. My mother is having a new dress made. The captain orders the guns to be loaded with ball. I want to have a portrait painted of my little son. The boy fills his father's pipe with gunpowder.[1] The house I live in needs new doors. Do your friend's cows give good milk? Do you want to see my portraits of St. Peter and St. Paul? I buy boots and hats in your friend's store. Where are the soldiers going? To their captain's tent. The colonel is teaching his son to load and fire a gun.

LESSON IX.

WORDS COMMON TO SPANISH AND ENGLISH.

127. The English language being largely derived from the Latin and Greek through the medium of one or other of the Romance languages, a large number of words have nearly, and in some cases exactly, the same form and meaning in Spanish and English.

The differences, in the words here referred to, have a certain regularity, the understanding of which will greatly assist the learner.

128. The following orthographic peculiarities are to be observed:—

Spanish admits of no doubled consonants except **rr**, **cc** and, in a few cases, **nn**, (§ 19,)—**ll** not being regarded as a doubled letter, but as the sign for a particular sound; hence *college* = **colegio**. And **cc** occurs only before **e** and **i**; hence *accommodation* = **acomodación**.

The **n** of the prefixes **in** and **con** does not change to *m* before a word beginning with **m**, as is the case in English and Latin; therefore *immersion* = **inmersión**; *immortal* = **inmortal**; *commotion* = **conmoción**.

[1] Transpose: fills with gunpowder the pipe of his father.

Qu becomes **cu**: *frequent* = **frecuente**; *consequence* = **consecuencia**; *adequate* = **adecuado**.

The diphthongs *æ* and *œ* become **e**: *Cæsar* = **César**; *diæresis* = **diéresis**; *fœtus* = **feto**; *œdema* = **edema**.

Initial *s*, followed by a consonant, takes an **e** before it: *sceptic* = **escéptico**; *squadron* = **escuadrón**; *spiral* = **espiral**; *strict* = **estricto**.

The following modifications apply only to words of Greek origin:—

Y becomes **i**: *typographic* = **tipográfico**; *sympathy* = **simpatía**.

Ph becomes **f**: *phonography* = **fonografía**; *philosophic* = **filosófico**.

Th and *rh* drop the *h*: *thesis* = **tesis**; *orthographic* = **ortográfico**; *rheumatism* = **reumatismo**; *rhapsody* = **rapsodia**.

Initial *pn*, *ps* and *pt* drop the *p*: *pneumatic* = **neumático**; *psalmist* = **salmista**; *pterocarpus* = **terocarpo**; *Ptolemaic* = **tolemaico**.

Ch becomes **c** (except before **e** and **i**, when it is represented by **qu**): *anachronism* = **anacronismo**; *characteristic* = **característico**; *chloroform* = **cloroformo**; *choleric* = **colérico**. But, *chelonian* = **queloniano**; *chimera* = **quimera**; *chiromancy* = **quiromancia**.

129. The following is a list of the principal terminations common to both languages, embracing, with proper attention to the above orthographic changes, over 5,000 Spanish words:—

☞ The accentuation is uniform throughout the entire class of words formed with any given termination. Those indicated by an asterisk (*) regularly bear the accent-mark on the antepenultimate syllable. The remainder require none, unless one is shown on the termination or in the sample words.

NOUNS.

GENDER OF THE CLASS.		
m.	ACE,	becomes **acio**: **palacio, prefacio.**
f.	ADE,	" **ada**: **brigada, parada.**
m.	AGE,	" **aje**: **equipaje, personaje.**
m.	AL,	no change: **canal, metal, coral.**
f.	ANCE, / ANCY,	become **ancia**: **abundancia, repugnancia.**
m.	ANT,	adds **e**: **litigante, instante.**
m.	ARIAN,	becomes **ario**: **centenario, unitario.**
m.	ARY,	" **ario**: **adversario, sanctuario.**
m.	ATOR,	" **ador**: **orador, regulador.**
m.	*CLE,	" **culo**: **círculo, vehículo.**
m.	CT,	adds **o**: **contacto, conducto.**
f.	CY,	becomes **cia**: **aristocracia, potencia.**

GENDER OF THE CLASS.		
f.	ENCE, ENCY,	become **encia** : violencia, vehemencia.
m.	ENT,	adds **e** : accidente, regente.
m.	GE,	becomes **gio** : privilegio, vestigio.
f.	*IC,	adds **a** : música, lógica, retórica.
m.	ICE,	becomes **icio** : edificio, servicio.
f.	INE,	" **ina** : doctrina, disciplina.
f.	ION,	(not preceded by *t*,) no change : confusión, religión.
m.	ISK,	becomes **isco** : asterisco, basilisco.
m.	ISM,	adds **o** : paganismo, despotismo.
m.	IST,	" **a** : artista, florista.
m.	MENT,	" **o** : fragmento, monumento.
f.	MONY,	becomes **monia** : ceremonia, parsimonia.
m.	OID,	adds **e** : alcaloide, esferoide.
m.	OR,	no change : actor, horror, vapor.
m.	ORY,	becomes **orio** : directorio, promontorio.
m.	OT,	adds **a** : patriota, despota.
f.	SIS,	no change : crisis, sinopsis.
m.	TER, TRE,	become **tro** : centro, ministro, pilastro.
m.	TERY,	becomes **terio** : cauterio, misterio.
f.	TION,	" **ción** : condición, nación.
f.	TUDE,	" **tud** : multitud, solitud.
f.	TY,	(Latin *tas*), becomes **dad** : eternidad, sociedad.
m.	*ULE,	becomes **ulo** : glóbulo, ridículo.
f.	URE,	" **ura** : figura, agricultura.
m.	US,	" **o** : genio, censo, aparato.
m.	UM,	" **o** : geranio, premio, ateneo, museo.
f.	Y,	(not otherwise provided for above,) becomes **ía** : artillería, energía, geografía, zoología.

ADJECTIVES.[1]

ACIOUS,	becomes **az** : fugaz, sagaz, tenaz.
AL,	no change : moral, central, natural.
AN,	adds **o** : pagano, americano.
ANEOUS,	becomes **áneo** : cutáneo, extemporáneo.
ANT,	adds **e** : abundante, dominante.
AR,	no change : circular, solar.
ARIOUS,	becomes **ario** : vicario, precario.
ARY,	" **ario** : ordinario, contrario.
ATE,	" **ado** : duplicado, ornado.
BLE,	no change : notable, noble, soluble.
CT,	adds **o** : perfecto, intacto.
ENSE,	becomes **enso** : denso, inmenso.

ENT,	adds **e** : **evidente, prudente.**
FEROUS,	becomes **fero** : **aurífero, carbonífero.**
IC, ICAL;	become **ico** : **público, satírico.**
ID,	adds **o** : **tórrido, sólido.**
ILE,	becomes **il** : **frágil, dócil.**
INE,	" **ino** : **aquilino, felino.**
ITE,	" **ito** : **definito, erudito.**
IVE,	" **ivo** : **activo, decisivo.**
NAL,	" **no** : **diurno, eterno.**
ORY,	" **orio** : **preparatorio, satisfactorio.**
OSE,	" **oso** : **jocoso, verboso.**
OUS,	" **oso** : **luminoso, monstruoso.**
TIAL,	" **cial** : **substancial, potencial.**
TIONAL,	" **cional** : **condicional, nacional.**
ULENT,	adds **o** : **turbulento, virulento.**
UND,	" **o** : **moribundo, rubicundo.**
URE,	becomes **uro** : **puro, futuro.**

VERBS.[1]

ATE,	becomes **ar** : **calcular, investigar.**
FY,	" **ficar** : **fortificar, magnificar.**
IZE,	" **izar** : **civilizar, organizar.**
E.	A great many verbs of this termination, which come to us through the French, may be turned into Spanish by changing *e* to **ar** : **determinar, curar, causar, continuar, admirar, combinar, imaginar, observar,** etc., etc.

REMARK.—The learner is cautioned against supposing that all English words having the terminations above specified, can be turned into Spanish by the respective changes indicated ; or that all words spelled alike in both languages have the same meaning : e.g., Spanish **pan** (Latin *panis*) means *bread* ; **red** (Latin *rete*), a *net*.

130. Hereafter words which have the same form and meaning in both languages, or which can be changed from one language to the other by attention to the preceding directions, will appear in the exercises in *italics*, and need not be given in the vocabularies.

a. When the Spanish word is identical with the English and belongs to none of the above classes, the gender will be indicated in parenthesis after

[1] The learner need scarcely be told that it is only the masculine singular of adjectives, and the infinitives of verbs, which are given above.

the word; thus: She buys a dress of black *merino* (*m.*). If the word requires an accent-mark, its place will be shown by a numeral; thus: (1) for final syllable, (2) for penultimate and (3) for antepenultimate.

b. Verbs which do not come under classes given above, when appearing in the exercises in *italics*, will be understood to be regular and of the first conjugation; thus *to exhort* would become **exhortar**, *to present*, **presentar**.

☞ The orthographic peculiarities are to be observed in all cases.

Exercise IX.

The *American*[1] *continent*. The *isthmus* of *Panama* (1). A *pedestal* of *alabaster*. A *triangular*[1] *space*. A *hydraulic elevator*. A *telegraphic cable* (*m.*). An *electric motor*. A *galvanic battery*. *Innumerable cascades*. *Precious metals*. The *fertile* (2) fields. He has *patience* and *perseverance*. The *general tendency* of the *argument*. The *election* of a *vice-president*. The *inevitable effect* of his *actions*. A *systematic presentation* of *doctrines*. The *relative positions* of the *antagonists*. They wish to *terminate* the *discussion*. An *eminent pianist*. What *instrument* do you play? He gives *special attention* to the *animal* kingdom. He *examines* the new *rifle* (*m.*). The *corpulent general* drinks *whiskey* (*m.*) and *porter* (*m.*). They make *astronomical observations* in the *national observatory*. He wishes to *determine* the *longitude* of *Tegucigalpa*. The Indians of the *intertropical*[2] countries of *America* (3) *cultivate* tobacco in *abundance*. We wish to see the *principal edifices* of the city, the *cathedral* (*f.*), the *museum*, the *civil hospital*, the *theaters*, the *monuments*, the *arsenal*, the *fortifications*, the *aqueduct* and the *interior* of the *ducal palace*.

LESSON X.

SER AND ESTAR.

131. There are in Spanish two verbs, **ser** and **estar**, corresponding to the English verb *to be*. They are not employed interchangeably, but each has its distinct province. In form they are quite irregular:—

Sing.	1 p.	Yo	**soy,**	**estoy,**	I am,
	2 p.	Tú	**eres,**	**estás,**	thou art,
	3 p.	Él / Ella / Vd.	**es,**	**está,**	he / she / you are.

[1] For location of adjectives, see §§ 110–112. [2] Span. *intertropical*.

PLUR.	1 p.	Nosotros / Nosotras	somos,	estamos,	we	are.
	2 p.	Vosotros / Vosotras	sois,	estáis,	ye	
	3 p.	Ellos / Ellas / Vds.	son,	están,	they / you	

132. The fundamental distinction is that **ser** expresses an inherent, essential or lasting quality; **estar**, an accidental or temporary quality or condition. The following contrasted examples will serve as illustrations:—

El hielo es frío.	The ice is cold. (*Ice always is.*)
El agua está fría.	The water is cold, (*happens to be.*)
Ella es pálida.	She is pale. (*Her complexion is naturally pale.*)
Ella está pálida.	She is pale, (*temporarily, as through sickness or fear.*)
La niña es enfermiza.	The girl is sickly.
La niña está enferma.	The girl is sick.
El soldado es borracho.	The soldier is a drunkard.
El soldado está borracho.	The soldier is drunk.
Las manzanas son agrias.	The apples are sour, (*i.e., they are of a sour kind.*)
Las manzanas están agrias.	The apples are sour, (*i.e., unripe.*)
Mi hermano es callado.	My brother is close-mouthed, taciturn.
Mi hermano está callado.	My brother is silent.
La mujer es amable.	The woman is amiable.
La mujer está amable.	The woman is in an amiable humor.
El hombre es loco.	The man is mad, (*insane.*)
El hombre está loco.	The man is mad, (*furious.*)
Ser inconstante.	To be fickle.
Estar indeciso.	To be undecided.

133. **Ser** is to be used to express the origin of a person or thing, and the ownership of a thing or the material of which it is composed:—

Mi criada es de Valencia.	My servant-girl is from Valencia.
Mi cuñado es Español.	My brother-in-law is a Spaniard.
El vino es de Málaga.	The wine is from Malaga.
El violín es de mi padre.	The violin is my father's.
La taza es de plata.	The cup is of silver.

134. When the predicate is a noun, **ser** is the verb to be used. **Estar** can never have a noun as predicate, for the reason that a thing is never temporarily something else:—

Colombia es una república.	Colombia is a republic.
La Paz y Potosí son departamentos de Bolivia.	La Paz and Potosi are departments of Bolivia.
El perro es un animal dócil é inteligente.	The dog is a docile and intelligent animal.
¿Cuál es la distancia de Cárdenas á Júcaro?	What is the distance from Cardenas to Jucaro?

135. A predicate noun, used with a temporary value and preceded by **de**, may follow **estar** as an adverbial phrase, in which case **de** is equivalent to *as*:—

Mi hermano está ahora de cónsul en Bogotá.	My brother is at present consul at Bogota.

136. Estar, being derived from the Latin *stare, to stand*, is used to denote the location of a person or thing, even though it be a permanent one:—

Mi cuñado está en Venezuela.	My brother-in-law is in Venezuela.
Su casa está alta.	His house is high up, (*located high.*)
Mi casa está en el campo.	My house is in the country.

137. Bueno and **malo**, when construed with **ser**, apply to the quality of persons or things; with **estar** they refer to the state of one's health:—

Su hermano de V. es bueno.	Your brother is good.
Su hermano de V. está bueno.	Your brother is well, (in good health.)
Mi hijo es malo.	My son is bad.
Mi hijo está malo.	My son is ill.

REMARK.—The only parts of speech to which both **ser** and **estar** can be applied are adjectives and past participles.

138. It is seldom that any word is used in Spanish corresponding to the English *it* as the subject of an impersonal sentence:—

Es tarde, *it* is late.	**No es probable**, *it* is not likely.
Es evidente, *it* is evident.	**Está bien**, *it* is well, all right.
Es singular, *it* is singular, strange.	**¿Quién es?** who is *it*?

139. A noun after **ser** in an impersonal sentence is not usually preceded by an article:—

Es lástima ; es error.	It is *a* pity ; it is *a* mistake.
Es verdad ; es mentira.	It is true [*lit.* truth] ; it is *a* lie.
Es costumbre del país.	It is *the* custom of the country.

140. The infinitive follows such impersonal expressions without being connected by any preposition:—

Es agradable vivir en el campo.	It is pleasant to live in the country.
No es costumbre beber cerveza.	It is not the custom to drink beer.
No es posible abrir las ventanas.	It is not possible to open the windows.
Es útil leer buenos libros, pero es preciso leer con reflexión.	It is useful to read good books, but it is necessary to read with reflection.
Es siempre deseable tener buenos amigos.	It is always desirable to have good friends.
Es injusticia insistir.	It is an injustice to insist.

141. When it is required to connect these impersonal phrases with a further statement, the conjunction **que**, *that*, is used. This should not be omitted as the English conjunction frequently is, since it can only occasionally be suppressed before a subjunctive:—

Es evidente que el hombre está borracho.	It is evident [that] the man is drunk.
¿ Es verdad que su cuñado de V. va á Europa ?	Is it true [that] your brother-in-law is going to Europe ?

¿ No es verdad ? ¿ Verdad ? ¿ No ?	Is it not so ?

142. The expression ¿ **no es verdad** ? (frequently shortened to ¿ **verdad** ? or merely ¿ **no** ?) is used inquiringly with an expectation of assent, where in English we repeat the verb; thus:—

V. quiere comprar mi caballo ¿ no es verdad ?	You want to buy my horse, *don't you*?
V. tiene el dinero ¿ verdad ?	You have the money, *haven't you* ?
No necesitamos ir hoy al mercado ¿ verdad ?	We don't need to go to market to-day, *do we* ?
Las cortinas son de lana ¿ no ?	The curtains are woolen, *aren't they* ?
V. habla inglés ¿ no ?	You speak English, *don't you* ?

143. In conversational style ¿eh? is often similarly used as a positive interrogation after a statement,—not as a request for information, but with an implied scoff or threat:—

Mi hijo aprende á fumar ¿eh?	My son is learning to smoke, *is he*?
No quieren venir ¿eh?	They don't want to come, *don't they*?
Sí ¿eh?	He does, *does he*? He is, *is he*? etc.
No ¿eh?	He doesn't, *doesn't he*? etc., etc.

REMARK.—The English usage of repeating the verb is not followed in either case in Spanish.

144. In the predicate of questions, the usual place of the adjective is immediately after the noun in Spanish, as it is before it in English. When prominence is to be given to the adjective, it is removed from its usual place. In either case the Spanish construction is the opposite of the English:—

¿Es viejo el capitán?	Is the captain old?
¿Es el capitán viejo?	Is it the old captain?
¿Es alto su hermano de V.?	Is your brother tall?
¿Es su hermano alto de V.?	Is it your tall brother?

Vocabulary.

El cuñado, the brother-in-law.	**La silla**, the chair; the saddle.
El hermano, the brother.	**La gaveta**, the drawer.
El escritorio, the desk.	**La verdad**, the truth.
El cajón, the [large] drawer.	**La mentira**, the lie.
El gusto, the taste; pleasure.	**La ventaja**, the advantage.
El discurso, the speech.	**La lástima**, the pity.
El cambio, the change, exchange.	**La costumbre**, the custom.

Alto, tall, high.	**Borracho**, drunk, drunken.	**Oscuro**, dark,
Lleno, full.	**Deciso**, decided.	**Agrio**, sour.
Frío, cold.	**Indeciso**, undecided.	**Agradable**, agreeable.
Pálido, pale.	**Habitado**, inhabited.	**Difícil**, difficult.
Enfermo, sick, ill.	**Inhabitado**, uninhabited.	**Callado**, silent, taciturn.
Enfermizo, sickly.	**Amable**, amiable, pleasant.	**Ocupado**, busy.
Loco, mad, insane.	**Preciso**, precise, needful.	**Injusto**, unjust.

Composition.

Su hermano de V. tiene buen gusto, mal gusto.	Your brother has good taste, bad taste.
Las manzanas tienen un gusto agrio.	The apples have a sour taste.
Estoy sin dinero.	I am out of money.

La taza está llena.	The cup is full.
El violín está roto.	The violin is broken.
Su casa es alta.	His house is tall.
Mi casa es grande.	My house is large.
Mi opinión es que la cosa es imposible.	My opinion is that the thing is impossible.

REMARK.—The *Compositions* following the vocabularies have been introduced thus far as models for translating the exercises. They are only necessary at a very elementary stage and will hereafter be dispensed with.

EXERCISE X.

What are you looking for? My new cigar-case. It is in the drawer of your desk, isn't it? Your brother-in-law is always amiable; his good *humor* is *irresistible*. My son is now *secretary* of the *Society* of *American Naturalists*. Where is he at present? He is in *Caracas*. And where is *Caracas*? It is the *capital* (*f.*) of *Venezuela*. Is the *artist* well? No, he is sick; he has the (*un*) colic. He has, has he? Is your store dark? No, it is light. Your friend's book is full of *typographical errors*. Yes, it is a pity, isn't it? The *architect* says that the house is not *habitable*; it needs a *complete renovation*. Is the *organist* a drunkard? No, but it is *evident* that he is drunk now. My brother is not taciturn, but he is silent at present. St. Domingo is a large island, and is now a *republic*. The *typical* Frenchman is talkative, the Englishman taciturn, the *American* inquisitive and enterprising. It is *impossible* to see the *Minister* now, he is busy. Your brother-in-law has an *excellent* memory, hasn't he? Yes, he is an *extraordinary* man. *Chile* is a large, rich and *fertile republic*, and has *important manufactures*.

LESSON XI.

COMPOUND PREPOSITIONS. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

Además, besides.	**Después**, after (*time, order*).
Antes, before (*time, order*).	**Detrás**, after, behind (*place*).
Cerca, near.	**Encima**, on, over, on top.
Debajo, under, beneath.	**Enfrente**, opposite.
Delante, before, in front (*place*).	**Fuera**, outside, out, beyond.
Dentro, in, within.	**Lejos**, far, distant.

145. The above prepositions require **de** as a connecting link when followed by an object. When used absolutely or adverbially, the **de** is unnecessary:—

Además de la cerveza, quiere beber el vino.	Besides the beer he wants to drink the wine.
Ella es bonita y **además** rica.	She is pretty and rich besides.
Quiere beber **antes de** comer.	He wants to drink before eating.
El muchacho come **antes**.	The boy eats first.
Vive **cerca de** la catedral.	He lives near the cathedral.
La catedral está **cerca**.	The cathedral is near.
La carta está **dentro del** escritorio.	The letter is inside of the desk.
El dinero está **dentro**.	The money is inside.
Yo hablo **después de** mi padre.	I speak after my father.
Mi hermano viene **después**.	My brother is coming afterwards.
Después de un año.	After a year.
Un año **después**.	A year after.
El perro corre **detrás del** hombre.	The dog runs behind the man.
La niña viene **detrás**.	The girl comes behind.
Vive **enfrente de** nuestra casa.	He lives opposite to our house.
Su casa está **enfrente**.	His house is opposite.
Mi padre está **fuera de** la ciudad.	My father is out of town.
Mi padre está **fuera**.	My father is out, outside.
Su casa está **lejos de** la ciudad.	His house is far from the city.
La catedral no está **lejos**.	The cathedral is not far off.
Tengo un jardín **delante de** mi casa.	I have a garden in front of my house.
Mi cuñado tiene una hermosa casa con un jardín **delante**.	My brother-in-law has a fine house with a garden in front.
El perro está **debajo de** la mesa.	The dog is under the table.
El libro y la carta están en la gaveta de mi escritorio; la carta está **debajo**.	The book and the letter are in the drawer of my desk; the letter is underneath.
Mi tío viaja **encima del** coche.	My uncle travels on top of the coach.
El libro está **encima**.	The book is on top.

146. The infinitive in Spanish is used as a verbal noun corresponding to the English verbal in *-ing*. Hence the infinitive stands after all prepositions:—

No habla sin decir una mentira.	He does not speak without telling a lie.
Con enseñar también aprendo.	By teaching I learn also.
Además de ser rica, es amable y bonita.	Besides being rich, she is pleasant and pretty.
Necesito buscar mis botas antes de ir á la ciudad.	I need to look for my boots before going to the city.

147. A noun after the preposition **sin** is not generally preceded by the indefinite article. **Sin** followed thus by a noun is often equivalent to the English adjective formed by adding *-less* to the noun:—

Da el dinero al hombre sin decir palabra.	He gives the man the money without saying *a* word.
No quiero ir á la ciudad sin sombrero.	I do not want to go to the city without *a* hat.
Un rey sin reino.	A king without *a* kingdom.
Un príncipe sin dinero.	A money*less* prince.
Un muchacho sin amigos.	A friend*less* boy.
Esta carta está sin faltas.	This letter is fault*less*.

148. **Antes** and **después** mean before and after in point of *time* or *order*. **Delante** and **detrás** refer only to situation:—

Quiero escribir la carta antes de mañana.	I want to write the letter before tomorrow.
Después de comprar pólvora, carga la escopeta.	After buying powder he loads the gun.
El caballo está delante del coche.	The horse is before the carriage.
El muchacho está detrás de la puerta.	The boy is behind the door.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

149. When an adjective relates to several nouns of the same gender, it stands in the plural and agrees in gender with the nouns:—

El capitán y el soldado están borrachos.	The captain and the soldier are drunk
La madre y las niñas son bonitas.	The mother and the girls are pretty.
La botella y la taza están llenas de sidra.	The bottle and the cup are full of cider.

150. If the several nouns denote persons or animals and are of different genders, the adjective is put in the plural masculine:—

El hombre y la mujer son ricos.	The man and the woman are rich.
El caballo y la mula son viejos.	The horse and the mule are old.

151. If the nouns refer to things and are in the plural, the adjective is plural and agrees in gender with the nearest noun:—

Los escritorios y las sillas son caras.	The desks and chairs are dear.

152. If they are in the singular, the adjective is put in the plural masculine:—

El escritorio y la silla son caros.	The desk and chair are dear.

153. But it is always preferable to put the masculine noun last when the adjective has a separate termination for each gender, and so avoid the incongruity of a feminine noun followed immediately by a masculine adjective:—

La mula y el caballo son viejos.	The mule and the horse are old.
Las sillas y los escritorios son caros.	The chairs and desks are dear.
La silla y el escritorio son caros.	The chair and desk are dear.

154. The principles exhibited above are of equal force when the adjective is immediately associated with the nouns as when it is separated from them by the verb *to be*:—

Ella compra un traje y un velo nuevos.	She buys a new dress and veil.
Quiero vender mis botas y mi sombrero viejos.	I want to sell my old boots and hat.

155. An adjective agrees in number and gender with whatever it refers to, whether that be expressed in the sentence or not. In the case of personal pronouns, which often do not show a distinction of gender, the sex of the person represented must be borne in mind:—

¿Porqué está V. callada?	Why are you silent?
Vds. son injustas.	You are unjust.
Yo estoy cansada.	I am tired.
Parecen pequeñas.	They seem small.

156. Adjectives of nationality, when used to denote a language, are preceded by the masculine article **el**, except generally when governed by the verb **hablar**, *to speak*:—

Hablo francés é inglés.	I speak French and English.
Estudio el alemán.	I am studying German.
Mi hijo aprende el latín.	My son is learning Latin.
El ruso es difícil.	Russian is difficult.

REMARK.—**El castellano**, *Spanish*, (i.e., the Castilian language,) retains the article in all cases.

157. **Casa**, unaccompanied by any article, and preceded by a preposition, takes the place of the English elliptical manner of referring to a person's residence or place of business by placing his name in the possessive; when no possessor is indicated, **casa**

is equivalent to the English *home*, also unspecified as to ownership:—

Vengo de casa de mi cuñado.	I am coming from my brother-in-law's.
Compro pan en casa de A.	I buy bread at A.'s.
Voy á casa ahora.	I am going home now.
Manda los muchachos á casa.	He sends the boys home.
¿Está en casa su hermano de V.?	Is your brother at home?
Mi mujer está en casa de su madre.	My wife is at her mother's.

158. The superfluous *got*, often heard in English, is not represented in Spanish:—

¿Tiene V. mi sombrero?	Have you got my hat?
¿Tiene V. franela blanca?	Have you got any white flannel?
Yo también tengo una escopeta.	I've got a shotgun too.

Vocabulary.

El banco, the bank.	**La calle**, the street.
El mercado, the market.	**La cárcel**, the prison.
El árbol, the tree.	**La plaza**, the [public] square.
El consejo, the counsel; council.	**La hoja**, the leaf.
El despacho, the office.	**La biblioteca**, the library.
El diccionario, the dictionary.	**La llave**, the key.
El armario, the book-case.	**La palabra**, the word.
El asunto, the subject, matter.	**La falta**, the fault, mistake.
El suelo, the floor.	**La tarjeta**, the card.
El arancel, the tariff.	**La franela**, the flannel.
El quinqué, the [student-] lamp.	**La aduana**, the custom-house.
El estudio, the study, research.	**La guerra**, the war.

Exercise XI.

I do not see my new Spanish dictionary; where is it? It is on (*en*) the floor, under the book-case. The young man is afraid to fire the cannon. Is the *arsenal* far off? Yes, it is at a *considerable distance*, near the old *canal*. What are you drinking? *Mineral* water. You are, are you? Have you a cellar under your house? Yes, and it is full of bottles of wine. Where is the guitar? It is on (*sobre*) the chair, behind the curtain. You don't want to go to the city without a cravat, do you? Where is the *public* library? It is opposite the custom-house. What do you (*pl.*) see? We see the comet, over the *ducal palace*. Is the prison near? It is outside of the town. Are your cloak and necktie new? No, they are old. Are the baskets and bottles full? Yes, and the glasses besides. Are you (*f. pl.*) busy? Not now. Where do you live now? At my brother's, in the *prin-*

cipal square, opposite the English *consul's* (2). Is your brother-in-law at home? No, he is out. It is *evident* that I need to buy a new cloak and dress-coat, but I have no money. Haven't you money in the bank? Not I. I want to write a letter to my mother before going to the office. Besides being old and ugly, the king and queen are *arrogant* and *stupid*. We are near home now.

LESSON XII.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

159. There are a number of words of a hybrid character, vacillating in value and usage between pronouns and adjectives, and occasionally employed adverbially, which we will call *adjective pronouns*. The class comprises indefinite pronouns, possessive pronouns or adjectives, demonstrative pronouns, and a large residuum of miscellaneous adjective pronouns. These groups will be treated separately and in the order named.[1]

160. The following, which never designate any particular person or thing, are regarded as indefinite pronouns:—

Alguien, somebody, anybody.	**Nadie**, nobody, not anybody.
Alguno, some, any.	**Ninguno**, none, no, not any.
Algo, something, anything.	**Nada**, nothing, not anything.

161. Alguien, algo, and their opposites **nadie, nada,** are invariable in form, have no plural, and are only used absolutely, i.e., they stand alone and do not qualify nouns.

162. Alguien applies to persons only. It may be preceded by any preposition, and as it denotes a person, it requires **á** when it is a direct object:—

Alguien viene ; alguien habla.	Somebody is coming ; someone speaks.
¿ Estudia V. con alguien ?	Do you study with anyone ?
¿ Busca V. á alguien ?	Are you looking for anyone ?
¿ Ve V. á alguien ?	Do you see anybody ?

163. Algo applies only to things. It may be used before an adjective just as *something* or *anything* is in English:—

¿ Busca V. algo ?	Are you looking for anything?
Veo algo blanco.	I see something white.

[1] See also Part III, Chapters III and IX.

¿ Hace el muchacho algo útil ?	Does the boy do anything useful ?
¿ Tiene V. algo bonito ?	Have you anything pretty ?

REMARK.—An adjective following **algo** is often preceded by **de** :—

Tengo algo de interesante.	I have something interesting.
¿ Dicen algo de nuevo ?	Do they say anything new ?

164. Algo is also used as an adverb before adjectives or other adverbs in the sense of *somewhat, rather*:—

Ella es algo preguntona.	She is rather inquisitive.
Mi padre está algo malhumorado hoy.	My father is somewhat ill-humored to-day.
Viene algo tarde, algo temprano.	He comes rather late, rather early.

165. Alguno is used either alone or as an adjective, and applies to persons or things. It is varied like any adjective in **o.**

166. Referring to persons, **alguno** means *some, any, a few, someone, anyone, somebody, anybody,* and requires the preposition **á** when it is direct object:—

Alguna niña ; algunos soldados.	Some girl ; a few soldiers.
Vemos á alguno de los amigos de V.	We see one of your friends.
Voy á llamar á alguno.	I am going to call one (of them).

167. Alguno, used absolutely and denoting a person, is distinguished from **alguien** in this, that **alguno** applies to some one of a number already referred to or thought of; **alguien,** to somebody not previously considered. So **alguien** cannot, like **alguno,** be followed by **de,** indicating some one of a number:—

¿ Ve V. á alguien?	Do you see anybody ?
¿ Ve V. á alguno ?	Do you see any one (of those we are looking for) ?
Alguien viene.	Someone (*unknown*) is coming.
Alguno viene.	Some one (of those we expect) is coming.
Alguno de mis amigos viene.	Some one of my friends is coming.

REMARK.—Of course where a distinction of number or gender is required, the appropriate form of **alguno** takes the place of **alguien**:—

Veo á alguna.	I see somebody (*female*).
Algunos vienen.	Some folks are coming.

168. Alguno, when referring to things, has the meaning of

some, any, a few. It is oftener omitted before a noun than the corresponding English words (§ 68):—

Voy á vender algunos de mis caballos.	I am going to sell some of my horses.
Quiero comprar algunos libros.	I want to buy a few books.
Yo también quiero comprar algunos.	I also wish to buy some.
¿Tiene V. tabaco?	Have you any tobacco?
Sí, tengo.	Yes, I have some.

169. The distinctions drawn between **alguien, alguno** and **algo** also apply to their corresponding negatives **nadie, ninguno** and **nada.** These negatives require the addition of **no** to complete the negation when they stand after the verb, but not when they precede it or stand alone[1]:—

No veo á nadie.	I do not see anybody.
Á nadie veo.	I see nobody.
No halla nada.	He does not find anything.
Nada halla.	He finds nothing.
¿Qué dice?—Nada.	What does he say?—Nothing.
¿Quién llama?—Nadie.	Who calls?—No one.
No viene ninguno de nuestros amigos. / Ninguno de nuestros amigos viene.	None of our friends are coming.
¿No tiene V. tabaco?	Haven't you any tobacco?
No tengo ninguno.	I haven't any.
Ninguno tengo.	I have none.

REMARK.—The construction with **no** is the common usage of the language; the other is literary or rhetorical.

170. Any of these negatives may be combined in the same sentence:—

Él no dice nada á nadie.	He says nothing to anybody.
Nadie dice nada.	No one says anything.
Nadie quiere leer ninguno de mis poemas.	No one will read any of my poems.

171. The positive forms **alguien** and **algo** are never used with a negative; in such a construction only **nadie** and **nada** are admissible:—

No escribo á nadie (*not* no escribo á alguien).	I am not writing to anybody.

[1] The subject of negatives will be considered *in extenso* in Part III, Chapter XI.

No quiero nada por ahora (*not* no quiero algo).	I do not want anything at present.

172. **Alguno,** however, may be used in a negation, but only when associated with and following a singular noun; in such a construction it is more forcible than **ninguno,** especially after **sin,** *without*:—

El nuevo presidente no hace cambio **alguno.**	The new president makes no changes.
No toma precaución **alguna.**	He takes no precaution whatever.
No tienen influencia **alguna.**	They have no influence at all.
Sin desgracia **alguna.**	Without any mishap.
Habla sin preparación **alguna.**	He speaks without any preparation.

173. But if the noun be understood, or placed at a distance, **ninguno** only can be used:—

Habla de cambios sin hacer **ninguno.**	He talks of changes without making any.
Compra libros, pero no lee **ninguno.**	He buys books, but reads none.

174. After the prepositions **sin,** *without*, and **antes de,** *before*, the negative forms **nadie, nada,** must be used, and not **alguien, algo**:—

Sin ver á nadie.	Without seeing anybody.
Antes de hacer nada.	Before doing anything.
Lee la carta sin decir nada.	He reads the letter without saying anything.

175. **Nada** is employed as an adverb with the meaning of *not at all, by no means.* When so used it sometimes discards the attendant negative **no**:—

No adelanta nada en sus estudios.	He does not advance at all in his studies.
No es nada evidente.	It is by no means evident.
Ella es nada bonita.	She is not at all pretty.

176. **Nada** may be followed directly by a qualifying adjective, which in that case is masculine:—

No tengo nada bonito.	I have nothing pretty.
No hace nada útil.	He does nothing useful.
No queremos hacer nada imprudente.	We do not want to do anything imprudent.

177. Both **alguno** and **ninguno** drop the final **o** when used as adjectives before masculine singular nouns. This occurs also when other words intervene, provided that **alguno** or **ninguno** properly belongs to and agrees with the noun in question:—

Ella tiene algún talento musical.	She has some musical talent.
Ella no tiene talento musical alguno.	She has no musical talent whatever.
¿Tiene V. algún buen café?	Have you any good coffee?
No tengo ninguno bueno.	I have none good.
No tenemos ningún buen tabaco.	We have no good tobacco.
No veo á ningún soldado.	I do not see any soldier.
No veo á ninguno de los soldados.	I do not see any of the soldiers.

Remark.—There is a popular tendency to drop the **a** of the feminine before a noun beginning with accented **a** or **ha**:—

Algún agua fresca (*for* **alguna** agua).	Any cool water.
Ningún alma viviente.	No living soul.

Vocabulary.

Acabar, to finish, complete.	**Firmar**, to sign.
Adelantar, to advance, progress.	**Matar**, to kill.
Apagar, to extinguish, put out.	**Obrar**, to act.
Arar, to plow.	**Pagar**, to pay.
Comprender, to understand.	**Pasar**, to pass.
Cortar, to cut.	**Pegar**, to beat.
Dibujar, to draw.	**Prestar**, to lend.
Emplear, to employ.	**Pronunciar**, to pronounce.
Encender (*irr.*), to light, kindle.	**Regalar**, to give, make a present of.
Escuchar, to listen to.	**Trabajar**, to work.
Evitar, to avoid.	**Viajar**, to travel.

Exercise XII.

Do you see any one in the street? I see a *negro* soldier and a man with a cart. What are you looking for in the drawer of my desk? I am looking for some cigars. I have no cigars, but my father has some. The lesson is rather difficult. It is not *possible* always to avoid the *society* of *ignorant* men. Do you see anything *incorrect* in my son's letter? No, it is faultless. The boy studies without learning anything. I (*f.*) am rather tired and do not want to go to the *theater*. We have some tall trees in front of our house, near the windows. The young man spends his money without buying anything useful. The colonel's house is at some *distance*. Our cellar is without any *ventilation*. Do you throw away anything? Yes, I throw away the sour apples. The *identity* of the *author* of the *document* is of no *importance*. Nobody wants to give anything to a drunken soldier.

The Moroccans are not at all enterprising. Your brother-in-law has no *patience* whatever with anybody. Is anybody sick in your house? Nobody. Do you (*pl.*) see anybody on top of the *aqueduct*? We see a man and a little boy. My brother has no money in his house, but he has some in the bank. I do not understand why my son does not advance in his studies.

LESSON XIII.

DERIVATIVE ADVERBS.

178. Derivative adverbs are formed from adjectives in Spanish by the addition of **mente**, which is equivalent to the English termination *ly*.

This **mente** was originally the ablative singular of the Latin *mens*, meaning (in post-classic Latin) *mode* or *manner*. As it was feminine in Latin it is joined to the feminine form of adjectives, with an analogy like this:—

claramente = *clará mente, in a clear manner* = *clearly*.

179. Adjectives ending in **o** add **mente** to the feminine singular form:—

Nuevamente, newly.	**Calladamente**, silently.
Perfectamente, perfectly.	**Públicamente**, publicly.

180. Other adjectives which have a distinct form for the feminine cannot take the affix **mente**; the result is obtained by a circumlocution with **de una manera**, *in a manner*:—

De una manera preguntona (*not* preguntonamente).	Inquisitively.
De una manera holgazana.	Idly, in an idle manner.

181. Adjectives having no separate form for the feminine, add **mente** to the common form:—

Felizmente, happily.	**Constantemente**, constantly.
Útilmente, usefully.	**Amablemente**, amiably.

182. Adverbs thus formed by the addition of **mente** are pronounced as two words, each part retaining its original accent, both written and spoken:—

Sólidamente, solidly.	**Cortésmente**, courteously
Poéticamente, poetically.	**Originalmente**, originally.

183. When two or more of these adverbs occur in immediate succession, only the last receives the termination **mente**, the others assuming the form they would have if **mente** were to be added. This takes place only when the several adverbs modify the same word:—

Escribe clara, concisa y elegantemente.	He writes clearly, concisely and elegantly.
Gradual pero imperceptiblemente.	Gradually but imperceptibly.

184. When the adverbs do not modify the same word, the repetition of **mente** may be avoided by replacing one of the adverbs by an appropriate noun preceded by **con**, *with*:—

Lee constantemente y estudia con diligencia (*instead of* estudia diligentemente).	He reads constantly and studies diligently.

185. This substitution of **con** and a noun is often made to avoid very long adverbs in **mente**; and, for the sake of euphony, to avoid adding **mente** to adjectives ending in **ente**; also where the termination **mente** would conflict with other words of similar sound; and generally where variety of style is desired. The substitution is not always practicable, and applies only to adverbs qualifying verbs. Examples:—

Industriosamente,	*or*	con industria.	Industriously.
Orgullosamente,	*or*	con orgullo.	Proudly.
Correctamente,	*or*	con corrección.	Correctly.
Fácilmente,	*or*	con facilidad.	Easily.
Perfectamente,	*or*	con perfección.	Perfectly.
Cómodamente,	*or*	con comodidad.	Comfortably.
Prudentemente,	*or*	con prudencia.	Prudently.

Ella escucha con paciencia (pacientemente) á su padre.	She listens patiently to her father.
Toca con frecuencia y corrección (*for* toca frecuente y correctamente).	She plays frequently and correctly

186. Further variety may be obtained by employing a phrase composed of **de una manera, de un modo,** followed by the appropriate adjective:—

De una manera uniforme. De un modo uniforme.	Uniformly, in a uniform manner.
De una manera completa y satisfactoria.	Completely and satisfactorily.

187. Derivative adverbs in **mente** may qualify adjectives, verbs or other adverbs:—

Ella es extremamente bonita.	She is extremely pretty.
Canta divinamente.	She sings divinely.
Dibuja admirablemente bien.	She draws admirably well.

188. The place of adverbs is before adjectives and after verbs. When the verb has an object, the adverb is usually placed immediately after the verb; when the adverb is short, this is the only position admissible:—

El sastre es horriblemente feo.	The tailor is horribly ugly.
Habla perfectamente el francés.	He speaks French perfectly.
Estudia con diligencia sus temas.	He studies his lessons diligently.
Hablan mal el idioma.	They speak the language badly.
V. habla bien el castellano.	You speak Spanish well.

189. The following simple prepositions are closely connected in meaning with the corresponding compound prepositions (already exhibited in Lesson XI) which are placed opposite them:—

Ante, before,	*with*	**delante de**, in front of.
Tras, after,	*with*	**detrás de**, after.
Bajo, under, beneath,	*with*	**debajo de**, under, below.
Sobre, on, upon, over,	*with*	**encima de**, on top of, on, over.

190. The most general distinction between them is that the latter are used only in a literal sense expressive of location; the former have also a tropical or figurative acceptation. Used literally, there is but slight difference between the values of any pair.

191. **Ante** means *in the presence of,*—i.e., of some person or tribunal,—as if for criticism or judgment. **Delante de** signifies

mere location *in front of*, without the idea of criticism implied by **ante**; any person or tangible thing may be its object:—

El capitán comparece ante el consejo de guerra.	The captain appears before the court martial.
Ante una comisión de peritos.	Before a committee of experts.
Pasar ante el foro crítico de la prensa.	To pass before the critical forum of the press.
Ante el tribunal de su conciencia.	Before the tribunal of his conscience
Ante las evidencias de la historia.	In the presence of the evidences of history.
Firma el testamento delante de testigos.	He signs the testament before witnesses.
El puesto de los trompetas es delante de la tropa.	The post of the trumpeters is in front of the troop.

REMARK.—Figuratively, **ante** denotes preference:—

La muerte ante la deshonra.	Death before dishonor.
Mi patria ante mi familia.	My country in preference to my family.

192. There is but little distinction between **tras** and **detrás de**, except that the former implies rather immediate proximity *behind*, and the latter is of more common occurrence. **Tras** is the word used in speaking of the succession of events or objects, as in a procession:—

Detrás de la mula; tras la mula.	Behind the mule; just behind the mule.
El perro corre tras la zorra.	The dog runs after the fox.
Tras la primavera viene el verano.	After the spring comes the summer.

193. In its primary use, **bajo** is interchangeable with **debajo de**, although the latter is of more frequent occurrence. **Bajo** also expresses the secondary sense of the English *under* in a variety of figures of speech in which actual location is not intended:—

Debajo de un árbol, de la mesa.	Under a tree, the table.
Debajo del agua, de la tierra.	Under water, underground.
Bajo el pretexto de enfermedad.	Under the pretext of sickness.
Bajo mis órdenes.	Under my orders (*fig.*).
Debajo de mi ventana.	Under my window (*lit.*).
Los documentos están bajo llave.	The documents are under lock and key.
La tarjeta está debajo de la llave.	The card is under the key.
Bajo un nombre supuesto.	Under a fictitious name.
Bajo pena de muerte.	Under penalty of death.

REMARK.—The antiquated preposition **so** is still used with the figurative meaning of **bajo** in a few phrases such as

So capa de.	Under pretext (*lit.* cloak) of.
So pena de.	Under penalty of.

194. Sobre, when it denotes actual location, is distinguished from **encima de** in this, that **encima**[1] implies elevation above the general level contemplated, while **sobre** may mean *over* or *upon* something low:—

Sobre la mesa ; sobre el suelo.	On the table ; on the floor.
Encima del campanario está una cruz.	On top of the steeple is a cross.
Encima de nuestras cabezas.	Over our heads.
La lluvia cae sobre la tierra.	The rain falls on the earth.
El atlas está encima del armario.	The atlas is on top of the book-case.

195. Sobre, when employed in a secondary sense, has the meaning of *on* or *over* without reference to actual location; it is also equivalent to *on* with the value of *about* or *concerning*:—

Sobre su buena conducta.	On his good behavior.
Estar sobre la alerta.	To be on the alert.
Desgracia sobre desgracia.	Misfortune upon misfortune.
Tiene una gran ventaja sobre sus rivales.	He has a great advantage over his rivals.
Conferencias sobre química.	Lectures on chemistry.
Pronuncia un discurso sobre el nuevo arancel.	He delivers a speech on the new tariff.

☞ Let the student make derivative adverbs from the adjectives in the following

Vocabulary.

Acertado, accurate.	**Dichoso,** happy.
Amistoso, friendly.	**Difícil,** difficult.
Ansioso, eager.	**Docto,** learned.
Atento, attentive.	**Fácil,** easy.
Caritativo, charitable.	**Inútil,** useless.
Cómodo, comfortable.	**Orgulloso,** proud.
Conciso, concise.	**Peligroso,** dangerous.
Contento, contented.	**Sabio,** wise.
Cortés, courteous, polite.	**Tranquilo,** tranquil.
Desagradable, disagreeable.	**Ventajoso,** advantageous.

NOTE.—The Spanish equivalents of adverbs in *ly* which may appear in italics in the exercises, are to be regularly constructed from the feminine form of the adjectives (obtained according to § 106).

[1] **Encima** is composed of **en,** *on,* and **cima,** *top* or *summit.* **Encima de** is, therefore, literally equivalent to the English *on top of.*

EXERCISE XIII.

Do you and your family live comfortably in the country? We live comfortably and tranquilly. It is *evident* that your son employs his money advantageously, because my brother says in his letter that he is *extremely* rich. The *artist* works diligently. Your dog barks *constantly*. I understand your theory *perfectly*. The *professor* writes *eloquently* on the misfortunes of the *American* Indians. Do you *ordinarily* take tea without sugar? She plays the *violin* sweetly and *artistically*. He spends his money uselessly and *extravagantly*. The *voracious* tiger runs after the Indian. The man listens in silence to the *importunities* of his wife. It is *impossible* to *estimate correctly* the *importance* of our system of *education*. I am going to *consult* an *oculist* to-morrow. The *revision* of the tariff is under the *direction* of a *special commission*. The key of my office is on the floor under the book-case. The young men are singing a *madrigal* under the girl's window. The boy throws the cup upon the (*al*) floor. The student-lamp is on the desk. We are going to buy some cigars before going to the *opera* (*f.* 3). My desk is in front of the window; your desk is near the door. The little girl is afraid to speak before the *professor*. The little dogs bark at the drunken old soldier.

LESSON XIV.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE AND THE PERFECT TENSE.

196. The past participle, in all the regular verbs, and indeed most of the irregular, is formed in Spanish by adding **ado** to the stem of verbs of the first conjugation, and **ido** to those of the second and third conjugations:—

Comprar; comprado.	To buy; bought.
Vender; vendido.	To sell; sold.
Vivir; vivido.	To live; lived.

197. Since the accent falls in all cases on the penultimate vowel of the termination, when **ido** is preceded by a strong vowel (**a**, **o**, **e**) the **i** must have the accent marked, to show there is no diphthong:—

Caer[1]; caído.	To fall; fallen.
Roer; roído.	To gnaw; gnawed.
Leer; leído.	To read; read.
Creer; creído.	To believe; believed.

[1] Irregular; introduced merely as an example.

198. A few verbs which are regular in all other respects have an irregularly-formed past participle:—

Abrir ; **abierto.**	To open ; opened.
Cubrir ; **cubierto.**	To cover ; covered.
Descubrir ; **descubierto.**	To discover ; discovered.
Escribir ; **escrito.**	To write ; written.
Imprimir ; **impreso.**	To print ; printed.
Romper ; **roto.**	To break ; broken.

199. The following are the past participles of all the irregular verbs thus far used in the exercises; those in ordinary type are regularly formed:—

Tener ; tenido.	Ser ; sido.	Hacer ; **hecho.**
Querer ; querido.	Estar ; estado.	Decir ; **dicho.**
Venir ; venido.	Ir ; ido.	Ver ; **visto.**

200. There are two equivalents of the English verb *have* in Spanish: **tener** and **haber**; they are not used interchangeably. The present indicative of **tener** has been already given; that of **haber** is as follows:—

Sing.	1st person.	**He.**	I have.
	2d person.	**Has.**	Thou hast.
	3d person.	**Ha.**	He, she, it has, you have.
Plur.	1st person.	**Hemos.**	We have.
	2d person.	**Habéis.**	Ye have.
	3d person.	**Han.**	They, you have.

201. Although **haber** was originally an independent active verb meaning to possess, it is no longer used as such except in a few phrases which are relics of its former usage, and occasionally in poetic or archaic style. Its present usage is as an auxiliary before a past participle, to form the compound tenses of all verbs.

202. The present indicative of **haber**, with a past participle, forms the *perfect tense*, or *past indefinite*, used in speaking of a past event without reference to any particular time; it then sometimes corresponds to the English *preterit*. It more generally conveys an allusion to the present time, and denotes an

action or occurrence of the present day, month, year or age; in this respect it corresponds to the English *perfect* tense. Examples:—

He aprendido el español en España.	I learned Spanish in Spain.
He pasado un mes en Egipto.	I spent a month in Egypt.
¿Ha copiado V. el informe?	Did you copy / Have you copied } the report?
He leído la carta de V.	I have read your letter.
Mi hermano ha llegado hoy.	My brother has arrived to-day.

203. The auxiliary **haber** must never be separated from the participle by another word; in a question, the subject usually follows the participle:—

No he vendido mi casa.	I have not sold my house.
He evitado siempre las discusiones inútiles.	I have always avoided useless discussions.
¿Ha estudiado V. la lección?	Have you studied the lesson?
¿Han llegado los amigos de V.?	Have your friends arrived?

204. When possession or ownership is to be indicated, **tener** is the verb used (as has already been shown). **Tener** is, indeed, sometimes used before a past participle, but not as a true auxiliary; it denotes the actual possession of an object upon which the action of the participle has been performed:—

Tenemos contado el dinero.	We have the money counted.
Tengo arado el campo.	I have got the field plowed.
El traje que tengo comprado.	The dress that I have bought.

205. The following comparison may serve to illustrate the difference between this use of **tener** and the auxiliary **haber**:—

He encendido el quinqué, would mean: *I have performed the act of lighting the lamp, irrespective of who possesses it.*

Tengo encendido el quinqué, would mean: *I have lighted the lamp and possess it in a lighted condition.* This mode of expression, however, is of unusual occurrence.

Tengo el quinqué encendido, would mean: *I have the lighted lamp, which another than myself may have lighted.* Here the participle is used merely as an adjective.

REMARK.—**Tener** is only applicable as an auxiliary to past participles which take a direct object. Thus it would be inadmissible to say :—

Tenemos estado ausentes.[1]	We have been absent.
Tienen padecido horriblemente.	They have suffered horribly.
El enfermo *tiene comido con apetito.*	The sick man has eaten with an appetite.

206. Other verbs besides **tener** are employed as *quasi*-auxiliaries, while retaining their original meaning; as for example:—

Hallar, to find.	**Dejar**, to leave.
Quedar, to remain.	**Descubrir**, to discover.
Llegar, to arrive.	**Caer**, to fall.

Deja cerrado el cajón.	He leaves the drawer closed.
Halla cerrado el cajón.	He finds the drawer closed.
Descubre escondido al muchacho.	He finds the boy hidden.
Mi padre llega cansado.	My father arrives tired.
El país queda inhabitado.	The country remains uninhabited.
El vaso cae roto al suelo.	The glass falls broken to the floor.

207. The past participle when conjugated with **haber** never agrees with its object, as it does, for instance, in French. With any other verb, or when no verb is expressed, the participle agrees with its object in gender and number, in the same manner as an adjective:—

He abierto la ventana.	I have opened the window.
Ella ha escrito la carta.	She has written the letter.
Ella tiene escrita la carta.	She has the letter written.
Tenemos pagados á los soldados.	We have got the soldiers paid off.
Ella ha dejado abierta la ventana.	She has left the window open.
Las cartas están mal escritas.	The letters are badly written.
Cartas recibidas ; visitas hechas.	Letters received ; visits made.

208. The past participle may be used in all respects as an adjective, and subject to the same conditions:—

Libros impresos ; una taza rota.	Printed books ; a broken cup.
Una casa nuevamente pintada.	A newly painted house.

---

[1] When part, or all, of a Spanish example is found in *italics*, it is so printed to show that it is incorrect, and is given merely as an example to be avoided.

209. Llevar is sometimes idiomatically used like **tener** in the manner of an auxiliary before a past participle, which then agrees with its object:—

Llevan estudiadas sus lecciones.	They have studied their lessons.
Llevo escritas tres cartas.	I have got three letters written.

210. Both **ser** and **estar** can be used before past participles, but the choice of the verb must depend on the nature of the idea to be expressed. **Estar** is oftener so employed, as the past participle commonly indicates a completed action, and therefore something temporary. Indeed when **ser** is used with the past participle, the latter often has the value of a noun; as:—

Juan **está** empleado.	John is (at present) employed.
Juan **es** empleado.	John is an employé, a clerk.

Vocabulary.

El informe, the report.
El poder, the power.
El celo, the zeal.
El sueño, the sleep.
El tiempo, the time; the weather.
El año, the year.
El mes, the month.
El día, the day.
La gramática, the grammar.
La voluntad, the will.
La honradez, the probity.
La vida, the life.
La muerte, the death.
La práctica, the practice.
La energía, the energy.
La entrada, the entrance, entry.

Quizás, **quizá**, perhaps.
Demasiado, too much.
Así, thus, so.
Arriba, above, up stairs.
Abajo, below, down stairs.
Casi, almost, nearly.
Apenas, hardly.
Entonces, then.
Luego, presently.
Pronto, soon.
Entre, between, among.
Según, according to.
Contra, against.
Mientras, while.
Si, if, whether.

Exercise XIV.

Where have you (*pl.*) been? We have been in the square before the king's *palace*. The soldiers have *fortified* the town. Have you *considered* the *natural consequences* of your *action*? We have *examined* the *evidence* and have arrived at the *conclusion* that (*de que*) it is not *sufficient*. The girl has gone to the *theater* with a young man against her father's will. The *notary* has come to *examine* the *testament*. The *professor* has finished a new and *revised edition* of his grammar. The *artist* has painted a portrait of the queen. I have listened to the *orator* with *attention*, but I have not under-

stood his speech. The dog has eaten the meat. Your son advances *rapidly* in his studies; he has nearly finished his English grammar. I have given my old hat and boots to the poor *Italian*. The table is between the door and the window. I saw the queen to-day in one of the windows of the *palace*. I have got the letter copied. Your servant-girl says that you have sold your library. It is not true; I have sold nothing. Did you go far to-day? I went outside of the *fortifications*. Did you find the book open? Yes. The boy is sick. Perhaps he has eaten too much. It is *possible*. Has the *architect* come? Yes, he is down stairs now. The girl plays the *piano* while her brother sings. I do not see the governess; where is she? She is up stairs with my mother. Have the books arrived? I am going to see now if they have arrived.

LESSON XV.

USE OF THE ARTICLES.

211. In a large number of cases, including those with which the learner will have to deal for some time, the use of the definite article is the same for both Spanish and English. In the majority of cases it is employed in naming some definite individual or individuals that have been spoken of or are well understood, or are specified by some qualifying word or phrase:—

La historia de **la** edad media es extremamente interesante.	*The* history of *the* middle ages is extremely interesting.
El presidente ha ido á Boston.	*The* president has gone to Boston.
Las naciones situadas en **la** costa occidental **del** continente américano.	The nations situated on *the* west coast of *the* American continent.

REMARK.—The leading instances of difference will be given here, a fuller discussion of the subject being reserved for Chapter XXVI of Part III.

212. The definite article is required in Spanish before nouns of either number employed in a general sense as representatives of their respective classes or species:—

El hombre es mortal.	Man is mortal.
El pan es nutritivo.	Bread is nutritious.
Las flores son el adorno de la tierra.	Flowers are the ornament of the earth.
Los caballos son animales útiles.	Horses are useful animals.

213. The same is true when the nouns represent, not visible objects, but abstract qualities or ideas:—

El tiempo es precioso.	Time is precious.
El sueño es necesario al hombre.	Sleep is necessary to man.
La prudencia es una parte importante **del** valor.	Prudence is an important part of valor.
He escrito una obra sobre **la** mineralogía.	I have written a work on mineralogy.
Las riquezas y **el** lujo fomentan **la** molicie y **la** pereza.	Riches and luxury nourish effeminacy and idleness.
La historia demuestra que **la** violencia hace los tiranos, **la** dulce autoridad hace los reyes.	History demonstrates that violence makes tyrants, mild authority makes kings.

214. So since a verbal noun, formed of the infinitive of a verb, expresses an act in an abstract manner, it is preceded by the masculine article **el**:—

El hablar demasiado es su falta principal.	Talking too much is his principal fault.
El comer y **el** beber son necesarios á **la** vida.	Eating and drinking are necessary to life.
El leer alto es buena práctica.	Reading aloud is good practice.
Su enfermedad proviene **del** excesivo fumar.	His illness proceeds from excessive smoking.

215. The article should generally be repeated before each noun. When the nouns are of different genders or numbers and stand as separate entities of primary importance in the sentence, each should have the article. When, however, the nouns are of secondary importance, and are closely connected with one another in meaning, the article may be more elegantly omitted before all but the first noun:—

Tengo una casa y un jardín.	I have a house and garden.
El padre y la madre tienen un coche y un caballo.	The father and mother have a horse and carriage.
La energía y celo que exhibe.	The energy and zeal which he exhibits.
El descuido y negligencia **del** coronel han sido fatales al regimiento.	The carelessness and negligence of the colonel have been fatal to the regiment.
La erudición y estudio que caracterizan sus producciones literarias.	The learning and research which characterize his literary productions.

216. So when several nouns refer to the mental properties of a person, the article may be omitted before all but the first; but if the nouns denote the actual possessions of the person, each requires the appropriate article:—

El celo (*m.*), inteligencia (*f.*) y honradez (*f.*) del empleado.	The zeal, intelligence and probity of the clerk.
El sombrero, las botas y la petaca del empleado.	The hat, boots and cigar-case of the clerk.

217. The article should not be repeated after **ó**, *or*, before a noun which is merely a synonym or explanation of the preceding noun:—

El vestíbulo ó entrada de la casa.	The vestibule or entry of the house.
Nueva Gerona es la capital ó ciudad principal de la Isla de Pinos.	New Gerona is the capital or the principal town of the Isle of Pines.

218. The indefinite article is not employed in Spanish before a noun in the predicate, used like an adjective to express some quality or character of the subject:—

Soy español y soldado.	I am *a* Spaniard and *a* soldier.
¿Es sastre su hermano de V.?	Is your brother *a* tailor?
No señor, es comerciante.	No, Sir, he is *a* merchant.

219. When any limiting expression is added to the noun in the predicate it ceases to have the nature of an adjective, and takes the indefinite article as in English:—

Soy un sastre desgraciado.	I am an unfortunate tailor.
Soy un español de familia noble.	I am a Spaniard of noble family.
Es un médico excelente.	He is an excellent physician.

220. But if an adjective and noun occur together so frequently as to become a kind of stereotyped expression, the article is omitted:—

Es buen católico.	He is *a* good Catholic.
Es gran orador.	He is *a* great orator.

221. Usually names of countries require the definite article, except when governed by a preposition:—

La Francia tiene posesiones en África.	France has possessions in Africa.
La Rusia tiene un territorio vasto.	Russia has a vast territory.

La Inglaterra es una gran potencia marítima.	England is a great maritime power.
Vengo de Francia y voy á España.	I come from France and am going to Spain.
La reina de Inglaterra está ahora en Italia.	The queen of England is at present in Italy.

222. However, a few geographical names of places remote from Spain take the article at all times, as do all others when limited by an adjective:—

El Japón, el Canadá, la Florida.	Japan, Canada, Florida.
El Brasil, el Ecuador, el Perú.	Brazil, Ecuador, Peru.
La Europa católica.	Catholic Europe.
La Francia meridional.	Southern France.
El Asia Central.	Central Asia.

223. Names of rivers and mountains require the definite article:—

El Vesuvio; el Hélicon; el Chimborazo.	Vesuvius; Mt. Helicon; Chimborazo.
Los Alpes; los Andes; los Pirineos.	The Alps; the Andes; the Pyrenees.
El Tajo; el San Lorenzo; el Misuri.	The Tagus; the St. Lawrence; the Missouri.

224. The so-called neuter form of the article, **lo**, is used only before adjectives, participles or adjective pronouns to express their value taken abstractly as nouns. It is not employed in the plural:—

Lo útil.	What is useful, utility.
Lo agradable.	What is agreeable, agreeableness.
Lo mío.	Whatever is mine, my property.
Lo americano.	Whatever is American.
Lo hecho; lo dicho.	What is done; what has been said.
En lo pasado.	In the past.
Han hecho lo posible.	They have done what was possible.
Según lo determinado.	According to what has been determined.
Lo claro de la frase.	The clearness of the phrase.
Lo curioso del asunto.	The curious part of the matter.
Hemos proveído lo necesario.	We have provided what is necessary.
Preferimos lo útil á lo puramente ornamental.	We prefer the useful to the purely ornamental.

225. The subject is frequently placed after the verb in Spanish without affecting the meaning, but merely giving animation and variety to the sentence:—

Llama la madre á la niña.	The mother calls the girl.
Aprendemos nosotros el castellano.	We are learning Spanish.
Necesita V. comprar una gramática elemental.	You need to buy an elementary grammar.
No quiero yo el caballo.	I do not want the horse.

REMARK.—The general effect of removing any word from its natural place is to impart emphasis by attracting attention.

226. In interrogative sentences it is considered more elegant to place the predicate before the subject, provided the latter be not a pronoun:—

¿Es nuevo el sombrero de V.?	Is your hat new?
¿Es clara y fresca el agua?	Is the water clear and cool?
¿Es soldado su hermano de V.?	Is your brother a soldier?
¿Tiene dinero el hombre?	Has the man any money?
¿Tienen ellos dinero?	Have they any money?

Vocabulary.

El ejemplar, the specimen; copy (*of a book*).
El viajero, the traveller.
El guía, the guide.
El bosque, the forest, woods.
El valor, the value.
El comandante, the commander.
El oficial, the officer.
El ejército, the army.
El brazo, the arm (*member*).
El tratado, the treatise; treaty.
La ciencia, the science, knowledge.
La muestra, the sample.
La montaña, the mountain.
La superficie, the surface.
La madera, the wood (*material*).
La leña, the firewood.
La caballería, the cavalry.
La naturaleza, the nature; Nature.
La pobreza, the poverty.
La locura, the folly, madness.
La historia, the history.

EXERCISE XV.

I have looked for the grammar in the book-case and on the table. Have you said anything to the *president* about the matter? No, I haven't said a word; I have had no *opportunity*. It is *impossible* to *form* an *adequate idea* of the *immensity* of *space*. *Geography* is the *description* of the earth's surface; *geology* is the science of the *structure* of the earth below the surface. To speak when no one listens is folly. Great poverty is a great misfortune. *Space* is *infinite extension*. I am a great traveller; I have seen an *eruption*

of *Vesuvius* (*m.*), I have travelled in *Central Asia* (*f.*), I have *visited* the *mines* of *Peru* (*m.*), I have discovered a *tributary* of the *Congo* (*m.*) in *Africa* (*f.* 3) and have been within the *Antarctic Circle*. You have, have you? Nature paints the flowers of the field and the leaves of the forest. The *prudent* man avoids the evil * and seeks the good *. We have written a letter to the *general* or commander of the army. *Chimborazo* (*m.*) is a high mountain of *Ecuador* (*m.*). *Central America* (*f.* 3) has great forests of *precious* woods. The dangerousness * of the *expedition* is *indisputable*. It is *necessary* to avoid *artificiality* * and to seek *naturalness* *. Are you not a colonel of cavalry? No, Sir, I am a captain of artillery. What did you throw on the (*al*) floor? A copy of a treatise on *spiritualism*. I have a sample of cloth made of [the] wool of [the] *vicuña*. Is your brother a good soldier? Soldier! my brother is no soldier; he is an officer.

LESSON XVI.

SPANISH FORMS OF ADDRESS.

Señor (*abbrev.* **Sr.**), Lord, Sir, Mr.
Señorito, Mr., "Master."
Caballero, gentleman, Sir.
Don (*abbrev.* **Dn.** *or* **D.**), Mr.
Señora (*abbrev.* **Sra.**), lady, Madam, Mrs.
Señorita (*abbrev.* **Srita.** *or* **Sta.**), Miss, young lady.
Doña (*abbrev.* **Dña.** *or* **Da.**), Miss *or* Mrs.

227. In their original significations, **señor** meant *senior* or *elder*; **caballero**, a *horseman* or *knight*; while **Don** was the title of nobility. Their modern usage is quite different, and depends in some degree on whether they are employed *directly* in speaking *to* a person, or *indirectly*, in speaking *about* one.

Señor, in the pulpit, means *Lord*, is written with a capital, and may or may not have the article, as in English: **el Señor**, *the Lord*. As a noun it indicates the master or owner of a thing: **servir á dos señores**, *to serve two masters*. **El señor** is used familiarly by servants in speaking of the master of the house (who is also called **el amo**, "*the boss*").

Señor, followed by a family name, is equivalent to the English

* Nouns designated by an asterisk are to be rendered by an adjective with the neuter article.

Mr.; when so used indirectly, it must be accompanied by the definite article:—

DIRECT ADDRESS:	**Señor Varas.**	Mr. Varas.
INDIRECT REFERENCE:	**El señor Varas.**	

228. Caballero, as a noun, corresponds to the English *gentleman*:—

Este caballero es mi hijo.	This gentleman is my son.
Es usted un caballero.	You are a gentleman.

When employed by themselves in direct address, **señor** and **caballero** correspond to the English *Sir*,—in the plural, *Gentlemen*. There is but little difference in their usage among equals, except that **caballero** is slightly more formal. **Señor**, moreover, has an inherent meaning of respect; it is therefore the word used by servants and inferiors, and by children to their elders. An indignant young lady would say to a presumptuous admirer: ¡ **Caballero** ! *Sir!* and not ¡ **Señor** ! which would imply respect.

229. Señora is the feminine equivalent of both **señor** and **caballero** in all their meanings:—

Nuestra Señora.	Our Lady (the Virgin Mary).
La señora.	The mistress, lady of the house.
Buenos días, señora.	Good day, ma'am.
La Señora Fortuna.	Dame Fortune.
Ella es una verdadera señora.	She is a true lady.

A gentleman, in speaking politely of his wife, may say **mi señora**, although **mi esposa** is more usual; but in referring to the wife of another he will invariably use **señora**:—

¿Cómo está la señora de V.?	How is Mrs. So-and-so?
El Sr. Sánchez no viene hoy; su señora está mala.	Mr. Sánchez is not coming to-day, his wife is ill.

REMARK.—The wife may refer jocularly to her lord and master as **mi señor**, but the usual expression is **mi marido** or, more formally, **mi esposo**. In speaking *to* his wife, the husband generally says **mujer**, *wife*.

230. Señorito is merely a diminutive form of **señor**. It is seldom used, except familiarly and by servants, and corresponds to the English *Master*, (as *Master Tommy*,) or *young gentleman*.

231. Señorita, diminutive of **señora**, in direct address corresponds to the English *Miss*: **buenos días, señorita**, *good day,*

Miss. **Sí señorita,** *yes, Miss.* Indirectly it is equivalent to *young lady* :—

Una señorita está á la puerta.	There is a young lady at the door.

232. Don and **Doña** are peculiarly Spanish, and are only used in conjunction with baptismal or given names. It is more usual in Spain to speak of persons by their Christian name preceded by **Don** or **Doña**, than by their family name preceded by **Señor, Señora**. The author remembers many acquaintances in Spain whom he daily addressed as **Don Ramón, Don Joaquín, Doña Concha**, etc., whose family names he never learned. In South America the practice of using **Señor, Señora** and the family name is gaining ground, there being an inherent dislike to **Don** since it was originally a title of nobility.

a. **Doña** is applied to any lady, whether married or single.

b. **Don** may be preceded by **Señor**, and **Doña** by **Señora** or **Señorita**, thus conveying more respect, and in the last case showing whether the lady is married or not.

233. There are but four proper ways of addressing a given gentleman or lady, as follows (supposing the lady to be single) :—

Señor Don Ricardo Villafranca.	Señorita Doña Laura Tascón.
Señor Villafranca.	Señorita Tascón.
Don Ricardo.	Doña Laura.
Señor Don Ricardo.	Señorita Doña Laura.

234. In referring to the near relatives of a person with whom one is speaking, politeness demands that their names be preceded by **Señor, Señora** or **Señorita**, as the case may require :—

He recibido una carta del Sr. padre de Vd. (*or* de su Sr. padre).	I have received a letter from your father.
¿Han llegado las señoritas hermanas de Vd. (*or* sus señoritas hermanas)?	Have your sisters arrived?
He visto hoy á la Sra. madre de Vd. (*or* á su Sra. madre).	I have seen your mother to-day.

235. It is desirable to give some explanation of the complex Spanish family names. Let the following example suffice :—

A gentleman, **el Sr. D. Juan Francisco Velarde y Núñez** (**Velarde** being the family name of his father, and **Núñez** that of his mother [1]) marries **la**

[1] The mother's name is sometimes represented by an initial; thus

señorita Doña Luisa Gutiérrez y Romero. On entering the state of matrimony the lady's name is changed to **Señora Doña Luisa Gutiérrez de Velarde.** The children of this union, assuming the family names of both parents, are called as follows :—

Señor Don José Velarde y Gutiérrez,
Señor Don Manuel Velarde y Gutiérrez, *and*
Señorita Doña Elena Velarde y Gutiérrez.

REMARK.—The **y** connecting the last two names is sometimes omitted, producing names like the following :—

Sr. D. Carlos Martínez Silva ; Sr. D. Joaquín Arrieta Rossi.

Occasionally a man is commonly known by merely his father's name, as in English ; still in all formal cases the mother's family name is necessary.

In Spain gentlemen of landed estate frequently, and noblemen generally, assume the name of their estate preceded by **de**[1]:—

Sr. D. Diego Hurtado de Mendoza ; Sr. D. Tomás García de Villanueva.

The family name, unaccompanied by title or baptismal name, is used familiarly among men just as in English. But it is always the paternal name which is so used ; thus **el Sr. D. Joaquín Arrieta Rossi** and **el Sr. D. Juan Francisco Durán y Gómez** would call each other **Arrieta** and **Durán.** It is a peculiarity worthy of notice that ladies make use of the same mode of expression in speaking of or to their intimate gentlemen friends, implying no discourtesy thereby, but merely friendly confidence.

236. In indirect reference the Spanish use the definite article before all titles when followed by the names of persons. The article is omitted in direct address:—

El rey don Alfonso doce.	King Alphonso Twelfth.
El general Caamaño.	General Caamaño.
El presidente Núñez.	President Núñez.
El padre Nicolás.	Father Nicholas.

---

supposing two brothers bearing the name **López y Valdés**, the one marrying **la Srita. de Pacheco y Díaz**, and the other **la Srita. de Mutis y Ochoa**, and each having a son named **Juan**, these two cousins would be perfectly distinguishable if they signed themselves respectively **Juan López P.** and **Juan López M.**

[1] The use of **de** in Spanish family names is now purely optional, and is no longer an indication of nobility, as it is in French. It is, moreover, customarily, though not invariably, placed before the family names of women,—the father's name if the lady be unmarried, the husband's if married ; thus : **la Srita. Da. Anita de Quiroga y Ortiz, la Sra. Da. María de Torres y Adán.**

237. In direct address, **señor** precedes the title, which it sometimes does in indirect reference:—

Buenos días, señor Doctor.	Good day, Doctor.
¿Cómo está V., señor General?	How are you, General?
Señorita, tengo el honor de presentar á V. el señor Coronel Quevedo de nuestro regimiento.	I have the honor, Miss, to present to you Colonel Quevedo of ours.

238. There are three peculiar words in Spanish, **fulano, mengano** and **zutano,** employed to indicate persons whose names we either do not know or recollect, or do not care to mention, as in the *dramatis personæ* of anecdotes. They are used only in the singular, and if relating to a female, change the final **o** to **a.** The last two enumerated designate additional personages only, and therefore never appear without **fulano.**

Remark.—When used without the others, **fulano** generally assumes the form of **fulano de tal,** or, in mock politeness, **Don Fulano de tal, fulano** representing the Christian name, and **tal** (*so-and-so*) the family name of the individual.

They are somewhat analogous characters to the litigious *John Doe* and *Richard Roe,* with whom law students are familiar, or to the factitious *Smith, Brown* and *Robinson* of the humorous column.

The Most Usual Spanish Baptismal Names.

Alfonso, Alphonso.
Andrés, Andrew.
Benito, Benedict.
Carlos, Charles.
Diego, James.
Enrique, Henry.
Fernando, Ferdinand.
Francisco, Francis.
  Paco, Frank. (*Familiar.*)
Gerónimo, Jerome.
Joaquín, Joachim.
José, Joseph.
  Pepe, Joe. (*Familiar.*)
Juan, John.
Manuel, Emmanuel.
Miguel, Michael.
Pedro, Peter.
Ramón, Raymond.
Vicente, Vincent.

Ana, Anne, Anna.
Catalina, Catharine.
Elena, Helen.
Enriqueta, Harriet.
Francisca, Frances.
  Paca, Fanny. (*Familiar.*)
Inés, Agnes.
Isabel, Isabella, Elisabeth.
Josefa, Josephine.
  Pepa, Josie. (*Familiar.*)
Juana, Jane.
Manuela, Emma.
María, Mary.

The following are very common, but have no equivalents in English :—

Concha, *for* **María de la Concepción.**
Dolores, *for* **María de los Dolores.**
Mercedes, *for* **María de las Mercedes.**
Rosario, *for* **María del Rosario.**

EXERCISE XVI.

My brother-in-law, Mr. Valdivieso, is an officer of the *Argentine* army. Madam, what does your husband teach in the Academy? He teaches *philosophy* and history. The *nations* of Europe understand and fear the *consequences* of a great war. The good man does not fear death. Miss* Harriet has painted a portrait of her brother-in-law, Mr. Álvarez. Mr.* Alphonso lives with his mother, drinks wine, smokes cigars, talks with *arrogance* and does nothing useful. Mr.* John lives in the country but works in the city. Joe lives near the forest; he has an old, blind horse and a cart. Good-day, *Professor*, I have read your history of (*sobre*) the *American* Indians; it is a work of great *erudition*. I have seen your brother's *collection* of *minerals*; he has some specimens of *metallic* arsenic, *asphaltum, coral, lava, magnesia, nitre, natural ochre* (*m.*) and *zinc*. I am an old and unfortunate soldier; I have lost an arm in the *service* of my country. I am going to the *dentist's*. I have not seen your wife; where is she? She is upstairs with her mother. The servant-girl plays the *piano* when her mistress is out. Good-day, Mr.* Raymond, is Miss* Emma at home? No, Miss, she has gone to the *National Museum* with Miss* Rosario Garcés. And your wife, Mrs.* Concha, is she at home? She too is out; she has gone to Mrs. Sáenz Peña's. My uncle, Mr. Peter González, has bought a large *hotel* (*m.*) near the store of your friend Mr. *Horace* Lisca.

LESSON XVII.

THE GENDER OF NOUNS.

239. There are no available rules for determining the gender of Spanish nouns. The gender of a great part must be learned separately for each noun, in the same manner as the spelling of many words in English. It is true there is usually a reason for the gender assigned to a word, but it must often be sought in the language from which the word is derived, and may be obscure or untraceable.

But few of the languages of the world maintain a grammatical distinction of masculine and feminine genders—at the outset a distinction of male and female beings. Still fewer divide the masculine into two, thus making a masculine, a feminine and a neuter. These three genders were recognized in the Latin; but the languages derived from it have allowed the neuter

---

* When marked by an asterisk, *Mr.* is to be rendered **Don**, and *Miss* or *Mrs.*, by **Doña**.

generally to sink back into the masculine, and so masculine nouns are greatly in the majority. Spanish and Portuguese are the only Romance tongues which retain any trace of the neuter.

English is the only language that bases grammatical gender on the nature of things—males are masculine, females feminine, and everything else neuter. But in other languages fancy has been as potent as fact. The broad natural distinction is pretty well maintained as regards human beings and large and well-known animals; but beyond these a gender is assigned to each object with little regard to its nature.

Nevertheless there are some general considerations which are of great aid to the learner:—

1ST. AS REGARDS SIGNIFICATION:—

240. Names and designations of men, and the males of large and well-known animals, are masculine, irrespective of termination:—

El monarca, the monarch.	**El centinela**, the sentinel.
El cardenal, the cardinal.	**El caballo**, the horse.
El cura, the priest.	**El león**, the lion.

Similarly, designations of females are feminine:—

La reina, the queen.	**La lavandera**, the laundress.
La ninfa, the nymph.	**La vaca**, the cow.
La hurí, the houri.	**La gallina**, the hen.

These rules outweigh all others.

241. The proper names of countries, districts or divisions of territory are masculine, except when they terminate in unaccented **a**:—

El Perú ha sido desgraciado.	Peru has been unfortunate.
Chile es largo y estrecho.	Chile is long and narrow.
Aragón está limitado al norte por los Pirineos.	Aragon is bounded on the north by the Pyrenees.
El Canadá es una posesión inglesa.	Canada is an English possession.
España está colocada en el extremo sudoeste de Europa.	Spain is placed in the extreme southwest of Europe.
La Australia no ha sido enteramente explorada.	Australia has not been entirely explored.

242. The proper names of oceans, rivers, mountains and mountain chains are masculine, irrespective of termination, except in those cases where the name is a mere epithet, properly feminine, and not originally a proper name:—

El Atlántico, the Atlantic.
El Amazonas, the Amazon.
El Tajo, the Tagus.
El Sena, the Seine.
El Magdalena, the Magdalena (*in Colombia*).
El Etna, Mt. Etna.
Los Andes, the Andes.
El Imalaya, the Himalaya mountains.

but

La Sierra Nevada, the Snowy Range. **La Silla**, the Saddle (*in Venezuela*).

There are some reputable authors who give the feminine gender to names of rivers ending in **a** : **la Sena**, **la Mosela**. Usage, however, is to the contrary. It is to be noted that the fuller forms **el Río de la Plata**, **el Río de la Magdalena**, **el Río de las Amazonas**, when shortened are **el Plata**, **el Magdalena**, **el Amazonas**. This second form has sometimes caused the first to be forgotten ; thus no one says to-day **el Río de los Manzanares**, as it no doubt was at first, but **el Manzanares** [1].

243. With respect to the proper names of cities, towns and villages, no absolute rules can be laid down. The greater number are feminine, irrespective of termination; others follow the gender of their terminations, i.e. are masculine except when ending in **a**. But even those in **a** are considered as masculine when they stand for the inhabitants of the city; while the same name is sometimes treated as masculine and at others as feminine :—

Toledo está casi circundada por el Tajo.	Toledo is almost surrounded by the Tagus.
Jérez es famoso por sus vinos.	Sherry is famous for its wines.
Lugo y Orense están colocadas sobre el Miño.	Lugo and Orense are placed on the [river] Miño.
Nueva York ; Nueva Orleans.	New York ; New Orleans.
Madrid está situado (*or* situada) en una extensa planicie.	Madrid is situated on an extensive plain.
Sevilla es hermosa.	Seville is beautiful.
Todo Sevilla está interesado.	All Seville is interested.

244. Infinitives, phrases, and indeclinable parts of speech, used for the nonce as nouns,—like the English expressions *the ups and downs*, *the why and the wherefore*, *ifs and ands*,—belong to the class of neuters which return to the masculine :—

El comer y beber.	Eating and drinking.
El sí. El pero.	The affirmative. The but
El pro y el contra.	The pro and con.

[1] Small stream on which Madrid is situated.

245. The names of the letters of any alphabet are feminine, as connected with **la letra**, *the letter*. Thus: **la a, una B grande, las cees; la guímel, la delta, la ómega.** Nevertheless some authors treat the letters of the Greek and Hebrew alphabets as masculine, and **delta** when applied to the triangular island at the mouth of a river, is masculine, according to the Academy:—

El delta del Nilo.	The Nile delta.

2D. AS REGARDS TERMINATION:—

246. Nouns ending in **o** are masculine, except **la mano**, *the hand*; **la nao**, *the ship* (*poet.*); **la seo**, *the church* (*provinc.*). **Reo**, *culprit*, and **testigo**, *witness*, take either **el** or **la** as the case may require.

Those ending in **a** are principally feminine. · Except: **el día**, *the day*; **el cometa**, *the comet*; **el planeta**, *the planet*; **el mapa**, *the map*; and a number of words of Greek origin ending in **ma**[1], as:—

El programa, the program.	**El dilema**, the dilemma.
El fantasma, the phantom.	**El lema**, the lemma.

Those ending in **dad, tad, tud, ión, umbre, ie**, are feminine. In addition, the genders of a large number of nouns will be found in the list of terminations given on pp. 47–48.

☞ These are all the rules of any value which can be given. The learner will sometimes be helped by the etymology of the word in question; but the simplest and easiest way is to learn the appropriate article in connection with each noun, and associate them together. The only resource in all cases of doubt is the dictionary.

247. Nouns designating rank or relationship are used in the masculine plural to denote individuals of both sexes:—

Los reyes.	The king and queen.
Los presidentes.	The president and lady.
Los esposos.	The husband and wife.
Mis padres.	My parents, my father and mother.
Mis parientes.	My relations (*of both sexes*).

[1] This **ma** was in Greek *ματ*, *mat*, the *t* being a sign of the neuter gender, corresponding to the Latin *id*, illu*d*, istu*d*, and the English i*t*, tha*t* and wha*t*.

Los señores.	The gentleman and lady.
Los señores Vargas.	Mr. and Mrs. Vargas.
Los niños.	The children.
Los hijos de V.	Your children (*sons and daughters*).

248. A large number of nouns ending in **o** change it to **a** to form the feminine. This is especially exemplified in nouns of relationship, as will be seen in the following

Vocabulary.

El abuelo, the grandfather.	**La abuela**, the grandmother.
El nieto, the grandson.	**La nieta**, the granddaughter.
El hijo, the son.	**La hija**, the daughter.
El hermano, the brother.	**La hermana**, the sister.
El tío, the uncle.	**La tía**, the aunt.
El sobrino, the nephew.	**La sobrina**, the niece.
El primo, the cousin (*male*).	**La prima**, the cousin (*female*).
El suegro, the father-in-law.	**La suegra**, the mother-in-law.
El cuñado, the brother-in-law.	**La cuñada**, the sister-in-law.
El viudo, the widower.	**La viuda**, the widow.
El soltero, the bachelor.	**La soltera**, the maiden lady.
El muchacho, the boy.	**La muchacha**, the girl.
El niño, the boy child.	**La niña**, the girl child, the girl.
El huérfano, the orphan (*male*).	**La huérfana**, the orphan (*female*).
El amigo, the friend (*male*).	**La amiga**, the friend (*female*).
El conocido, the acquaintance.	**La conocida**, the acquaintance.
El cocinero, the [male] cook.	**La cocinera**, the [female] cook.
El criado, the man servant.	**La criada**, the servant-girl.
El vecino, the neighbor.	**La vecina**, the neighbor.
El parroquiano, the customer.	**La parroquiana**, the customer.

EXERCISE XVII.

I often see your cousin in the market-place ; where is he employed now? He is employed in the custom-house. The children have filled the poor widow's basket with bread, meat, coffee and sugar.[1] The sentinel is drunk ; he has left his gun under a tree. Is your nephew a bachelor? No, he is a widower. Did you find any *grammatical* errors in my letter? No, but I have made some changes in the *orthography*. Is it true that your mother-in-law has arrived from New York? Why is your friend, Mr. Rodríguez, happy? Because he has a good wife, pretty children, a comfortable house, polite servants, an *excellent* cook, pleasant neighbors and rich customers. Is your father's office far from his house? Yes, it is rather far ; it is near the

[1] Transpose : have filled with bread, . . . the basket of the . . .

Central National Bank. I do not understand why my son does not progress in his studies; it is *evident* that he studies with *diligence* and that he has a good *preceptor*. Perhaps his lessons are difficult or his books are not *intelligible*. Does your niece play German or *Italian music*? She *generally* plays German *music*. Your grandson is well *educated*; he speaks English, French and German *perfectly*; plays the *piano*, *violin* and guitar; sings well; draws and paints *admirably*, and is an *author* of some *celebrity*. My grandfather has written me (*me ha escrito*) a long letter on the value of *economy*. I have always avoided *political discussions* because they are useless.

LESSON XVIII.

SUBSTANTIVE COMBINATIONS. COMPOUND NOUNS. COMPOSITE ADJECTIVE EXPRESSIONS.

249. By *substantive combinations* are here intended two or more nouns, generally connected by prepositions, used together to denote a particular object.

The English language has a remarkable facility in using almost any noun as an adjective before other nouns, as: *clover honey*, *snipe shooting*, *school system*. When the words become habitually associated it is usual to link them together with hyphens: *arm-chair*, *law-maker*, *water-hemp-agrimony*. When a combination has been long in use, the hyphen is dropped, and the parts become a single word: *penknife*, *horseman*, *hedgehog*.

This use of nouns is very limited in Spanish. In the few existing examples the secondary or qualifying noun, since it is used as an adjective, follows the principal noun, as an adjective would. The gender of the combination is that of the principal noun:—

El cura párroco.	The parish priest.
La escuela-modelo.	The model school.
La lengua madre.	The mother tongue.
La tierra virgen.	The virgin soil.
La finca-modelo.	The model farm.
La aguagoma.	The gum-arabic water.

Remark.—Exceptions exist in a few neologisms which are imitations of English and contrary to the genius of Spanish; as: **la madre patria**, *the mother country*, (better **el país natal**;) **el papel moneda**, *the paper money*.

250. The principal method of combining nouns in Spanish is by placing the secondary noun last, and connecting the two by **de**:—

El puerto de mar.	The seaport.
El traje de baile.	The ball-dress.
La sortija de matrimonio.	The wedding-ring.
El caballo de silla.	The saddle-horse.
La granada de mano.	The hand-grenade.
La cuchara de mesa.	The tablespoon.
El jugo de limón.	The lemon-juice.

251. If, however, the secondary noun should express the purpose or use for which the first is intended, the preposition **para**, *for*, is used instead of **de**:—

El vaso para cerveza.	The beer-glass.
El molde para ladrillos.	The brick-mould.
La prensa para sidra.	The cider-press.
La percha para sombreros.	The hat-rack.
El estante para libros.	The book-case.
El canal para buques.	The ship-canal.

252. It has been explained that the Spanish infinitive is used as a verbal noun corresponding to the English verbal in *-ing*. Consequently, in the secondary term of combinations of this character, Spanish employs the infinitive of the verb where English uses the present participle:—

La prensa de copiar.	The copying-press.
La máquina de coser.	The sewing-machine.
La pluma de dibujar.	The drawing-pen.
El papel de filtrar.	The filtering-paper.
La mesa para escribir.	The writing-table.

253. More complex ideas have to be expressed in Spanish word by word, the order being exactly the reverse of the English:—

El aceite de semillas de algodón.	The cotton-seed oil.
La aguja para máquina de coser.	The sewing-machine needle.
El sistema de abastecimiento de agua.	The water-supply system.
La máquina de torcer cuerdas.	The rope twisting machine.
La prensa de embalar heno.	The hay-packing press.
La prensa de imprimir en colores.	The color-printing press.
El agua de blanquear la tela.	The cloth-bleaching liquid.

El molino de pulverizar el vidrio.	The glass-pulverizing mill.
El horno de fundir el mineral.	The ore-smelting furnace.
La máquina de hacer tipos de madera.	The block-letter-cutting machine.
La prensa de cilindro de entintamiento automático.	The self-inking cylinder-press.

There are three other methods of expressing composite ideas such as we have been considering, but the learner with his present knowledge is not prepared to apply them correctly. They are :—

a. The qualifying noun is replaced by a true adjective :—

El agua llovediza.	The rain-water.
Un viento marero.	A sea-breeze.

Still, in such cases two nouns connected by **de** can generally be used instead; thus **el agua de lluvia** and **un viento de mar** would be equally correct with the above.

b. A derivative is formed of the primitive word by adding a termination. These terminations will be treated of at length hereafter. (*V.* Part III, Chapter XXIV.) Examples :—

El azucarero.	The sugar-bowl.
La librería.	The bookstore.
El rosal.	The rosebush.

c. The idea is expressed by an entirely different word :—

La crin.	The horsehair.
La petaca.	The cigar-case.

COMPOUND NOUNS.

254. In Spanish, *compound nouns* are nouns formed by the combination of words which are also used separately. Nouns containing particles no longer in use alone, and those composed of parts that are distinct and separable only in some other language, cannot be considered as compounds in Spanish.

The class of compound nouns is not numerous. Very few are composed only of nouns; far the greater number are made by prefixing the stem of a verb to a noun, a few by the combination of a noun and adjective, while a rabble of scattering nouns are formed by the combination of almost any parts of speech:—

El pasatiempo (pasa-tiempo, *pass-time*), the pastime.
El mondadientes (monda-dientes, *clean-teeth*), the tooth-pick.
El espantapájaros (espanta-pájaros, *scare-birds*), the scarecrow.
El pararayos (para-rayos, *stop-lightnings*), the lightning-rod.
El portafusil (porta-fusil, *carry-musket*), the sling (*of musket*).
La sinrazón (sin-razón, *without-reason*), the injustice.

Los quehaceres (que-haceres, *what-to-do's*), the chores.
El quedirán (qué-dirán, *what-will-they-say*), the public opinion.
El correveidile (corre-vé-y-dí-le, *run-go-and-tell-him*), the tattler.
El hazmerreír [1] (haz-me-reír, *make-me-laugh*), the guy, laughing-stock.
El limpiachimeneas (limpia-chimeneas, *clean-chimneys*), the chimney-sweep.
El guardapolvo (guarda-polvo, *guard-dust*), the dust-protector.
La enhorabuena (en-hora-buena, *in-good-hour*), the congratulation.
El matasiete (mata-siete, *kill-seven*), the bully, blusterer, fire-eater.

255. No rules can be laid down for determining the gender of a given compound noun. Those denoting males are masculine, females, feminine; otherwise the gender of each must be learned separately. However, where there are no determining circumstances, presumption is largely in favor of the masculine. Their irregularities of gender are apparent from the following list:—

El cortafuego.	Wall for checking the progress of fire.
El cortaplumas.	The penknife.
El aguardiente.	The brandy.
La aguamiel.	The metheglin.
Las enaguas.	The skirt, petticoat.
El ferrocarril.	The railroad.
La bocacalle.	The mouth of a street.
El lavamanos.	The wash-stand.
El limpiabotas.	The boot-black.
El lugarteniente.	The lieutenant.
La maniobra.	The handiwork, manœuvre.
La madreselva.	The honeysuckle.
La matacandelas.	The candle-snuffer, extinguisher.
El matasanos.	The quack.
El mondadientes.	The toothpick.
El mondaorejas.	The ear-spoon.
El paraguas.	The umbrella.
El *or* los paracaídas.	The parachute.
El pasamano.	The handrail.
El picaporte.	The pick-lock, skeleton key.
El picaflor.	The humming-bird.
El picamaderos.	The woodpecker.
El portamonedas.	The coin-purse, portemonnaie.
El tiralíneas.	The ruling-pen.
El tirabotas.	The boot-hook (*for drawing on boots*).
La sacabalas.	The ball-forceps.

[1] The initial **r** of **reir** is doubled to preserve the rolling sound between vowels. (§ 16.)

El sacabotas.	The bootjack.
El sacacorchos, el tirabuzón.	The corkscrew.
El sacamuelas.	The [bungling] dentist.
La sacafilásticas.	The spike-extractor (*for artillery*).
El salvavidas.	The life-boat.
La sinrazón.	The injustice.

COMPOSITE ADJECTIVE EXPRESSIONS.

256. In English many adjective expressions are composed of an adjective connected by a hyphen with a noun which assumes the termination of a past participle,—the combination meaning *provided with* whatever is expressed by the noun. The value is expressed in Spanish by the use of the preposition **de**:—

Una niña de ojos azules.	A blue-eyed girl.
Un hombre de buen corazón.	A kind-hearted man.
Un muchacho de pelo rubio.	A red-haired boy.
Una casa de techo empinado.	A steep-roofed house.
Un bote de fondo llano.	A flat-bottomed boat.
Un vestido de mangas largas.	A long-sleeved dress.
Un sombrero de alas anchas.	A broad-brimmed hat.

REMARK.—In some of the above instances the adjective in Spanish may be made to agree with the first noun instead of the second :—

Un vestido largo de mangas.	A long-sleeved dress.
Un sombrero ancho de alas.	A broad-brimmed hat.

257. Similar expressions are formed with a numeral instead of an adjective:—

Una espada de dos filos.	A two-edged sword.
Una escopeta de dos cañones.	A double-barreled shotgun.
Un buque de tres palos.	A three-masted vessel.
Una lancha de cuatro remos.	A four-oared boat.

258. When the second part of the compound is a noun denoting material and preceded by **de, con** is employed instead of **de** to connect it with the noun which it qualifies:—

Una espada con puño de oro.	A gold-hilted sword.
Un abanico con varillas de marfil.	An ivory-handled fan.
Quevedos con aros de acero.	Steel-bowed eyeglasses.

259. When the English expression is composed of an actual past participle preceded by a noun, the Spanish employs a participle followed by **de** and the noun:—

Sembrado de estrellas.	Star-spangled.
Coronado de nieve.	Snow-capped.
Cubierto de musgo.	Moss-covered.

REMARK.—In naming colors, Spanish uses the noun **color** where English employs the past participle *colored*:—

Una cinta color de ratón.	A mouse-colored ribbon.
Nubes de color de fuego.	Flame-colored clouds.
Un par de guantes color de casca.	A pair of tan-colored gloves.

260. There is, however, a class of compound adjectives (limited in number), composed of a noun followed by an adjective, of which the following will serve as examples:—

Barbiespeso, heavily bearded.	(*From* barba *and* espeso.)
Barbirrucio, grizzly-bearded.	(" " " rucio.)
Cariacontecido, crestfallen.	(" cara " acontecido.)
Carilargo, long-faced.	(" " " largo.)
Cuellierguido, stiff-necked, proud.	(" cuello " erguido.)
Cuellituerto, wry-necked.	(" " " tuerto.)
Patihendido, cloven-hoofed.	(" pata " hendido.)
Patimacizo (*the opposite of the above*), solid-hoofed.	(" " " macizo.)
Patizambo, bandy-legged.	(" " " zambo.)
Pelilargo, long-haired.	(" pelo " largo.)
Pelirrubio, light-haired.	(" " " rubio.)
Pernituerto, crook-shanked.	(" pierna " tuerto.)
Puntiagudo, sharp-pointed.	(" punta " agudo.)

REMARK.—Note the modification of the connecting vowel. Also the doubling of the initial **r**. (See § 16.)

☞ The student will now be so far advanced as not to require a separate vocabulary with each lesson. He should learn whatever new words and uses of words are introduced in the examples, and for unknown words required in the exercises he can refer to the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

EXERCISE XVIII.

Cadiz (2) is an *important* seaport of Spain, situated on (*en*) the *Atlantic* Ocean. The butler has gone to look for a corkscrew. Have you seen my drawing-pen? Yes, it is under the copying-press. The waiter is drunk and

has broken the glasses. My brother-in-law, the captain, is a blusterer, but he is also a coward. The fire does not burn and I am going to look for a chimney-sweep. I see in the newspaper that the engineers have completed the *electric* railroad from *Montevideo* to the suburb of *Villa Nueva*. The snow-capped peaks of the *Andes* (*m.*) are a magnificent sight. My cousin is the captain of a three-masted schooner. The commander of the army wears an ivory-hilted sword. The climate of *Bolivia* is mild, its soil is *fertile* and its inhabitants are *industrious*. The *republic* of (*del*) *Paraguay* is situated between Brazil, the *Argentine Republic* and *Bolivia*. The *republic* of *Chile* is a long and narrow coast between the *Andes* and the *Pacific* Ocean ; its soil is rather *sterile* near the coast, but near (*en la proximidad de*) the mountains it is *extremely fertile* and rich in *mines* of *different metals*. The coasts of *Colombia* are hot and unhealthy ; in the *interior* of the *Isthmus* of *Panama* (1) and on the sides of the mountains the *temperature* is *relatively* cool. The surface of *Ecuador* is *extremely* diversified and the country *naturally presents* a great *variety* of climates ; to the east of the mountain-chains, in the wooded and swampy *regions*, and to the west, in the low lands, the climate is hot and damp ; in the valleys the climate and *temperature* vary according to the *elevation* of the plains or their *proximity* to the mountains.

LESSON XIX.

REMARKS ON CERTAIN IMPORTANT VERBS AND ADVERBS.

261. The English usage of specifying particular meanings of verbs by the addition of adverbs is not common in Spanish, where the idea is usually conveyed in a single word. This is well exhibited in the following verbs of motion:—

Bajar.	To go *or* come	down.	(*To descend.*)
Subir.		up.	(*To rise, ascend.*)
Partir.		away.	(*To depart, set out, start.*)
Entrar.		in.	(*To enter.*)
Salir (*irr.*)		out.	(*To appear, turn out.*)

REMARK.—Although **salir** is an irregular verb, its present indicative exhibits no irregularity except the interpolation of a **g** in the first person singular : **salgo**, *I go* or *come out*.

262. These verbs merely express the nature of a motion, up, down, out, etc., and do not make any distinction between

direction *toward* and *away from* the speaker, as is the case with their English equivalents:—

Los soldados han bajado al agua con sus caballos.	The soldiers have gone down to the water with their horses.
¿Cuándo va V. á bajar?	When are you coming down?
Salen inmediatamente después de entrar.	They go out immediately after coming in.
Salgo ahora.	I am going out now.
Cuando entra, sube á su habitación.	When he comes in, he goes up to his room.
Parto mañana en la diligencia.	I set out to-morrow in the diligence.
Nuestros negocios han salido mal.	Our affairs have turned out badly.
Los precios han subido.	The prices have gone up.

263. **Entrar** requires to be supplemented by **en** when followed by an object:—

Entra en el edificio.	He enters the building.
Entrar en una sociedad, en un colegio, en el ejército.	To enter a society, a college, the army.

264. **Bajar** and **subir**, like their English equivalents, may take a direct object:—

Bajar el río, la cuesta, la escalera.	To go down the river, the hill, the stairs.
Subir el río, la cuesta, la escalera.	To go up the river, the hill, the stairs.

265. **Bajar** and **subir** are also used as transitive verbs meaning to *bring* or *take down* and *up* respectively:—

Los criados van á bajar los baúles.	The servants are going to take the trunks down.
La lavandera no ha subido la ropa.	The laundress has not brought up the clothes.

266. The following are regular verbs of common occurrence which are usually rendered in English by a different construction:—

Aguantar, to put up with.
Aprovechar, to profit by.
Apuntar, to note down, make a note of.
Averiguar, to find out.
Bastar, to be enough, sufficient.
Sobrar, to be over, remain over.
Escuchar, to listen to.
Esperar, to wait for, hope for.
Ignorar, to be unaware of, not to know.
Incendiar, to set fire to.
Meter, to put, put in.
Sacar, to take out, pull out.

Faltar, to be wanting, missing.
Callar, to be silent, keep silent.
Cuidar, to take care of.
Distar, to be distant.
Quitar, to take away, take off.
Presenciar, to be present at.
Mirar, to look at.
Repasar, to look over, go over.

REMARK.—There is really nothing unusual about these Spanish verbs; they are simple and direct. Whatever peculiarity there may be is in their present English renderings, and direct equivalents for many of them may be found in English words of Latin origin :—

Aguantar, to tolerate.
Averiguar, to ascertain.
Bastar, to suffice.
Presenciar, to attend.
Esperar, to expect.
Sacar, to extract.
Quitar, to remove.
Repasar, to review.

EXAMPLES.

No es posible aguantar su insolencia.	It is not possible to put up with his insolence.
Hemos aprovechado la ocasión.	We have profited by the occasion.
El general dicta y su secretario apunta.	The general dictates and his secretary takes notes.
Apuntar un discurso.	To take down a speech.
Averiguar la verdad de un asunto.	To find out the truth of a matter.
Quiero averiguar si es verdad.	I wish to find out if it is true.
Esta cantidad basta y sobra.	This quantity is enough and more than enough.
Falta un volumen de la enciclopedia.	A volume of the encyclopedia is missing.
No faltarán compradores.	There will be no lack of purchasers.
Los niños no quieren callar.	The children will not be still.
La historia calla sobre este punto.	History is silent on this point.
¿Quién cuida la casa de V. ahora?	Who takes care of your house now?
El arsenal dista tres millas.	The arsenal is three miles distant.
No escucha mis consejos.	He does not listen to my advice.
Escuchar la música, un discurso.	To listen to the music, to a speech.
¿Qué hace V.?—Espero el ómnibus.	What are you doing?—I am waiting for the omnibus.
Ignoro el origen de la costumbre.	I do not know the origin of the custom.
Los conspiradores han incendiado el palacio.	The conspirators have set fire to the palace.
Quita la silla y mete al caballo en la cuadra.	He takes off the saddle and puts the horse in the stable.
La criada ha quitado el mantel.	The servant has taken off the table cloth.

Sacar un diente.	To pull out a tooth.
Sacar una copia, una fotografía de algo.	To take a copy, a photograph of anything.
¿Quieren VV. presenciar la ejecución del asesino?	Do you wish to be present at the execution of the murderer?
Mira atentamente el retrato.	He looks attentively at the portrait.
Necesito repasar mis lecciones antes de salir.	I need to look over my lessons before going out.

267. The various tenses and persons of **acabar**, followed by **de** and an infinitive, are equivalent to corresponding forms of the English expression *have just*, followed by a past participle:—

Mi hermano acaba de salir.	My brother has just gone out.
La criada acaba de encender el gas.	The servant-girl has just lit the gas.
Ya acabo de principiar.	I have just now begun.
Acabamos de presenciar un espectáculo curioso.	We have just witnessed a curious spectacle.

268. The adverbs of place **aquí, ahí, allí,** are properly applicable only to *rest in* a place; *motion to* a place is expressed by the forms **acá, ahí, allá,** there being no other form of **ahí.** The distinction, however, is not strictly maintained, even by careful writers. Their meanings are as follows:—

REST.	MOTION.	
Aquí.	**Acá.**	Here.
Ahí.	**Ahí.**	There (*near you*).
Allí.	**Allá.**	There (*yonder, at a distance*).

El capitán está aquí.	The captain is here.
El capitán viene aquí (*or* acá).	The captain is coming here (hither).
Está ahí.	He is there, (where you are.)
Va ahí.	He is going there, (where you are.)
Reside allí.	He lives there, (distant from both.)
Va allá.	He is going there, (distant from both.)
Espero ver á mi padre allí.	I expect to see my father there.
¿Qué tiene V. ahí?	What have you got there?
¿Tiene V. amigos aquí?	Have you friends here?

REMARK.—The distinction above shown between **ahí** and **allí** (or **allá**) is rigidly maintained. For instance, a merchant in Chicago writing to a correspondent in Lima would speak of his own city as **aquí**, of Lima as **ahí**, and of any other place not closely connected with these as **allí**. Custom does not, however, sanction the use of the form **allí** when followed by **en** and the name of a place; therefore we must say: **allá en Cuba, allá en Europa**.

269. These adverbs are by extension sometimes employed as adverbs of time, as *here* is in English. They are then to be rendered as follows :—

Aquí ;	Here, at this moment, at this point in the story.
Allí ;	Then, at that moment relatively near.
Allá ;	Then, at a remote period.

270. Preceded by **de**, they express a deduction, with the following meanings:—

De aquí ;	Hence, from what I have said.
De ahí ;	Thence, from what you have said.
De allí ;	Thence, from what somebody else said.

271. The adverb **ya**, when used positively, means *already, now*; with a negative it is equivalent to *no longer, not any more, no more.* It usually stands at the beginning of the sentence:—

Ya es tarde.	It is already late, *or* it is late now.
¿Ya ha vendido V. su caballo ?	Have you sold your horse already ?
Ya está claro que ella ya no quiere venir.	Now it is clear that she no longer wants to come.
Ya comprendo ; *or merely* Ya.	Now I understand.
Ya no toco el piano.	I do not play the piano any more.
¿Ya habla el castellano su hijo de V.?	Does your son already speak Spanish ?
¿Ya no desea V. ir á casa de su hermano ?	Don't you want to go to your brother's any more?
¿No desea V. ya ir á casa de su hermano ?	Don't you want to go to your brother's now ?

272. **Aun** and **todavía** both mean *still* or *yet* when used positively; with a negative they mean *not yet.* When **aun** follows the verb it is pronounced as two syllables and is so accented. Secondarily, **aun** has the meaning of *even* :—

¿Tiene V. aún (*or* todavía) su yegua baya ?	Have you still got your bay mare ?
¿No ha llegado el coronel todavía ?	Has not the colonel come yet ?
Todavía no.	Not yet.
Su libro es excelente, aun con las faltas de que está lleno.	His book is excellent, even with the faults of which it is full.

273. **Como** is an adverb or conjunction relating to manner. Used in direct or indirect interrogations (**cómo**) it is an adverb

meaning *how*; used relatively (**como**) it is a conjunction with the meaning of *as, like*:—

¿ Cómo está V. ?	How are you? How do you do?
Ignoro cómo explicar el fenómeno.	I do not know how to explain the phenomenon.
V. no es como su hermano.	You are not like your brother.
Habla como una persona de autoridad.	He speaks like a person of authority.
Consideramos su adopción como necesaria al triunfo de nuestro partido.	We consider its adoption as necessary to the success of our party.

ADVERBIAL PHRASES.

En vez de ; en lugar de.	Instead of.
Tal vez.	Perhaps.
Á veces.	At times, sometimes.
Raras veces.	Rarely, seldom.
Casi siempre.	Almost always.
Casi nunca.	Hardly ever (*lit.* almost never).
De ningún modo.	By no means, not at all.
Como de costumbre.	As usual.
¿ De veras ?	Indeed ? really ?
De veras.	Indeed, really, (*emphatic.*)
En efecto.	In fact, indeed.
Sin embargo.	Nevertheless.
Sin duda.	No doubt, doubtless.
Hoy día.	Nowadays.

Exercise XIX.

The price of bread has gone up. The captain of the vessel says that he expects to enter the harbor soon. Has your mother gone out yet? No, she is still in the vestibule with Mrs. Ramírez. What do you do after coming in? I *generally* go into the dining-room, and afterwards go up to my room. Have the servants brought up the trunks yet? No, the trunks have not yet arrived from the *station*. They haven't, haven't they? The robbers are going to set fire to the warehouse. I have just taken a photograph of your garden. The winds of October are chilly, and the leaves have already begun to fall from the trees. Are you tired of writing? By no means; indeed, I have just begun. What are you doing there? I am not doing anything; I am waiting for the porter. Are you going to the bank now? No, I have just come from there. Have you left the papers on the desk? No, I have put them in the drawer. The young men will not (i.e. do not want to) profit by the *experience* of their parents. Where do you dine now? I have dined

to-day at the *Continental* Hotel, but I almost always dine at (*en*) the Swiss *Café*. The boy has gone to the *circus* instead of going to the market. Have you any acquaintances in *Lima*? Yes, my uncle lives there. How has your plan turned out? It has turned out badly. I do not know the motive of his *actions*, but his conduct is at times *mysterious*. Is your father here? No, he has just gone out; he nearly always goes out immediately after supper. From the juice of the *maguey* (*m.*), the Mexicans make a kind of weak beer, called *pulque*.

LESSON XX.

THE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES; RELATIVE USE OF **QUIÉN** AND **QUÉ**. PREPOSITIONS **HACIA** AND **HASTA**.

274. The future tense, which in English is made up by the use of the auxiliaries *will* and *shall*, is formed in Spanish by adding the following terminations to the full infinitive form of the verb:—

			E.g.:			
Sing.	1st p.	**-é.**		compraré,	venderé,	viviré.
	2d p.	**-ás.**		comprarás,	venderás,	vivirás.
	3d p.	**-á.**		comprará,	venderá,	vivirá.
Plur.	1st p.	**-emos.**		compraremos,	venderemos,	viviremos.
	2d p.	**-éis.**		compraréis,	venderéis,	viviréis.
	3d p.	**-án.**		comprarán.	venderán,	vivirán.

In this manner are formed the futures of all regular and nearly all irregular verbs. Of the irregular verbs already introduced, **querer** and **haber** in forming the future elide the vowel of the infinitive termination; **tener, venir** and **salir** elide this vowel and interpolate a **d**; while **hacer** and **decir** form the future from primitive infinitives now obsolete (see footnote p. 103):—

Querer	(**querr**):	querré	querrás	querrá	querremos	querréis	querrán.
Haber	(**habr**):	habré	habrás	habrá	habremos	habréis	habrán.
Tener	(**tendr**):	tendré	tendrás	tendrá	tendremos	tendréis	tendrán.
Venir	(**vendr**):	vendré	vendrás	vendrá	vendremos	vendréis	vendrán.
Salir	(**saldr**):	saldré	saldrás	saldrá	saldremos	saldréis	saldrán.
Hacer	(**har**):	haré	harás	hará	haremos	haréis	harán.
Decir	(**dir**):	diré	dirás	dirá	diremos	diréis	dirán.

Remark.—There are but five other verbs which are irregular in the future; these will be introduced further on.

275. The use of the future is practically the same in Spanish as in English:—

Yo no diré nada.	I shall not say anything.
¿No tomará V. un vaso de vino?	Won't you take a glass of wine?
Será preciso obrar con prudencia.	It will be necessary to act prudently.
Pasaremos un mes en el campo.	We will spend a month in the country.
Partiremos mañana.	We will set out to-morrow.
¿Á qué teatro iremos?	What theater shall we go to?

276. In short emphatic declarations and in brief requests for instructions, the present indicative replaces the future tense in familiar language:—

Voy á su casa luego.	I shall go to his house soon.
Salen mañana.	They set out to-morrow.
No pago la cuenta.	I sha'n't pay the bill.
No emprendo ningún proyecto semejante.	I won't undertake any such project.
¿Dónde pongo el quinqué?	Where shall I put the lamp?
¿Quito el mantel ó no?	Shall I take off the table-cloth or not?
¿Qué digo? ¿Qué hago?	What shall I say? What shall I do?
¿Me hace V. el favor de abrir la ventana?	Will you do me the favor of opening the window?

277. The future perfect is formed as in English by the association of the future of **haber** and a past participle. Its usage does not differ materially in the two languages:—

Habremos terminado la obra mañana.	We shall have finished the work to-morrow.
¿Habrá copiado V. el informe antes de mi vuelta?	Will you have copied the report before my return?

REMARK.—The use of **tener** with a past participle contrasts well with that of **haber** in the above examples:—

Tendremos terminada la obra mañana.	We shall have the work finished to-morrow.
¿Tendrá copiado V. el informe antes de mi vuelta?	Will you have the report copied before my return?

These older infinitives will be understood by comparison with the Latin and Italian forms:—

LAT. { *facere*; *dicere*; ITAL. { *fare*; *dire*; OLD SPAN. { *far*; *dir*; MODERN FUTURE { **haré**. **diré**.

The modern Spanish replaces the older *f* by *h*.

RELATIVE USE OF **QUIÉN** AND **QUÉ**.

278. The interrogative pronouns **quién** and **qué** are also employed as relative pronouns, in which case they do not bear the written accent.

279. Quien refers only to persons or things personified, and is therefore preceded by the preposition **á**, in the same manner as nouns, when it is governed by a verb:—

El arzobispo, **á quien** he visto hoy, me ha dicho . . .	The archbishop, whom I have seen to-day, told me . . .
Busco al hombre **á quien** Vd. busca.	I am looking for the man whom you are looking for.

280. Quien is rarely used as subject, that duty being generally performed by **que.** It is invariable in form as regards gender, but has a plural, **quienes.** It may be preceded by any preposition:—

He recibido estas flores de una señora **á quien** he servido varias veces.	I have received these flowers from a lady whom I have aided several times.
Es un amigo **en quien** tengo confianza.	He is a friend in whom I have confidence.
Los oficiales **con quienes** he hablado sobre el suceso.	The officials with whom I have spoken about the occurrence.
Las mujeres **de quienes** hablamos.	The women of whom we speak.

281. Que is invariable, having but one form for both genders and numbers; when used as subject or as direct object, it relates to persons or things of either gender or number. But it can be preceded by a preposition only when it relates to things:—

La señora que acaba de salir.	The lady who has just gone out.
Los soldados que he visto.	The soldiers whom I have seen.
La gramática que estudio.	The grammar that I am studying.
Las causas que determinan mis acciones.	The causes which determine my actions.
La facilidad con que escribe.	The facility with which he writes.
El asunto de que hablamos.	The matter of which we are speaking.
La casa en que vivo.	The house in which I live.

282. These relatives must never be suppressed in Spanish as they frequently are in English:—

Las señoras **que** esperamos.	The ladies we expect.
El vino **que** hemos bebido.	The wine we have drunk.

¿ Dónde están los libros **que** acabo de comprar ?	Where are the books I have just bought?

283. **Que** is preferable to **quien** as a direct object, and although referring to a person, does not require the preposition **á**:—

El hombre que (á quien) he visto.	The man I have seen.
Las señoras que (á quienes) esperamos.	The ladies whom we are waiting for.

284. In Spanish the preposition must always precede the relative; the English construction of placing it last is inadmissible:—

El hombre **de quien** he recibido el libro es un capitán del ejército turco.	The man I received the book *from* is a captain in the Turkish army.
El error **en que** estamos.	The error we are *in*.
Las leyes **á que** estamos sujetos.	The laws we are subject *to*.

285. The order of the sentence is more elegantly inverted after a relative, when the subject of the secondary clause is expressed:—

El caballo que tiene mi padre.	The horse that my father has.
Ya he leído el libro que ha comprado V.	I have already read the book you have bought.
La casa en que vivimos nosotros es de ladrillo con paramentos de piedra.	The house we live in is of brick with stone trimmings.

HACIA AND HASTA.

286. The two prepositions of motion, **hacia** and **hasta**, merit a word of remark. **Hacia**, *towards*, denotes direction. **Hasta**, with verbs of motion, means *up to*, *as far as*; on speaking of time, *until*. In connection with adverbs they form many adverbial phrases:—

Hacia aquí ; hacia allí.	This way ; in that direction.
Hasta aquí ; hasta allí.	Thus far ; as far as there.
Hacia arriba, hacia abajo.	Upwards, downwards.
Hacia adelante, hacia atrás.	Forwards, backwards.
¿ Hacia dónde quieren VV. ir ?	Which way do you want to go ?
¿ Hasta dónde quieren VV. ir ?	How far do you want to go ?
¿ Hasta cuándo ?	How long ? until when ?
Hasta ahora, hasta entonces.	Until now, until then.
Hasta mañana.	Until to-morrow.

Hasta la vista. } *Familiar leave-* } Hasta luego. } *takings.)* }	Until we see each other. *Au revoir.* Until next time. "See you later."
¿Hasta qué hora?	Until what hour? How late?
Iré hasta la casa de V.	I will go as far as your house.
Marchan hacia la colina.	They march towards the hill.
Mira hacia el río.	He looks towards the river.
¿Hasta qué punto llegará su insolencia?	To what extreme will his insolence extend?

287. By extension of this meaning **hasta** means *even*:—

Es preciso amar hasta á sus enemigos.	It is necessary to love even one's enemies.
Hasta las mujeres pelearán en defensa de la ciudad.	Even the women will fight in defense of the city.

Remark.—After a negative, **antes de** is preferred to **hasta** with regard to time:—

No voy antes de mañana.	I am not going until to-morrow.
No pagaré la cuenta antes de recibir los géneros.	I shall not pay the bill until I receive the goods.

Exercise XX.

I have written a number of poems which I shall soon publish in book form, and shall then send a copy to your sister. When will you be at home? I do not expect to be there before sunset. I have often wished to be present at the launching of a ship. I shall write to my agent in *Guayaquil* full particulars of the (*respecto del*) *plan* (*m.*) which you propose. The country to which we are going produces cocoa and coffee. The leaves will soon have fallen from the trees and the wind will toss the bare branches in the air; the hills which are now green and pleasant will then be bare and desolate, the deep snow will cover the plains and the birds which now sing joyous carols will have migrated to a warm climate. The man who has just gone out is a Chilean, from *Santiago*; he is going to New York where he expects to remain until the spring, and then he will return to his country; he owns extensive *mines* of nitrate of soda in the *province* of *Atacama* where (*en la parte que*) it borders on *Bolivia*. I shall not employ the painter whom your brother has discharged. The gentleman to whom I have just spoken has promised to give my son an employment How long do you expect to remain in the country? Until to-morrow. When will you send to the editor the story which you have written? The lady who is in the parlor is a sister of the Father *Sebastian* whom you have seen several times in the *cathedral*. Will you have the essay finished before the teacher's return? Perhaps. The gentlemen who are coming this way are officers of the Chilean navy. Gentlemen, how far do you wish to go? I am tired already. We wish to go as far as the tunnel.

PART III.

MORE EXTENDED TREATMENT.

CHAPTER I.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

288. A noun in Spanish never varies in form as in Latin, except to make the plural. Adjectives, articles and participles never have more than four forms; namely, the masculine and feminine respectively of the singular and plural. There is therefore no trace left of the case-endings of Latin so far as these parts of speech are concerned.

Grammarians generally have attempted to imitate the Latin declension by means of prepositions, in some such manner as the following (which is taken from one of the principal Spanish grammars):—

NOMINATIVE.	La carta.	*The letter.*
GENITIVE.	De la carta.	*Of the letter.*
DATIVE.	Á *ó* para la carta.	*To* or *for the letter.*
ACCUSATIVE.	La *ó* á la carta.	*The letter.*
VOCATIVE.	Carta, *ú* oh carta.	*Letter*, or *O letter.*
ABLATIVE.	Con, de, en *ó* por la carta.	*With*, *from*, *in* or *by the letter.*

It would be quite as easy and rational to add a dozen more prepositions or to omit all of these, only the above was the scale recognized in Latin. It will be observed that the noun is unchanged throughout.

In this work there will be no attempt at such imitation.

289. The personal pronouns are the only words in Spanish which retain distinctions of case. In their full inflection they have four cases:—

The **nominative**, or subject.
The **dative**[1], or indirect object.
The **accusative**[1], or direct object.
The **prepositional**, i.e. when governed by any preposition.

However, there is not always a separate form for each case; but the student must strive to keep them distinct in his mind even though they be identical on paper.

290. TABLE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS AND THEIR INFLECTION.

		NOMINATIVE.	DATIVE.	ACCUSATIVE.	PREPOSITIONAL.
SING.	1st p.	yo	me	me	mí
	2d p.	tú	te	te	tí
	3d p. masc.	él	le	le, lo	él
	3d p. fem.	ella	le	la	ella
	3d p. neut.	ello	[*none*]	lo	ello
PLUR.	1st p. masc.	nosotros	nos	nos	nosotros
	1st p. fem.	nosotras	nos	nos	nosotras
	2d p. masc.	vosotros	os	os	vosotros
	2d p. fem.	vosotras	os	os	vosotras
	3d p. masc.	ellos	les	los	ellos
	3d p. fem.	ellas	les	las	ellas
Reflexive substitute for 3d person, common to both numbers.		[*none*]	se	se	sí

Usted, like nouns, is invariable, except for number.

USE OF THE CASES.

The student is already familiar with the nominatives of the personal pronouns, and with the circumstance of their usual omission except when required for emphasis, contrast or perspicuity. We have, therefore, to deal only with the objective forms.

291. The dative and accusative pronouns ordinarily *precede* all forms of the verb except the infinitive, gerund, and imperative positive (which will be explained hereafter).

[1] The terms *accusative* and *dative* will also, for the sake of brevity, be employed as synonyms of *direct* and *indirect object* in speaking of nouns. But when so employed they will not denote any special forms, as in the case of the personal pronouns, but merely the nature of their grammatical dependence upon a verb.

REMARK.—It is to be observed that the dative and accusative forms of these pronouns are identical except in the case of the third person; it is therefore in this person only that the distinction between the usages of the dative and accusative can be shown.

Dative.

292. The leading use of the dative is to denote the person *to* whom anything is given, told, shown, or in any way conveyed or imparted:—

Ella me habla.	She speaks to me.
Yo te escribiré.	I will write to thee.
Les digo; les doy.	I say to them; I give [to] them.
He visto á mi hermana y le he hablado del asunto.	I have seen my sister and have spoken to her of the matter.
Nos parece probable.	It seems to us probable.
¿Qué le ha sucedido?	What has happened to him?

293. A verb which takes a dative pronoun (indirect object) may also govern a direct object at the same time:—

Ella me enseña sus dibujos.	She shows me her drawings.
Te escribiré una carta.	I will write thee a letter.
Les digo la verdad.	I tell them the truth.
Le he dado algunas rosas.	I have given her some roses.
Le prestaré el dinero que necesita.	I will lend him the money he needs.

294. As the Spanish dative combines in a measure the functions of both the Latin dative and ablative (literally, *give-to-ive* and *take-from-ive*), it is further employed in cases where something is taken away from anyone:—

Me han comprado mis géneros.	They have bought my goods from me.
El aullido de los perros nos quita el sueño.	The howling of the dogs deprives us of sleep.
Le he ganado la apuesta.	I have won the bet from him.

295. The dative is further used to represent the person for whose benefit or advantage anything is done:—

Les ha procurado colocaciones.	He has procured them situations.
Te compraré un reloj.	I will buy thee a watch.
Dice que me buscará un criado.	He says he will look for a servant for me.

296. After **ser** used impersonally, a dative personal pronoun may be employed to denote the person *to* whom the impersonal expression is applicable:—

Le será fácil probar la coartada.	It will be easy *for* him to prove an alibi.
Caballeros, me es imposible escribir mientras Vds. hablan.	Gentlemen, it is impossible *for* me to write while you talk.

297. The dative case is confined to the personal pronouns; no other words have any distinction of case. Therefore when the indirect object is any other pronoun, or a noun, the relation is expressed by a preposition—generally **á**:—

He hablado á mi hermana.	I have spoken to my sister.
Le he hablado.	I have spoken to her.
Escribiré á los Sres. padres de V.	I will write to your parents.
Les escribiré.	I will write to them.
El ruido quita el sueño á mi padre.	The noise deprives my father of sleep.
Han robado la capa á mi amigo.	They stole the cloak from my friend.
He procurado á mi hijo un empleo en el Ministerio de Guerra.	I have procured my son a position in the War Department.

Accusative.

298. The accusative form is used when the pronoun is the direct object of any action:—

Yo la llamo.	I call her.
No nos ven.	They do not see us.
Los he vendido.	I have sold them.
Ella le ha acogido cordialmente.	She received him cordially.
Ya no los tememos.	We no longer fear them.

Prepositional.

299. When the pronoun is governed by a preposition, the prepositional form is required. This, it is to be noted, is the same as the nominative, in all but the first and second persons singular (and, we may add, the reflexive pronoun of the third person, which has no nominative):—

Es evidente que hablan de mí.	It is evident they are speaking of me.
Mira hacia tí.	He looks toward thee.
Quiere venir con nosotros.	He wants to come with us.

Iremos sin él.	We will go without him.
Llegaremos después de ellas.	We will arrive after them.
¿Han traído una carta dirigida á mí?	Have they brought a letter addressed to me?

GENDER.

300. The personal pronouns of the third person always assume the gender of the nouns which they represent, although it is not apparent in the dative where no distinction of gender is made. Consequently, as in Spanish all existing things are either masculine or feminine, *it*, as applied to either of them, must be represented by the appropriate case of **él** or **ella**:—

Quiero vender mi casa. **Ella** es bonita y cómoda; recientemente **la** he mandado pintar, y **le** he agregado una ala.	I want to sell my house. *It* is pretty and comfortable; I have recently had *it* painted, and have added an ell to *it*.
¿Dónde está la taza?—**La** he roto.	Where is the cup?—I broke *it*.
¿Tiene V. mis plumas?—**Las** tengo.	Have you my pens?—I have *them*.
¿Ha leído V. los libros?—**Los** he leído.	Have you read the books?—I have read *them*.
¿Ve V. á los soldados?—**Los** veo, y veo á un oficial con **ellos**.	Do you see the soldiers?—I see *them*, and see an officer with *them*.

301. It will be observed that **él** has two forms for the accusative singular: **le** and **lo**. According to the prevailing usage of the language, **le** relates to a male person or a masculine thing personified, **lo** to any other masculine noun [1]:—

Busco á mi criado pero no **le** hallo.	I look for my servant, but do not find him.
Busco mi sombrero pero no **lo** hallo.	I look for my hat, but do not find it.
¿Quiere V. mi abanico?—No **lo** quiero.	Do you want my fan?—I do not want it.
¿Dónde está el muchacho? **le** necesito.	Where is the boy? I want him.
Pega al perro y **lo** mata.	He beats the dog and kills him.

[1] The usage of the accusative masculine forms **le** and **lo** is very irregular. Many reputable modern writers use **lo** of persons as well as of things, and others employ **le** in reference to inanimate objects. The dominant practice is that given above. The use of **les** for **los** is sometimes met with, and dative feminine forms **la** and **las** are in use. The subject will be exhaustively discussed hereafter. See Chapter XXVII.

302. Ello has the value of *it* only as representing a subject referred to, or the substance of something said, and never a visible, tangible thing. It therefore refers to adjectives or statements, but not to nouns. It is seldom expresssed as subject. (§ 138.) Its accusative **lo** must not be confounded with the accusative of the masculine pronoun **él**, of similar form.

¿Qué es ello?	What is it?
No lo haré.	I shall not do it (*thing proposed*).
Sí, lo creo.	Yes, I believe it (*what you say*).
Convengo en ello.	I agree to it (*condition named*).
No creo en ello.	I do not believe in it.
No tenemos evidencia alguna de ello.	We have no evidence whatever of it.

EXERCISE XXI.

Professor Guzmán has sent me a copy of his essay; have you seen it? Yes, I have read it with deep interest. Where have you put my red ink? I have not seen it, but I presume that it is in the drawer of your desk. If your daughters are desirous of learning German I will look for a teacher for them. What have you given your sister? I have given her a gold thimble. The *Talmud* (*m.*) is a *collection* of the treatises of the ancient Hebrew teachers; in it, among an *infinity* of silly fables you will find beautiful remains of the ancient *traditions* of the Jewish people. Will you dance with Mr. *Andrade*? I will dance with him with pleasure, but not with his brother. The *President* has called together his *ministers* and has submitted your *proposition* to them. It is difficult for us to find honest and *intelligent* servants. The fleas have deprived me of sleep. Have you seen the doctor? Not yet; I shall not see him until to-morrow. When will you have my boots made? I have already finished them, Sir, and have sent them to your house. Where is my umbrella? I do not want to go out without it. The servant-girl has put it in the corner of the dining-room. My little son says that your boy has taken his kite from him and has torn it. She says that her friend (*m.*) has a large vineyard in *California*, but I do not believe it. The bees which you have sent us have begun to make honey. The young man who is coming this way wishes to seek a quarrel (*buscar querella*) with us. Until now it has been *impossible* for me to send the parcel to your friend in *Bogotá*.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

303. The objective cases of the personal pronouns of the first and second persons are used reflexively when the subject of the sentence is of the same person as the pronoun:—

Me he cortado.	I have cut myself.
Me hallo sin dinero.	I find myself without money.
Me he mandado hacer una capa.	I have had me a cloak made.
¿De quién habla V.?—Hablo de mí.	Of whom are you speaking?—I am speaking of myself.
Si lo haces, te pondrás en ridículo.	If you do it you will make yourself ridiculous.
¿Os llamáis sabios?	Do you call yourselves wise?
Nos hemos armado; si nos acometen, nos defenderemos.	We have armed ourselves; if they attack us we will defend ourselves.

304. If in similar reflexive expressions the subject is of the third person, the reflexive pronoun **se** is used as object, whatever be the gender or number of the subject:—

Se cree hombre de gran importancia.	He thinks himself a man of great importance.
Ella se compra un vestido nuevo.	She buys herself a new dress.
Se procuran sillas.	They procure themselves chairs.
El muchacho se hace un silbato.	The boy makes himself a whistle.
¿Se afeita V. antes de almorzar?	Do you shave yourself before breakfast?
Ellas se dedican al estudio de la música.	They devote themselves to the study of music.
Vds. se incomodan inútilmente.	You disturb yourselves needlessly.

305. The objective cases of the personal pronouns of the third person, including **usted**, always designate a different individual or thing from the subject:—

Ella **la** llama.	She calls her.
Ella **se** llama Paca.	She calls herself Fanny.
V. **le** engaña.	You deceive him.
V. **se** engaña.	You deceive yourself.
Vds. **los** incomodan.	You disturb them.
Vds. **se** incomodan.	You disturb yourselves.
El capitán habla siempre de **ella**.	The captain is always talking of her.
El capitán habla siempre de **sí**.	The captain is always talking about himself.
El guardia los ve venir hacia **sí**.	The guard sees them coming towards him.
El hombre pone el libro delante de **sí** sobre la mesa.	The man lays the book on the table before him.
El mozo entra y pone una botella de vino delante de **él**.	The waiter comes in and places a bottle of wine before him.

REMARK.—However, the reflexive **sí** may be applied to an object different from the subject of the sentence, provided **sí** be closely preceded by the noun to which it refers, and the meaning be not obscured :—

Para diferenciar á los vejetales entre **sí**, el botánico atiende en primer lugar al desarrollo de la semilla.	In order to distinguish plants from one another, the botanist considers in the first place the development of the seed.

306. When **mí, tí, sí** are governed by **con**, *with*, it is joined to them, and **go** is added to the combination, producing the peculiar forms **conmigo, contigo, consigo**:—

¿Quiere V. venir conmigo?	Do you want to come with me?
Quiero hablar contigo.	I want to speak with thee.
Mi hermana está enfadada consigo.	My sister is angry with herself.
Mi hermana está enfadada con ella.	My sister is angry with her (*some other lady*).
Llevan víveres consigo.	They carry provisions with them.

The explanation of this is that the Latin *cum, with*, was affixed to personal pronouns : *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum.* The first three of these have been preserved in modern Italian with the forms of *meco, teco, seco.* In old Spanish they appear as *migo, tigo, sigo, nosco, vosco* ; subsequently the last two became obsolete, and the origin of the others being forgotten, the preposition **con** was again added.

TERMINAL DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

307. The dative and accusative forms, being short and of weak sound, are not sufficiently sonorous to bear any degree of emphasis; and moreover the dative, not having a distinction of gender, is often not precise enough to prevent ambiguity. It is clear that something further is necessary.

This lack is supplied by the use of the prepositional case (which is fuller in form and maintains throughout a distinction of gender) preceded by the preposition **á**. This will be called the *terminal* dative or accusative, since it may follow any form of the verb without being appended to it. The **á** in this case is merely a grammatical device, and has no prepositional value. The terminal forms, although stronger in sound, are exactly equivalent in meaning to the simple forms:—

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	SIMPLE.	TERMINAL.		SIMPLE.	TERMINAL.
1 p. Dat.	me	á mí	1 p. Dat.	nos	á nosotros, -as
1 p. Acc.	me		1 p. Acc.	nos	
2 p. Dat.	te	á tí	2 p. Dat.	os	á vosotros, -as
2 p. Acc.	te		2 p. Acc.	os	
3 p. M. Dat.	le	á él	3 p. M. Dat.	les	á ellos
3 p. M. Acc.	le, lo		3 p. M. Acc.	les, los	
3 p. F. Dat.	le	á ella	3 p. F. Dat.	les	á ellas
3 p. F. Acc.	la		3 p. F. Acc.	las	

The terminal form is used in two ways: *1st*, as a substitute for the simple form; *2nd*, in addition to and in conjunction with it.

308. It is seldom used as a mere substitute, except in the following instances, where it is the only construction admissible:—

a. In answering a question, where the answer is to be the direct or indirect object of a verb expressed in the question, but left to be understood in the answer:—

¿Á quién ha visto V.?	Whom did you see?
Á él, á ella, á Vd., á ellos, *etc.*	Him, her, you, them, *etc.*
¿Á quién ha entregado V. la carta?	To whom did you deliver the letter?
Á él, á ella, á ellas, *etc.*	To him, to her, to them, *etc.*

b. Where two or more objective pronouns are brought into direct contrast:—

No busca á Vd. sino á mí.	He does not seek you but me.
El tigre no ve á nosotros ni nosotros á él.	The tiger does not see us, nor we him.

c. When the direct object is a pronoun used reflexively, and the indirect object is any other personal pronoun, the latter assumes the terminal form:—

Me he ofrecido á él como guía.	I offered myself to him as guide.
Se recomienda á ellos.	He recommends himself to them.
Se dirije á mí.	He addresses himself to me.
Se ha presentado á nosotros en un estado deplorable de embriaguez.	He presented himself to us in a deplorable state of intoxication.

d. Where the direct object of a verb is a pronoun of the first or second person, the indirect object, if a pronoun, must assume the terminal form:—

Me han recomendado á V.	They have recommended me to you.
Me han enviado á tí.	They have sent me to thee.
¿Porqué te han enviado á mí?	Why have they sent thee to me?
Vuestro general os ha entregado á nosotros.	Your general has delivered you to us

309. A personal pronoun representing the terminus of a motion expressed by an intransitive verb, is put in the prepositional case and preceded by **á.** This construction is not the terminal dative, the **á** having a true prepositional value:—

Viene á mí y me da una esquela.	He comes to me and gives me a note.
Dice que me ha mandado un paquete, pero no ha llegado á mí.	He says he sent me a package, but it has not reached me.
Anita, la chiquilla te llama.—Voy á ella ahora.	Annie, the baby is calling you.—I am going to her now.

REMARK.—In no other class of cases will it be advisable to use the terminal form alone; in the few other instances where it might be employed, the double construction explained below would be equally applicable and generally preferable.

REDUNDANT CONSTRUCTION.

310. The use of the terminal form for the purpose of emphasis or clearness, is as an addition to the simple form. This we will call the *redundant* construction. The combinations are as follows:—

	DATIVE.	ACCUSATIVE.
SINGULAR.	Me . . . . á mí. Te . . . . á tí. Le . . . á él. Le . . . á ella. Le . . . á V.	Me . . . . á mí. Te . . . . á tí. Le . . . . á él (*animate*). Lo . . . . á él (*inanimate*). La . . . . á ella. Le . . . . á V. (*masc.*). La . . . . á V. (*fem.*).
PLURAL.	Nos . . á nosotros. á nosotras. Os . . . á vosotros á vosotras. Les . . á ellos. á ellas. á Vds.	Nos . . á nosotros. á nosotras. Os . . . á vosotros. á vosotras. Los . . . á ellos. Las . . . á ellas. Los . . . á Vds. Las . . . á Vds.

311. Either pronoun may come first, but greater emphasis is conveyed when the terminal form precedes. Where the simple form is first, the verb is placed between the two pronouns; otherwise the verb either precedes or follows both:—

Le enseño **á ella** el castellano.	I am teaching her Spanish.
Les escribiré **á ellas** una relación circunstanciada del suceso.	I will write them a detailed account of the occurrence.
¿**A él** qué **le** importa?	What does it matter to *him*.
A ellos no **les** diré nada.	I shall not tell *them* anything.
A mí me parece que el hombre es loco.	It seems to me that the man is mad.
Me parece **á mí** que no llegará hoy.	It seems to me he will not arrive to-day.
¿No **le** recibirá V. **á él**?	Won't you receive him?
No **nos** convidarán **á nosotros**.	They won't invite *us*.
Te mandaré **á tí** la próxima vez.	I will send *thee* the next time.
Le han concedido **á él** una pensión, y las niegan á personas que verdaderamente las merecen.	They have granted *him* a pension, and refuse them to persons who really deserve them.

312. This usage is so general that it is often carried to excess. It is furthermore extended to nouns, in which event the noun is preceded by **á** and accompanies the simple objective pronoun:—

Al príncipe le han matado.	They have killed the prince.
No **les** parece conveniente **á las señoras**.	It does not seem proper to the ladies.
No **le** dan nada **al mozo**.	They give nothing to the waiter.
Al hombre no le es siempre permitido obrar con libertad.	Man is not always permitted to act with freedom.
Á los modernos les sucede lo contrario.	The contrary happens to the moderns.

REMARK.—In such cases the pronoun is the real object of the verb, and the noun may be regarded as added by way of explanation, as we often see in reports of trials in English: "and, furthermore, that he, the witness, saw *him, the defendant*, on the night of . . ."

EXERCISE XXII.

The *professor* praises her and blames us (*f.*). Mr. *López* deserves our *compassion*; the conduct of his son has *caused* him great sorrow. He throws the blame on his servant-girl, but I suspect him. The fish that I have eaten has *caused* me an unquenchable thirst. It is unpleasant to be with persons who talk continually about themselves and their affairs. I have gone to him and told him that I have no *influence* in Congress; but he does not believe me. The king of the cannibals has had himself a large

oven built. We have devoted ourselves to the study of *political economy*. The men whom you see yonder on the corner are bad citizens; they sell tobacco and even *whiskey* to boys, and *invite* them to drink with them. The young men have obtained *lucrative* positions because they have rich friends who have helped them. I have sent her a letter, but he says that she has not received it. It is sometimes difficult to distinguish the eggs of *different species* (*f.*) of birds from each other. He has impressed us *favorably* by his *excellent* manners and his interesting *conversation*. Miss *Silva* has just arrived; she has brought her little niece with her. Your nephew calls himself a Castilian, but I call him a Gallician. I shall not buy myself a new cloak before winter. The children will play and amuse themselves until their mother's return. Have you seen the *Secretary*? I have seen him to-day, but have not said anything to him respecting your project.

EMPLOYMENT OF **USTED** AND ITS SUBSTITUTES.

313. Usted, being grammatically a noun, is invariable except as regards number. Still, it is practically employed as a personal pronoun, and will be treated of here as such.

314. Both for clearness and courtesy **usted** should appear at least once in every sentence relating to the second person, except familiarly in very short ones where there is no danger of ambiguity:—

¿Qué dice? Qué quiere?	What do you say? What do you want?
¿Cómo está su señor padre?	How is your father?
¿Quiere fumar?	Have a smoke?
Me hace un gran favor.	You do me a great favor.
Yo le prestaré lo necesario si quiere.	I will lend you the necessary [amount] if you wish.

315. As subject, **usted** is usually expressed once near the beginning of the sentence, and afterwards left to be understood, except when required for clearness:—

Vd. tiene talento, pero no quiere estudiar.	You have talent, but you won't study.
¿Cuándo enviará V. á su hermano los libros que le ha prometido?	When will you send your brother the books you have promised him?

316. Usted appears as object only when governed by a preposition. In the dative and accusative its place is taken by the

datives and accusatives of **él** or **ella**, according to the sex of the person addressed:—

No partiremos sin Vds.	We will not start without you.
Tengo gran confianza en V.	I have great confidence in you.
No he recibido de V. ninguna carta.	I have not received any letters from you.
Ninguno de Vds. ha hallado la solución del enigma.	None of you have found the solution of the enigma.
Ya que ha venido V., le diré algo que le será interesante.	Now that you have come, I will tell you something that will be interesting to you.
¿No creen Vds. que les pagaré?	Do you not believe I will pay you?
Vd. me ha engañado, pero yo la perdono.	You deceived me, but I forgive you (*fem.*).

317. But if **usted** has not previously appeared in the sentence, or if the person referred to is not sufficiently apparent, **á Vd., á Vds.**, is added to the personal pronoun, in the same manner as the redundant construction previously explained:—

Le esperaré **á V.** mañana.	I shall expect you to-morrow.
Ya **la** comprendo **á V.**, señorita.	Now I understand you, Miss.
Les digo **á Vds.** la pura verdad.	I am telling you the plain truth.
¿Qué **le** ha dicho **á V.** su hermano?	What has your brother told you?
Su señor hermano cree que yo no **le** pagaré **á V.**	Your brother believes that I will not pay you.

318. Still, **á Vd.** will be found as the sole object of the verb, and the objective pronoun sometimes appears unattended by **á Vd.**, when **Vd.** has not previously appeared in the sentence. So that the following three modes of expression are admissible, the first being familiar (sometimes even to the verge of disrespect) and the third the most usual:—

Le devolveré el libro.	I will return you the book.
Devolveré **á V.** el libro.	I will return the book to you.
Le devolveré **á V.** el libro.	

REMARK.—The objective forms **á V., á Vds.**, are required under the same circumstances as those enumerated for the terminal dative and accusative:—

He venido **á V.**	I have come to you.
Me dirijo **á Vds.**	I address myself to you.

319. As **usted** requires the third person, the reflexive **sí** is applicable to it in the same manner as to any word used in the third person, and with the same restrictions:—

¿Se ha quemado V.?	Have you burned yourself?
V. se pondrá en ridículo.	You will make yourself ridiculous.
Vds. se cansarán innecesariamente.	You will tire yourselves unnecessarily.
¿No ve V. la taza delante de sí?	Don't you see the cup before you?
¿No ve V. que la taza está delante de V.[1]?	Don't you see that the cup is before you?
¿No ve V. la taza delante de él?	Don't you see the cup before him?

320. Although **usted** does not exhibit the gender of the person it represents, all variable words which qualify or relate to it agree in gender as well as number with the person represented:—

V. es rico y dichoso. V. es rica y dichosa. Vds. son ricas y dichosas.	You are rich and happy.
La considero á V. como muy afortunada. Las considero á Vds. como muy afortunadas.	I consider you very lucky.

☞ There can be no definite rule prescribed as to how often **usted** should appear in a long sentence or address. The student must simply strive to attain clearness on the one hand, and on the other to avoid undue repetition.

DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE.

321. Verbal expressions of advantage or disadvantage require the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, in the same manner as verbs of giving and imparting. When any preposition is required in English to express this relation, it is generally *for* or *from*:—

Te lo buscaré mañana.	I will look for it for you to-morrow.
Les consigue una audiencia.	He secures them an audience.
No os los he procurado todavía.	I have not obtained them for you yet.
Me quita el sueño.	He deprives me of sleep.
Nos han robado el dinero.	They have stolen the money from us.
Me toma mis libros	He takes my books from me.

[1] **Vd.** is here required because there is a change of subject.

Le he pedido un favor.	I have asked him a favor.
Le compran sus géneros.	They buy his wares from him.
Me llevan mis flores.	They carry off my flowers [from me].

322. In many cases Spanish employs the dative of a person and the accusative of a thing where in English the person is accusative and the thing is preceded by a preposition,—generally *for*:—

Te lo avisaré.	I will notify thee of it.
Le pide á V. una propina.	He asks you for a gratuity.
Le agradezco á V. su buena voluntad.	I thank you for your good will.
Me alaba mi aplicación.	He praises me for my assiduity.
El notario le tomará declaración.	The notary will take his deposition.
¿Ha pagado V. al sastre la levita?	Did you pay the tailor for the coat?
Se la he pagado hoy.	I paid him for it to-day.

323. The ethical dative or dative of interest is a secondary use of the dative case, where it appears in connection with other objective pronouns; it frequently seems superfluous and cannot be rendered into English, but indicates an interest—more or less faint—taken in the matter by the person represented by the pronoun:—

Avisaré á su padre y él me le dará una buena paliza.	I shall tell his father, and he will give him a good caning for me.
Pónganmele (pongan-me-le) Vds. sábanas limpias.	You put clean sheets under him for me. (*Said by doctor to nurses.*)
Échatemelo (echa-te-me-lo).	Toss it to me.
Los muchachos se me llevan mis flores.	The boys carry off my flowers (from me for themselves).
Los ratones se han comido el queso.	The mice have eaten up the cheese.

NOTE.—Two of the above examples appear complicated as they contain subjunctives, which will be better understood hereafter.

PRONOUN FOLLOWED BY A NOUN IN APPOSITION.

324. When the pronoun is subject and followed by a noun in apposition which limits or defines it, the definite article is interpolated between the pronoun and said noun:—

Yo el rey lo mando.	I, the king, command it.
Nosotros los Mejicanos somos muy pundonorosos.	We Mexicans are very touchy.
Vds. los artistas tienen grandes privilegios.	You artists have great privileges.

325. Frequently the pronoun is suppressed, the verb retaining the person and number which it would have if the pronoun were given:—

Los nordistas pensamos de un modo diferente.	We northerners think differently.
Sois los Sud-Americanos muy progresivos.	You South Americans are very progressive.
Tendremos el gusto los liberales de presenciar el cambio.	We liberals will have the pleasure of witnessing the change.

326. When an objective personal pronoun is accompanied by a noun in apposition, the following is the mode of expression used:—

Claro, á nosotras las mujeres nos engañan con mucha facilidad.	Clearly they deceive us women very easily.
Las locuras humanas llevan mucho dinero á las arcas de Vds. los abogados.	The follies of mankind put much money into the coffers of you lawyers.

INTENSIFICATION BY **MISMO.**

327. The nominative forms of all the pronouns may be intensified by the addition of the appropriate form of **mismo,** *self,* which is varied like all adjectives in **o**:—

Yo mismo, yo misma.	I myself.
Tú mismo, tú misma.	Thou thyself.
Él mismo, ella misma.	He himself, she herself
Nosotros mismos, nosotras mismas.	We ourselves.
Usted mismo, usted misma.	You yourself.
Ustedes mismos, ustedes mismas.	You yourselves.

328. **Mismo** may be applied to nouns in the same manner:—

El emperador mismo.	The emperor himself.
Su madre misma lo ha dicho.	His mother herself said it.
Procura castigar á los culpables mismos.	He seeks to punish the offenders themselves.

329. The appropriate form of **mismo** may be used, when great emphasis is needed, to intensify the prepositional case or the compound forms of the dative and accusative; but it is not applicable to the simple dative and accusative forms:—

Con su terquedad, caballero, no perjudicará V. á nadie sino á sí mismo.	With your obstinacy, Sir, you will injure nobody but yourself.
Veo que en vez de engañar á V., me he engañado á mí mismo.	I see that instead of deceiving you I have deceived myself.
El que enseña bien á otro se enseña también á sí mismo.	He who teaches another well, teaches himself also.
Nos hemos perdido á nosotros mismos.	We have ruined our own selves.

Exercise XXIII.

We manufacturers demand high duties on *imported* goods. You will be safe, Sir, in my house, I assure you. The enemies have carried off all the horses and cattle and have burned the bridges behind them. You deceive yourself, Miss, if you believe that they will not know you. Your coachman has just asked me for a tip. Then I shall reprimand him for his impudence. I will send you the feathers, Madam, to-morrow. I will not tell you the name of the person who has given me the information. We North Americans have freedom of thought and of speech. He expects to deceive us, but he will only deceive himself. If you will (i.e. wish to) listen to me I will explain the phenomenon to you. Who is that gentleman opposite us? It is the *President*, himself. I assure you, gentlemen, that I will not deceive you. You are building a fine new *theater* here. Madam, you have my profound *sympathy*; you have been unfortunate indeed. You young men are the hope of your country. Who are you, Sir? I am the mayor of the city. Girls, have you heard the new waltz, "The Gipsy"? Yes, we have heard it often; it is already old. Then I shall not play it. You Germans are a *nation* of *scholars*. I have forgotten my pocket-book, but I will pay you to-morrow. Madam, I myself will show you the road. I will give the arm-chair to him and the work-table to her. He believes himself gifted with some *oratorical talent*. You to whom I speak are the murderer. I will accompany you as far as your house, if you have no objection, and we will talk about the matter.

TWO PRONOUNS AS OBJECTS.

330. When a verb has two objects, both may be pronouns. In such case they appear together, with no word intervening and so take the same place with regard to the verb as a single pronoun. The dative precedes the accusative, with the exception that the reflexive **se** always stands first, whatever may be its case:—

No te lo daré; no te la daré.	I will not give it to thee.
Creo que me lo prestará.	I think he will lend it to me.
Nos los promete; nos las promete.	He promises them to us.

Se lo aplica.	He applies it to himself.
Se me figura que . . .	It seems to me that . . .

331. If both objects be pronouns of the third person, the dative, of either number, assumes the form **se**, to avoid the concurrence of two short syllables beginning with **l**:—

le le, les le, *become* **se le**;	le les, les les, *become* **se les**;
le la, les la, " **se la**;	le los, les los, " **se los**;
le lo, les lo, " **se lo**;	le las, les las, " **se las.**

Abro la carta y **se la** leo.	I open the letter and read it to him (*or* her).
Su cuñado de V. quiere comprar mi casa, pero yo no **se la** vendo.	Your brother-in-law wishes to buy my house, but I will not sell it to him.
El coronel ha olvidado sus quevedos; mi criado **se los** llevará.	The colonel has forgotten his glasses; my servant will take them to him.
Ya he escrito la carta, pero aun no **se la** he enviado.	I have already written the letter, but have not yet sent it to them.

332. The redundant construction is applicable to the dative when there are two pronouns as objects, in the same manner as when there is but one:—

No **me** lo ha dicho **á mí**.	He has not told it to me.
Ya **se** lo he dicho **á ellas**.	I have already told it to them.
Espero hoy á mi hijo; **se** le presentaré **á V.** mañana.	I expect my son to-day; I will introduce him to you to-morrow.
Se lo explicaré **á Vds.**	I will explain it to you.
Haré los marcos hoy, y **se** los mandaré **á V.** mañana.	I will make the frames to-day and send them to you to-morrow.
¿Cuándo **nos** lo prestará V. **á nosotros**?	When will you lend it to us?
No **se** las daré **á ellas** antes de mañana.	I will not give them to them until to-morrow.

333. Two objective pronouns of simple form can be used as exhibited above, only when the direct object is of the third person. If it be of the first or second, the indirect object must assume the terminal form:—

Te enviarán á mí.	They will send thee to me.
Me la enviarán.	They will send her to me.
Me enviarán á tí.	They will send me to thee.
Te le enviarán.	They will send him to thee.
Me han dirigido á él.	They have directed me to him.
Me le han dirigido.	They have directed him to me.

334. When one or more objective pronouns of simple form are governed by an infinitive, they are either affixed to it so as to form one word, or they immediately precede the verb which governs the infinitive; the former being the more usual construction:—

Quiere hablarme. Me quiere hablar.	He wants to speak to me.
Viene á buscarlos. Los viene á buscar.	She is coming to look for them.
Voy á decírselo. Se lo voy á decir.	I am going to tell it to him.
Ella ha prometido enseñármelo. Ella me lo ha prometido enseñar.	She has promised to teach it to me.
Necesito consultarle á V. Le necesito consultar á V.	I need to consult you.
Quiero llevarla al teatro. La quiero llevar al teatro.	I want to take her to the theater.

335. A pronoun sometimes has an appearance of being governed by the infinitive, when it really depends upon the preceding verb; in this case it must not be attached to the infinitive, but must precede the verb:—

Me es imposible salir ahora.	It is impossible for me to go out at present.
Los veo venir.	I see them come.
No le gusta estudiar.	He does not like to study. (*Lit.* It does not please him to study.)

REMARK.—Evidently **salirme**, **venirlos**, **estudiarle**, would be inadmissible, as the meaning cannot be *to go out me*, *to come them*, or *to study him*.

336. Frequently a pronoun may depend either upon the infinitive or the preceding verb, according to the meaning intended; in which case each pronoun accompanies the verb to which it belongs:—

Será inútil escribirle.	It will be useless to write to him.
Le será inútil escribir.	It will be useless for him to write.
Nos será difícil procurarlos.	It will be difficult for us to procure them.
Será difícil procurárnoslos.	It will be difficult to procure them for us.

Nos será difícil procurárselos.	It will be difficult for us to procure them for him.
No les parece prudente intentarlo.	It does not seem prudent to them to attempt it.

337. Between the prepositional form and the preposition preceding it, nothing whatever should intervene. Consequently when two or more prepositionals are the objects of the same verb, the preposition must be repeated before each:—

Nos busca á V. y á mí.	He is looking for you and me.
Quiere vengar la ofensa hecha á su hermano y á sí mismo.	He wishes to avenge the injury done to his brother and himself.

338. The preposition **entre**, however, cannot be thus repeated since its meaning is reciprocal. The usage is that when it governs two prepositional forms ending in **í**, they may admit a conjunction between them; but if the form of one of them is identical with that of the nominative and must precede the other, the second assumes the nominative form:—

Entre tí y mí.	Between thee and me.
Entre él y yo.	Between him and me.
Este informe queda entre V. y yo.	This information is between you and me.
La amistad que existe entre mi hermano y tú.	The friendship that exists between my brother and thee.

THE ACCUSATIVE OF SUBSTITUTION.

339. The forms **le** or **lo, la, los, las**, serve to recall a previous noun without repeating it. When this is done in English it is by some such indefinite word as *one, any, some, such*:—

Alega que no tiene influencia, pero yo creo que **la** tiene.	He alleges that he has no influence, but I believe that he has.
Compraré billetes si **los** hay todavía. —Ya no **los** hay.	I shall buy tickets if there still are any.—There are no more.
En Boston hay casinos de damas como **los** hay de hombres aquí.	In Boston there are women's clubs as there are of men here.
¿Tiene V. vino de Manzanilla?—Sí señor, **lo** tengo, y de primera clase.	Have you any Manzanilla wine?—Yes, Sir, I have, and first class.
¿Quién quiere agua?—**La** quiero yo.	Who wants water?—I do.
¿Tiene V. ganas de comer?—**Las** tengo y urgentes.	Have you an appetite?—I have, and a pressing one.

340. The neuter form **lo** serves similarly to recall an adjective, a noun taken in an indeterminate sense with an adjective value, or an entire phrase or statement, and is then often equivalent to the English *so*:—

Ella está mala, pero no lo parece.	She is sick, but she does not look so.
El alcalde, pues supe después que lo era, *etc.*	The alcalde, for I afterwards learned that he was one, *etc.*
Su paso era ligero, porque lo era su corazón.	His step was light because his heart was.
Ó es cura ó va á serlo.	Either he is a priest or he is going to be one.
Considero necesario, como lo considera también la comisión, conservar intacta la cláusula.	I consider it necessary, as does the committee also, to preserve the clause unchanged.

341. This neuter **lo** accompanies the verb **ser** in answers, to represent the predicate of the question:—

¿Son Vds. los soldados que prendieron al espía?—**Lo** somos.	Are you the soldiers who took the spy?—We are.
¿Es V. la madre de este niño?—**Lo** soy.	Are you the mother of this child?—I am.
¿Es V. madre?—**Lo** soy.	Are you a mother?—I am.
¿Me engaño, señorita, en creerla mi sobrina?—No señor, **lo** soy en efecto.	Am I mistaken, Miss, in believing you to be my niece?—No, Sir; I am indeed she.
¿Es ella la dueña de la casa?—No **lo** es.	Is she the mistress of the house?—She is not.

Remark.—This manner of answering is, however, rather formal; in ordinary style the answers would be **sí señor, no señora**, etc.

Exercise XXIV.

The archbishop has *recommended* me to you. If you desire to submit your project to the Governor, I will *present* you to him. If you do not understand the game of *poker*, I do not wish to teach it to you. If your uncle wants a live *condor* (*m.*), it will be difficult for us to *procure* it for him. My sisters want some roses. If we have any, we will send them to them. Who is the owner of this umbrella? I am. I am not rich now, but I hope to be. He looks like a priest, but he is not one. He is not a doctor, but his father is. Days of idleness are long, but busy days are not. The Misses *Serrano* want our opera-glasses. We will lend them to them to-night if they promise to return them to us to-morrow. I have caught the *Doctor's* stray pigeons and shall send them back to him. I have told Albert the story of the hare and the tortoise, but he does

not apply it to himself. He has a good situation, and I do not wish to deprive him of it. My uncle has a theodolite which he does not need, and he has promised to give it to me; if he does so, I will lend it to you with pleasure. I shall go out to-day and look for a servant for you. They declare that they have no *political influence*; but I believe that they have. I shall not send the boy with the flowers, but will take them to her myself. The good feeling which has until now existed between her and me has come to an end. Our cousin who lives in *Quezaltenango* has promised to send us a parrot and a monkey.

CHAPTER II.

NUMERALS AND NUMERICAL VALUES.

342. CARDINAL NUMERALS. ORDINAL NUMERALS.

Uno, -a,	1.	Primero,	1st.
Dos,	2.	Segundo,	2nd.
Tres,	3.	Tercero,	3rd.
Cuatro,	4.	Cuarto,	4th.
Cinco,	5.	Quinto,	5th.
Seis,	6.	Sexto, *or* sesto,	6th.
Siete,	7.	Séptimo, *or* sétimo,	7th.
Ocho,	8.	Octavo,	8th.
Nueve,	9.	Noveno, *or* nono,	9th.
Diez,	10.	Décimo,	10th.
Once,	11.	Undécimo,	11th.
Doce,	12.	Duodécimo,	12th.
Trece,	13.	Décimo tercio,	13th.
Catorce,	14.	Décimo cuarto,	14th.
Quince,	15.	Décimo quinto,	15th.
Diez y seis,	16.	Décimo sexto,	16th.
Diez y siete,	17.	Décimo séptimo,	17th.
Diez y ocho,	18.	Décimo octavo,	18th.
Diez y nueve,	19.	Décimo nono,	19th.
Veinte,	20.	Vigésimo,	20th.
Veinte y uno,	21.	Vigésimo primo,	21st.
Veinte y dos,	22.	Vigésimo segundo,	22nd.
Veinte y tres, *etc.*,	23.	Vigésimo tercero,	23rd.
Treinta,	30.	Trigésimo,	30th.
Treinta y uno, *etc.*,	31.	Trigésimo primo,	31st.
Cuarenta,	40.	Cuadragésimo,	40th.
Cincuenta,	50.	Quincuagésimo,	50th.
Sesenta,	60.	Sexagésimo,	60th.
Setenta,	70.	Septuagésimo,	70th.

CARDINAL NUMERALS.		ORDINAL NUMERALS.	
Ochenta,	80.	Octogésimo,	80th.
Noventa,	90.	Nonagésimo,	90th.
Ciento,	100.	Centésimo,	100th.
Ciento y uno,	101.	Centésimo primo,	101st.
Ciento y dos, *etc.*,	102.	Centésimo segundo,	102nd.
Doscientos, -as,	200.	Ducentésimo,	200th.
Trescientos, -as,	300.	Trecentésimo,	300th.
Cuatrocientos, -as,	400.	Cuadragentésimo,	400th.
Quinientos, -as,	500.	Quingentésimo,	500th.
Seiscientos, -as,	600.	Sexcentésimo,	600th.
Setecientos, -as,	700.	Septengentésimo,	700th.
Ochocientos, -as,	800.	Octogentésimo,	800th.
Novecientos, -as,	900.	Nonagentésimo,	900th.
Mil,	1,000.	Milésimo,	1,000th.
Dos mil,	2,000.	Dos milésimo,	2,000th
Doscientos, -as mil,	200,000.	Doscientos milésimo,	200,000th.
Quinientos, -as mil,	500,000.	Quinientos milésimo,	500,000th.
Un millón,	1,000,000.	Millonésimo,	1,000,000th.
Diez millones,	10,000,000.	Diez millonésimo,	10,000,000th.

CARDINAL NUMERALS.

☞ The compounds **diez y seis, diez y siete, veinte y uno, veinte y dos, treinta y uno**, etc., are sometimes written as one word: **dieciséis, diecisiete, veintiuno, veintidós, treintaiuno**, etc.

343. The cardinal numbers are all invariable except **uno** and the compounds of **ciento**:—

Cuarenta caballos y cuatro mulas.	Forty horses and four mules.
Mil soldados.	A thousand soldiers.
Veinte y cinco casas.	Twenty-five houses.

344. Uno (which is the same word as the indefinite article) agrees in gender with the noun to which it refers, but drops the **o** when immediately preceding a masculine noun. In compounds it drops the final vowel before nouns of either gender, and no longer agrees with the noun:—

Un caballero; una señora.	A gentleman; a lady.
Veintiún casas.	Twenty-one houses.
Ciento y un sillas.	A hundred and one chairs.

REMARK.—Still when such compounds follow the noun, as when used for ordinal numbers, **uno** agrees with the noun and is not curtailed:—

Capítulo veinte y uno, página ciento y una.	Chapter twenty-one, page one hundred and one.

345. **Ciento** drops the final syllable when it comes immediately before a noun, or before **mil**, *thousand*. An adjective clause may then intervene, but the full form **ciento** is required when followed by smaller numerals. Its multiples agree in number and gender with the nouns to which they belong:—

Cien bocoyes de melote.	One hundred hogsheads of molasses.
Cien valerosos hombres.	A hundred brave men.
Cien mil almas.	A hundred thousand souls.
Ciento cincuenta cigarros.	One hundred and fifty cigars.
Quinientos libros ; quinientas botellas de vino.	Five hundred books ; five hundred bottles of wine.
Doscientas mil libras de tabaco.	Two hundred thousand pounds of tobacco.
Posee un yate de recreo de trescientas toneladas.	He owns a pleasure-yacht of three hundred tons.
Tomaré ciento de esas acciones.	I will take a hundred of those shares.
Á una distancia de ciento ó doscientos pasos.	At a distance of one or two hundred paces.

346. In the formation of compound numbers, the same order is observed in Spanish as in English, except that the conjunction comes between the last two members of the series, provided the last one be less than ten; otherwise there is no conjunction:—

Diez mil cuatrocientos setenta y cinco.	Ten thousand four hundred *and* seventy-five.
Ciento diez.	A hundred and ten.
Quinientos veinte.	Five hundred and twenty.

347. Counting by hundreds is not carried above nine hundred in Spanish; beyond that it is by thousands, with any odd number of hundreds added:—

Dos mil quinientos.	Twenty-five hundred.
Mil ochocientos noventa y dos.	Eighteen hundred and ninety-two.

348. **Millón** is considered as a noun and therefore takes the indefinite article and is followed by the preposition **de**:—

Un millón de millas.	A million miles.
El costo de construcción de las doscientas millas de ferrocarril ha sido de nueve millones de pesos.	The cost of the two hundred miles of railroad has been nine million dollars.

349. Uno is not used before **ciento** and **mil** unless its absence would cause ambiguity:—

Mil ciento noventa y nueve, 1,199;
but
Doscientos un mil ciento noventa y nueve, 201,199,
because
Doscientos mil ciento noventa y nueve *would be* 200,199.

350. Uno, una, when expressing *unity,* has no plural; it may have a plural under the following circumstances:—

1. When it is employed as the indefinite article to denote an undetermined number:—

Unos bollos; unas frambuesas.	Some cakes; some raspberries.

2. When used as a noun denoting the numeral "1":—

El once se escribe con dos unos.	Eleven is written with two 1's.

3. When used in the predicate to denote identity or similarity, it agrees in number (and gender) with its noun:—

El mundo siempre es uno.	The world is ever one.
Los corazones de mis partidarios son unos.	The hearts of my followers are one.

351. The remaining numerals are necessarily plurals; however, when employed as nouns they are considered as singular, and as such may be made plural in the same manner as nouns:—

El 255 se escribe con un dos y dos cincos.	255 is written with one 2 and two 5's.
El siete de infantería ligera.	The 7th Light Infantry.
Tiré un par de sietes.	I drew a pair of sevens.

352. Ciento and **mil,** when used as collective nouns, may be made plural:—

Tenemos muchos cientos, muchos miles de documentos.	We have many hundreds, many thousands of documents.
Una brisa fresca que viene de la cordillera á algunos cientos de leguas de aquí.	A cool breeze which comes from the mountains some hundreds of leagues from here.

353. After the verb **ser,** numerals denoting prices, dimensions, etc., are preceded by the preposition **de**:—

El precio de este solar es de $2 por pie cuadrado.	The price of this building-lot is $2 per square foot.

La distancia es de veinte millas.	The distance is twenty miles.
La cosecha será probablemente de 20.000 arrobas.[1]	The crop will probably be 5,000 hundredweight.

354. The arithmetical signs $+$, $\times$, $-$, $\div$, $=$, are read respectively **más, por, ménos, dividido por, igual á**:—

Veintiocho más siete menos doce igual á veintitrés.	$28 + 7 - 12 = 23$.
Siete y ocho, quince; asiento cinco y llevo uno.	7 and 8 are 15; I put down 5 and carry 1.
Siete por ocho, cincuenta y seis, y nueve hacen sesenta y cinco.	7 times 8 are 56, and 9 makes 65.
Dos por dos son cuatro.	Twice two is four.
Uno en seis no alcanza; trece en seis, toca dos, y queda uno, *etc.*	6 into 1, no times; 6 into 13, twice and 1 over, *etc.*

ORDINAL NUMERALS.

355. The ordinal numbers are to all intents adjectives, and, whether single or compound, agree with their nouns in gender and number:—

Los cinco primeros capítulos.	The first five chapters.
La página vigésima séptima.	The twenty-seventh page.

☞ The compound forms of the ordinals are written by some grammarians as one word; as: **cuadragésimoséptimo** (*fem.* **cuadragésimaséptima**). But it is preferable to write them separately, both for æsthetic reasons, and because both words vary separately.

356. Primero and **tercero** drop the final **o** when they immediately precede a noun masculine singular, or are separated from it only by an adjective:—

El primer día; el tercer tomo.	The first day; the third volume.
El primer buen ejemplo.	The first good example.
El primero de mis hijos.	The first of my children.

357. On account of their greater length, the ordinals are not so frequently used in Spanish as in English; indeed, with the exception of **primero**, they are generally replaced by the cardinal numbers, except in grave, religious or antique style:—

Libro dieciseis, página ciento veinte.	Book sixteen, page a hundred and twenty.
El siglo diez y nueve.	The nineteenth century.

[1] The arroba is ¼ cwt., and is used both as a dry and a liquid measure.

El décimo aniversario.	The tenth anniversary.
El salmo centésimo séptimo.	The hundred and seventh psalm.
Al estilo del siglo décimo sexto.	In sixteenth-century style.

REMARK.—When the cardinal numbers are used as ordinals, they regularly follow the noun if it be expressed. The simple ordinals usually follow the noun, the compound ones always do.

358. In naming a succession of sovereigns, the ordinal numbers are regularly employed up to **décimo**; above that the cardinals are substituted. The name and number of the potentate are not connected by the definite article as in English:—

Pedro segundo ; Carlos quinto.	Pedro the Second ; Charles the Fifth.
Pío nono ; León trece.	Pius the Ninth ; Leo the Thirteenth.
Alfonso doce ; Luis catorce.	Alphonso the Twelfth ; Louis the Fourteenth.

359. The ordinal numbers are abbreviated by adding the final syllable to the appropriate Arabic numeral, the termination varying according to gender. Occasionally the abbreviation is made by the addition of merely **o**, **a**, **os**, **as**, in smaller type:—

El 1ro de noviembre.	The 1st of November.
La 2da cláusula.	The 2nd clause.
3ro, 4to, 5to, 6to, 7mo, *etc.*	3rd, 4th, 5th, 6th, 7th, *etc.*
1o, 2a, 3o, 21os, 66as, *etc.*	1st, 2d, 3d, 21st, 66th, *etc.*

COLLECTIVE NUMERALS.

360. Collective numerals are nouns representing a number as a unity:—

Par, pair, couple.	**Cuarentena**, two score ; quarantine.
Decena, ten, half a score.	**Centena** *or* **centenar**, hundred.
Docena, dozen.	**Gruesa**, gross.
Quincena, fifteen.	**Millar**, thousand.
Veintena, twenty, score.	**Millón**, million.
Treintena, thirty.	**Cuenta** (*ant.*), million.

REMARK.—**Ciento** and **mil** may be used as collectives.

361. Centenar is preferred to **ciento** as a collective noun except when employed to express rate:—

Centenares de aves marinas.	Hundreds of sea fowl.
Á cuatro pesetas el ciento.	At four pesetas per hundred.

362. Millar is generally interchangeable with **mil** as a collective noun ; but in expressing rate **millar** alone is admissible:—

Millares *or* miles de animálculas.	Thousands of animalcula.
Á diez pesos el millar.	At $10 per thousand.

REMARK.—In mercantile language the article is usually omitted :—

35.000 ladrillos, á $12 millar.	35,000 bricks, at $12 per 1,000.
Estos tabacos se venden á $6 ciento.	These cigars sell at $6 a hundred.
Buñuelos á real uno.	Fritters 5 cents apiece.
¡ Á perro chico ! ¡ á perro chico! [1]	Only one cent apiece !

PARTITIVE OR FRACTIONAL NUMERALS.

363. Fractional numerals from $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{1}{10}$ inclusive correspond more or less to the ordinal numerals:—

Un medio,	$\frac{1}{2}$	Un cuarto,	$\frac{1}{4}$	Un octavo, *or*	$\frac{1}{8}$
Uno y medio, / Una y media,	$1\frac{1}{2}$	Un quinto,	$\frac{1}{5}$	Un ochavo,	$\frac{1}{8}$
		Un sexto,	$\frac{1}{6}$	Un noveno,	$\frac{1}{9}$
Un tercio,	$\frac{1}{3}$	Un séptimo,	$\frac{1}{7}$	Un décimo,	$\frac{1}{10}$

364. From $\frac{1}{11}$ onwards they are regularly formed from the cardinals by adding the termination **-avo.** If the denominator be a numeral of simple form, this termination is usually appended to it so as to form one word. If the denominator be a compound numeral, the various component parts should be connected by hyphens:—

Un onzavo *or* once-avo,	$\frac{1}{11}$	Un veintavo *or* veinte-avo,	$\frac{1}{20}$
Un dozavo *or* doce-avo,	$\frac{1}{12}$	Un veintiunavo *or* veinte-y-un-avo, *etc.*	$\frac{1}{21}$
Un trezavo *or* trece-avo,	$\frac{1}{13}$	Un treintavo,	$\frac{1}{30}$
Un catorzavo *or* catorce-avo,	$\frac{1}{14}$	Un cuarentavo,	$\frac{1}{40}$
Un quinzavo *or* quince-avo,	$\frac{1}{15}$	Un cincuentavo,	$\frac{1}{50}$
Un dieciseisavo *or* diez-y-seis-avo,	$\frac{1}{16}$	Un sesentavo,	$\frac{1}{60}$
Un diecisiete-avo *or* diez-y-siete-avo,	$\frac{1}{17}$	Un setentavo,	$\frac{1}{70}$
Un dieciocho-avo *or* diez-y-ocho-avo,	$\frac{1}{18}$	Un ochentavo,	$\frac{1}{80}$
Un diecinueve-avo *or* diez-y-nueve-avo,	$\frac{1}{19}$	Un noventavo,	$\frac{1}{90}$
		Un centavo *or* centésimo,	$\frac{1}{100}$
		Un milésimo,	$\frac{1}{1000}$

[1] In Spain the copper coin of 5 céntimos is called familiarly **perro chico** (*little dog*), and the 10-céntimo piece, **perro grande** (*big dog*), on account of the lion on the reverse.

365. The denominators of course assume the plural form when the numerator is greater than unity:—

Dos tercios,	$\frac{2}{3}$	Treinta y tres centavos,	$\frac{33}{100}$
Tres cuartos,	$\frac{3}{4}$	Cincuenta y cinco doscientos-cuarenta-y-cuatro-avos,	$\frac{55}{244}$
Cuatro quintos,	$\frac{4}{5}$		
Cinco octavos,	$\frac{5}{8}$	Novecientos ochenta y tres mil-cuatrocientos-cincuenta-y-cinco-avos,	$\frac{983}{1455}$
Once dieciseisavos,	$\frac{11}{16}$		

366. Fractions above $\frac{1}{12}$ are more commonly expressed by the appropriate ordinal numeral preceding and agreeing with the feminine noun **parte**, *part*, especially when the thing divided follows or is understood. The same is applicable to fractions between $\frac{1}{3}$ and $\frac{1}{10}$ inclusive, when the thing divided follows or is understood:—

La duodécima parte, / Una duodécima parte,	$\frac{1}{12}$	Las dos terceras partes,	$\frac{2}{3}$
		Las tres cuartas partes,	$\frac{3}{4}$
Las treinta y tres centésimas partes,	$\frac{33}{100}$	La diez milésima parte,	$\frac{1}{10000}$

NOTE.—There are a few irregularly formed partitive numerals which are restricted in their application to particular objects. Thus, **una tercia, una cuarta** and **una sesma**, are respectively *a third, a quarter* and *a sixth of a yard*; **un cuarterón**, *a quarter of a pound*; **una cuarterola**, *a keg* or *quarter cask*; **un cuartal**, *a peck* (quarter of a **fanega**); **una arroba** (from the Arabic for $\frac{1}{4}$), 25 *pounds* or $\frac{1}{4}$ *cwt.*, applied to liquid as well as dry measure in Spain. **Un quinto**, *a fifth, a fifth man*, hence *a conscript soldier*; **la quinta**, *the military conscription.* **Un diezmo**, *a tithe*, 10% *tax*; from which is made **diezmar**, *to decimate.*

367. Partitive numerals are employed as follows in Spanish to designate the size of a book; i.e. the number of leaves in a signature or of pages to a form:—

Un tomo en folio (f°).	A folio volume.
Un tomo en cuarto (4°).	A 4to volume.
Un tomo en octavo (8°).	An 8vo volume.
Un tomo en 8° mayor.	A royal 8vo volume.
Un tomo en dozavo (12°).	A 12mo volume.
Un tomo en diez-y-seis-avo (16°).	A 16mo volume.
Un tomo en veinte-y-cuatro-avo (24°).	A 24mo volume.

368. The noun **un medio**, *a half*, applies to calculations only, except when it means *midst* or *middle*; in other cases the

noun **la mitad** is used. **Medio, -a,** is the adjective meaning *half*:—

La mitad de su caudal.	Half of his property.
Le daré la mitad.	I will give him half.
En el medio de la estancia.	In the middle of the room.
Medio luto.	Half mourning.
Media docena.	Half a dozen.
Media hora, una hora y media.	Half an hour, an hour and a half.
Un mes y medio.	A month and a half.
Por término medio.	On an average.
La temperatura media del año en la Martinica es de 81° (ochenta y un grados).	The mean annual temperature of Martinique is 81° (eighty-one degrees).

369. Medio may be employed indeclinably as an adverb:—

El cura bajó medio dormido medio despierto.	The priest came down-stairs half asleep, half awake.
Quedamos medio muertos de espanto.	We were half dead with fright.
Los malteses hablan una lengua medio árabe medio italiana.	The Maltese speak a language half Arabic, half Italian.

REMARK.—The noun **mitad** is similarly used:—

La sirena es una ninfa marina fabulosa, mitad mujer, mitad pez.	The mermaid is a fabulous sea-nymph, half woman, half fish.

MULTIPLE NUMERALS.

370. Multiple numerals answer the question *how many fold?* They comprise adjectives and nouns as follows:—

Simple, *single.*	**Quíntuplo** *or* **quintuplicado,** *fivefold.*
Doble *or* **duplicado,** *double.*	**Séxtuplo,** *sixfold.*
Triple *or* **triplicado,** *triple.*	**Décuplo** *or* **decuplado,** *tenfold.*
Cuádruplo *or* **cuadruplicado,** *quadruple.*	**Céntuplo** *or* **centuplicado,** *a hundred fold.*

These are used in the same manner as their English equivalents:—

Movimiento simple. Partida doble.	Single motion. Double entry.
Una máquina de simple efecto, de doble acción.	A single-acting, a double-acting engine.
Triple expansión, *or* expansión triplicada.	Triple expansion.
Doble fuerza, *or* fuerza duplicada.	Double power.
Ritmo cuádruplo, *or* cuadruplicado.	Quadruple rhythm.

371. The multiple forms not ending in **ado** may be employed as masculine nouns:—

Yo apuesto el doble.	I bet twice as much.
Le devolveré el décuplo.	I will return him tenfold.

372. Multiple numerals may be made from the cardinals from **tres** to **diez** inclusive, by the addition of **tanto**:—

Es verdad que el valor de esta industria supera en el cuatrotanto el valor de las materias primas que les damos.	It is true that the value of this industry exceeds fourfold the value of the raw materials we give them.

373. The termination **-eno**, added to cardinals, forms a series of adjectives applied to cloth and signifying the number of threads in the warp.

Dieciseiseno, dieciocheno, veinteno, veintidoseno, veinticuatreno, *etc.*	1600, 1800, 2000, 2200, 2400, *etc.*

NUMERAL ADVERBS.

374. Numeral adverbs expressing the number of times of an occurrence are formed by a cardinal numeral and the feminine noun **vez**, *a time*:—

Una vez, once.	**Diez veces**, ten times.
Dos veces, twice.	**Cien veces**, a hundred times.
Tres veces, three times.	**Mil veces**, a thousand times.

Le he escrito dos veces, si no tres.	I have written him twice, if not three times.

375. Numeral adverbs expressing order of procedure are made by the addition of **mente** to the feminine form of the ordinal numerals:—

Primeramente, firstly.	**Décimamente**, tenthly.
Segundamente, secondly.	**Décima sexta y últimamente**, sixteenthly and lastly.
Terceramente, thirdly.	

INDEFINITE NUMERAL EXPRESSIONS.

376. The most usual way of expressing a number approximately is by placing before it the plural of **uno**, which is then generally to be rendered *some*:—

Guayacán, notable por sus extensas obras de fundición de cobre, tiene **unos** 2.000 habitantes.	Guayacan, noted for its extensive copper-smelting works, has some 2,000 inhabitants.
Unas diez de las baterías del enemigo se han colocado á lo largo de aquel cerro.	Some ten of the enemy's batteries have planted themselves along yonder ridge.
La cantidad de lluvia que cae anualmente en la isla de la Trinidad es de **unas** 65 pulgadas.	The mean annual rainfall in the island of Trinidad is about 65 inches.

377. The following expressions also are frequently used :—

El faro está situado **como** á seis millas del promontorio.	The light-house is situated at about six miles from the point.
De aquí el pico parece tener una altura de 3.000 metros, **poco más ó menos**.	From here the peak appears to have an altitude of 10,000 feet, more or less.
Este lago tiene una superficie **como de unas** doscientas millas cuadradas.	This lake has an area of some two hundred square miles.
El diámetro total es **cosa de** 80 centímetros.	The total diameter is about 80 centimeters.
Á cosa de seis leguas de la costa.	At about 15 miles from the coast.
600 pies **ó cosa así**.	600 feet or thereabouts.
La cosecha total monta á **cerca de** 2.900 fanegas.	The total crop amounts to about 2,900 bushels.

378. The collective numerals in **-ena** have frequently an indefinite value:—

Una decena de libras.	About ten pounds.
Una centena de varas de terciopelo negro.	Some hundred yards of black velvet.

EXERCISE XXV.

The *republic* of *Chile* is divided into 22[1] *provinces*. About 110,000 sq. miles of the *territory* of *Venezuela* are covered with mountains, which *form* two distinct systems. The *republic* of *Santo Domingo* is a *confederation* of five states. The railroad from *Mendoza* to the frontier of *Chile* runs at almost double the *elevation* of the line of the *Central Pacific* across the Rocky Mountains. Thus far, the 472 miles of railroad have cost the Government $13,000,000. The *Argentine Republic* has issued bonds to the amount of (*por valor de*) $70,986,711. The four soldiers have *marched* 21 miles in four hours and a half. A barrel of flour contains 196 lbs. 144 units make a gross. The earth has one *satellite* (*m.* 3), called the

[1] The student should, for practice, write all Spanish numerals in full.

Moon; Mars has two, *Jupiter* (3) five, Saturn seven and a *triple* ring, *Uranus* four, and Neptune one. A bale of cotton contains about 500 lbs. The average crop of wheat in England is about 26 bushels per *acre*. Eggs are now worth about 30 cents a dozen. The *Mestizos* of Central America are half Spanish and half Indian. *Quito, capital* of the *Republic* of *Ecuador*, is situated on the 14th minute of south *latitude*. The great plains of the *Argentine Republic form* three fourths of its *area* (*f.* 3). 81 is the square of 9. My nephew owns some thousands of cattle in *Texas*. We are now in the tenth *decade* of the 19th century. We will now sing the 18th part of the 119th psalm. Within a period of 50 years the probability of life has increased from 28 to 45 years and a half. New potatoes cost a quarter of a dollar a quarter of a peck. The widow receives during her lifetime one-third of the estate of her husband.

TIME AND ITS DESIGNATIONS.

379. DIVISIONS OF TIME.

El siglo, the century.
El año, the year.
El año bisiesto, the leap-year.
El mes, the month.
La quincena, **Quince días**, } the fortnight.
La semana, **Ocho días**, } the week.
El día, the day.
La noche, the night.
Mediodía, midday, noon.
Medianoche, midnight.
El amanecer, the dawn, daybreak.
El anochecer, dusk, nightfall.

La hora, the hour.
Media hora, half an hour.
Un cuarto de hora, a quarter of an hour.
Tres cuartos de hora, three quarters of an hour.
Una hora y media, an hour and a half.
Una hora y un cuarto, an hour and a quarter.
Una hora y tres cuartos, an hour and three quarters.
El minuto, the minute.
El segundo, the second.

THE SEASONS OF THE YEAR.

La primavera, the spring.
El verano, el estío, the summer.
El otoño, the autumn, fall.
El invierno, the winter.

THE MONTHS.

Enero, January.
Febrero, February.
Marzo, March.
Abril, April.
Mayo, May.
Junio, June.
Julio, July.
Agosto, August.
Septiembre, September.
Octubre, October.
Noviembre, November.
Diciembre, December.

THE DAYS OF THE WEEK.

El domingo, Sunday.
El lunes, Monday.
El martes, Tuesday.
El miércoles, Wednesday.
El jueves, Thursday.
El viernes, Friday.
El sábado, Saturday.

ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS OF TIME.

Ayer, yesterday.
Antes de ayer, } the day before
Anteayer, } yesterday.
Mañana, to-morrow.
Pasado mañana, the day after to-morrow.
Mañana y pasado, to-morrow and next day.
Anteanteayer, three days ago.
Ayer por la mañana, yesterday morning.
Ayer por la tarde, yesterday evening.
Mañana por la mañana, to-morrow morning.
Mañana por la tarde, to-morrow evening.
Mañana por la noche, to-morrow night.
Al amanecer, at dawn.
En el día, at the present day.

Anoche, last night.
Antes de anoche, } the night before
Antenoche, } last.
De día, by day, in the daytime.
De noche, by night, in the night.
Á la madrugada, before sunrise, at an early hour.
Á la noche, at night.
Anteantenoche, three nights ago.
Por la mañana, in the morning.
Por la tarde, in the evening.
Por la mañana temprano, early in the morning.
Por la tarde temprano, early in the evening.
Á una hora avanzada de la noche, late at night.
Á la caída de la tarde, at nightfall.
Al anochecer, at dusk.
Al otro día, on the following day.

380. VARIOUS KINDS OF DAYS.

Día adiado *or* día diado.	Appointed day.
Día aplazado, *or* convenido.	Day agreed on.
Día de campo.	Field-day.
Día festivo.	Holiday.
Día de entre semana.	Week-day.
Día de gala.	Gala-day.
Día de hacienda, de trabajo.	Work-day.
Día de hueco, de descanso.	Day of rest.
Día de huelga.	Off-day (*among working men*).
Días de gracia *or* de cortesía.	Days of grace (*commercial*).
Días caniculares.	Dog-days.
Día de ayuno.	Fast-day.
Día de pescado.	Day when fish is the only animal food allowed.
El día de año nuevo.	Newyear's-day.
El día de Navidad.	Christmas-day.
Pascuas de Navidad.	Christmas, yule-tide.
La noche buena.	Christmas-eve.
El día de noche buena.	The day before Christmas.
¡ Felices pascuas !	Merry Christmas !

381. The days of the month, with the exception of the first, are counted in Spanish by the cardinal numerals, preceded by the definite article. In dating letters, however, the article is omitted. The month and year, when expressed, are connected with the date by the preposition **de**:—

El primero de mayo.	The first of May.
El cuatro de julio.	The fourth of July.
El siete de agosto de mil ochocientos noventa.	August seventh, eighteen hundred and ninety.
Lima, 26 de Abril de 1891.	Lima, April 26th, 1891.
Viernes, diez y ocho de agosto de mil ochocientos noventa y tres.	Friday, August the eighteenth, eighteen ninety-three.

382. When the month is not expressed, it is usual to place the word **día**, *day*, before the numeral; this is occasionally done when the month is given:—

Le espero el día treinta.	I expect him the thirtieth.
Partiremos el día quince.	We shall start on the fifteenth.
El día catorce de marzo. El catorce de marzo.	The fourteenth of March.

383. There are several formulæ for inquiring the day of the month, among which there is no preference; the only restriction is that the answer should conform to the terms of the question:—

¿Á cómo estamos? ¿Á cuántos estamos? ¿Qué día del mes tenemos?	What day of the month is it?
Estamos á diez y seis. Tenemos el diez y seis.	It is the sixteenth.
¿Á cómo estamos hoy?	What day of the month is to-day?
Á veinticinco.	The twenty-fifth.
¿Á cómo estaremos mañana? ¿Á cuántos estaremos mañana? ¿Qué día del mes tendremos mañana?	What day of the month will it be to-morrow?
Á veintiséis. El veintiséis.	The twenty-sixth.

384. In addition to the division of time into *day* (**día** = sunrise to sunset) and *night* (**noche** = sunset to sunrise), the Spaniards further subdivide these into four portions, which are:—

La madrugada, the morning (*midnight to sunrise*).
La mañana, the morning, forenoon (*sunrise to noon*).

La tarde, the evening, afternoon (*noon to sunset*).
La noche, the evening (*sunset to midnight*).[1]

385. In salutations, these divisions of the day are put in the plural:—

¡ **Buenos días** ! good morning ! good day !
¡ **Buenas tardes** ! good afternoon ! good evening !
¡ **Buenas noches** ! good evening ! good night !

REMARK.—**Buenas mañanas** is not used, and **buenas madrugadas** appears only in the well-worn joke on the young lover who loiters so long that he can no longer properly say **buenas noches**. **Buenos días** is the salutation used in the forenoon. As **buenas noches** is applicable any time after sunset, it is employed as a greeting as well as an adieu.

386. The days of the week require to be preceded by the definite article, except when used in the dating of letters and the like. No preposition corresponding to the English *on* is then employed:—

Quedaré hasta el lunes.	I will stay until Monday.
El domingo es día de descanso.	Sunday is a day of rest.
El sábado es el último día de la semana.	Saturday is the last day of the week.
Tendré el dinero el lunes.	I shall have the money Monday.
Comemos pescado los viernes.	We eat fish on Fridays.
Toma lecciones de francés los lunes, miércoles y viernes, y de música los martes y jueves.	She takes French lessons Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays, and music lessons Tuesdays and Thursdays.

387. The day of the month, when unaccompanied by the day of the week, may be expressed by a cardinal numeral without an article, but preceded by **á** which is to be rendered *on*:—

Á uno de mayo.	On the first of May.
Á dos de junio.	On the second of June.
Á quince de octubre.	On the fifteenth of October.

388. The hour or time of day is expressed by the cardinal numbers, preceded by the feminine article (to agree with **hora, horas**, understood). The verb *to be*, when needed, is then singular or plural as may be required by the number of hours:—

¿ Qué hora es ?	What time, what o'clock is it ?
¿ Qué hora tiene V. ?	What time have you ?

[1] In popular usage these limits are not strictly adhered to, the point of division being often a little later than that prescribed above.

Es la una.	It is one o'clock.
Son las dos; son las cuatro.	It is two o'clock; it is four.
Á la una; á las cinco.	At one o'clock; at five o'clock.
Lo haré antes de las doce.	I shall do it before twelve.
Estaré en mi despacho á las nueve en punto.	I shall be at my office at exactly nine.
Entre la una y las dos.	Between one and two o'clock.
¿Son las ocho ya?	Is it eight o'clock yet?
Sólo son las siete.	It is only seven.
Son cerca de las once.	It is nearly eleven.

389. Portions of time before or after an hour named, are placed after it, connected by **y**, *and*, or **menos**, *less*; the word **minutos**, *minutes*, is often omitted:—

Es la una y media.	It is half past one.
Es la una menos cuarto.	It is a quarter to one.
Son las dos y diez minutos.	It is ten minutes past two.
Me ha prometido venir á las diez menos veinte.	He promised me to come at twenty minutes to ten.
Estará aquí á las cuatro y pico.	He will be here at a little after four.
Le espero á las once y cuarto.	I expect him at quarter past eleven.
Quedaré hasta la una y diez minutos.	I shall stay until ten minutes past one.

390. The particular hour of any of the larger divisions of the day is connected with it by the preposition **de**, where in English *in* or *at* is used:—

Á las tres de la madrugada.	At three o'clock in the morning.
Á las siete de la mañana.	At seven o'clock in the morning.
Á las cinco de la tarde.	At five o'clock in the evening.
Hasta las diez de la noche.	Until ten o'clock at night.
Son las doce del día.	It is twelve noon.
Son cerca de las doce de la noche.	It is nearly twelve at night.

391. *To strike*, in speaking of the hour, is **dar**, used intransitively, the verb then agreeing in number with the hour:—

La una va á dar.	It is going to strike one.
Las dos van á dar. / Van á dar las dos.	It is going to strike two.
¿Han dado las doce ya?	Has it struck twelve yet?
Han dado las cinco. / Son las cinco dadas.	It has struck five.
Este reloj da las medias horas.	This clock strikes the half hours.

392. The division of time in the immediate future is expressed by **próximo**, *next*, or **que viene**, (in literary style, **veni-**

dero,) *coming*; the present time is represented by **actual** or **presente**, *present*, or **corriente**, *current*; and that past by **pasado**, **último**, *last*, or **próximo pasado**, *lately past*. Thus:—

El siglo pasado ; el siglo venidero.	The last century ; the next century.
El año pasado ; el año que viene.	Last year ; next year.
El mes pasado ; el mes que viene.	Last month ; next month.
De otro modo quedaremos empatados hasta el otoño venidero.	Otherwise we shall remain in a dead lock until next autumn.
La comitiva partirá en el mes que viene.	The retinue will start next month.
Iré el viernes próximo.	I will go next Friday.
En el mes de julio próximo pasado.	In the month of July just past.
Desde el jueves de la semana pasada.	Since Thursday of last week.
El lunes de la semana que viene.	On Monday of next week.
El día treinta y uno del mes corriente recibiré mil pesos.	The thirty-first of the current month I shall receive $1,000.

393. In business style, when the month is qualified by one of the above expressions, the word **mes** is frequently omitted:—

El día veinte del próximo pasado.	The twentieth of the month just past.
El cinco del actual ; el doce del último.	The fifth instant ; the twelfth ultimo.

394. The expressions **quince días, ocho días,** are more frequently employed than the general terms **quincena** and **semana**:—

De hoy en quince días.	A fortnight from to-day.
De hoy en ocho días.	A week from to-day.
De mañana en ocho días.	A week from to-morrow.
Llegará dentro de ocho días.	He will arrive within a week.

395. Expressions for the beginning, middle or end of any period of time are made more indefinite by being put in the plural:—

Á primero del mes que viene.	On the first of next month.
Á primeros del mes que viene.	In the early part of next month.
Á principios del siglo actual.	Along at the beginning of the present century.
Á fin del año.	At the end of the year.
Á fines del año.	In the latter part of the year.
Á mediados del año pasado.	About the middle of last year.
Á últimos del mes	Toward the end of the month.

NOUNS EXPRESSING TIME IN ITS VARIOUS ASPECTS.

There are in Spanish a number of nouns which correspond to some value of the English *time*, but which are distinct in their usages.

396. Tiempo is *time* in its widest and most general sense, and is the term for time in philosophy and science:—

El tiempo es el oro del sabio y el juguete del necio.	Time is the wise man's gold and the fool's plaything.
Tiempo sideral, tiempo medio.	Sidereal time, mean time.
No tenemos tiempo ahora.	We have not time now.
No llegará á tiempo.	He will not arrive in time.

REMARK.—**Tiempo** means also *weather*:—

Tiempo variable, tiempo borrascoso, tiempo apacible, tiempo cubierto, *etc.*	Changeable weather, stormy weather, pleasant weather, cloudy weather, *etc.*

397. Plazo is a period of time appointed or agreed upon:—

Señalar un plazo.	To appoint a time, set a time.
Acortar, alargar el plazo.	To shorten, extend the time.
El plazo se ha cumplido.	The time has expired.
Á plazos cortos.	On short instalments.
Al plazo y en el lugar convenidos.	At the time and place agreed on.

398. Rato is an undetermined, generally short, space of time, equivalent to the English *while*. It is also used when reference is had to the quality of an occasion:—

Al cabo de rato.	After a while.
Después de un buen rato.	After a good while.
Estuvo largo rato pensando.	He stood a long while thinking.
¿No quiere V. esperarle un rato?	Won't you wait for him a while?
¿Qué rato han llevado Vds.?	What kind of a time did you have?
Hemos llevado mal rato.	We had a poor time.

399. Espacio is often used when especial reference is had to duration:—

Permaneció silencioso durante un espacio considerable.	He remained silent for a considerable length of time.

400. Época is a fixed point of time:—

En aquella época estaba de cónsul en Valparaíso.	At that time he was consul at Valparaiso.

401. **Vez** is a point of time considered as part of a series:—

Esta vez te lo perdono.	This time I forgive you.
Es la primera vez que ha hecho tal cosa.	It is the first time he has done such a thing.
Algunas veces ; rara vez *or* raras veces ; repetidas veces.	Sometimes ; rarely ; repeatedly.

MANNER OF EXPRESSING DIMENSIONS.

402. The principal nouns and adjectives used are the following:—

NOUNS.	ADJECTIVES.
La altura *or* **elevación**, height.	**Alto**, high *or* tall.
La longitud *or* **extensión**, length.	**Largo**, long.
La anchura, width *or* breadth.	**Ancho**, wide *or* broad.
La profundidad, depth.	**Profundo** *or* **hondo**, deep.
El espesor, thickness.	**Grueso**, thick.

403. When the dimension stands in the predicate after the object described, the connecting verb is **tener** in Spanish, while in English it is the verb *to be*. **Tener** is followed by a noun of dimension connected with the numeral by **de**. The adjectives **alto, largo** and **ancho**, however, are used in the same manner as their corresponding nouns, and are, in fact, more usual:—

El interior de la catedral de Milán tiene 449 pies de largo y 275 de ancho en la nave del centro, y 238 pies de alto debajo de la cúpula.	The interior of the Milan cathedral is 449 feet long and 275 wide in the central nave, and 238 feet high under the dome.
El río tiene aquí una anchura de media milla, y una profundidad de cuatro brazas.	The river is here half a mile wide and four fathoms deep.
El foso que lo rodea tiene tres metros de ancho y cuatro de profundidad.	The ditch which surrounds it is three yards wide and thirteen feet deep.
El Itata es un vapor de hélice, de 1.200 toneladas. Tiene 300 pies de largo, 45 de ancho, y un calado medio de 18½ pies[1], y desaloja 3.730 toneladas. Su velocidad pasa de 18 nudos por hora.	The Itata is a screw steamer of 1,200 tons. She is 300 feet long, 45 wide and has an average draft of 18½ feet and 3,730 tons displacement. Her speed exceeds 18 knots per hour.

[1] Or, in technical terms, **300 pies de eslora, 45 de manga y 18½ de puntal.**

La rada de adentro tiene 1½ millas de largo con una anchura como de 3 cables. La rada de afuera tiene de tres á 4 millas de largo, con una anchura de media milla y una profundidad de 4 brazas.	The inner harbor [at Buenos Aires] is 1½ miles long with a width of about three cable-lengths. The outer harbor is from three to four miles long with a width of half a mile and a depth of four fathoms.
La cúpula de la iglesia de S. Pedro en Roma tiene 450 pies de elevación y 130 de diámetro por dentro.	The dome of St. Peter's at Rome is 450 ft. high and 130 in diameter inside.
El pedestal tiene diez pies en cuadro y quince de altura.	The pedestal is ten feet square and fifteen feet high.
Este pozo artesiano tiene una profundidad de 1.000 pies. El tubo tiene seis pulgadas de diámetro, y la presión del agua es de 150 libras por pulgada cuadrada.	This artesian well is 1,000 feet deep. The tube is six inches in diameter and the pressure of the water is 150 lbs. to the square inch.
La mesa de alimentación es de acero colado y tiene media pulgada de espesor.	The feed-table is of cast steel, half an inch thick.

REMARK.—There are cases where a noun of dimension is required as a leading word in the sentence, and the adjectives **alto**, **largo** and **ancho** are not admissible :—

El valle de Quito tiene una altura media de 9.540 pies.	The valley of Quito has a mean altitude of 9,540 feet.
El grueso de la tapia es de cuatro ladrillos.	The thickness of the wall is four bricks.

404. When the word denoting dimension is used attributively without a connecting verb, the following modes of expression are in use :—

La línea de ferrocarril atraviesa aquí una cañada de 500 pies de ancho y 120 de profundidad.	The railroad here crosses a ravine 500 feet wide and 120 feet deep.
La faja de rocas fosfatadas al oeste constituye mantos de gran extensión, á veces de 6 á 9 metros de espesor.	The stratum of phosphated rocks forms veins of great extent, at times from 6 to 9 meters thick.
Una vara de acero, larga de 6 metros.	A steel rod 6 meters long.
El corral está rodeado de una fuerte empalizada, alta de dos metros (*or* de dos metros de alto).	The stock-yard is surrounded by a stout fence, 6½ feet high.
La fachada tiene cinco puertas situadas debajo de un pórtico 448 pies de longitud y 39 de ancho.	The façade has five doors situated under a portico 448 feet long and 39 wide.

He comprado un alfombra turca, de veinte pies por catorce.
El tamaño de los torpedos es de 14 pulgadas de diámetro y de 14 pies 6 pulgadas de largo.
El edificio tendrá una área de 250 pies próximamente.
La segunda parte, de la misma altura, es una continuación de la rotonda central, de 175 pies cuadrados, rodeada por todas partes por una columnata abierta de 20 pies de ancho y 40 de alto con columnas de 4 pies de diámetro.

I have bought a Turkish carpet, twenty feet by fourteen.
The size of the torpedoes is 14 inches in diameter and 14 feet 6 inches in length.
The building will have an area of about 250 feet.
The second part, of the same height, is a continuation of the central rotunda, measuring 175 square feet, surrounded on all sides by an open colonnade 20 feet wide and 40 high, with columns 4 feet in diameter.

405. Weight is expressed in the same manner as in English:—

El cañón con su cureña pesa 261.000 libras.
Esta grúa levanta con facilidad un peso de doscientas toneladas.
415 billetes nuevos de á peso, de los Estados Unidos, según prueba verificada, equivalen en peso á una libra.

The cannon with its carriage weighs 261,000 lbs.
This crane raises with ease a weight of 200 tons.
415 new U. S. dollar bills are, according to actual experiment, equal in weight to one pound.

MANNER OF EXPRESSING AGE.

406. Age is expressed by **tener**, followed by a cardinal denoting the number of years:—

¿ Cuántos años tiene V. ?
¿ Qué edad tiene V. ?
How old are you ?

Yo tengo veintitrés años y mi hermano tiene veinte.
I am twenty-three years old and my brother twenty.

Tiene treinta años cumplidos.
He is just thirty years old.

407. The birthday is not celebrated in Spanish countries, but the day of the saint after whom the person is named. When mention is made of the anniversary of one's birth it is called **el día de su cumpleaños, el día de sus años,** or **su cumpleaños.** One's saint's-day is spoken of as **el día de su santo,** or simply **sus días:**—

Mañana son los días de Don Agapito.
To morrow is Don Agapito's saint's-day.

408. The following adjective and adverbial expressions relating to age are the same in both languages:—

No representa su edad.	He does not look his age.
Somos de la misma edad.	We are of the same age.
Á la edad de 30.	At the age of 30.
Ha entrado en su sexagésimo año.	He has entered his sixtieth year.

Exercise XXVI.

From the beginning of the 14th century the epidemic of the *grippe* (*f.*) has *visited* Europe 25 *different* times at (*con*) *irregular* intervals. Christmas is the 25th of December. The *eclipse* (*m.*) of the moon begins at half past nine in the evening. The *thermometer* (3) has descended as far as zero three times in the course of a month. A minute is the sixtieth part of an hour; a week is $\frac{7}{365}$ of a year. What time is it? It is ten minutes past seven. What day of the month will next Sunday be? It will be the twenty-eighth. We shall start to-morrow at daybreak. The 4th of July is the great holiday in the United States. How old is your father? He has just entered his 70th year. Has it struck ten yet? I have promised to be at the post-office at twenty minutes past ten. No, it is seven minutes to ten. A fortnight from to-day I shall be in *Lima*, and in the early part of next month shall go to (*al*) *Callao*. The *Museum* is open to the *public* Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays from ten in the morning until half past three in the afternoon. In the dog-days the days are long and the nights short. The tide rises here sometimes to a height of 27 feet. The mouth of the harbor is two miles wide and the *center* of the channel is 18 fathoms deep. The walls of the Duke's garden are 9 feet high and 2 feet thick; the gate-posts of the *principal* entrance are of stone 6 feet square at the *base* (*f.*) and 12 feet high. To-day is my birthday; I am just 45 years old; my saint's-day will be a fortnight from to-morrow. You do not look your age.

CHAPTER III.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS USED ABSOLUTELY.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

409. In addition to those already given, the possessive pronouns have fuller forms when they follow, or take the place of, a noun. They are then varied like adjectives ending in **o**:—

SING.	*1st p.*	**Mío.**	Mine, my.
	2nd p.	**Tuyo.**	Thine, thy.
	3rd p.	**Suyo,** (*same as plur.*)	His, hers, her, its; yours, your.
PLUR.	*1st p.*	**Nuestro.**	Ours, our.
	2nd p.	**Vuestro.**	Yours, your.
	3rd p.	**Suyo,** (*same as sing.*)	Theirs, their; yours, your.

REMARK.—These are called *absolute* forms because they can be used without a noun. The conjunctive forms already given (**mi, tu, su,** etc.) stand regularly before the noun, and are shorter, except **nuestro** and **vuestro,** which are identical. It may aid the student in understanding the distinction between the two sets, to consider them (as many grammarians do) as belonging to the class of adjectives which drop the final syllable before a noun, but never when coming after, or standing in place of, one.

410. The possessive pronoun is placed after the noun for sake of emphasis, in spirited language, in contrast, and for rhetorical effect; the noun in that case is regularly accompanied by the definite article:—

El derecho mío.	My right.
La influencia suya.	His influence.
Según el parecer nuestro.	According to *our* opinion.
El amor nuestro á la patria.	Our love for the country.

411. But in some expressions of a general character, occurring so frequently as to have become familiar phrases, the article is omitted:—

De parte mía.	On my part.
Á casa nuestra.	To our house.
Á fe mía.	On my word.
Á pesar suyo.	In spite of them.
Á costa suya.	At his expense.
Á instancias suyas.	At his entreaty.
Mira en torno suyo.	He looks around him.

412. The Spanish usage corresponds to the English in such expressions as the following:—

El dinero es mío.	The money is mine.
El caballo castaño es suyo.	The chestnut horse is his.
Tuya es la culpa.	Thine is the blame.
¿De quién es este diccionario?—Mío.	Whose is this dictionary?—Mine.

413. In such cases **suyo** is replaced by the appropriate personal pronoun preceded by **de,** when ambiguity would otherwise result:—

El libro con pasta de cuero de becerro es de él, de ella.	The book bound in calf is his, hers.
La pluma de oro es de V.	The gold pen is yours.
Las casas de ladrillo son de ellos.	The brick houses are theirs.
Los abanicos de gasa son de ellas.	The gauze fans are theirs.
La culpa no es mía, sino de V.	The fault is not mine, but yours.

414. The possessives of the first person, i.e. **mío** and **nuestro**, when employed in direct address, regularly follow the noun, provided said noun be not accompanied by an adjective:—

¡ Hijo mío !—Sí madre mía.	My son !—Yes, mother.
Amigos míos ; oyentes míos.	My friends ; my hearers.
Padre nuestro que estás en los cielos.	Our Father who art in heaven.

415. But if an adjective accompany the noun, either form may be used, with this distinction, as above stated, that the fuller form is more emphatic, and therefore more affectionate:—

Mi querido hijo. / Querido hijo mío.	My dear son.

416. The possessive pronoun follows the noun when taken in an indeterminate sense. It then corresponds to the English idiomatic expressions *of mine, of ours, of his,* etc.:—

Un antiguo conocido mío, nuestro.	An old acquaintance of mine, of ours.
Busca á un criado suyo.	He is looking for a servant of his.

417. When this usage occurs after the verb **ser**, the article is omitted unless the noun be qualified by an emphatic adjective:—

Son parroquianos nuestros.	They are customers of ours.
Es buen amigo mío, suyo.	He is *a* good friend of mine, of his.
Es un fiel y estimado amigo mío, suyo.	He is *a* faithful and valued friend of mine, of his.

We may also say:—

Es amigo mío y de mi padre.	He is a friend of mine and of my father's.
Es vecino nuestro, y del ministro mejicano.	He is a neighbor of ours and of the Mexican Minister's.

418. The absolute forms of the possessive pronouns are frequently used in cases where, in English, the preposition *of* or *from* and a personal pronoun would be required:—

Salieron en busca suya.	They went out in search of him.
Todavía no he recibido carta suya.	I have not yet received a letter from him.

419. The possessive pronoun should be repeated before each noun, unless it refers to the same person or object:—

Mi tío, mi tía y mi prima están en Guayaquil.	My uncle, aunt and cousin are in Guayaquil.
Señor mío y amigo.	Sir and friend.
Mi amigo y colega, el Sr. Gómez.	My friend and colleague Mr. Gomez.

420. When the subject of the sentence is of the third person, **su** (alone) and **suyo** regularly refer to the subject, so that the possessions of another third person must be expressed by **de él, de ella, de Vd.**, etc., either alone or in connection with **su**:—

V. no ha tomado el sombrero de él sino el suyo.	You have not taken his hat but your own.
Él no ha tomado el sombrero de V. sino el suyo.	He has not taken your hat but his own.
Mi hermano ha venido á pedir á V. un libro suyo.	My brother has come to ask you for a book of his.
He venido á pedir á V. la mano de una hija suya.	I have come to ask you for the hand of one of your daughters.

421. The possessive pronoun may be strengthened by the addition of the appropriate form of the adjective **propio**, *own*:—

Vivo en mi propia casa.	I live in my own house.
Ella enseña á sus propios niños.	She teaches her own children.
Engrandecen su propia importancia.	They magnify their own importance.

Remark.—**Propio** is occasionally, though rarely, used interchangeably with **mismo** to intensify a personal pronoun:—

Él propio lo ha hecho.	He himself has done it.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS.

422. Interrogative pronouns have usually been considered after the relatives, but the interrogative usage is the original one. The forms of the words are the same. The interrogative usage passes imperceptibly into one where there is no trace of an interrogation, as in the following example, where the same words occur in the same order in each sentence, shading off from a distinct question to no question at all:—

¿Quién ha ganado el premio gordo?	Who has won the capital prize?
Queremos saber quién ha ganado el premio gordo.	We wish to know who has won the capital prize.

No sabemos quién ha ganado el premio gordo.
We do not know who has won the capital prize.

El diario de hoy nos dirá quien lo ha ganado.
To-day's paper will tell us who has won it.

REMARK.—The first example is called a *direct* interrogation; the second and third, *indirect* interrogations. In these the interrogative use is distinguished in Spanish by the written accent. This not only applies to pronouns but to certain adverbs which are used both as interrogatives and as relatives:—

PRONOUNS		ADVERBS.[1]	
INTERROGATIVE.	RELATIVE.	INTERROGATIVE.	RELATIVE.
Quién Who?	**Quien** Who	**Cuándo** When?	**Cuando** When
Cuál Which?	**Cual** Which	**Dónde** Where?	**Donde** Where
Qué What?	**Que** That	**Cómo** How?	**Como** As
Cúyo Whose?	**Cuyo** Whose	**Por qué** Why?	**Porque** Because
Cuánto How much?	**Cuanto** As much		

☞ The above pronouns, with the exception of the invariable **que**, are varied in the same manner as adjectives of like terminations, and conform to the same laws of agreement. The adverbs are of course indeclinable.

423. **Quién** is only used substantively and is restricted to persons:—

¿Quién llama?
Who calls?

¿Á quiénes ha ajustado V.?
Whom (what persons) have you hired?

424. **Qué** may precede nouns representing either persons or things. Used alone, it always has a neuter value:—

¿Qué ser humano, qué animal, qué planta ó piedra no demuestra la presciencia de Dios?
What human being, what animal, what plant or stone does not show the providence of God?

¿Qué falta en sus obras? Nada.
What is lacking in his works? Nothing.

425. Popularly **qué cosa** is often used for **qué** in its neuter value:—

¿Qué cosa ha dicho V.? *or* ¿Qué cosa?
What did you say? *or* What?

[1] The usage of these adverbs has been explained in previous lessons, and need not be recapitulated.

¿Qué cosa es? ¿Qué cosa quiere?	What is it? What does he want?
¿Qué cosa es "anacronismo"?	What is "anachronism"?

426. Cuál (plural **cuáles**), *which*, is applicable to persons or things, or may be used alone as referring to either. It queries *a certain one* (or *ones*) of a number indicated or understood:—

¿Cuál de los caballos va V. á comprar, el bayo ó el negro?	Which horse are you going to buy, the bay or the black one?
¿Cuál de los caminos conduce á Bemba?	Which road leads to Bemba?
¿Cuál necesita V., éste ó aquél?	Which do you want, this or that?
¿Cuáles de sus casas ha vendido Vd.?	Which of your houses have you sold?

427. Cuál takes the place of **qué**, *what*, before the verb *to be*, when the noun follows, except when a mere definition of a word is asked for:—

¿Cuál es la fecha de su carta?	What is the date of his letter?
¿Cuáles son los deberes de un cónsul?	What are the duties of a consul?
¿Cuál será el resultado?	What will be the result?
¿Qué es el panteísmo?	What is pantheism?
¿Qué es la diferenciación del homogéneo?	What is the differentiation of the homogeneous?
¿Qué (*i.e.* qué cosa) es el peligro que os espanta sino una infundada aprehensión?	What is the danger that appals you but an unfounded fear?
Vds. hablan de precauciones, pero ¿cuál (*not* qué) es el peligro que les espanta?	You speak of caution, but what is the danger that appals you?

428. Cuánto (varied like adjectives in **o**) in the singular is equivalent to *how much*, in the plural, *how many*:—

¿Cuánto dinero ha recibido V.?	How much money have you received?
No le diré á V. cuánto.	I sha'n't tell you how much.
¿Cuánta pólvora necesitan los soldados?	How much powder do the soldiers need?
¿Cuántos bocoyes de azúcar han vendido Vds.?	How many hogsheads of sugar have you sold?

429. Cuyo (varied like adjectives in **o**) corresponds to the English *whose*. Its interrogative use is now rare, and is almost entirely limited to cases where it is followed by the verb **ser**.

In other connections the meaning is expressed by **de quién**, or a different form is given to the inquiry by using **cuál** or **qué**:—

¿De quién es este sombrero? ¿Cúyo es este sombrero?	Whose is this hat?
¿De quién es aquel hermoso edificio? ¿Cúyo es aquel hermoso edificio?	Whose is that handsome building?
?De quién es hijo ese joven?[1]	Whose son is that lad?
¿Qué cuadro ha ganado el premio?	Whose picture has won the prize?
¿Cuál historia de España prefiere V.? *or* ¿Quién es el autor de la historia de España que V. prefiere?[1]	Whose history of Spain do you prefer?

430. **Qué** and **cuánto** are also used in exclamations. These are but an extension of the interrogative use, and differ only in punctuation and the fact that they do not ask for information. The two kinds of sentences pass into each other so imperceptibly that it is sometimes difficult to distinguish them.

431. **Qué** is employed in exclamations with the meaning of *what!*; before an adverb, or an adjective not accompanying a noun, it is rendered *how!*:—

¡Qué feliz es V.!	How happy you are!
¡Qué dicha! ¡Qué lujo!	What luck! What luxury!
¡Qué vista grandiosa!	What a magnificent view!
¡Qué biblioteca elegante tiene su señor padre!	What an elegant library your father has!
¡Qué bien habla!	How well he speaks!
¡Con qué acierto teclea!	With what accuracy she fingers (manipulates the keys)!

432. Greater emphasis or vivacity is imparted by interpolating **más**, *more*, or **tan**, *so*, between an adjective and a noun preceded by **qué**:—

¡Qué tinta más mala!	What bad ink!
¡Qué lugar tan silencioso, tan poético!	What a quiet, poetical place!
¡Qué obra tan digna de admiración!	What an admirable work!

---

[1] Such expressions as ¿ **cúyo hijo es ese joven** ? ¿ **cúya historia de España prefiere V.** ? are not now considered admissible, although recommended by their brevity and the example of various classic authors.

433. **Cuánto**, when used in exclamations, is shortened to **cuán** before adjectives not accompanying nouns, and before adverbs. Otherwise it is inflected regularly:—

¡ Cuánto ha cambiado su señorita hermana !	How much your sister has changed !
¡ Cuánto sabe ! ¡ Cuán docto es !	How much he knows ! How learned he is !
¡ Cuán fácilmente lo hace !	How easily he does it !
¡ Cuántas vidas inocentes han sido sacrificadas en el altar del fanatismo !	How many innocent lives have been sacrificed on the altar of fanaticism !

434. In questions **cuánto** may be resolved into **qué tanto**, and **cuán** into **qué tan**:—

¿ Qué tanto dista del puerto la ciudad ?	How far is the city from the port ?
Qué tan arraigado es este sentimiento muy pocas personas en América lo saben.	How deep-rooted this feeling is, few persons in America know.

REMARK.—In exclamations this substitution can only be employed by separating **qué** from **tan**:—

¡ Qué acción tan generosa aquella !	What a generous action that [was] !
¡ Qué alma tan noble !	What a noble soul !

435. In like manner **cuál** may be resolved into **qué tal**, which is more usual than the change of **cuánto** just mentioned. Where the meaning permits, there is a distinction between **cuál** and **qué tal**; the former questions the identity, the latter the quality, of the person or thing:—

¿ Cuál es la casa que V. habita ?	What house do you live in ?
¿ Qué tal es la casa que V. habita ?	What kind of a house do you live in?
Si estos son los vencidos, ¿ qué tales serán los vencedores ?	If these are the vanquished, what kind of men may the victors be ?
¿ Cuáles son los vencedores ?	Who (*i.e.* which) are the victors ?

436. In indirect questions, and in both direct and indirect exclamations, a preposition governing the relative pronoun may be prefixed to its antecedent:—

¡ De los extravíos que es capaz una imaginación exaltada (*instead of* los extravíos de que) !	Oh the extravagances of which an exalted imagination is capable !
Sé al blanco que tiras (*instead of* sé el blanco á que tiras).	I know what you are aiming at.

Era cosa de ver con la presteza que acometió los comestibles.
La joven echó de ver con la insistencia que yo la miraba.
No quiero referir en las muchas ocasiones que yo le he prestado ayuda.

It was a sight to see the celerity with which he attacked the eatables.
The young girl noticed the intentness with which I looked at her.
I will not mention the many occasions on which I have given him assistance.

Exercise XXVII.

If my cousins do not arrive in time, the fault will be theirs and not mine. The young man who is bookkeeper at the railroad office is a cousin of ours. Miss *del Valle* has been here to-day with two young friends of hers from *Chihuahua*. The woman of whom you speak is an old servant of mine and of my mother's. Your uncles and their families and your sister and her husband and children are well and send their love.[1] The house we live in is not ours; it is the banker's. How dreadful! The paper says that a madman has murdered his wife and her sister. Does it say also whose horse has won the cup? How many seats has this church? What damp, disagreeable weather! What a *sublime* sight is an active volcano[2]! Who is the *author* of this *article*? It is not yet permitted me to tell you who has written it. What kind of a government has *Chile*? How many miles have the troops *marched* to-day? Whose Spanish dictionary do you prefer? How much interesting material you have put in your grammar! How many pigs have you now? I have not counted them since last spring. How *mysterious* is death! It is *impossible* to *estimate* how many and how great treasures are hidden under the seas. How many times have you (*pl.*) witnessed a cyclone? What is the rapidity of the current here? It is *evident* that his laughter is at our expense. Your brother, in a letter dated the 10th instant, informs me of the marriage of your son; but he omits to say who the bride is; I hope you will write me her name.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

437. There are four demonstrative pronouns in Spanish: **este, ese, aquel** and **el** (which is the same as the definite article).[3] They agree with the noun they relate to, in the same manner as adjectives:—

---

[1] Their love, **la expresión de su cariño.**

[2] An active volcano, **un volcán en actividad.**

[3] The five forms of the article, **el, la, lo, los, las**, are derived from the Latin demonstrative pronoun *ille, illa, illud*; acc. plur., *illos, illas*. This explains the employment of the article as a demonstrative pronoun in Spanish.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
SING.	**Este,**	**esta,**	**esto.**	This.
	Ese,	**esa,**	**eso.**	That (*near you*).
	Aquel,	**aquella,**	**aquello.**	That (*yonder*).
	El,	**la,**	**lo.**	That (*the one*).
PLUR.	**Estos,**	**estas,**	[*none*].	These.
	Esos,	**esas,**	[*none*].	Those (*near you*).
	Aquellos,	**aquellas,**	[*none*].	Those (*yonder*).
	Los,	**las,**	[*none*].	Those (*the ones*).

438. **Este** denotes what is near to, or associated with, the speaker: **ese**, what is near to, or associated with, the person spoken to; and **aquel**, what is remote from both. They precede the nouns to which they belong:—

Este libro que yo tengo.	This book which I have.
Esta ciudad en donde yo estoy.	This city where I am.
Ese libro que V. tiene.	That book which you have.
Esa ciudad en donde está V.	That city where you are.
Aquel libro que mi tío tiene.	That book which my uncle has.
Aquella ciudad en donde está mi tío.	That city where my uncle is.

439. Similarly, **este** refers to a subject mentioned by the speaker; **ese**, to one mentioned by the person addressed; and **aquel**, to the ideas of a third person:—

Este ejemplo que he citado.	This example which I have cited.
Esa opinión que tiene V.	That opinion which you hold.
Aquella doctrina de San Pablo.	That doctrine of St. Paul's.

440. With reference to time, **este** relates to the present, **ese** to a period relatively near, while **aquel** applies to a remote time:—

Esta mañana, este año, este siglo.	This morning, year, century.
Esa época, esos años.	That epoch, those years.
Aquel suceso; aquellos siglos.	That occurrence; those centuries.
En esas horas estará en París.	By that time he will be in Paris.
Aquellos días no los llegaremos á ver.	Those days we shall not live to see.

441. In business style, **en esta** and **en esa** are used elliptically, the word **ciudad**, *city*, or **plaza**, *market*, being understood:—

En esta los precios de géneros extranjeros suben sin vacilar á causa del aumento de derechos de importación.	Prices of foreign goods are steadily rising here on account of increase in import duties.
¿Cómo van los negocios en esa?	How is business with you?

442. Ese (like the Latin *iste*) occasionally implies contempt, especially when placed after a noun, which in that event takes the definite article :—

¿ Quién es ése ?	Who is that [fellow] ?
Ese chicuelo chillón.	That squalling brat.
Esas truchas de criadas á servir.	Those worthless servant-girls.
El gaitero ese.	That confounded bagpiper.
La taimada esa.	That sly-boots.

443. The neuter forms, **esto, eso** and **aquello**, are only used absolutely; that is, they are never found associated with nouns. They do not refer to tangible objects, but to some statement, remark or abstract idea :—

¿ Ha leído V. esto ?	Have you read this ?
Eso es.	That's it.
Eso parece impracticable.	That (which you propose) seems impracticable.
Eso es siempre deseable.	That is always desirable.
Aquello del filósofo griego.	That [thought] of the Greek philosopher.
Aquello no es de ninguna consecuencia.	That is of no consequence.

THE LOGICAL PRONOUN EL.

444. From the Latin pronoun *ille, illa, illud*, is derived a set of forms which has three separate uses and appears in the grammars under three distinct names. Preceding a noun, or adjective used as a noun, it is called the *definite article*. As the representative of a person or thing, it appears in fuller forms as the *personal pronoun of the third person*. With these two uses the student is already familiar.

Used absolutely, generally as the antecedent of a relative, but always referring to some noun or statement preceding, it is treated as a demonstrative; it is, however, merely a logical demonstrative, as it does not point out, but refers to, a noun. It may thus be called the *logical pronoun*.

445. El in its several forms, when used as a pronoun, does not accompany a noun, but serves to avoid the repetition of one; it is equivalent to the English *that, those, the one, the ones*, referring to something already mentioned or understood :—

Mi casa y la que V. ve.	My house and the one which you see.
El jardín de mi casa, y el de la que V. ha comprado.	The garden of my house and that of the one which you have bought.
La pluma de acero y la de oro.	The steel pen and the gold one.
Este potro es el de que le he hablado á V.	This colt is the one about which I spoke to you.
¿No es esa escopeta la que le va á regalar á V. su tío?	Is not that gun the one your uncle is going to give you?
El coche de mi padre y el de su amigo.	My father's carriage and that of his friend.
Los cigarros de V. ó los de su señor hermano.	Your cigars or those of your brother.

REMARK.—The last two examples might be expressed in English by using the possessive, but in Spanish there is only one mode of expression :—

Los cigarros de V. ó los de su señor hermano.	Your cigars or your brother's.
No tengo mi escopeta sino la de mi vecino.	I have not my gun but my neighbor's.

446. The logical pronoun similarly denotes persons, and should be used instead of the personal pronouns **él, ella, ellos, ellas,** when a relative pronoun follows:—

Los que hablan son Guatemaltecos.	Those who are speaking are natives of Guatemala.
El que desea mucho, siempre es pobre.	He who desires much is always poor.
Las que me ha indicado V. son primas mías.	Those [ladies] whom you have pointed out to me are cousins of mine.
Aquel soldado es el que ha matado á mi perro.	That soldier is the one that killed my dog.
La de quien VV. hablan es mi hermana.	She of whom you speak is my sister.

447. But when the relative following is governed by a preposition, **aquel** is more usual as an antecedent than **el,** when referring to persons:—

Aquella á quien adoro.	She whom I adore.
Aquel de quien he recibido esta carta.	He from whom I have received this letter.
Aquellos con quienes hemos hablado no apoyan la medida.	Those with whom we have spoken do not favor the measure.

448. The masculine singular of the logical pronoun, **el,** coalesces with **de** and **á** in the same manner as when it is the

definite article. (The personal pronoun, **él**, of stronger form, does not do so):—

Los que viven en el hemisferio austral ven al sol describir su arco diurno por encima del horizonte del norte y no por encima del del sur.	Those who live in the southern hemisphere see the sun describe its daily arc above the horizon of the north and not above that of the south.
Al que tiene, se dará; y **al** que no tiene, aun lo que tiene, se le quitará.	To him that hath shall be given; and from him that hath not shall be taken away even that which he hath.
¿Á qué teatro iremos?—**Al** del Duque.[1]	What theater shall we go to?—To the Duke's.

449. The neuter form **lo** refers only to a previous idea, thought or sentence, and not to any person or thing. Its principal use is to supply the antecedent before a relative pronoun, which in English is contained in the pronoun *what*, which is always expressed in full in Spanish by **lo que**:—

Eso es exactamente lo que quiero.	That is exactly what I want.
¿Ha leído V. lo que he copiado?	Have you read what I have copied?
Si lo que dice es verdad, . . .	If what he says is true, . . .
Estas circunstancias han ayudado materialmente á hacer á la Inglaterra lo que es en la actualidad.	These circumstances have aided materially in making England what she is at present.

450. Either part of the expression **lo que** may be governed by a preposition, which in either case precedes the entire expression. In English a preposition governing the relative part of *what* is placed at the end of the phrase:—

No puedo formar concepto de lo que dirá.	I can not form a conjecture of what he will say.
V. encontrará las costumbres muy diferentes de lo que espera.	You will find the customs very different from what you expect.
Eso es exactamente en lo que yo estaba pensando.	That is exactly what I was thinking about.
Es imposible prever á lo que la tiranía pueda incitarlos.	It is impossible to foresee what tyranny may drive them to.

NOTE.—In the last two examples the preposition governs **que**, although standing before **lo**; the construction resembles that explained at § 436.

451. When each member of the expression **lo que** is governed by a separate preposition, both prepositions precede **lo**,

[1] A theater in Seville, named in honor of the Duke of Montpensier.

the one applying to **que** being placed last. But this is a clumsy construction, and should be avoided whenever possible :—

Es difícil conciliar lo que refiere el profesor, con á lo que hemos estado acostumbrados.	It is difficult to reconcile what the professor says with what we have been accustomed to.
No tengo ningún recuerdo de á lo que V. se refiere (*better* de eso á que V. se refiere).	I have no recollection of what you refer to.

452. Lo que, in exclamations, expresses manner or quantity, thus being equivalent to **cómo** or **cuánto** :—

¡ Lo que ciega á los hombres la codicia !	How cupidity blinds men !
¡ Lo que vale la influencia política !	How much political influence is worth!
¡ Lo que es tener buena ropa !	What a fine thing it is to have good clothes !
La experiencia de cada día muestra lo deleznable que es la popularidad.	Daily experience demonstrates how unstable is popularity.

453. Lo is used elliptically with **de** to represent *the question, the affair of*; thus :—

Es lo de siempre.	It is the old story (*that of always*).
Lo del arancel.	The tariff question.
Concerniente á lo de Pierra.	Concerning the Pierra affair.

ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS USED ABSOLUTELY.

454. In Spanish any adjective, participle or pronoun may be used absolutely; that is, may stand alone, either employed as a noun, or referring to a noun understood or previously expressed. This is not common in English except in the plural, where we say: *the rich and the poor ; the righteous, the wicked.* Usually in the singular, and often in the plural, we express the noun, or indicate it by the use of *one, ones*:—

El viejo, una vieja.	The old man, an old woman.
Un anciano, una anciana.[1]	An elderly gentleman, an aged lady.
El rico ; los ricos.	The rich man ; the rich.
El enfermo, la enferma.	The sick person (*male or female*).

[1] **Anciano** is more respectful than **viejo**, and is therefore preferable in polite language when applied to persons. *Old*, relating to the length of existence of anything, is rendered by **antiguo** : **un antiguo amigo**, *a friend of long standing.*

El potro bayo y el negro.	The bay colt and the black one.
El buen café y el malo.	The good coffee and the bad.
Las casas viejas y las nuevas.	The old houses and the new ones.
Las ventanas abiertas y las cerradas.	The open windows and the closed ones.
¿Qué escopeta ha tomado V.?—He tomado la cargada.	Which gun did you take?—I took the loaded one.

455. This usage also applies to the absolute forms of the possessive pronouns **mío, suyo**, etc. When these stand in the place of nouns, they are regularly accompanied by the definite article, both agreeing with the thing possessed:—

Entre su familia y la mía existe una amistad muy estrecha.	A very close friendship exists between his family and mine.
Los amigos de V. y los nuestros.	Your friends and ours.
Ese sujeto no está contento con gastar su propio tiempo, sino que quiere también gastar el mío.	That individual is not satisfied with wasting his own time, but wishes to waste mine too.
Mi casa es semejante á la suya.	My house is similar to his.

456. When necessary for the clearness of the sentence, **suyo** is replaced by the appropriate personal pronoun preceded by **de**, the article still agreeing with the thing possessed:—

Nuestros amigos y los de V.	Our friends and yours.
Mi casa está cerca de la de ella.	My house is near hers.
Ha cambiado su caballo por el de ellas.	He has exchanged his horse for theirs (the ladies').

457. When **uno** represents a noun previously expressed, it is not apocopated, even though followed by an adjective; but an adjective used as a noun representing a person, requires the apocopated form:—

Si V. no tiene paraguas, le prestaré uno viejo mío.	If you have no umbrella, I will lend you an old one of mine.
Esposo mío, este abrigo que tengo está algo raído, además de estar fuera de moda; necesito uno nuevo.	Husband, this cloak of mine is rather shabby, besides being out of fashion; I want a new one.
Que un rico no tiene cuidados no es verdad.	It is not true that a rich man has no cares.

458. When the demonstrative pronouns **este, ese** and **aquel** are employed absolutely, they assume the written accent as a mark of distinction:—

Este caballo y aquél.	This horse and that one yonder.
Esa escopeta de V. y ésta mía.	That gun of yours and this one of mine.
¿Quiere V. aquellos libros ó ésos?	Do you want those books [over there] or those [near you]?

459. In referring to two persons or things, **éste** is equivalent to *the latter*, and **aquél**, *the former*; the order therefore is the reverse of the English:—

César y Cicerón son igualmente célebres en la historia romana; éste por su elocuencia, aquél por su valor.	Cicero and Cæsar are equally celebrated in Roman history; the former for his eloquence, the latter for his valor.
Una mujer hermosa gusta á los ojos; una mujer buena gusta al corazón. Si aquélla es una joya, ésta es un tesoro.	A handsome woman pleases the eyes; a good woman pleases the heart. If the former is a jewel, the latter is a treasure.

460. When there is danger of mistaking which of two nouns is the subject of a verb in a dependent clause, the one intended is reproduced by a demonstrative—**éste** applying to the nearest, and **ése** to the farthest one:—

Si la nación no ama al rey, es porque se deja [éste *or* ésa] llevar de perniciosas influencias.	If the nation does not love the king, it is because [he *or* it] allows [himself *or* itself] to be led astray by evil influences.

461. When adjectives or participles are used absolutely after the verb *to be*, they may or may not take the definite article; the distinction being that *without* the article the mere value indicated is expressed, while *with* the article it is expressed as belonging to a particular object (or objects) understood:—

Estas manzanas son agrias.	These apples are sour.
Estas manzanas son las agrias.	These apples are the sour ones.
Este abanico está roto.	This fan is broken.
Este abanico es el roto.	This fan is the broken one.

462. The same principle applies to the possessive pronouns: without the article they merely express ownership; with it, some particular possession:—

Aquella finca es mía.	That estate is mine (*is my property*).
Aquella finca es la mía.	That estate is mine (*the one belonging to me*).
La pluma de oro es la mía.	The gold pen is my one.
Estos niños son los míos.	These are my children.

463. Used absolutely in the masculine plural, the possessive pronouns denote the persons (friends, relations, servants, etc.) connected with anyone:—

Los míos.	My people, my friends, my party.
¿Cómo están V. y los suyos?	How are you and yours?
¿Va V. á llevar á los suyos consigo?	Are you going to take your folks with you?
El coronel conduce los suyos á la brecha.	The colonel leads his men to the breach.
Me parece que el honorable Delegado considera solamente los intereses de los suyos.	It seems to me that the Hon. Delegate cares only for the interest of his own constituents.

464. The neuter of the possessive pronouns is only used absolutely, and denotes property collectively and abstractly:—

He ganado lo mío honradamente.	I have gained my possessions honestly.
No desea sino lo suyo.	He wants only what belongs to him.

Exercise XXVIII.

This weather is *extremely* unpleasant. We *naturally* expect to have storms at this season of the year. In yonder old tree a pair of owls have their nest. That distant peak reflects the light of the setting sun. What you say is true, but it is not new. That is not *exactly* what I wish to say. The cuckoo throws out the eggs of small birds from their nest and deposits her own in their place. The grapes which I send you are from my own garden, but they do not equal those of yours. That is *perfectly intelligible* after what you say. Your watch is Swiss; mine is *American*. What we want to find out is where does he receive his money from. Those ladies whom you see yonder are tenants of mine. That boy has eaten his own sweetmeats and now he wants his sister's. I shall send my folks to the mountains this summer. It is already half past eight and that waiter has not brought me my coffee and toast. She lives in a stone house; ours is of brick and is opposite hers. Where is my hat? I think that the doctor has taken yours instead of his own. Which gloves are the new ones? The black ones. Which picture have you bought in the *exposition*? That of the celebrated *artist* Mr. *Messer*. Where did you learn that? What? That about the *doctrine* of *evolution*. In one of my father's books. It is *impossible* to foresee what will be the result of that *action*. What a fine thing it is to have money in *abundance*!

CHAPTER IV.

THE IMPERFECT AND AORIST[1] (PAST DEFINITE) TENSES.

465. In addition to the perfect tense (described in Lesson XIV), which is a compound tense, the Spanish verb has two past tenses of simple form: the *imperfect* and the *aorist*[1] (or *past definite*). In regular verbs these are obtained by adding the following terminations to the stem:—

	IMPERFECT.			AORIST.	
	1st Conj.	2d and 3d Conj.		1st Conj.	2d and 3d Conj.
1.	**-aba,**	**-ía,**	1.	**-é,**	**-í,**
2.	**-abas,**	**-ías,**	2.	**-aste,**	**-iste,**
3.	**-aba,**	**-ía,**	3.	**-ó,**	**-ió,**
1.	**-ábamos,**	**-íamos,**	1.	**-amos,**	**-imos,**
2.	**-abais,**	**-íais,**	2.	**-asteis,**	**-isteis,**
3.	**-aban.**	**-ían.**	3.	**-aron.**	**-ieron.**

IMPERFECT TENSE OF THE MODEL VERBS.

Sing.	1 p.	compraba,	vendía,	vivía,
	2 p.	comprabas,	vendías,	vivías,
	3 p.	compraba,	vendía,	vivía,
Plur.	1 p.	comprábamos,	vendíamos,	vivíamos,
	2 p.	comprabais,	vendíais,	vivíais,
	3 p.	compraban.	vendían.	vivían.

AORIST TENSE OF THE MODEL VERBS.

Sing.	1 p.	compré,	vendí,	viví,
	2 p.	compraste,	vendiste,	viviste,
	3 p.	compró,	vendió,	vivió,
Plur.	1 p.	compramos,	vendimos,	vivimos,
	2 p.	comprasteis,	vendisteis,	vivisteis,
	3 p.	compraron.	vendieron.	vivieron.

Note.—It will be seen that the first person plural of the aorist and that of the present indicative are identical in verbs of the first and third conjugations. Some writers distinguish them by accenting the aorist: **compramos, comprámos** ; **vivimos, vivímos.** But this distinction is not sanctioned by the Academy, and is not now in general use.

[1] There were in Greek three past tenses—imperfect, aorist and perfect—corresponding generally to those in Spanish. The distinction between aorist and perfect was lost in Latin, where one tense, called *perfect*, served both purposes ; and as grammar has been modelled from Latin, the term *aorist* has disappeared. Yet the same distinction which existed in Greek has been restored in the languages descended from Latin. Therefore the original and appropriate Greek term *aorist* has been adopted in this work instead of the more complex expressions *past definite* or *preterit definite.*

466. The imperfect tense is formed irregularly in three verbs only: **ser**, *to be*, forms its imperfect from a different root; the imperfect of **ir**, *to go*, resembles those of the first conjugation; and **ver**, *to see*, restores the original **e** of the stem in forming the imperfect:—

SER:	era	eras	era	éramos	erais	eran.
IR:	iba	ibas	iba	íbamos	ibais	iban.
VER:	veía	veías	veía	veíamos	veíais	veían.

467. **Tener, estar, haber, querer, hacer, venir** and **decir** form the aorist tense upon stems entirely different from those of their infinitives; they all have this point in common, that the first and third persons singular are accented on the penultimate, instead of the last syllable as in the regular verbs. **Ser** forms the aorist from a different root (as does the Latin *esse, to be*). **Ir** has no aorist of its own, and borrows that of **ser**. **Dar** forms the aorist like verbs of the second or third conjugations:—

TENER (**tuv**):	tuve	tuviste	tuvo	tuvimos	tuvisteis	tuvieron.
ESTAR (**estuv**):	estuve	estuviste	estuvo	estuvimos	estuvisteis	estuvieron.
HABER (**hub**):	hube	hubiste	hubo	hubimos	hubisteis	hubieron.
QUERER (**quis**):	quise	quisiste	quiso	quisimos	quisisteis	quisieron.
HACER (**hic**):	hice	hiciste	hizo[1]	hicimos	hicisteis	hicieron.
VENIR (**vin**):	vine	viniste	vino	vinimos	vinisteis	vinieron.
DECIR (**dij**):	dije	dijiste	dijo	dijimos	dijisteis	dijeron.[2]
SER / IR (**fu**):	fuí	fuiste	fué	fuimos	fuisteis	fueron.[2]
DAR (**d**):	dí	diste	dió	dimos	disteis	dieron.

468. The fundamental value of the imperfect is to express continuance, as of an action or condition prolonged either in itself or by successive repetition. It is the tense used to express what was habitual or customary, and to describe the qualities of persons or things, and the place or condition in which they were, in the past:—

En los tiempos de los bucaneros, los colonos españoles construían sus ciudades á distancia de la costa.

In the times of the Buccaneers, the Spanish colonists built their towns at a distance from the coast.

Anteriormente esta isla era una posesión inglesa.

Formerly this island was an English possession.

---

[1] The **c** is changed to **z** to preserve the sound.

[2] Observe that the **i** of the diphthong **ie** is lost.

El señor Garcés era un caballero muy agradable, pero tenía un defecto,—el de hablar demasiado.

Mr. Garces was a very agreeable gentleman, but he had one fault,—that of talking too much.

Creíamos que estaba V. en Chicago.

We thought you were in Chicago.

El tiempo estaba tempestuoso y sobre todo lluvioso, pero los caminos todavía no estaban malos y resistían bien á las ruedas de las carretas, aunque éstas eran bastante pesadas.

The weather was stormy and above all rainy, but the roads were not yet bad and resisted the wheels of the wagons well, although they were pretty heavy.

Este convento estaba situado sobre un contrafuerte elevado de la montaña, y dominaba la ciudad y sus cercanías.

This convent was situated on a high spur of the mountain, and overlooked the city and its environs.

469. The first and third persons singular of the imperfect being identical in form, it is necessary to express the pronoun subject when ambiguity would result from its omission:—

Encontraba con frecuencia á la Srita. hermana de V. cuando vivía **yo** en la ciudad.

I met your sister frequently when I lived in town.

En aquella época **él** tenía una hermosa quinta en Marianao.

At that period he had a fine country-place at Marianao.

Aquella señora es la que me mandaba frutas cuando **yo** estaba enfermo.

That lady is the one who used to send me fruit when I was sick.

470. The aorist expresses a past action not regarded as continuous, occurring at some particular time, understood or designated, of which no part is continued to the present. It is the historical tense of Spanish, corresponding to the Greek aorist in all cases not implying custom, repetition or duration, which are the distinctive characteristics of the imperfect:—

El pueblo de Chile, en Julio de 1810, proclamó su independencia, derrocó al presidente español, y el 18 de setiembre puso la autoridad suprema á cargo de una comisión de siete individuos.

The people of Chile in July, 1810, proclaimed their independence, deposed the Spanish president, and on the 18th of September placed the supreme authority in the hands of a commission of seven persons.

El general presentó al príncipe los oficiales de su plana mayor.

The general presented the officers of his staff to the prince.

Cuando Aníbal vió á los embajadores Romanos, tomó veneno.

When Hannibal saw the Roman ambassadors, he took poison.

Ayer me hallé un peso en la calle.	I found a dollar in the street yesterday.
Cuando entré á mi habitación, el criado me dió una carta.	When I entered my room, the servant gave me a letter.

DISTINCTION BETWEEN AORIST AND PERFECT.

471. If the occurrence in question took place within a space of time not yet expired, as this day, month, year, etc., or an indefinite time in any way connected with the present, the perfect tense is employed. Still, the aorist is used in speaking even of to-day, if the hour is given, for in that case the time specified is wholly past:—

He aprendido el castellano este año.	I have learned Spanish this year.
He leído hoy en el periódico que el monumento naval ha sido derribado por el viento.	I read in the paper to-day that the naval monument has been blown down by the wind.
He visto amenudo á aquel hombre, pero no recuerdo dónde.	I have often seen that man, but do not recollect where.
He escrito seis cartas esta mañana.	I have written six letters this morning.
¿Ha escrito Vd. hoy á su señor tío?	Have you written to your uncle to-day?
Sí; le escribí á las diez, y le mandé la esquela á las diez y media.	Yes, I wrote to him at ten o'clock and sent him the note at half past.

472. The following may serve further to distinguish the aorist and perfect tenses:—

a. A specified time wholly past requires the aorist tense.

b. A specified time connected with the present requires the perfect.

c. An unspecified time is, necessarily, not connected with either past or present, except in the mind of the speaker. If he has only the past in view, he uses the aorist tense; if the present be in his mind, he makes use of the perfect tense.[1]

☞ The boundary line here, as in all questions of rhetoric and style, is not clearly defined, and is subject to joint-occupancy and the exercise of individual taste. In ordinary conversational style the perfect tense, when admissible, is preferred to the aorist, which latter is the more usual in literary language.

---

[1] If we say *mi padre* **perdió** *$1.000 en esa especulación*, we consider the occurrence as entirely past and gone; but if we say *mi padre* **ha perdido** *$1.000 en esta especulación*, we speak of a comparatively recent occurrence, the effects of which are still felt, thus connecting it with the present time. Note, also, the change of pronoun.

COMPARATIVE EXAMPLES OF THE PERFECT AND AORIST TENSES.

He escrito hoy á mi padre. (*Includes present time.*)	I wrote to my father to-day.
Escribí á mi padre el sábado. (*Excludes present time.*)	I wrote to my father Saturday.
Grecia **produjo** grandes oradores y poetas. (*Here we speak of ancient Greece, now past and gone.*)	Greece produced great orators and poets.
Francia **ha producido** muchos autores eminentes. (*Her ability to produce them extends to the present.*)	France has produced many eminent authors.
Francia **produjo** muchos autores eminentes en el reinado de Luis Catorce. (*Here the time is restricted to a period entirely past.*)	France produced many eminent authors in the reign of Louis XIV.
Ha dejado á su familia sin sustento.	He has left his family without support.
Ha dejado un ejemplo insigne á la posteridad. (*In the last two the influence of the deceased extends to the present.*)	He has left a notable example to posterity.
No **he ido** á los baños de mar este verano, pero **estuve** allí el verano pasado.	I did not go to the sea-shore this summer, but I was there last summer.

DISTINCTION BETWEEN AORIST AND IMPERFECT.

473. The Spanish imperfect can generally be represented in English by either *used to* followed by an infinitive, or by the preterit of the verb *to be* and a present participle; the aorist can never be so represented. The English rendering does not necessarily assume one of these forms, but they are exact equivalents of the Spanish in meaning:—

Los griegos consideraban á todas las demás naciones como bárbaras.	The Greeks *used to consider* all other nations as barbarians.
Los tribunos tenían su asiento en la puerta del senado romano.	The tribunes *used to have* their seat at the door of the Roman senate.
Fumaba mucho en el colegio, pero más tarde abandoné la costumbre.	I *used to smoke* a great deal in college, but later gave up the habit.
Iba á la pesca todas las mañanas cuando vivía en el campo.	I *used to go* a-fishing every morning when I *was living* in the country.
Tenía una casa de huéspedes en Lima cuando estalló la revolución.	He *was keeping* a boarding-house in Lima when the revolution broke out.

El herido dormía profundamente y no le despertaron sus camaradas.

The wounded man *was sleeping* soundly and his comrades did not wake him.

Como apuntaba el alba del siguiente día, los expedicionarios salieron de la aldea.

Just as the dawn of the following day *was appearing*, the members of the expedition set out from the village.

Llegaron al muelle donde el vapor "Cuzco" aguardaba á sus pasajeros.

They reached the wharf where the steamer "Cuzco" *was awaiting* its passengers.

El pescador remendaba sus redes mientras que su mujer preparaba la cena.

The fisherman *was mending* his nets while his wife *was getting* supper.

El viento soplaba con violencia, pero por fortuna ya no llovía.

The wind *was blowing* with violence, but fortunately it *was* no longer *raining*.

Luchaba con valor contra las olas, pero una corriente fuerte le cogió y le arrastró hacia el norte.

He *was struggling* bravely against the waves, but a strong current caught him and swept him northward.

474. In historical narration, where the events are wholly past and separated from the present by a considerable interval, the aorist applies to actions of some duration, provided we have no especial reference to the fact of their continuance. It is as if the area over which the action extends were by the perspective of time reduced to a mere point:—

César escribió la historia de sus propias conquistas.

Cæsar wrote the history of his own conquests.

Napoleón III subió al trono en el año de 1851, y reinó hasta el de 1870.

Napoleon III. ascended the throne in the year 1851 and reigned until 1870.

Rómulo fué el primer rey de Roma.

Romulus was the first king of Rome.

Continuaron en esta administración las reformas judiciales comenzadas en la anterior.

They continued in this administration the judicial reforms commenced in the one preceding.

Los últimos años de Fernando II fueron amargados por disgustos de familia, promovidos por su segunda esposa.

The last years of Ferdinand II. were embittered by family troubles, caused by his second wife.

Los fenicios llegaron á España como amigos, negociaron como comerciantes, hicieron del Guadalquivir la vía de su tráfico, y sus primeras fundaciones no fueron plazas muradas ni atrincheramientos militares sino pacíficas colonias mercantiles.

The Phœnicians came to Spain as friends, traded as merchants, made the Guadalquivir the highway of their commerce, and their first settlements were not walled towns nor military intrenchments, but peaceable mercantile colonies.

475. The imperfect is required, however, whenever the fact of duration is essential, or the action is oft repeated. It thus applies to conditions, habits or peculiarities which were common to a person through life, or through so much thereof as we care to take cognizance of; while the aorist applies to those which were accidental or temporary :—

Cicerón **era** un orador elocuente.
Cicerón **fué** cónsul.
La influencia que la cultura de Roma ejerció en España fué grande y duradera.
Demóstenes temía y odiaba á Felipe.
Fernando III, rey de Castilla, fué un monarca egregio.
Fernando III brillaba como hombre político por su sabiduría, su tolerancia y su prudencia ; como militar por su valor y su pericia, y como religioso por sus eximias virtudes.

Cicero was an eloquent orator.
Cicero was consul.
The influence which the culture of Rome exercised in Spain was great and lasting.
Demosthenes feared and hated Philip.
Ferdinand III., king of Castile, was a remarkable sovereign.
Ferdinand III. shone as a statesman by his wisdom, his lenity and his prudence ; as a soldier by his bravery and skill, as a Christian by his distinguished virtues.

Remark.—Otherwise the imperfect is not employed unless the action be contemporary to a particular time, expressed or implied. Thus, to say **César escribía la historia de sus conquistas**, *Cæsar was writing the history of his conquests*, would be inadmissible without some complementary clause, as for instance **cuando fué nombrado dictador**, *when he was appointed dictator* ; nor could we say **Cicerón era cónsul** unless we added **á aquel tiempo**, *at that time*, or **cuando Catilina conjuraba contra el estado**, *when Catiline was conspiring against the State*, or some equivalent expression.

476. In narrations the aorist tells the occurrences which furnish the thread of the story; the imperfect describes the scene in which they occurred :—

Los exploradores **salieron** de la choza. **Eran** las seis de la tarde, y el sol con sus últimos rayos se **despedía** de los enhiestos picos de los cerros andinos. El frío, á pesar de la absoluta calma de la atmósfera, se **dejaba** sentir vivamente. Pablo **consultó** el barómetro y **vió** que el mercurio se **mantenía** á 0,423 milímetros, lo que **correspondía** á una elevación de 11.700 pies. El ingeniero y Pablo **llegaron** á una loma

The explorers came out of the cabin. It was six o'clock in the evening, and the sun was with his last rays taking leave of the sharp peaks of the Andine chains. The cold, in spite of the absolute stillness of the air, made itself keenly felt. Paul consulted the barometer and saw that the mercury stood at 423 millimeters, which corresponded to an altitude of 11,700 feet. The engineer and Paul reached an eminence from which they swept their gaze

desde la cual **pasearon** sus miradas por todo el horizonte. **Ocupaban** entonces la cima de los nevados de la cordillera, y **dominaban** un espacio de cuarenta millas. Hacia el sur el volcán de Antuco **rugía** como un monstruo enorme y **vomitaba** ardientes humaredas mezcladas con torrentes de llamas fuliginosas. El circo de montañas que lo **rodeaba parecía** incendiado ; un resplandor inmenso, que por instantes **adquiría** intensidad, una deflagración deslumbradora **llenaba** aquel vasto circúito con sus esplendentes reverberaciones. Del cráter del volcán **salían** cohetes de lava que **formaban** haces centelleantes ; nubes de vapores rojizos **coronaban** su cumbre, y granizadas de piedras candentes **caían** sobre sus lados. Á lo lejos **deslumbraban** los ventisqueros y capas de nieve sumergidos en aquella irradiación, mientras que las eminencias, las crestas, los picos, **reflejaban** la luz cobriza que **adornaba** sus contornos.

over the entire horizon. They were then occupying the summit of the snow-fields of the cordillera, and overlooked a range of forty miles. Towards the south the volcano of Antuco roared like an enormous monster and vomited glowing clouds of smoke mixed with torrents of sooty flames. The circle of mountains that surrounded it appeared on fire ; an immense glare which every instant gained intensity, a dazzling deflagration filled that vast circuit with its vivid flashes. From the crater of the volcano issued jets of lava which formed sheaves of sparks ; clouds of reddish vapor crowned its apex and showers of glowing stones fell upon its sides. In the distance the glaciers and snow-fields submerged in that irradiance were perfectly dazzling, whilst the eminences, crests and peaks reflected the coppery light which tinged their outlines.

Después de pasar mucho tiempo contemplando aquella magnífica lucha de los fuegos de la tierra con los del cielo, Pablo **rompió** el silencio, etc.

After remaining a long time contemplating that magnificent contest of the fires of earth with those of the sky, Paul broke the silence, etc.

COMPARATIVE EXAMPLES OF THE IMPERFECT AND AORIST TENSES.

¿Qué le **decía** á V. su señor padre?
¿Qué le **dijo** á V. su señor padre ?
¿Cuáles eran los deberes de su señor hermano cuando estaba empleado en el Banco Nacional ?
Escribía las cartas extranjeras. Una vez escribió al Sr. presidente de Méjico.
Mi padre tenía dos hermosos caballos, pero los vendió.

What was your father saying to you?
What did your father say to you ?
What were your brother's duties when he was employed in the National Bank ?
He wrote the foreign letters. One time he wrote to the President of Mexico.
My father had two fine horses, but he sold them.

Cuando ví al cuñado de V., tenía en la mano una escopeta de dos cañones.	When I saw your brother-in-law, he had (was holding) a double-barreled gun in his hand.
Yo atizaba la lumbre cuando ella entró.	I was poking the fire when she came in.
¿Visitó V. la Biblioteca Nacional en Quito?	Did you visit the National Library in Quito?
Sí, en efecto, leía y estudiaba allí con frecuencia.	Yes indeed, I read and studied there frequently.
¿Á dónde iba V. cuando yo le encontré?—Venía del teatro.	Where were you going when I met you?—I was coming from the theater.
¿Ha venido alguien?—Vino su señor padre, pero como estaba de prisa y V. estaba fuera, no le aguardó.	Did any one come?—Your father came, but as he was in a hurry and you were out, he did not wait for you.

Exercise XXIX.

Did you go to the ball last night? No, my mother was ill and I did not like to[1] go out. Spain gave to Rome three distinguished emperors, Trajan, Hadrian and *Theodosius*. The natives of *Australia* made drinking-cups of the skulls of their deceased friends. The *Opposition* demanded a *revision* of the *constitution*. The hunters did not easily find the traps under the snow which covered them. I was travelling in *Chile* when *Balmeceda's* government collapsed. While George was studying *rhetoric* and oratory, John was learning the *solid* lessons of the forge and the rolling-mill. The epidemic of small-pox lasted until the first frost. *Dr. Francia* was *dictator* and monarch of *Paraguay* during 28 years. Alexander, at the age of 18, encountered and vanquished the united armies of Athens and Thebes on (*en*) the field of *Chæronea*. Yesterday afternoon, the *thermometer* went up to 98°; to-day it has gone down to 72°. While he was discussing the *political* questions of the day, the pigs were rooting up his sweet potatoes. The lions robbed us of four horses; but we promptly avenged the death of the latter by killing two of the former. It was ten o'clock in the morning when the boat reached the second turn of the river. He was a well-educated man, but he spoke indistinctly, and it was almost *impossible* to understand what he said. It was striking eleven when we entered the house. When I looked towards her, she was no longer there. Four centuries have elapsed since that *memorable* morning when Columbus saw the first land of the New World. What was the New World then, what has it been, what is it now?

[1] Did not like to, **no quise.**

CHAPTER V.

PARTS OF THE BODY.

477. In speaking of the parts of the body of man or beast, the Spanish usage differs considerably from the English, the chief deviation consisting in a less frequent use of the possessive pronouns, and a preference for the definite over the indefinite article. The same modes of expression that apply to parts of the body are also extended to articles of clothing *on the person.*

478. When one does anything to his own hand, foot, coat, etc., the appropriate article and not the possessive pronoun precedes the part in question:—

Él ha perdido el brazo derecho.	He has lost *his* right arm.
El niño abre los ojos.	The child opens *its* eyes.
Ella bajó la cabeza.	She bowed *her* head.
Mete la mano en el bolsillo.	He puts *his* hand in *his* pocket.
Recibió una herida en el pecho.	He received a wound in *his* chest.

REMARK.—The possessive is really unnecessary here, as there can be no doubt as to whose right arm he has lost, or whose eyes the child opens, etc.

479. After **tener,** *to have,* or an equivalent, the definite and not the indefinite article is used, unless the latter be required as a numeral. This construction with **tener** is often employed in connections where it would not be used in English:—

Tenía la nariz larga y la boca ancha.	He had *a* long nose and *a* wide mouth.
Llevaba la barba entera.	He wore *a* full beard.
Él tiene las piernas demasiado largas.	His legs are too long.
Ella tiene los dientes blancos y pequeños.	She has small, white teeth.
Tenía los cabellos desordenados.	Her hair was disarranged.
Tengo los ojos cansados.	My eyes are tired.
V. tiene los ojos demasiado pequeños.	Your eyes are too small.
Mi hermano tiene las manos llenas de verrugas.	My brother has his hands full of warts.
Ella tiene las encias ulceradas.	She has ulcerated gums.
Llevo un diente postizo.	I have one false tooth.
Tengo un pie estropeado.	I have a crippled foot.
Ha perdido un ojo.	He has lost an eye.

480. When the part referred to is expressed by the plural or a general term, the definite article *may* be omitted:—

Tiene ojos azules, facciones delgadas y pelo rubio.	She has blue eyes, delicate features and light hair.

481. When the limbs, etc., of another are acted upon, the verb takes the person as the indirect,[1] and the parts of his body or clothing as the direct, object:—

El barbero me ha cortado el pelo.	The barber has cut my hair.
La madre corta las uñas al niño.	The mother cuts the child's nails.
El cirujano le ha compuesto el brazo.	The surgeon has set his arm.
Me apretó afectuosamente la mano.	He pressed my hand affectionately.
Le tomé la mano en la mía.	I took her hand in mine.
Me pisó el vestido.	He trod on my dress.
El viento le llevó el sombrero.	The wind carried off his hat.

482. This last construction is used in place of the first, when, for the sake of clearness, the owner requires to be specified; the indirect object is then the reflexive pronoun:—

Me lavo las manos en la palangana.	I wash my hands in the basin.
Ella se corta las uñas con las tijeras.	She cuts her nails with the scissors.
Él se ha cortado el dedo.	He has cut his finger.
Se desgarró la basquiña en un clavo.	She tore her basque on a nail.
Me he dislocado el hombro.	I have dislocated my shoulder.
Se ha roto el pescuezo.	He has broken his neck.
Se quita el sombrero.	He takes off his hat.
El joven artista se mordió el labio y no dijo nada.	The young artist bit his lip and said nothing.

483. When the part of the body is the subject of the sentence or clause, possession is expressed as in English by a possessive pronoun:—

Sus ojos negros brillaron como chispas.	Her black eyes gleamed like sparks.
Eran de mediano grosor sus labios.	Her lips were of medium thickness.
Sus ojos eran grandes y negros, sus pestañas largas, y sus cejas de una delineación perfecta.	Her eyes were large and black, her lashes long, and her eyebrows of perfect form.
Mis pobres ojos no me sirven ya para gran cosa.	My poor old eyes are no longer good for very much.

[1] This use of the indirect object may be regarded as a survival of an old and widely extended construction—the dative of possession.

Lucían sus ojos al través de sus lágrimas con desusado brillo.
Her eyes shone through her tears with unwonted brightness.

Su nariz recta, sobre la que se unían casi las cejas finas y bien arqueadas, aumentaba la animación de sus grandes ojos.
Her straight nose, over which her fine and well-arched brows almost joined, increased the vivacity of her large eyes.

484. The possessive pronoun is moreover required for the sake of clearness in cases where the ownership could not be expressed by the construction with the indirect object:—

Una sonrisa de inefable bondad animó su rostro arrugado.
A kindly smile animated her wrinkled face.

Un bigote moreno sombreaba su boca.
A dark mustache shaded his mouth.

Un inmenso gato negro se estregaba contra sus piernas.
An immense black cat was rubbing itself against his legs.

485. A person is sometimes singled out by naming some marked bodily or other characteristic, preceded by **de**, where in modern English *with* is used. In older English it was *of*, as in Spanish :—

El soldado de la barba.
The soldier with the beard.

Aquel caballero de las grandes patillas es inglés.
That gentleman with the long side-whiskers is an Englishman.

¡ Hola ! Usted del sombrero de copa.
Hullo ! You with the plug hat.

Prefiero la muchacha del traje azul.
I prefer the girl with the blue dress.

Aquélla de pelo moreno es mi hermana.
That one with brown hair is my sister.

Vino á la puerta un hombre de cabeza calva y barba roja.
A man with a bald head and a red beard came to the door.

486. There is a usage in Spanish of applying an adjective as it were to the individual, and then restricting it to a particular part by the preposition **de**. The result is obtained in English in various ways, principally by a compound adjective:—

Era un hombre de mediana edad, ancho de espaldas, agradable de facciones, resuelto de ademanes, firme de andadura, y de mirar osado y vivo.
He was a man of middle age, broad-shouldered, pleasant-featured, of determined bearing, firm step and with a quick, resolute glance.

El capitán mi tío es alto de estatura y robusto de temperamento.
My uncle the captain is tall in stature and of a robust constitution.

487. When describing the attitude or action of a person, the disposition of the parts of the body or things intimately con-

nected therewith is usually given in an absolute clause without any connecting word, where in English it is introduced by *with* or *having*:—

En eso entró mi hermano, los cabellos desordenados y la cara encendida, y me dijo . . .	At this juncture my brother came in with his hair in disorder and his face flushed, and told me . . .
Estaba en la esquina de la calle, las manos metidas en los bolsillos.	He was standing on the corner of the street with his hands thrust into his pockets.

This is a relic of the Latin ablative absolute; thus in the phrase *passis manibus milites implorabant* (with outstretched hands they implored the soldiers), the circumstance of the noun and adjective being in the ablative shows that they are merely explanatory; the Spaniards, not having any case-endings, add the bare words, separating them from the main part of the sentence by commas.

488. The distinction between the definite and the indefinite article as applied to parts of the body, clothing, etc., is that the definite article applies to an habitual possession, a natural and expected feature; the indefinite article implies that the noun which it accompanies is unexpected or unusual. The indefinite article mentions a thing for the first time, and after it is associated with a person and becomes a known part of him, it takes the definite article:—

Un oficial de marina estaba á la puerta con la espada desenvainada. (*Navy officers usually carry swords.*)	A naval officer stood at the door with his sword drawn.
Mi padre entró con una espada en la mano. (*The old gentleman was not in the habit of carrying one.*)	My father entered with a sword in his hand.
El teniente tenía un bigote poblado. (*It was hitherto unknown that he had one.*)	The lieutenant had a thick (*lit.* populated) mustache.
El teniente se retorcía el bigote. (*The mustache has now become a recognized feature.*)	The lieutenant twisted his mustache.

Exercise XXX.

The dog coughs because he has a bone in his throat. The captain had a fresh scar on his right cheek and carried his right arm in a sling. His hair is gray (*encanecido*), but his step is firm, his eyes bright and his heart young. Hares are *timid* and watchful, and always have their eyes open. Her delicate white fingers ran over the ivory keys. The miller has lost the thumb and forefinger of his left hand. The doctor felt her

pulse and shook his head. Blacksmiths and sailors have large hands and strong arms. My aunt wears false hair because she has lost her own; she also rouges her cheeks and powders her nose. The engineer was tall, thin and bony, had short gray hair,[1] and wore a heavy mustache equally gray. He was a man of great intellect, energetic, full of resources, with a bold, quick glance. The lawyer took off his hat and wiped his forehead with his handkerchief, looked to the right and to the left and then asked me what time it was. What means this crowd, this excitement? A workman has fallen from a ladder and has broken his neck. The judge fixed his gaze upon the stranger and asked him who he was; he replied that he was a discharged soldier and wished to apply for a *pension*. Lieutenant *Suárez* took her in his arms and carried her to the opening of the cave, where the pure air revived her and she finally opened her eyes. The hunter plunged his knife into the throat of the bear; but the enormous beast felled him to the ground with her left forepaw, while with the right she seized a fistful of snow with which she plugged the wound and stopped the flow of blood. The sailor was of low stature, but of strong muscles, broad shoulders, robust limbs, a round head, *abundant* black hair,[2] a thick beard and a penetrating glance. Her eyes had a look of cold disdain. The sergeant, bent against the force of the wind, his head drawn between his shoulders, advanced with great difficulty.

CHAPTER VI.

THE PREPOSITIONS **PARA** AND **POR**.

489. The prepositions **para** and **por**, from the variety of their meanings and usage, deserve a chapter to themselves. They are employed in senses that have so great an apparent resemblance, that no small care is required to distinguish them. Stated roughly, **por** refers to source and **para** to destination. They involve the questions *whence* and *whither*:—

Esta carta fué escrita **por** el general — This letter was written *by* the general
para el rey. — [intended] *for* the king.

REMARK.—Of the two, **por** presents the most difficulty. It may be regarded as taking the places of the Latin *per* and *pro*.

Per was used in expressing the time or place *through* which anything passed; the person *through* or *by* whom, or that *on account of* which, anything was done.

[1] los cabellos cortos y grises.

[2] la cabellera negra y abundante.

The primary meaning of *pro* was *before, in front of*. But one might stand before another as a defender, advocate, friend or representative, and thus act or speak *for* or *on behalf of* him, or *for* his benefit; it also signified the taking, exchanging or substituting one person or thing *for* another.

These various senses are combined in the Spanish **por**.

Para is a combination of *pro* in the sense of *before, forward,* and *ad; to,* so that its primary signification is *forward unto*. In all its uses its characteristics are purpose, object, end or intention.

POR.

490. In passive expressions **por** indicates the agent *by* whom an action is performed; but if the action be a mental one, the preposition used is preferably **de** :—

El muchacho será castigado por su padre.	The boy will be punished by his father.
Este niño es amado de sus padres.	This child is loved by its parents.
El fuerte fué tomado por el enemigo.	The fort was taken by the enemy.
El universo fué creado por Dios.	The universe was created by God.
España fué conquistada por los Moros.	Spain was conquered by the Moors.
Ese actor ha sido bien recibido por el público.	That actor has been well received by the public.
Esta obra está escrita por un autor francés.	This work is by a French author.

491. Indicates manner or means:—

El dentista me sacó el diente por fuerza.	The dentist pulled my tooth out by force.
Como V. los ha visto por sus propios ojos, puede afirmar que existen.	As you have seen them with your own eyes, you can declare that they exist.
Por Fulano conseguí el empleo.	I obtained the employment through So-and-so.
Conducía por la mano á un niño de cinco años.	She was leading a child of five years by the hand.

492. Indicates the reason or motive for an action:—

Por eso no quiero verle.	For that reason I do not want to see him.
Éste peleaba por la vida, aquél por la honra.	The one was fighting for life, the other for honor.
No fuí al baile por falta de ropa.	I did not go to the ball for want of clothes.
Por miedo de las consecuencias.	For fear of consequences.

Le han despedido por una falta leve.	They have discharged him for a slight fault.
Lo hace por vanidad.	He does it out of vanity.
No fué admitido por ser católico.	He was not admitted, because he was a Catholic.

493. After the verbs *to go, to send,* and the like, it shows the immediate object of the errand:—

El muchacho va por leña, por pan.	The boy goes for firewood, for bread.
Me mandó por el médico.	He sent me for the doctor.
Vino por su sueldo.	He came for his wages.

494. Indicates opinion, estimation or acceptation:—

Le tengo por hombre de talento.	I take him for a man of talent.
Le dejaron por muerto.	They left him for dead.
Le fusilaron por espía.	They shot him for a spy.
Fué ahorcado por ladrón.	He was hanged for a thief.
Lo dan por cosa extraordinaria.	They represent it as a strange thing.
Pasa por docto.	He passes for a learned man.
Cuando yo estaba en España, pasaba á menudo por natural del país.	When I was in Spain I often passed as a native of the country.
Le ajusté por mozo de cuadra.	I engaged him as stable-boy.
La adoptó por hija.	He adopted her as daughter.
Lo toma por concedido.	He takes it for granted.

495. Denotes the space of time during which an action takes place or continues:—

Me ausento de la ciudad por un mes.	I leave the city for a month.
Me ha prestado el libro por ocho días.	He lent me the book for a week.
Hemos pleiteado por mucho tiempo.	We have litigated for a long time.
Eso apaciguó al rey por lo pronto.	That appeased the king for the time.
Eso basta por ahora.	That is sufficient for now.
Le condenaron á las galeras por el resto de su vida.	They condemned him to the galleys for the rest of his life.

496. Denotes the place through or along which motion takes place:—

Entró por la puerta, pero yo le hice salir por la ventana.	He came in through the door, but I made him go out through the window.
Vagaba por los campos.	He was wandering about the fields.
Como andaba por la margen del río.	As I was walking along the bank of the river.
¿Por qué calle vino V.?	Through what street did you come?

Pasé por Filadelfia.	I passed through Philadelphia.
He viajado por Méjico.	I have travelled through Mexico.

497. Takes the place of **en**, in expressing time or place, but is more indefinite:—

Temíamos encontrar por aquel paraje algún buque de guerra.	We were afraid of meeting some war-vessel in that quarter.
Por diciembre del año pasado despachó á su secretario con instrucciones . . .	About December of last year he dispatched his secretary with instructions . . .
V. lo encontrará por aquí, sin duda.	You will find it around here somewhere, no doubt.

498. Indicates exchange of one thing for another:—

Le he dado mi perro por su escopeta.	I have given him my dog for his shotgun.
He cambiado mi pluma por una nueva.	I have exchanged my pen for a new one.
Quiere vender su casa por $8.000.	He wants to sell his house for $8,000.
Pide $8.000 por su casa.	He asks $8,000 for his house.
He pagado $9 por este diccionario.	I paid $9 for this dictionary.
Le daré á V. $10 por los dos.	I will give you $10 for the two.

499. Offsets one thing against another:—

He traducido la frase palabra por palabra.	I have translated the phrase word for word.
Me pagó peso por peso.	He paid me dollar for dollar.
"Ojo por ojo y diente por diente."	"An eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth."

500. Indicates unit of measure or number:—

Por docenas.	By the dozen.
Á diez por ciento.	At ten per cent.
Por mayor y por menor.	By wholesale and retail.
Este vapor marcha quince nudos por hora.	This steamer runs fifteen knots an hour.
Gano $1.500 por año.	I earn $1,500 per annum.

501. Has the signification of *in behalf of, in favor of, for the sake of*:—

Habló elocuentemente por su amigo.	He spoke eloquently in his friend's behalf.
Lo haré por V. con gusto.	I will do it for you with pleasure.
Votamos por Cleveland.	We voted for Cleveland.

Yo estoy por derechos protectores, mi hermano está por el libre cambio.	I am for protective tariff, my brother is for free trade.
Trabajo por el señor A.	I work for Mr. A.
Yo haré la guardia por V. esta noche.	I will mount guard for you to-night.
Escribo esta carta por mi hermano.	I am writing this letter for my brother (*as a favor to him*).
¡Una limosna, por Dios![1] señor.	An alms for God's sake, Sir!

502. Appeals to something in the manner of an oath, to strengthen an assertion:—

¡Por el cielo que está encima de nosotros!	By the heaven above us!
Por mi conciencia no lo comprendo.	On my conscience I don't understand it.
¡Por Dios! señor, es verdad lo que le digo.	By God! Sir, it is true what I am telling you.

503. Followed by an infinitive, **por** indicates what remains to be done,—without implying, however, that it will be done:—

Quedan seis páginas por copiar.	There remain six pages to copy.
El tratado está por ratificar.	The treaty is yet to be ratified.
Está por ver.	That is to be seen.
La contestación está por recibir.	The reply is yet to be received.
Cartas por escribir.	Letters to be written.
La mitad de la novela quedaba por leer, cuando . . .	Half of the novel remained to be read, when . . .
Sin dejar nada por decir.	Without leaving anything unsaid.

PARA.

504. Expresses the use, purpose or destination for which anything is adapted or intended:—

Esta carta es para el correo de la tarde.	This letter is for the evening mail.
Estos paquetes son para Sud América.	These packages are for South America.
Mañana parto para Boston.	I start for Boston to-morrow.
Aquel buque tiene destino para Nueva Zelanda.	That vessel is bound for New Zealand.
Estudiar para médico, para abogado.	To study to be a doctor, a lawyer.

[1] This supplication is so much used by beggars that they have been nicknamed **pordioseros**. The term used when speaking courteously of them is **pobres**, *poor persons*. **Mendigo**, *beggar*, is only used in poetical or rhetorical style. **Pordiosear** is *to go begging*.

He comprado un estante para mis libros.	I have bought a book-case for my books.
Ésta es buena tela para sábanas.	This is good cloth for sheets.
Un excelente coche para caminos rurales.	An excellent carriage for country roads.
Aquellos hombres son demasiado chicos para granaderos, pero servirán para la artillería.	Those men are too small for grenadiers, but they will do for the artillery.
¿Para dónde parte V.?	For what destination do you set out?
Este regalo no es para tí sino para tu hermana.	This present is not for you, but for your sister.
He comprado un traje para el baile del viernes próximo.	I have bought a suit for next Friday evening's ball.
Le dí treinta pesos para ropa y diez para alfileres.	I gave her $30 for clothes and $10 for pin-money.

505. In this manner **para**, by indicating the special use of something, helps to form a multitude of compound expressions which in English are made by placing two words together without any intervening particle:—

Jaulas para pájaros.	Bird-cages.
Un estante para libros.	A book-case.
Aceite para el pelo.	Hair-oil.
Pinzas para agujas.	Needle-forceps.
Una aguja para máquina de coser.	A sewing-machine needle.

506. With the same value of purpose or destination, **para** followed by an infinitive may be rendered by *to* or *in order to*:—

Yo estudio para instruir á otros.	I study in order to teach others.
Será preciso tener paciencia para alcanzar nuestro objeto.	It will be necessary to have patience in order to obtain our object.
Quiero algo para leer.	I want something to read.
Necesito mi pluma ahora para escribir una carta.	I need my pen now to write a letter.
Busco mi sombrero para ir al mercado.	I am looking for my hat so as to go to market.

507. Followed by an infinitive governed by the verb **estar**, **para** indicates the proximity of an action or occurrence:—

El viento está para cambiar.	The wind is about to change.
Está para llover.	It is going to rain.
Estamos para ir al teatro.	We are just going to the theater.
Estuve para ir á su casa, cuando entró.	I was on the point of going to his house, when in he came.

508. Designates a point or a farthest limit of future time:—

Lo difícil dejaremos para mañana.	We will leave the difficult part for to-morrow.
Tengo una cita para el jueves por la tarde.	I have an engagement for Thursday evening.
Se lo pagaré á V. para el quince del mes que viene.	I will pay you it by the fifteenth of next month.
La sesión fué postergada para la semana próxima.	The session was postponed until the next week.
Para el sábado estarán hechos.	They will be done by Saturday.

509. Expresses a comparison of inequality—one member of the comparison being different from what the other would lead us to expect:—

Para un joven escribe muy bien.	For a young man he writes very well.
Le alaban poco para lo que merece.	They praise him little compared with what he deserves.
Para la latitud elevada de Óregon, es muy suave el clima.	Considering the high latitude of Oregon, the climate is very mild.
Entonces tenía poco que confesar para lo que después tuve.	I had then little to confess compared with what I afterwards had.
Santa Teresa, Vida, cap. V.	*Life of St. Teresa, Chap. V.*
Para ser principiante no lo ha hecho V. mal.	You did not do it badly for a beginner.
Habla muy corrientemente para ser extranjero.	He speaks very fluently for a foreigner.
Esto no es nada para lo que viene.	This is nothing to what is coming.

510. There is a rare use of **para** to imply that something not generally or not universally true, is true of, or applicable to, the particular person or thing named:—

Las mujeres, llevadas del nuevo, y para ellas nunca visto traje, rodearon á la mora.	The women, carried away by the new and *to them* strange (never seen) costume, surrounded the Moorish girl.

511. Both **para** and **por** may be followed by an infinitive and used to denote the end for which an action is intended, but with the following distinction:—

a. **Para** is used when the result of the action is certain, or we express our conviction of success. It means *in order to, with the intention of.*

b. **Por** expresses an effort in the direction indicated, and means *for the sake of.* It leaves the result undecided, or conveys the idea that we cannot or will not express a conviction of success:—

Voy **á** Nueva York **para** ver el puente de Brooklin.	I am going to New York to see the Brooklyn Bridge.
Ando **por** ver si puedo dormir.	I walk to see if I can sleep.
Iré á España **para** aprender el idioma.	I will go to Spain to learn the language.
Iré á Washington **por** hablar al presidente.	I will go to Washington and try to talk with the president.
Ofrecen dinero **por** entrar.	They offer money to get in.
Dan dinero **para** entrar.	They give money to get in (they pay an entrance-fee).
Estudio **por** aprender.	I study [hard] to learn.
Es preciso estudiar **para** aprender.	It is necessary to study in order to learn.
Trabajo **por** ganar la vida.	I endeavor to earn my living.
Necesito trabajar **para** ganar la vida.	I need to work to earn my living.

512. After **estar**, if a person is subject, **por** indicates inclination, and **para** immediate futurity; **por** moreover leaves the carrying-out of the inclination uncertain, **para** implies that it is going to occur:—

Estoy **por** salir.	I am inclined to go out.
Estoy **para** salir.	I am on the point of going out.
Estoy **por** creer que es guasa.	I am inclined to think it is a hoax.
Estaba **para** entrar cuando le llamé.	He was about to go in when I called him.

513. But if a thing be the subject, **por** denotes that the action is yet to be performed, and **para** that it is to be immediately performed:—

La discusión está **por** concluir.	The discussion is as yet unfinished.
La discusión está **para** concluir.	The discussion is about to come to a close.
Está **para** llover.	It is going to rain.

Exercise XXXI.

The coast of *Venezuela* was the first part of the *American continent* discovered by Christopher Columbus. This river is navigable for steamers of light draught as far as the first *cascade*. He is now in prison for embezzlement. He risked his life to see her. We will cover the *delicate* plants with straw for fear of frost. Does Mr. *Alvarez* live around here[1]? She is *extremely* discreet for her age. He receives a *liberal salary* considering the work he does. I was about to write to him when I received his letter. The poor child was wandering half naked through the woods

[1] See § 497.

when we found him. He sets out for *Montevideo* to-morrow. The soil is here rocky and unfit for[1] tillage, but it is *excellent* for pasturage. This is nothing to what you will see to-morrow. This fence will last for ten years. He does not draw badly for a beginner. We will leave the examination of these *documents* for to-morrow. He did it through pity. I will give you my newspaper for yours. His income is not *sufficient* to pay his debts. The slippers are for your father and the *illustrated* book for your mother. He did not receive the prize, on account of not being a resident.[2] I have sent the servant for wine, for (*porque*) we had none. They took him for a madman. I have no time to read the work at *present*. I will lend you the money for a month if you promise to pay me it within that time. I have repeated his process step by step. I will write the letter of introduction for you this evening. The work is yet to be finished. This car is for smokers. I believe she is about to give her consent. By to-morrow he will be out of danger.

CHAPTER VII.

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE AND THE GERUND.

514. The true present participle ending in **ante, ente** or **iente,** derived from the Latin participle in *an[t]s, antis, en[t]s, entis,* is no longer in use in Spanish as a part of the verb. Some of these obsolete participles are now employed as adjectives, others only as nouns, while a few do duty as prepositions, adverbs or conjunctions; but the greater number have disappeared from the language:—

Causar, to cause.	**Causante**, causative.
Distar, to be distant.	**Distante**, distant.
Perseverar, to persevere.	**Perseverante**, persevering.
Diferir, to differ.	**Diferente**, different.
Depender, to depend.	**Dependiente**, dependent.
Estudiar, to study.	**El estudiante**, the student.
Residir, to reside.	**El residente**, the resident.
Habitar, to inhabit.	**El habitante**, the inhabitant.
Escribir, to write.	**El escribiente**, the amanuensis.
Romper, to break.	**Los rompientes**, the breakers.
Amar, to love.	**El amante**, the lover.
Presidir, to preside.	**El presidente**, the president.

[1] unfit for, **poco propio para.**
[2] on account of not being a resident, **por no residir en el lugar.**

Bastar, to suffice.	**Bastante**, sufficient, enough.
Durar, to last.	**Durante**, during.
Etc. Etc.	Etc. Etc.

THE GERUND.

515. The place of the present participle, as a part of the verb, has been taken by a form adopted almost unchanged from the Latin and called the *gerund*. In regular verbs of the first conjugation this is formed by adding **ando** to the stem; in those of the second and third conjugations, by the addition of **iendo**:—

Comprar; **comprando.**	To buy; buying.
Vender; **vendiendo.**	To sell; selling.
Vivir; **viviendo.**	To live; living.

This is also the case in most of the irregular verbs:—

Estar; **estando.**	Querer; **queriendo.**	Dar; **dando.**
Haber; **habiendo.**	Tener; **teniendo.**	Ver; **viendo.**
Ser; **siendo.**	Hacer; **haciendo.**	Salir; **saliendo.**

516. In the 2nd and 3rd conjugations, the **i** of the termination **iendo** is changed to **y** in the following cases: *1*, when the stem of the verb ends in a vowel, because unaccented **i** must not occur between two vowels; *2*, the gerund of **ir**, *to go*, is **yendo**, because initial **i** followed by a vowel is changed to **y**:—

Caer, *to fall*:	**cayendo,**	*for*	ca*i*endo.
Construir, *to construct*:	**construyendo,**	*for*	construiendo.
Ir, *to go*:	**yendo,**	*for*	*i*endo.

517. There is a *perfect* of the gerund made up of a past participle governed by the gerund of the auxiliary verb **haber**:—

Habiendo comprado, having bought.	**Habiendo vivido**, having lived.
Habiendo vendido, having sold.	**Habiendo visto**, having seen.
Etc. Etc.	Etc. Etc.

518. The gerund is invariable in form and has the same regimen as the verb from which it is derived; it is always subordinate to some other verb, and relates to either past, present or future according to the connection in which it is employed. Its leading use is in parenthetic, explanatory clauses:—

Su discusión será además trabajo para muchos meses, porque, **siendo** tan complicada la materia y **teniendo** tan estrechas relaciones con la legislación interior de cada país, no será posible conciliar de momento sus diversos intereses.	Its discussion, furthermore, will be a work of many months, because, the subject being so complex and having such close relations with the internal legislation of each country, it will not be possible to adjust off-hand their several interests.
Pasando ayer por la plaza, encontré á Doña Carmen.	Going through the square yesterday, I met Miss Carmen.
Abriendo los ojos, vió á su esposa sentada cerca de la cabecera.	Opening his eyes, he saw his wife seated near the head of the bed.

519. In descriptions and narrations the gerund is most elegantly placed at the beginning of the sentence, even when the subject is a noun:—

Habiendo el general ganado la victoria, expidió una orden agradeciendo á las tropas.	The general, having gained the victory, issued an order thanking the troops.
Llegando tarde á la fonda los demás, no hallaron habitación vacía.	The rest arriving late at the hotel, did not find a room empty.
Viajando un dervís por la Tartaria, llegó á la capital del reino y por equivocación tomó el palacio del rey por una posada pública.	A dervish, travelling through Tartary, arrived at the capital of the kingdom and by mistake took the king's palace for a public tavern.

520. In clauses where it would otherwise be difficult to determine which of several nouns is the subject of the gerund, the appropriate personal pronoun is inserted immediately after the gerund:—

La encontré **volviendo yo** de la caza.	I met her as I was returning from hunting.
Temí que mi hermano, no **estando yo** presente, cometiera algún disparate.	I feared that my brother, I not being present, would commit some blunder.
Toda su felicidad estaba circunscrita en aquel niño, y **faltándoles él**, parecía la casa solitaria.	All their happiness was centered in that child, and when he was absent from them the house seemed desolate.

521. In all the above examples the gerund is explanatory of the subject of the sentence; it may equally apply to the object:—

Veo á los niños jugando en la plaza.	I see the children playing in the square.

Hallé á mi hermano escribiendo una carta á su esposa.	I found my brother writing a letter to his wife.
Aquí tengo su carta anunciando su intención de partir.	I have his letter here announcing his intention to leave.

522. The gerund serves also to describe the action of a verb which it accompanies:—

El muchacho viene corriendo.	The boy comes running.
Van cantando por las calles.	They go singing through the streets.
Ella entró llorando.	She came in weeping.
Continúa hablando.	He continues speaking.
El general pasó la noche estudiando los mapas de la comarca y marcando en ellos las posiciones que consideraba ventajosas.	The general spent the night studying the maps of the territory and marking on them the positions which he considered advantageous.

523. The gerund is used with **estar,** *to be,* to express the action of the verb as unfinished and continuing at the time in question. This usage is parallel with the English mode of expression:—

Ella está tocando el piano.	She is playing the piano.
¿De qué están Vds. hablando?	Of what are you talking?
¿Qué ha estado V. haciendo hoy?	What have you been doing to-day?
Estaba yo escribiendo cuando entró.	I was writing when he entered.
¿Qué estaban haciendo los muchachos en el patio?	What were the boys doing in the court-yard?
Mañana á estas horas estaremos viajando.	This time to-morrow we will be travelling.

REMARK.—The verb **ser,** *to be,* is never employed with the gerund, since the latter denotes only a temporary duration.

524. The gerunds of **ir,** *to go,* **venir,** *to come,* and **ser** and **estar,** *to be,* are not used with any tense of **estar** to express continuance; the verb is simply placed in the tense proper to the time in question, or the idea is expressed by some different construction:—

Mis tres hermanas vienen esta tarde para tocar el piano.	My three sisters are coming this evening to play the piano.
Iba allí cuando V. me vió.	I was going there when you saw me.
Están pintando mi casa.	My house is being painted.

525. With the verbs **ir** and **andar,** both meaning *to go,* the gerund expresses continuance with a progressive meaning, indicating that the action of the gerund goes on increasing:—

Voy comprendiendo su significado.	I am getting to understand its meaning.
Anda haciendo disparates.	He goes on making blunders.
En la parte exterior, y conforme avanzaba la noche, la tempestad iba tomando proporciones formidables.	Outside, the storm, as the night advanced, was assuming formidable proportions.

526. The gerunds of **estar, ir** and **andar** may be used as auxiliaries to other gerunds:—

Yendo haraganeando de esta manera, atravesó un puente y llegó á una plaza espaciosa.	Going strolling along in this way, he crossed a bridge and came to a spacious square.
Estando escribiendo el coronel, no quiso molestarle su ayudante.	As the colonel was writing, his adjutant did not wish to disturb him.

527. When the gerund governs one or more personal pronouns of simple objective form, they are appended to it so as to form one word:—

Encontrándola ; viéndose.	Meeting her ; seeing himself.
Dándomelo ; prestándonoslos.	Giving me it ; lending us them.
Encontrándose tan inesperadamente privados de luz, . . .	Finding themselves so suddenly deprived of light, . . .
El único caballo que nos quedó, faltándole un ojo, no servía.	The only horse we had left was of no use, as he lacked an eye.

528. But if the gerund be governed by **estar, ir** or **andar,** (expressing continuance, as shown above), the pronouns may either precede the verb or be joined to the gerund, the former being the usual arrangement:—

Le estoy escribiendo ahora. Estoy escribiéndole ahora.	I am writing to him now.
Me estaba afeitando cuando llamó á la puerta. Estaba afeitándome cuando llamó á la puerta.	I was shaving myself when he knocked at the door.
Le voy comprendiendo á V.	I am getting to understand you.
Ella se va americanizando.	She is becoming Americanized.

REMARK.—The objective pronouns, as we have seen, are similarly appended to the infinitive.

529. If the personal pronoun be governed by the compound gerund (formed of **habiendo** and the past participle of another

verb), it is attached to **habiendo**, and does not follow the past participle:—

El marinero sacó de su bolsillo una pipa corta y ennegrecida, y habiéndola llenado de tabaco ordinario, la encendió con una brasa.
The sailor drew from his pocket a short blackened pipe, and having filled it with coarse tobacco, lit it with a coal.

El juez limpió sus espejuelos, y habiéndoselos puesto, escudriñó al testigo.
The judge wiped his glasses, and having put them on, scrutinized the witness.

530. The gerund is used to express the cause, manner or means of an action, without being introduced by any connecting word. In English some such word as *by*, *as*, *since*, *when* or *while* would be needed, or the gerund would be replaced by some other tense:—

El comercio no debemos buscarlo **combatiendo** los artículos de producción barata sino **abaratando** los de producción cara, para que ellos aumenten el consumo **poniéndose** al alcance del mayor número y consultando así el interés de la colectividad.
We must not seek trade *by* fighting against articles of cheap production, but *by* cheapening those of dear production, so as to increase their consumption *by* placing them within the reach of the greater number and consulting in this way the interests of the people at large.

Los hombres se hacen infelices **deseando** lo que no necesitan.
Men make themselves unhappy *by* desiring what they do not need.

No **teniendo** dinero, empeñó su reloj.
As he had no money he pawned his watch.

Siendo tan tarde, no iré.
Since it is so late I shall not go.

Siendo capitán el almirante Blake, fué mandado con una pequeña escuadra contra las posesiones españolas.
While Admiral Blake was a captain, he was sent with a small squadron against the Spanish possessions.

REMARK.—The greater number of such sentences might also be rendered as in English:—

Como no tenía dinero . . .
As he had no money . . .

Puesto que es tan tarde . . .
Since it is so late . . .

Mientras que era capitán . . .
While he was captain . . .

531. The gerund in Spanish is never preceded by any preposition except **en**, which is used when something happens after the completion of the action expressed by the gerund; an expression of like value is formed in English by *on* before a present participle:—

En acabando mi cigarro, le acompañaré á V.	When I have finished (on finishing) my cigar, I will go with you.
En regresando del teatro, fuí á mi habitación.	On returning from the theater I went to my room.
Regresando del teatro perdí mi cartera.	In returning from the theater I lost my wallet.

532. In all other cases it is the infinitive which in Spanish is governed by a preposition, while in English it is uniformly the present participle:—

No soy capaz de distinguirlos entre sí.	I am incapable of distinguishing between them.
Está adicto á beber.	He is addicted to drinking.
No tardará en venir.	He will not delay in coming.
La dificultad consiste en hallarle en casa.	The difficulty consists in finding him at home.
Después de comer fuma su cigarro de sobremesa.	After eating he smokes his after-dinner cigar.
Además de no pagarme, me insulta.	Besides not paying me he insults me.

533. After verbs of seeing and hearing, the infinitive is more usual than the gerund:—

La vimos bailar.	We saw her dance.
Los veo venir.	I see them coming.
La oímos tocar el piano.	We heard her playing the piano.

534. The gerund cannot be used as a verbal noun, as is the English present participle; in Spanish it is the infinitive which is so employed. When not governed by a preposition, the verbal noun usually takes the definite article:—

El perfecto tocar de este músico me encanta.	The perfect playing of this musician delights me.
No es cosa fácil el escribir un buen poema.	Writing a good poem is no easy thing.
El leer con luz insuficiente perjudica los ojos.	Reading with insufficient light injures the eyes.
Esta señorita aborrece el fumar.	This young lady abhors smoking.

535. Nor can the gerund be used as an adjective to qualify a noun; the meaning must be expressed by the present participle, or some adjective of equal value. As it is sometimes difficult to determine whether the meaning requires the gerund or not, more

copious examples are here given to aid the student in distinguishing between it and a participial adjective:—

Un libro interesante.	An interesting book.
Una cesta colgante.	A hanging basket.
Agua corriente.	*Running* water.
Esta inmensa cantidad de agua corriendo al mar, se pierde para ser levantada después por la acción de los rayos solares.	This immense body of water *running* to the sea, loses itself to be afterwards drawn up by the action of the solar rays.
Un blanco flotante.	A *floating* target.
Los marineros vieron un objeto informe flotando en el agua.	The sailors saw a shapeless object *floating* in the water.
La colonia creciente.	The *growing* colony.
El niño, creciendo diariamente, llegará á ser hombre.	The child, *growing* daily, will get to be a man.
El gladiador moribundo.	The *dying* gladiator.
Le encontramos muriendo de hambre.	We found him *dying* of hunger.
Un Fauno danzante.	A *dancing* Faun.
El fresco representaba al dios Pan con un grupo de Sátiros y Faunos danzando al son de la flauta.	The fresco represented the god Pan with a group of Satyrs and Fauns *dancing* to the sound of the flute.

---

536. Some traces of the Latin future passive participle in *-ndus* are still to be found in Spanish, but they are now used as substantives or adjectives only:—

Los ordenandos.	The candidates for ordination.
El graduando.	The person about to graduate.
Un anciano venerando.	A venerable old man.
El dividendo.	That which is to be divided.
Un curso vitando.	A course to be avoided.
Las examinandas.	The young ladies to be examined.
El poeta laureando.	The poet about to be crowned.
El poeta laureado.	The poet laureate (who has been crowned).

REMARK.—Of the Latin future active participle in *-rus* there is scarcely a trace, except the adjectives **futuro**, *future*; **venturo**, *coming, future*; **vacaturo**, *about to cease.*

EXERCISE XXXII.

What are you doing there? I am cutting my finger-nails. Having carefully baited his hook, he dropped it into the water.[1] When we reached the river we saw that the water[2] was rising *rapidly.* To-morrow Bessie

[1] lo dejó caer al agua. [2] las aguas (*pl.*).

and I are going to the woods[1] to gather autumn leaves. The organ was laboring to drown the noise of the choir, and the choir to exceed that of the organ. A basket, containing ferns and running vines, was hanging[2] in the window. They found the body of the sailor floating near the floating light. The Indian, finding himself closely pursued and seeing that his enemies were gaining ground on him[3], threw himself from a cliff into the (*al*) river. The snow *continued* falling *rapidly*, and the wind, blowing with *violence*, heaped it up in front of the travelers. Hearing the bells ringing,[4] and seeing the crowd run shouting through the streets, I went out, and on the (*al*) other side of the square I saw a sheet of flame surmounted by a column of dense smoke. The natives of these islands were very dextrous in throwing the spear. The following night was frightful; the storm redoubled its *violence*; the wind tore off the roof of the hut, and the snow and sleet fell upon[5] the unfortunate inmates, blinding them, freezing them, cutting them as with sharp needles, and extinguishing the remnant of fire which was still (*aún*) crackling in the corner. Do you not hear[6] the shells bursting in the air, the groans of the dying and the shouts of the combatants? She was standing[7] on (*sobre*) a little *rustic* bridge, watching her reflection in the clear water[8] beneath her feet. Having thus *prepared* their *frugal* supper, they seated themselves around the fire to eat it.

CHAPTER VIII.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

537. The term *comparison* of adjectives and adverbs was invented by the early compilers of Latin grammars to denote the three forms assumed by adjectives and adverbs in Latin in making comparisons. These three forms were: *positive*, the original value; *comparative*, the value in a higher degree; *superlative*, the value in the highest degree.

a. In English we obtain these two higher degrees by adding respectively the terminations *er*, *est*, to the positive or simple form of the adjective or adverb (*long*, *longer*, *longest*), unless that would give rise to a clumsy word, in which case the same purpose is attained by employing the adverbs *more*, *most*, (*more liberal*, *most liberal*.)

b. The positive or simple form of the adjective does not in itself imply comparison.

---

[1] al bosque (*sing.*). [2] estaba colgada. [3] le (*see* § 294). [4] *infinitive*. [5] cayeron sobre. [6] No oye V. [7] estaba parada. [8] las cristalinas aguas.

538. There are, however, five possible degrees of comparison, three of which have been generally ignored by grammarians because they have no representative forms in Latin:

In comparing the quality of one thing with that of another, the result may be that the first is greater than the second, or is less than it, or that both are equal. Hence are produced the comparatives of superiority, inferiority and equality. Again, one quality compared with a number of others, may prove superior or inferior to *all* the rest, thus making the superlatives of superiority and inferiority. The three additional degrees are obtained in English by the use of adverbs—*less, as, least.*

539. In Spanish all these degrees of comparison are expressed by adverbs, which do not affect the form of the adjective or adverb which they accompany; the only variations of form being in the following eight words:—

Four adjectives, in addition to their regular comparatives, have other and preferred forms which were irregular in Latin and have descended as anomalies in Spanish:—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.
Bueno, good.	**Mejor** (*rarely*, **más bueno**), better.
Malo, bad, poor.	**Peor** (*seldom*, **más malo**), worse, poorer.
Grande, great, large.	**Mayor** (*or*, **más grande**), greater, larger.
Pequeño, little, small.	**Menor** (*or*, **más pequeño**), littler, smaller.

Four adverbs have independent comparatives derived from the Latin, and have no others in use[1]:—

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.
Mucho, much.	**Más**, more.
Poco, little.	**Menos**, less.
Bien, well.	**Mejor**, better.
Mal, ill, badly.	**Peor**, worse.

REMARK.—As the superlative differs from the comparative only by being preceded by an article or pronoun, it is omitted above.

In all other cases the comparative of superiority is obtained by the use of **más**; that of inferiority, by **menos**:—

[1] **Más bien**, although in use, is not employed in comparisons. It has the meaning of *rather*, in the sense of *more correctly*, and is used in such connections as the following:—

La causa de su quiebra fué **más bien** mal manejo que mala suerte.	The cause of his failure (bankruptcy) was rather bad management than bad luck.
Su figura era seria **más bien** que triste.	His countenance was grave rather than sad.

Negro, black.	**Más negro**, blacker.	**Menos negro**, less black.
Capaz, capable.	**Más capaz**, more capable.	**Menos capaz**, less capable.
Temprano, early.	**Más temprano**, earlier.	**Menos temprano**, less early.
Cuidadosamente, carefully.	**Más cuidadosamente**, more carefully.	**Menos cuidadosamente**, less carefully.

COMPARISON OF INEQUALITY.

540. Más and **menos** apply in the same way to any things or ideas susceptible of comparison. As the grammatical construction is the same for both, the two will be treated of together as the *comparison of inequality*.

In this comparison, the second member, or that *with* which the quality in question is compared, is introduced by **que**, *than*, when both members are of the same nature:—

La madre es más bonita que la hija.	The mother is prettier than the daughter.
Esta pluma es mejor que ésa.	This pen is better than that.
Es menos útil ahora que antes.	It is less useful now than before.
Don Eduardo me ha dicho que su hermana está peor.	Edward tells me his sister is worse.
Esta carta está mejor escrita que ésa.	This letter is better written than that one.
V. anda más aprisa que yo.	You walk faster than I.
Los eclipses de luna acaecen menos amenudo que los de sol.	Eclipses of the moon occur less often than those of the sun.
Tiene más dinero que juicio.	He has more money than sense.
Más es perdonar una injuria que vengarla.	It is more to pardon an injury than to avenge it.
Habla más que trabaja.	He talks more than he works.
La condesa fué más magnífica que elegantemente vestida.	The countess was more magnificently than elegantly dressed.
No apetezco más que el reposo de la vida privada.	I do not desire more than the quiet of private life.
No necesitamos nada más.	We do not need anything more.
Quedará tres días más.	He will remain three days more.
No aspira á menos que al poder ejecutivo.	He aspires to no less than the executive power.
Fué más que injusto, fué brutal.	He was more than unjust, he was brutal.
Una libra más ó menos no importa.	A pound more or less does not matter.

541. When each member of the comparison contains a different verb, but the second member is elliptical in such a way

that to fill the ellipsis the verb of the first member must be repeated, **que** is replaced by **de lo que**:—

Es más rico de lo que V. cree.	He is richer than you believe [he is].
Tiene menos dinero de lo que dice.	He has less money than he says [he has].
El examen fué menos formidable de lo que habíamos temido.	The examination was less formidable than we had apprehended [it would be].
Me ha ayudado más de lo que prometió.	He aided me more than he promised [he would].
Averigüé que la yegua era más vieja de lo que me habían asegurado.	I ascertained that the mare was older than they had assured me [she was].
Ha cometido menos crímenes de lo que V. piensa.	He has committed less crimes than you think [he has].

542. If the point of comparison be a noun, the *object* of the first verb and elliptically omitted in the second member, the neuter **lo** is replaced by the proper objective pronoun (**el, la, lo; los, las**) agreeing with said noun and taking its place:—

Encontraron mayores inconvenientes de los que habían previsto.	They found greater difficulties than [the difficulties] they had foreseen.
Averigüé que la yegua tenía más defectos de los que habían nombrado.	I found out that the mare had more defects than [the defects] they had enumerated.
Ha cometido más crímenes de los que ha confesado.	He has committed more crimes than [the crimes] he has confessed.
Me ha traído menos dinero del que V. le dió.	He has brought me less money than [the money] you gave him.

REMARK.—The original **que** may here be restored in place of **de**, although de is preferable, especially after the comparative forms in **-or**.

543. **De** alone is placed after **más** and **menos** when followed by numerals or any numerical expression, provided the sentence be affirmative; if in any way negative, either **que** or **de** may be used, the preference being for **que**:—

He perdido más de mil pesos.	I have lost more than $1,000.
Quedan menos de cuatro días.	Less than four days remain.
No necesito más que dos.	I do not need more than two.
Le contesté sin escribir más que cinco renglones.	I answered him without writing more than five lines.
El almirante perdió más de la mitad de la flota.	The admiral lost more than half of the fleet.

Quedará más de mes y medio.	He will remain more than a month and a half.
Gané en aquella especulación más de la mitad del dinero invertido.	I gained in that speculation more than half of the money invested.

544. The abverb **no** is sometimes introduced as an expletive into the second member of a comparison of inequality, provided the sentence be neither interrogative nor negative:—

Ella era más feliz entonces que no ahora.	She was happier then than now.

545. The only tangible distinction between **mayor, menor,** on the one hand and **más grande, más pequeño,** on the other, is that when applied to persons the former always signify respectively *older* and *younger*. In other cases the two forms are interchangeable. **Mayor** and **menor,** however, occur oftener in literary language than the other two; they are also occasionally used with a metaphorical meaning, denoting eminence or importance rather than actual size:—

¿Es su hermano Juan mayor ó menor que V.?	Is your brother John older or younger than you?
Diego es más grande que su hermano mayor.	James is larger than his older brother.
Esta mesa es menor que ésa. Esta mesa es más pequeña que ésa.	This table is smaller than that.
París es mayor que Madrid.	Paris is larger than Madrid.
El altar mayor; la Plaza Mayor; La Calle Mayor; el palo mayor.	The grand altar; the principal square; Main Street; the mainmast.

546. When the measure of difference in a comparison is given, it precedes the comparative adjective as in English:—

Esta grada es dos pies más ancha que aquélla.	This harrow is two feet wider than that one.
Él es tres años mayor que yo.	He is three years older than I.
La Navidad es tres días más pronto de lo que yo creía.	Christmas is three days nearer than I thought.

COMPARISON OF EQUALITY.

547. The comparison of equality is expressed by **tanto,** *as much, so much, as, so,* the second member being introduced by **como,** *as.* When **tanto** stands before or instead of a noun, it is to all intents an adjective, and is varied like adjectives in **o.** In

all other cases it is an adverb, losing the final syllable before the positive forms of adjectives and adverbs, but otherwise invariable:—

Ya es tan rico como su padre.	He is now as rich as his father.
V. habla español tan bien como su maestro.	You speak Spanish as well as your teacher.
Yo estudio tanto como V., pero no adelanto tanto.	I study as much as you, but I do not advance as much.
Mi criado es tan testarudo como ignorante.	My servant is as obstinate as he is ignorant.
Es hombre de gran influencia, tanto con la clase trabajadora como con la gente rica.	He is a man of great influence, as much with the working classes as with the rich people.
Don José es tan amable como su hermano es malhumorado.	Joseph is as pleasant as his brother is ill-humored.
¿Está su habitación de V. tan bien amueblada como ésta?	Is your room as well furnished as this one?
¿Tiene V. tantas rosas como dalias?	Have you as many roses as dahlias?
Nunca he visto una carta tan mal escrita.	I have never seen a letter so badly written.
Mi padre posee cuatro casas.—Yo no creí que tenía tantas.	My father owns four houses.—I didn't think he had as many.

548. When **tanto** is used absolutely after a verb, i.e. is not followed by a noun, adjective or adverb, **como** may be replaced by **cuanto** (meaning literally *how much*):—

Gasta tanto cuanto su hermano. Gasta tanto como su hermano.	He spends as much as his brother.
Él tiene tanto cuanto quiere.	He has as much as he wants.
Tomó tanto cuanto le pareció necesario.	He took as much as seemed to him necessary.

549. When **tanto** merely denotes a high degree producing a certain result, its correlative is **que**, and not **como**, as there is no comparison:—

Estaba tan oscuro que era imposible leer.	It was so dark that it was impossible to read.
Me dijo tanto sobre la belleza de aquella actriz que fuí á verla.	He told me so much about the beauty of that actress that I went to see her.

550. **Tanto**, used adverbially and followed by **que**, means *as well as*:—

La construcción de este motor me costó muchos desvelos tanto que al sobrestante.	The construction of this motor cost me as well as the superintendent many sleepless nights.

551. In the formula **tan—como**, the first may be omitted, as may its English equivalent:—

Negro como el ébano.	Black as ebony.
Redondo como una naranja.	Round as an orange.
Este pan es duro como una piedra.	This bread is hard as a rock.

552. In elevated style **como** may then be replaced by **cual**, the following noun in that case rejecting the article:—

Blanco cual nieve; *or better,* Cual la nieve blanco.	As white as snow, *or* snow-white.

553. Cual may occasionally replace **como** in other constructions:—

Se arrojó sobre sus enemigos cual toro enfurecido.	He dashed upon his enemies like an enraged bull.
El conde contestaba á las preguntas con exquisita cortesía, cual si se hallase en una recepción palaciega.	The count answered their questions with exquisite courtesy, as if he was at a palace reception.

554. Tanto and not **tan** is required before *all* comparative forms of adverbs; the four separate comparative forms of adjectives, **mayor, menor, mejor, peor,** take **tan**. Before all other comparatives of adjectives, **tanto** is required, because it comes in contact with an actual comparative adverb—**más** or **menos**:—

Tanto mejor, tanto peor (*adv.*).	So much better, so much worse.
Tan mejor, tan peor (*adj.*).	So much better, so much worse.
Tanto más sólido; tanto más sólidamente.	So much more solid; so much more solidly.

555. In speaking of the health **mejor** and **peor** are by usage considered adjectives, and we say:—

El enfermo está tan mejor que quiere dejar la cama.	The patient is so much better that he wants to leave the bed.
Á las nueve estaba tan peor que mandaron traer el viático.	At nine o'clock he was so much worse that they sent for the sacrament.

556. Cuanto—tanto, followed by any comparatives, are used as correlatives to express ratio, corresponding to the English formula *the . . . the . . .*:—

Cuanto más gasta tanto menos ahorra.	The more he spends the less he saves.

Cuanto más viejo es el vino, tanto mejor es.
The older the wine the better it is.

Cuanto más largo es el día tanto más corta la noche.
The longer the day the shorter the night.

Cuanto más lo examino, tanto menos sentido encuentro en ello.
The more I examine it the less meaning I find in it.

557. In such sentences **tanto** may be elliptically omitted:—

Cuanto más, mejor.
The more the better.

Claro era que cuantas más botellas de medicina tomaba, mis padecimientos eran mayores y más prolongados.
It was clear that the more bottles of medicine I took, the greater and more prolonged were my sufferings.

Cuanto más meditaba sobre su conjetura, más verosímil me parecía.
The more I meditated over his conjecture, the more likely it appeared to me.

558. Tanto . . . cuanto are used adverbially as correlatives before two clauses which are considered equal in importance:—

Me invitó á acompañarle, lo cual acepté con gusto, **tanto** por enterarle de mi proyecto **cuanto** por dar aquel grato paseo.
He invited me to accompany him, and I accepted with pleasure, as well to inform him of my plan as to take that pleasant drive.

El príncipe era buen compañero, muy dado á los ejercicios corporales, y muy hábil **tanto** en la equitación **cuanto** en el manejo de las armas.
The prince was a good companion, much given to bodily exercise, and expert both in horsemanship and the use of arms.

559. In this connection **como** may be substituted for **cuanto,** being in fact the more usual at the present day:—

Todas las repúblicas de Centro América, exceptuando el Salvador, tienen puertos **tanto** en el Mar Caribe **como** en el Océano Pacífico.
All the republics of Central America, except Salvador, have seaports on the Caribbean Sea as well as on the Pacific Ocean.

560. The formulæ **tanto más . . . cuanto que, tanto menos . . . cuanto que,** correspond to the English *all the more . . . because, all the less . . . because*:—

Esta reprensión era **tanto más** imperdonable **cuanto que** había sido merecida.
This rebuke was all the more unpardonable because it had been deserved.

Estoy **tanto menos** satisfecho de su conducta **cuanto que** me creía con más derechos á su amistad.
I am all the less satisfied with his conduct because I thought I had more rights to his friendship.

No temían que el árbol cediese al empuje de la corriente, pero la inundación creciente podía ganar sus ramas altas, **tanto más cuanto que** la depresión del suelo hacía de aquella parte de la llanura un punto el más á propósito para la acumulación de las aguas.

They did not fear that the tree would yield to the force of the current, but the rising flood might reach its upper limbs, all the more because the depression of the ground rendered that part of the plain most suitable for the water to collect in.

561. The **que** following **cuanto** is really superfluous and, although generally employed, may be omitted:—

Adoptó por fin un plan de operaciones sobre el cual creyó poder contar, **tanto más cuanto** la ejecución sólo dependía de él, y se sentía capaz de todo por la causa que había abrazado.

He finally adopted a plan of action upon which he thought he could count, the more so because the execution depended upon him alone and he felt himself capable of anything for the cause which he had embraced.

562. Tanto, in its invariable form, is used adverbially before a comparative in certain exclamatory answers:—

¡ Tanto mejor !
¡ Tanto peor para V. !

So much the better !
So much the worse for you !

563. Un tanto, algún tanto or **un tanto cuanto,** form neuter phrases meaning *a little*, or *somewhat*:—

Rosa, **un tanto** más consolada, regresaba á su casa.

Rosa was returning home a little more consoled.

Esta respuesta le satisfizo **algún tanto.**

This reply satisfied him somewhat.

La hija se retiró **un tanto** mortificada.

The daughter withdrew rather mortified.

La conversación era poco animada, y sólo crecía **un tanto cuanto** en interés cuando entraban nuevas visitas.

The conversation was not very animated, and only increased a little in interest whenever new callers came in.

564. Mientras tanto means *in the meantime*; **por lo tanto,** *consequently*:—

Mientras tanto el partido revolucionario no había sido ocioso.

In the meantime the revolutionary party had not been idle.

Estoy en minoría, señores; **por lo tanto,** retiro mis palabras, mas no varío en mis ideas.

I am in the minority, gentlemen; consequently I retract my words, but I do not change my ideas.

565. When the point of comparison in the second member is a personal pronoun, the object of a verb in the first member, it must be put in the terminal form (**á mí, á él,** etc.):—

Te admiro más que **á él.**	I admire you more than him.
Más quiere al artista que **á mí.**	She likes the artist better than me.

566. When several adjectives or adverbs with the same degree of comparison occur together, **más, menos** or **tan,** as the case may be, need only be placed before the first one; for greater emphasis, however, the adverb may be repeated before each:—

Cicerón era más sabio, elocuente y patriótico que Catón.	Cicero was wiser, more eloquent and patriotic than Cato.
La vertiente oriental era menos escarpada, áspera y escabrosa que la que acababan de subir.	The eastern slope was less steep, rough and craggy than that which they had just ascended.

567. In the case of adverbial expressions made up of a noun and the preposition **con, más** or **menos** is placed immediately before the noun; with those composed of a noun and some other preposition, **más** or **menos** precedes the preposition:—

Con cuidado, carefully.	**Con más cuidado,** more carefully.	**Con menos cuidado,** less carefully.
De propósito, purposely.	**Más de propósito,** more purposely.	**Menos de propósito,** less purposely.
Á fondo, thoroughly.	**Más á fondo,** more thoroughly.	**Menos á fondo,** less thoroughly.

568. When **tanto** is applied to such adverbial phrases, the usage is as follows:—

Con tanto cuidado, as carefully.	**Tan de propósito,** as purposely.
Con tanta diligencia, as diligently.	**Tan á fondo,** as thoroughly.

569. The adverbs **más, menos, tan, muy** are placed immediately before nouns, with the same value which they have before adjectives; their English equivalents *more, less,* etc., require *of a* to connect them with a noun, or the idea is expressed in some different manner:—

Es más tonto de lo que parece.	He is more of a fool than he looks.
No le creí tan niño.	I did not think him such a child.
V. es menos caballero de lo que yo creía.	You are less of a gentleman than I thought.

Es muy Inglés.	He is very much of an Englishman.
Es muy hombre de mundo.	He is a thorough man of the world.
Muy señor mío. (*In letters.*)	Dear Sir.

570. The force of these adverbs of comparison may, by means of other adverbs, be modified to any extent—made greater or less, or entirely negative—without affecting the grammatical construction:—

La menor es aun más linda.	The younger one is even prettier.
Mucho mejor, mucho menos.	Much better, much less.
Bastante más difícil. / Harto más difícil.	A good deal more difficult.
Considerablemente más útil.	Considerably more useful.
Poco más cómodo.	Little, scarcely more comfortable.
Un poco más cómodo.	A little more comfortable.
Todavía menos importante.	Still less important.
Ella no toca tan acertadamente como su hermana menor.	She does not play as accurately as her younger sister.
V. lo ha hecho mejor sin tener tantas ventajas como ellos.	You have done it better without having as many advantages as they.
El proyecto de V. no es más realizable que el mío.	Your plan is no more feasible than mine.
Ella no está menos adelantada que su hermano	She is not less advanced than her brother.
Algo menos penoso.	Somewhat less laborious.

REMARK.—Any of these modifying adverbs that are also used as adjectives, agree with a noun when followed by one:—

Harta más paciencia.	A good deal more patience.
Poca más agua. Pocas más frutas.	Little more water. Few more fruit.
Muchos más ríos.	Many more rivers.
Tantas más dificultades.	As many more difficulties.

571. In Spanish **más** is applied to many adverbs which can not be preceded by *more* in English:—

Para empezar no te daremos sueldo, pero **más adelante** lo doblaremos si estamos contentos de tí.	To begin with we won't give you any wages, but later on we'll double them if we're satisfied with you.
Más allá de la zona de escollos, el mar abierto resplandecía bajo los rayos del sol.	Beyond the belt of sunken rocks the open sea sparkled beneath the sun's rays.
Más allá del alcance ordinario de las mareas.	Beyond the ordinary reach of the tides.
Más acá del río.	On this side of the river.

Más arriba, el río estaba obstruido por altas yerbas que dificultaban la acción de los remos.	Higher up, the river was obstructed by high weeds which impeded the action of the oars.

REMARK.—Other peculiar constructions with **más** are :—

Este relato es tan verídico como el que más. (*I.e.*, como el que lo es más.)	This account is as true as can be.
Ella es discreta hasta no más.	She is extremely discreet.
Estaba borracho hasta no más.	He was as drunk as could be.
Los dos alumnos son á cual más estudiosos.	The two scholars vie with each other in studiousness.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

It is easier to forgive an injustice than to forget it. His assistance is less *necessary* to me now than it was last winter. She is five years younger than I. He has not read as much as I, but he has a better memory.[1] The water of a deep spring seems to be colder in summer than in winter. This problem is decidedly more difficult than the one you gave me yesterday. *Dolores* is always better dressed than her older sister. Alexander was more *ambitious* than *prudent*. The father is more of a gentleman than the son. You praise him more than he deserves. Silence! I will not permit[2] a word more on the subject. You will meet with greater *opposition* than you expect. The left bank of the river is lower and less wooded than the opposite one. I haven't time to write more than two pages. Although Peter is two years younger than James, he is already half a head taller. This morning my sister was so much better that she went out on the (*al*) balcony. I shall *visit* you at your country-place soon. The sooner the better. I have left my umbrella at home. So much the worse for you. The teacher has praised him more than me. On this side of the chain of reefs the sea was as calm as a lake. I will give you for it *exactly* as much as it has cost you. He advanced more *rapidly* in the *physical* than in the *abstract* sciences. The more I study the matter the less I understand it. I am all the more *inclined* to believe what you say because I have already noticed in him indications of insanity. Hannibal was conquered rather by the weakness and envy of his compatriots than by the strength and bravery of his enemies.

THE SUPERLATIVE OF COMPARISON.

572. There are two distinct forms in Spanish bearing the name of superlative: *a.* the true superlative, which regularly

[1] tiene mejor memoria. [2] See § 276.

follows the comparative on the scale and is formed from it, and expresses the highest or lowest degree of a quality as compared with any other degrees of the same; *b.* the absolute superlative, which expresses a very high or the highest possible degree without reference to any other, and therefore does not belong to the comparative scale.

SUPERLATIVE OF ADJECTIVES.

573. The superlative does not differ in form from the comparative of inequality, its meaning being determined entirely by the connection in which it is used. When followed by a noun, the superlative of adjectives is accompanied by the definite article or a possessive pronoun:—

El acusado contestaba á sus preguntas con la mayor calma posible.	The accused answered their questions with the greatest possible calmness.
El nuevo mundo, en que el Canadá ocupa el mayor territorio.	The new world, in which Canada occupies the largest territory.
Eso es mi menor cuidado.	That is my least concern.
Ésta es su mejor obra.	This is his best work.

REMARK.—There is thus no difference between a comparative preceded by a definite article or possessive pronoun, and the superlative; but the context will seldom fail to decide which meaning is intended:—

Los diplomáticos y cónsules de la Gran Bretaña unánimemente aseguran en sus informes oficiales, que sus paisanos son suplantados en los mercados hispano-americanos por **los más frugales** é industriosos alemanes.	The diplomats and consuls of Great Britain affirm unanimously in their official reports that their countrymen are supplanted in the Spanish-American markets by the more (*or* most) frugal and industrious Germans.

574. The superlative of an adjective takes the same place before or after its noun that the positive would:—

La más hermosa flor. La flor más hermosa.	The most beautiful flower.
Mi hermano mayor.	My oldest brother.
Su obra más larga.	His longest work.
Los cinco pasos más frecuentados en los Andes desde Chile hasta la república Argentina, son los de Doña Ana, Dehesa, Patos, Uspallata y Planchón.	The five most frequented passes in the Andes between Chile and the Argentine Republic are those of Doña Ana, Dehesa, Patos, Uspallata and Planchón.

575. When the superlative adjective follows the noun to which it belongs, the place of the definite article or possessive pronoun is before the noun:—

La cosa más fácil.	The easiest thing.
Es el libro menos interesante que en mi vida he leído.	It is the least interesting book I have read in my life.
Este barrio está habitado por la gente más mala de la ciudad.	This ward is inhabited by the worst people of the city.

576. When the noun qualified by the superlative adjective is in apposition to another noun, the article immediately precedes the superlative. The same is the case when the superlative is used absolutely (instead of a noun):—

Tiahuatlán, ciudad la más antigua de América.	Tiahuatlan, the most ancient city of America.
La mordedura de la cobra, serpiente la más venenosa de la península india, es siempre mortal.	The bite of the cobra, the most venomous snake of the Indian peninsula, is always mortal.
Esta carta es la menos importante.	This letter is the least important [one].

577. When the superlative adjective is in the predicate, the article is omitted when reference is had to different degrees of a quality in the same person or thing. If the quality of the noun is compared with that of other nouns, named or understood, the article is required:—

Esta mujer tiene la habilidad de llorar cuando está **menos** afligida.	This woman has the power of weeping when she is least afflicted.
De todas mis hermanas Pepita no lloró, aunque era **la más** afligida.	Of all my sisters, Josie did not cry, although she was the most afflicted [one].
Éste era el procedimiento que nos pareció **más** realizable.	This was the procedure which seemed to us most feasible.
Este procedimiento nos pareció **el más** realizable.	This procedure seemed to us the most feasible [one].
Realizó que lo había perdido justamente en el momento en que su uso era **más** necesario.	He realized that he had lost it just at the moment that its use was most necessary.

REMARK.—In the last example, **era el más necesario** would mean *when its use was the most necessary use*, and would not make sense.

578. The superlative, unaccompanied by a noun, may be used partitively by placing **de** before it; in rendering the con-

struction into English, some such word as *kind, nature,* is to be supplied:—

Tiene una pasión de las más exageradas por la música.	He has a passion of the most exaggerated kind for music.
Estoy sobre la pista de una conspiración de las más graves.	I am on the track of a conspiracy of the gravest nature.
Su vestido era carmesí del más vistoso.	Her dress was crimson of the most showy hue.

579. Superlatives are connected with the remainder of the sentence by the prepositions **de,** *of,* or **entre,** *among.* The employment of **en** for this purpose, although met with, is a vulgarism to be avoided:—

Era el catedrático más docto **del** país.	He was the most learned professor in the country.
¿Cuál es el río más largo **del** mundo?	Which is the longest river in the world?
La mayor fábrica **del** estado.	The largest factory in the state.
Soy de opinión que Tácito fué el más profundo **entre** los historiadores antiguos.	I am of the opinion that Tacitus was the most profound of ancient historians.

580. The English grammatical quibble whether we should say *the more learned* or *the most learned of the two,* is impossible in Spanish, as the form would be the same in either case:—

¿Quién es más fuerte, V. ó yo?	Which is the strongest, you or I?
La más plausible de las dos suposiciones era la presentada por el abogado.	The most plausible of the two suppositions was that presented by the lawyer.

581. Participles used as adjectives have the same degrees of comparison, formed in the same manner, as those of adjectives. Some of these participial adjectives need to be rendered into English by placing *well* before them; their comparatives and superlatives are then translated by *better* and *best* instead of *more* and *most*:—

Un hombre leído.	A well read man.
Un hombre más leído.	A better read man.
El hombre más leído.	The best read man.
Una ilustración conocida.	A well-known illustration.
Una ilustración más conocida.	A better-known illustration.
La ilustración más conocida.	The best-known illustration.

582. It has already been shown at § 224 how the neuter article **lo** is used with the positives of adjectives and past participles; it is similarly employed, with great effect, before superlatives. The meaning may generally be rendered in English by adding *thing* or *part* to the adjective:—

En **el más** apartado de los arrabales.	In the remotest of the suburbs.
En **lo más** apartado de los arrabales.	In the most remote part of the suburbs.
En **lo más** profundo del bosque.	In the depths of the wood.
El sueño profundo que se había apoderado del herido era **lo más** á propósito para reparar sus fuerzas.	The deep sleep which had overcome the wounded man was the most appropriate thing to restore his strength.

583. **Más**, although usually an adverb, sometimes serves as an adjective pronoun representing the majority or greatest number of any collective plural; with a singular noun the expression used is **la mayor parte**:—

Los más de los indios se ocultaron detrás de las peñas.	The most of the Indians hid themselves behind the rocks.
Las más de las veces.	The greater number of times.
Ha perdido la mayor parte de su dinero.	He has lost the most of his money.
Pasó la mayor parte de la noche velando.	He passed the most of the night awake.
La cordillera marítima, dominando á la costa peruana, tiene una larga línea de montañas volcánicas, las más de ellas inactivas.	The Coast Chain, which overlooks the Peruvian coast, has a long line of volcanoes, the greater number of them inactive.

SUPERLATIVE OF ADVERBS.

584. The superlative of the adverbs is formed in essentially the same manner as those of adjectives, but it is not preceded by a possessive pronoun or a definite article. It is therefore in no wise distinguished from the comparative:—

Los mejores criados son los que hablan menos.	The best servants are those that talk least.
El río corre más aprisa justamente antes de la caída.	The river flows fastest just above the fall.
Acierto á comprenderle aun cuando habla más aprisa.	I manage to understand him even when he speaks fastest.
El alumno que había estudiado más diligentemente no logró pasar el examen.	The student who had studied most diligently failed to pass the examination.

Ésa era la respuesta que menos esperaba oír.	That was the answer she least expected to hear.
Amo el mar cuando más alto suben las olas.	I love the sea when the waves run highest.

REMARK.—When the superlative adverb qualifies an adjective or participle used absolutely, it is preceded by the article,—which is to be considered as applying to the adjective (§ 454) :—

Su casa es la más elegantemente amueblada.	His house is the most elegantly furnished.

585. When precision is required, the superlative use may be distinguished by a circumlocution with **ser** and the logical pronoun:—

De todos los defectos el que más detesto es la afectación.	Of all foibles I hate affectation most.
La comisión informó que el fusil Lebel era el que más alargaba.	The Board reported that the Lebel rifle shot farthest.
Las historias cortas son las que escribe mejor.	Short stories are what he writes best.
Donde corre el río más aprisa es justamente antes de la caída.	The river flows fastest just above the fall.
De toda la compañía ella es la que canta más dulcemente.	She sings the sweetest of all the company.

586. An adverbial superlative is formed by placing the neuter article **lo** before a superlative adverb followed by any phrase expressing possibility. This is properly a superlative absolute and not a superlative of comparison.

Esta maniobra indicó que el capitán quiso acercar el bergantín **lo más posible** á la costa.	This manœuvre indicated that the captain wished to bring the brigantine as near as possible to the coast.
Me salvé **lo mejor que pude** de aquellos peligros.	I escaped from those dangers as I best could.
Echó á correr **lo más aprisa que** le **pudieron** llevar sus piernas.	He set out on a run as fast as his legs could carry him.
Los colonos se pusieron en marcha con intención de llegar **lo más pronto posible** á la costa occidental.	The colonists set out with the intention of arriving as soon as possible at the west coast.

THE ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE.

ADJECTIVES.

587. The absolute superlative of adjectives, when formed regularly, is obtained by the addition of the termination **ísimo**; it is then varied like any adjective in **o**. This termination, although descended from the true superlative of the Latin, has in Spanish merely an augmentative value; its force may be rendered in English by placing *very* or *most* before the positive adjective.

REMARK.—The principal accent of the absolute superlative is on the first syllable of the termination (whatever be its form). The syllable originally accented then takes a secondary accent.

588. The original adjective sometimes requires modification before appending the termination **ísimo**, for the reason that, being a direct inheritance from the Latin, it is not derived from the modern Spanish adjectives.

589. The following distinctions are to be observed in the formation of the absolute superlative:—

1. If the positive adjective ends in a consonant, it receives the termination **ísimo** without undergoing any change, unless the final consonant be **z**, which changes to **c** before **i** (§ 17):—

Hábil, skilful.	**Habilísimo**, very skilful.
Liberal, liberal.	**Liberalísimo**, very liberal.
Feliz, happy.	**Felicísimo**, very happy.
Feroz, fierce.	**Ferocísimo**, very fierce.

2. A final vowel or diphthong is omitted before receiving the termination. If two terminal vowels form two syllables, only the last is omitted:—

Importante, important.	**Importantísimo**, very important.
Injusto, unjust.	**Injustísimo**, very unjust.
Simple, simple.	**Simplísimo**, very simple.
Duro, hard.	**Durísimo**, very hard.
Limpio, clean.	**Limpísimo**, very clean.
Sucio, dirty.	**Sucísimo**, very dirty.
Impío,[1] impious, wicked.	**Impiísimo**, very wicked.
Feo, ugly.	**Feísimo**, very ugly.

[1] Many adjectives in **io** and **ío** do not admit the superlative termination; as, for example, **lacio**, **temerario**, **vario**; **sombrío**, **tardío**, **vacío**, etc.

3. If, after dropping a final **a** or **o**, the last remaining letter be **c**, it is changed to **qu**, and similarly **g** to **gu**, to preserve the hard sound (§ 17):—

Rico, rich.	**Riquísimo**, very rich.
Fresco, fresh, cool.	**Fresquísimo**, very fresh.
Largo, long.	**Larguísimo**, very long.

4. The expanded diphthongs **ie**, **ue**, revert to their primitive vowels **i** and **o**, since the accent is transferred to the termination (§ 14):—

Bueno, good.	**Bonísimo**, very good.
Nuevo, new.	**Novísimo**, very new.
Fuerte, strong.	**Fortísimo**, very strong.
Ferviente, fervent.	**Ferventísimo**, very fervent.

REMARK.—There is an increasing popular tendency to retain the diphthong in the shorter and more familiar words. This innovation is strenuously resisted by the members of the Academy and the more careful speakers. The author has never met with any form of the absolute superlative of **viejo** but **viejísimo**, and **nuevísimo** is more common than **novísimo** in conversation.

5. The termination **ble** reverts to the Latin *bil*[1]:—

Notable, notable.	**Notabilísimo**, very notable.
Voluble, voluble.	**Volubilísimo**, very voluble.
Terrible, terrible.	**Terribilísimo**, very terrible.

6. Adjectives ending in **-fico**, **-volo**, (from the Latin *-ficent*, *-volent*,) substitute these latter before **ísimo**:—

		LATIN.
Benéfico, beneficent.	**Beneficentísimo.**	*Beneficentissimus.*
Benévolo, benevolent.	**Benevolentísimo.**	*Benevolentissimus.*
Magnífico, magnificent.	**Magnificentísimo.**	*Magnificentissimus.*
Munífico, munificent.	**Munificentísimo.**	*Munificentissimus.*

7. A few adjectives ending in **-ro** or **-re**, (from Latin *-er*,) revert to the original Latin for the entire words:—

			LATIN.
ACRE:	**acérrimo**,	very bitter.	*Acer, acerrimus.*
ÁSPERO:	**aspérrimo**,	very harsh.	*Asper, asperrimus.*
CÉLEBRE:	**celebérrimo**,	very celebrated.	*Celeber, celeberrimus.*
ÍNTEGRO:	**integérrimo**,	very upright.	*Integer, integerrimus.*

[1] **Doble**, *double*; **endeble**, *frail*; **feble**, *feeble*, are exceptions, since they are not Latin:—

Una dalia doblísima.	A very double dahlia.

			LATIN.	
LIBRE:	**libérrimo,**	very free.	*Liber,*	*liberrimus.*
MÍSERO:	**misérrimo,**	very wretched.	*Miser,*	*miserrimus.*
POBRE:	**paupérrimo,**	very poor.	*Pauper,*	*pauperrimus.*
SALUBRE:	**salubérrimo,**	very healthful.	*Saluber,*	*saluberrimus.*
———	**ubérrimo,**	very fertile.	*Uber,*	*uberrimus.*

a. The forms **asperísimo** and **pobrísimo** are also in common use.

b. **Ubérrimo** has no positive in Spanish, its place being supplied by **feraz,** *fertile* (Lat. *ferax*). The positive *uber* was rare even among the Romans.

8. A few other adjectives, too various to be classified, revert to the original Latin forms:—

AMIGO*:	**amicísimo,**	very friendly.	*Amicus,*	*amicissimus.*
ANTIGUO*:	**antiquísimo,**	very ancient.	*Antiquus,*	*antiquissimus.*
CRUEL*:	**crudelísimo,**	very cruel.	*Crudelis,*	*crudelissimus.*
DIFÍCIL*:	**dificílimo,**	very difficult.	*Difficilis,*	*difficillimus.*
FÁCIL*:	**facílimo,**	very easy.	*Facilis,*	*facillimus.*
FIEL:	**fidelísimo,**	very faithful.	*Fidelis,*	*fidelissimus.*
FRÍO*:	**frigidísimo,**	very cold.	*Frigidus,*	*frigidissimus.*
PÍO: / PIADOSO*:	**pientísimo,**	very devout.	*Pien[t]s,*[1]	*pientissimus.*
SABIO:	**sapientísimo,**	very wise.	*Sapien[t]s,*	*sapientissimus.*
SACRO: / SAGRADO*:	**sacratísimo,**	very sacred.	*Sacratus,*	(*wanting.*)

NOTE.—Those distinguished by an asterisk have regular comparatives which are more commonly met with.

590. A number of comparatives and superlatives have descended from the Latin with little change of form, but retaining little of comparative or superlative force, and are to be considered as simple adjectives:—

Anterior, previous, preceding.	(*Wanting.*)
Citerior, hither.	(*Wanting.*)
Exterior, external, outside.	**Extremo,** extreme.
Inferior, inferior, lower.	**Ínfimo,** lowest.
Interior, internal, inside.	**Íntimo,** intimate.
Posterior, posterior.	**Postremo,** hindermost.
(Más cercano), nearer.	**Próximo,** nearest, next.
Superior, superior, upper.	**Supremo,** / **Sumo,** } supreme, highest.
Ulterior, ulterior, ultimate.	**Último,** last.

[1] Rare.

591. Instead of the regular absolute superlatives of **bueno, malo, grande** and **pequeño,** other forms are met with derived from the Latin superlatives, which were irregular. But these belong rather to the literary style than to every-day language:—

BUENO:	**Bonísimo,**	*or*	**óptimo.**	LATIN *Optimus.*
MALO:	**Malísimo,**	*or*	**pésimo.**	*Pessimus.*
GRANDE:	**Grandísimo,**	*or*	**máximo.**	*Maximus.*
PEQUEÑO:	**Pequeñísimo,**	*or*	**mínimo.**	*Minimus.*

592. The above forms are occasionally used as simple adjectives, from which comparatives and superlatives may be formed:—

Los mandó llevar á la estación más próxima del ferrocarril.	He had them taken to the nearest railway station.
Cuando más tarde atravesó aquellas calles, ya no encontró en ellas la más mínima señal de la confusión de la mañana.	When he went through those streets later on, he no longer found the least trace of the morning's confusion.
No lo quiero vender á precio tan ínfimo.	I do not wish to sell it at so low a price.
No me descompuse lo más mínimo por los insultos del enano.	I did not bother myself in the least about the dwarf's insults.
Hizo traición á su más íntimo amigo.	He betrayed his most intimate friend.

ABSOLUTE SUPERLATIVE OF ADVERBS.

593. The absolute superlative of simple adverbs is formed in the same manner as that of adjectives; the distinctive endings (**-a, -os**) of **cerca,** *near,* and **lejos,** *far,* are transferred to the superlative termination:—

Pronto,	soon.	**Prontísimo,**	very soon.
Cerca,	near.	**Cerquísima,**	very near.
Lejos,	far.	**Lejísimos,**	very far.

594. In the case of derivative adverbs formed by adding **mente** to an adjective, the superlative termination is attached to the adjective; and as **mente** requires the adjective to be in the feminine, the termination assumes the form **isima**:—

Noblemente,	nobly.	**Nobilísimamente,**	very nobly.
Ricamente,	richly.	**Riquísimamente,**	very richly.
Desproporcionadamente,	disproportionately.	**Desproporcionadísimamente,**	out of all proportion.

595. The effect of the absolute superlative may also be obtained by placing some such adverb as **muy**, *very*, **sumamente**, *highly*, **extremadamente**, *extremely*, **en extremo**, *to the extreme*, **en gran manera**, *to a great degree*, **en alto grado**, *to a high degree*, or by placing **además** after it. But the superlative termination has the most power, in addition to being much neater:—

Las pruebas resultaron sumamente satisfactorias.	The tests proved highly satisfactory.
Sus esfuerzos nos parecían en alto grado ridículos.	His efforts seemed to us highly ridiculous.
La tentativa será peligrosa además.	The attempt will be fraught with great danger.

596. In popular language **re** is occasionally prefixed to adjectives or adverbs to add intensity; it is usually accompanied by **muy**:—

Es una tarea muy redifícil.	It is an awfully hard job.
Me saben muy re-bien estas frambuesas.	These raspberries taste real good to me.

☞ Many adjectives do not admit of comparison. The principal ones are those that involve the idea of infinity, or already express a superlative degree, or denote origin, material, shape or class:—

Supremo.	Metálico.	Principal.	Inmortal.
Italiano.	Circular.	Triangular.	Celestial.
Infernal.	Militar.	Clerical.	Inmenso.

Some adjectives on account of their form do not admit of the termination **-ísimo**. They are principally those having an antepenultimate accent and ending in **-eo**, **-ico**, **-imo**, **-fero**; those ending in **i** or **y**; and those in **-il** which apply to sex, age or condition:—

Sanguíneo.	Satírico.	Marítimo.	Argentífero.
Férreo.	Colérico.	Legítimo.	Ignívomo.
Turquí.	Verdegay.	Juvenil.	Senil.

Remark.—Some adjectives of these forms may receive the termination **-ísimo** in burlesque style.

Exercise XXXIV.

The smallest *species* of humming-birds are not larger than horseflies. The *Delphic oracle declared* that *Socrates* (3) was the wisest man of his time. *Australia* is the largest island or the smallest *continent*. The *jaguar* (*m.*), the leopard of the new world, is the largest and most *formidable* beast of prey in South America. *Sirius* is the brightest of the

fixed stars. My oldest son is now in *Colombia*. His scheme is of the most fanciful and *impracticable* kind. *Thucydides* is the most careful and *impartial* among ancient historians. Our wisest course will be to preserve a masterly *inactivity* and await developments. The most discouraging thing is the *indifference* of the sufferers themselves. These strange berries grow only in the thickest of the forest. Those who talk loudest are not always the bravest. This is an affair of the most *urgent* [kind]. Most of those who have *visited* them affirm that they are the most *curious* ruins in the new world. She was outwardly *affable* and pleasant even when she was angriest. The days are not always hottest when they are longest. His remarks were *generally*, if not the wisest, at least the most amusing. The walls of the *palace* were very richly *adorned* with hangings of satin and velvet. The explanation is very simple. This wine is most *excellent*. The most of my books of *reference* are in my office. This apartment certainly is very beautiful. The best coffee comes from *Arabia*; nevertheless that of *Java* is very good. *Occupation* is the best and surest remedy against ennui. The greatest *reputation* is not always the best founded. Wooded countries possess the richest sources of *public* welfare.

CHAPTER IX.

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

597. Adjective pronouns, as the name indicates, partake of the nature of both adjectives and pronouns. Their adjective quality is that they can be used with nouns; their pronominal quality, that they can be used instead of nouns, and that they express—not qualities, but relations; they can, moreover, be applied to any person or thing, whereas an adjective is applicable only to persons or things having the quality that it represents. Some of them are employed in their uninflected form as adverbs; some are varied like adjectives, and others invariable.

NOTE.—The limits of the class are necessarily not well defined, and some of the members are of such an intermediate character that authorities may well differ in their classification; in most text-books they will be found scattered among various denominations.

We will first treat of the following, in order:—

Todo, -a, -os, -as.	Every, all.
Entero, -a, -os, -as.	Whole, entire.

Cada (*invariable*).	Each, every.
Mucho, -a, -os, -as.	Much, many.
Poco, -a, -os, -as.	Little, few.
Único, -a, -os, -as.	Only.
Solo, -a, -os, -as.	Alone, only.

598. Todo, in the singular, followed by a definite article, possessive or demonstrative pronoun before a noun, signifies the entire quantity or amount of that noun; it may then be translated by *all*:—

Leyó todo el día.	He read all day.
Bebió toda la cerveza.	He drank all the beer.
Ella gasta todo su dinero en frioleras.	She spends all her money in trifles.
Todo aquel terreno es baldío.	All that land is worthless.

599. Todo, in the singular, when not followed by such defining word, indicates the entire class represented by the noun; it may then be translated by *every*:—

Todo hombre honrado lo rechaza.	Every honest man rejects it.
Toda obra importante requiere trabajo.	Every important work requires labor.
Toda tentativa para forzar la puerta fué infructuosa.	Every attempt to force the door was fruitless.
En toda ocasión; en todo caso; á toda costa.	On every occasion; at all events; at any cost.

600. Todo, in the plural, and associated with one of the defining words above indicated, denotes the entire number of whatever it refers to:—

Todas las clases le honran.	All classes honor him.
Todos estos huevos están hueros.	All these eggs are addled.
Todos nuestros esfuerzos fueron inútiles.	All our efforts were useless.
Por consiguiente todas esas explicaciones no explicaban nada.	Consequently all those explanations explained nothing.

REMARK.—**Todos, -as,** before a definite article and a measure of time, is to be translated in English by *every,* with the noun in the singular:—

El médico viene todas las horas.	The doctor comes every hour.
Sale todas las noches á las diez.	He goes out every night at ten.
Todos los lunes; todas las semanas; todos los quince días.	Every Monday; every week; every fortnight.

601. Todo seldom appears in the plural unaccompanied by one of the defining words above mentioned, except in certain indefinite phrases:—

Huyeron los indios en todas direcciones.	The Indians fled in all directions.
En todas partes.	Everywhere (*rest*).
Por todas partes.	Everywhere (*motion*).
Á todas horas del día.	At all hours of the day.
Tintas de imprimir de todas clases.	Printing-inks of all kinds.
Mármoles de todos colores.	Marbles of all colors.
De todos modos no será preciso escribirle.	At all events it will not be necessary to write to him.

602. Used pronominally, **todo** appears in the singular as a neuter only, and has the meaning of *everything, all*:—

Contiene un poco de todo.	It contains a little of everything.
Todo favorecía la fuga de los prisioneros.	Everything favored the escape of the prisoners.
Sobre todo; ante todo.	Above all; first of all.
Ante todo es preciso hacer provisión de combustible.	First of all it is necessary to get a supply of fuel.
Lo haré á pesar de todo.	I shall do it in spite of everything.
Estamos dispuestos á todo.	We are prepared for anything.
Esto es todo por ahora.	That is all for the present.

603. Used pronominally in the plural and not referring to a previous noun, it denotes persons only:—

Todos admiten la justicia de su pretensión.	All concede the justice of his claim.
Ésta es la opinión de todos.	This is the opinion of every one.

604. Standing for a noun in the plural, **todos, -as**, refers to either persons or things; when standing for persons, the preposition **á** is required when **todos, -as**, is the object of a verb, or is in apposition to an objective personal pronoun:—

Seis hombres bajaron, todos armados con fusiles.	Six men descended, all armed with muskets.
Las he vendido todas (*houses*).	I have sold them all.
Las saludé á todas (*ladies*).	I saluted them all.
Nos ha convidado á todos.	He has invited us all.

605. When **todo** is connected by a relative with something following, an antecedent must be supplied, as **todo** alone is not used as such:—

Todos **los** que han escrito sobre el asunto nos dan informes contradictorios sobre el estado político actual de la Europa.	All who have written on the subject give us conflicting accounts of the present political status of Europe.
Preguntó á todos **los** que tomaron parte en el asalto.	He questioned all who took part in the assault.
Todo **el** que. Todo **aquel** que.	Everyone who.

606. In this manner the neuter **todo** followed by **lo que** forms a neuter phrase corresponding to the English *all that* (*that* being elidable):—

Me ha referido **todo lo que** sucedió.	He has related to me all that happened.
Quitáronle los bandoleros la ropa que llevaba, que era **todo lo que** le quedaba en el mundo.	The robbers took from him the clothes he wore, which was all that he had in the world.
Tengo **todo lo que** quiero.	I have all I want.

607. In the case of the expression **todo cuanto (todos cuantos)** the antecedent is included in the relative:—

Mataron á **todos cuantos** encontraron.	They killed all they found.
Ha vendido **todo cuanto** poseía para satisfacer su pasión por el juego.	He sold all he possessed to satisfy his passion for gambling.

608. The plural of **todo** may either precede or follow a plural personal pronoun. The English usage of placing *of* before a pronoun when *all* precedes has no parallel in Spanish:—

Nosotros todos, *or* todos nosotros.	We all, *or* all of us.
Vds. todos, *or* todos Vds.	You all, *or* all of you.
Ellos todos, *or* todos ellos. Ellas todas, *or* todas ellas.	They all, *or* all of them.

609. **Todo** may precede an indefinite article and a noun, while its English equivalent would be placed between them:—

Pasamos allí **todo un** invierno.	We spent a whole winter there.
Las aves marinas se arrojaron sobre el cadáver del cetáceo, lanzando graznidos capaces de ensordecer á **todo un** Congreso.	The sea-fowl pounced upon the body of the cetacean, uttering cries capable of deafening a whole Congress.
No dudaban que la isla estaba habitada y tenía quizá **toda una** colonia dispuesta á defenderla.	They did not doubt that the island was inhabited and perhaps had a whole colony prepared to defend it.

610. Todo, as a neuter, may be applied to any neuter pronominal or adjective expressions:—

Redundará todo eso en nuestro provecho.	All that will turn out to our advantage.
Todo lo demás no importa.	All the rest does not matter.
Todo lo cual es verdad.	All of which is true.
Ha gastado todo lo suyo.	He has squandered all his property.
Tiene todo lo necesario para su viaje.	He has everything necessary for his journey.
Eran aficionados á todo lo concerniente á la aerostática.	They were interested in everything concerning aërostation.
Todo lo largo del río.	All along the river.
Todo lo largo de la calle.	All along the street.

611. When **todo,** used absolutely as a neuter, occurs as the object of a verb, the pronoun **lo** is added, showing that it is object:—

¿Qué nombre damos á este gran ser que **todo lo** ha creado y que es tan superior á todas sus criaturas?	What name do we give to this great being who has created everything and who is so superior to all his creatures?
No tenían ni una arma, ni un instrumento, ni siquiera un cortaplumas. **Todo lo** habían echado fuera de la barquilla para aligerar el globo.	They had not a weapon, nor an instrument, nor even a penknife. They had thrown everything out of the basket to lighten the balloon.
Anselmo partió al amanecer, y dos horas después el timbre eléctrico anunció que **todo lo** había encontrado en orden en la empalizada.	Anselmo started at daybreak, and two hours afterwards the electric bell announced that he had found everything in order at the stockade.
Para mí, contestó, el estudio es un apoyo, un aliciente, una diversión que **todo** me **lo** hace olvidar.	To me, he replied, study is a support, an attraction, a diversion, that makes me forget everything.

612. Todo is idiomatically used with the larger measures of time to denote some indefinite point within the period mentioned:—

En todo el otoño venidero.	During next autumn.
Lo haré construir en todo el mes de enero.	I shall have it built some time in January.

613. Todos, -as, requires the definite article before numerals:—

Llegaron todos los cuatro á la misma hora.	All four arrived at the same time.

Todas las tres han ido al baile de máscaras.	All three have gone to the masked ball.

614. The expression **todo el mundo** is used as a stereotyped phrase meaning *everybody*; in society, *everyone of any consequence*; nautically, *all hands*:—

Todo el mundo ha ido á los baños de mar.	Everybody has gone to the seashore.
Todo el mundo asistió.	Everybody was present.
¡Todo el mundo arriba!	All hands on deck!

615. The uninflected form **todo** is used adverbially with the meaning of *entirely, all*; this use of **todo** is generally rather colloquial:—

El negocio ha salido todo al revés de lo que esperábamos.	The affair has turned out quite to the contrary of what we expected.

REMARK.—There are other cases apparently similar in appearance in which **todo** is an adjective agreeing with a noun or pronoun:—

Estoy todo cansado.	I am all tired out.
Este pez todo es espinas.	This fish is all bones.
El cielo era todo fuego; un relámpago no daba espera á otro.	The sky was all ablaze; there was no intermission between one flash of lightning and another.
Á todo correr; á todo vapor; á toda prisa.	At full speed; at full steam; at all haste.

616. Todo may be used as a noun with the meaning of *whole, total*:—

¿Cuánto pide V. por el todo?	What do you ask for the lot?
El todo es mayor que cualquiera de sus partes.	The whole is greater than any of its parts.
No comprendemos más que una mínima parte del gran todo.	We do not understand more than a very small part of the great whole.

617. Entero coincides in some respects with **todo**, meaning *whole, entire* or *all*; it always follows its noun:—

Comió un pan entero.	He ate a whole loaf.
Empleó días enteros en copiarlo.	He spent whole days in copying it.
La noche entera; toda la noche.	All night.

618. Cada, *each, every*, is invariable in form and is used only before singular nouns:—

Cada vez que viene trae un libro.	Every time he comes he brings a book.
Iba disminuyéndose sensiblemente el intervalo que separaba cada relámpago de cada trueno.	The interval which separated each lightning flash from each clap of thunder was sensibly diminishing.

619. Cada, however, may be associated with a plural noun preceded by a numeral and used as a collective expression:—

Una tienda para cada doce soldados.	A tent for each twelve soldiers.
La luna cambia cada 28 días próximamente.	The moon changes about every 28 days.

620. Cada cannot stand in place of a noun; in order to be used pronominally it must be followed by **uno** or **cual**:—

Cada una de las señoritas tenía puesto un traje distinto.	Each of the young ladies had on a different toilet.
Cada uno llevó su mochila.	Each one carried his knapsack.
Dí á cada cual lo que mereció.	I gave to each what he deserved.
Cada cual fué á tomar el puesto que le correspondía.	Each one went to assume the post which corresponded to him.

621. Mucho, as a declinable adjective pronoun, precedes nouns or stands in place of them; in the singular it is to be rendered by *much, a great deal of*; in the plural, by *many* or *a great many*:—

Lo haré con mucho gusto.	I will do so with much pleasure.
No tenemos mucho tiempo.	We haven't much time.
He vendido mucha harina.	I have sold a great deal of flour.
Hemos recibido muchas cartas.	We have received a great many letters.

622. The uninflected form **mucho** is used with a neuter value, and occasionally as an adverb qualifying verbs:—

Mucho quedaba aún por hacer.	Much still remained to be done.
Mucho dependía de su prudencia.	A great deal depended on his prudence.
Escribe mucho.	He writes a great deal.
Eso no me gusta mucho.	That does not please me much.

623. Mucho is intimately connected in meaning with the adverb **muy. Muy** qualifies adjectives or adverbs, but is never used with verbs. It is to be rendered in English *very*; before participles, *much*:—

Muy bueno; muy bien; muy lejos.	Very good; very well; very far.
Estoy muy molesto.	I am much annoyed.
Este café era muy frecuentado por los artistas.	This café was much frequented by artists.
Las tierras altas no están muy cultivadas, aunque tienen un suelo fértil y bien regado.	The high lands are not much cultivated, although they have a fertile and well-watered soil.

624. Muy cannot stand alone, as may the English *very*. After a question or statement containing **muy** and requiring acquiescence, **mucho** is the word used:—

¿Escribe bien el nuevo dependiente? —Mucho.	Does the new clerk write well?—Very.
Ésta es una colección muy interesante.—Sí, mucho.	This is a very interesting collection. —Yes, very.

625. Mucho and not **muy** is required before all comparative forms of adverbs. The four separate comparative forms of adjectives, **mayor, menor, mejor, peor,** take **muy**; before all other comparatives of adjectives **mucho** is required, because it comes in contact with an actual comparative adverb—**más** or **menos** (Compare § 554):—

La enferma está muy mejor hoy.	The patient is much better to-day.
La enferma ha pasado mucho mejor las primeras horas de la noche.	The patient spent the first hours of the night much better.
Mucho más grande; mucho menos lejos; mucho más aprisa.	Much larger; much less distant; much faster.

626. In modern Spanish **mucho** cannot be intensified by **muy**, although examples are frequent in the old classics. **Muchísimo**, *very much*, is the only admissible expression:—

Ella es muchísimo más agradable que su hermana.	She is very much more pleasant than her sister.
La cabeza me duele muchísimo.	My head aches very much.

627. Muy, before an adjective followed by **para**, is equivalent to **demasiado**, *too* or *too much*:—

Estaba **muy** asustado **para** ofrecer resistencia.	He was too much frightened to offer resistance.
Mi marido es **muy** caballero **para** manifestar su enojo en presencia de ella.	My husband is too much of a gentleman to show his annoyance in her presence.
Vió que la distancia que separaba las rocas era **muy** larga **para** poder salvarse de un salto, y se arrojó al agua.	He saw that the distance that separated the rocks was too great to be cleared with a jump, and he threw himself into the water.

628. The employment of **poco** when used as an adjective pronoun is identical with that of **mucho**. In the singular it is to be rendered by *little*; in the plural, *few*:—

"Poco dinero, pocos amigos."	"Little money, few friends."
De esas maravillas he visto yo pocas.	I have seen few of those marvels.

629. The uninflected form **poco** is used as a neuter meaning *little*, and as an adverb with the signification of *little, not very*. In its adverbial use it is an exact counterpart of **muy** in meaning and has the same variety of application:—

Queda poco que decir de esta materia.	Little remains to be said of this matter.
Vió que sus perseguidores poco á poco iban ganando terreno sobre él.	He saw that his pursuers were gaining ground on him little by little.
Un libro poco interesante.	A not very interesting book.
La noche era hermosa y tranquila, y la oscuridad poco profunda todavía.	The evening was fine and still, and the darkness not yet very intense.
Su padre era poco indulgente.	His father was not very indulgent.
El hijo de V. escribe poco bien.—Sí, poco.	Your son does not write very well.—No, not very.

630. Poco, in any of its acceptations, may be preceded by the indefinite article; the distinction is then the same as that exhibited in English between *little* and *a little*:—

Hemos tomado **un poco** de vino.	We have taken a little wine.
Hemos bebido **poco** vino.	We have drunk little wine.
Me gusta **poco**.	It pleases me little.
Me gusta **un poco**.	It pleases me a little.
Habla **poco**.	He speaks little.
Hablo **un poco** el castellano.	I speak Spanish a little.
Tenemos **pocos** enemigos.	We have few enemies.
Tenemos **unos pocos** enemigos.	We have a few enemies.

631. Poco, in any of its values, may be intensified by **muy,** or the absolute superlative form **poquísimo** may be used:—

Tenemos muy poca luz.	We have very little light.
El sol ha lucido poquísimo durante la semana pasada.	The sun has shone very little during the past week.

632. Solo is used as an adjective with the meaning of *alone, single, solitary*. As an adverb it is equivalent to **solamente,** *only*, for which it is a preferred shorter form. The adverbial employment of **solo** is signalized by an accent—**sólo**:—

Quedó solo.	He remained alone.
¿Ha venido V. sola, señorita?	Did you come alone, Miss?
Sólo tengo dos. / Tengo dos solamente.	I have only two.

La noche era oscura ; sólo algunos relámpagos de calor, reflejos de una tempestad lejana, iluminaban el horizonte.	The night was dark ; only some heat-lightning, the reflection of a distant storm, illuminated the horizon.
Este mal tan grande no tiene una sola raíz sino muchas y diversas.	This great evil has not one single root but many and various.

633. Único must not be confounded with **solo.** It is used only adjectively, and has the meaning of *sole, single, only, unique*:—

Un hijo único.	An only son.
Era el único sostén de su madre anciana.	He was the only support of his aged mother.
Es lo único que puedo responder á V.	It is the only thing that I can answer you.
Aquel eco lejano fué la única respuesta que obtuvieron sus gritos.	That distant echo was the solo answer that their shouts obtained.

REMARK.—After **por, todo** is sometimes used interchangeably with **único** :—

Anselmo **por toda** respuesta me indicó un paquete que reposaba sobre la mesa.	Anselmo as his only answer pointed out to me a package which lay upon the table.

EXERCISE XXXV.

He reads a great deal, but speaks very little of what he has read. His account was not very *probable*. This *region* is not much *cultivated*. This was indeed the only method of eluding our pursuers. Which of your friends have you invited to the wedding ? I have invited them all. Who is the most *diligent* of all of you ? That is *exactly* what we were discussing when you came in. Jane, where have you put all the needles that I bought this morning ? Indeed, Ma'am, I haven't seen a single needle. He looked at each one (*f.*) in turn. I expect to finish the work some time next summer. The whole is equal to the sum of its parts. The Mexican Government still pays a *pension* to each of the descendants of *Montezuma*. He receives remittances from his guardian every three months. Everybody here reads a great deal of light French *literature* and very little Spanish. I received a *diploma* (*m.*) every year for punctuality. I was much annoyed by (*con*) the cats that executed a serenade every night under my window. When I returned at nightfall I was too wet and tired to write, and so I left everything for the following day. This weather is magnificent, is it not ? Very. The lecture was rather prolix and not very *instructive*. This is not the act[1] of one alone ; it is a conspiracy of many. Everybody believes that

[1] **no es obra** (*omit the article*).

Spanish is a very simple language, but I shall prove that it is quite the *contrary*.[1] His second novel is very much more interesting than his first. This pipe is my only solace.

We will now consider the following adjective pronouns:—

Otro, -a, -os, -as.	Other, another, others.
Alguno que otro, (*decl.*)	Some . . . or other.
Uno, -a, -os, -as.	One, some.
Unos, -as cuantos, -as.	Some, a few.
Uno y otro, / **Ambos,** / **Entrambos,** } (*declinable.*)	Both.
Varios, -as.	Various, several.
El, la, lo, los, las demás.	The rest, the others.
Mismo, -a, -os, -as.	Same; self, selves.
Propio, -a, -os, -as.	Own; self, selves.
Ajeno, -a, -os, -as.	Another's, somebody else's.
Cierto, -a, -os, -as.	Certain.
Sendos, -as.	Apiece.
Tal, -es.	Such.
Semejante, -es.	Similar, like, such.
Tamaño, -a, -os, -as.	As much, as many.

634. Otro, used adjectively or pronominally, applies to persons or things. When a particular person or thing is to be designated, **otro** is preceded by the definite article or a demonstrative pronoun. But it does not admit the indefinite article as in the English *an-other*:—

Otro tomo; el otro tomo.	Another volume; the other volume.
Busco otro; busco el otro.	I am looking for another; I am looking for the other.
Queremos otros; queremos los otros.	We want some others; we want the others.
Mi otra hija; sus otras fincas.	My other daughter; his other estates.
Estos otros grabados; ese otro lío.	These other engravings; that other bundle.
¿Dónde encontraré otra mujer igual?	Where will I find another woman like her?
De otro modo, de otra manera.	Otherwise.

REMARK.—**Otro** will occasionally be found appended to **este, ese—estotro,** *this other*; **esotro,** *that other*—although it is more usual nowadays to write them as separate words.

---

[1] *See* § 224.

635. Otra cosa is a current phrase meaning *something else*; after an interrogative, *anything else*; with a negative, *nothing else*:—

Otra cosa que el acaso ha producido el orden admirable del universo.	Something else than chance has produced the admirable order of the universe.
No piensa en **otra cosa** que en comer.	He doesn't think of anything else but eating.
No en **otra cosa** que en la justicia está cimentada la seguridad de las sociedades humanas.	The safety of human society is founded on nothing else but justice.
Yo no hago más que emitir una conjetura y no **otra cosa**.	I only express a conjecture and nothing else.

636. Otro tanto means *as much more*; **otros tantos**, *as many more*:—

Pablo hizo **otro tanto** por su parte.	Paul did as much more on his part.
El resplandor de la luz eléctrica trasformaba las menores puntas de la caverna en **otros tantos** carbunclos resplandecientes.	The brightness of the electric light transformed the minor points of the cavern into so many glittering carbuncles.
De repente surcaron la oscuridad varios relámpagos, y luego estallaron **otras tantas** detonaciones.	Suddenly several flashes pierced the darkness and immediately afterwards an equal number of reports rang out.
La mitad y **otro tanto**. (*A slang phrase for the whole of anything.*)	As much again as half. (*Lit.* the half and as much more.)

637. Numerals and adjectives of quantity are preferably placed after the plural **otros, -as**:—

Al norte **otros dos** cabos cerraban la bahía.	To the north two other capes shut in the bay.
Este distrito produce cobre, hierro, azogue, estaño, carbón y **otros muchos** minerales preciosos.	This district produces copper, iron, mercury, tin, coal and many other valuable minerals.
Y **otras muchas** cosas.	And many other things.
Desde su tiempo **otros varios** exploradores han intentado lo mismo.	Since his time various other explorers have attempted the same thing.
Citaremos á tres personas entre **otras mil**.	We will cite three persons among a thousand others.

638. The expression **alguno que otro**, followed by a noun, corresponds to the English expression of *some . . . or other*, or *an occasional*:—

Él está buscando siempre **alguno que otro** pretexto para verla.
He is always seeking some pretext or other to see her.

No veíamos más que **algunos que otros** labradores que con paso lento regresaban del sitio de sus fatigas diarias.
We only saw some laborers or other who with slow step were returning from the place of their daily toil.

Le dirigió **alguna que otra** mirada exploradora.
He directed an occasional inquiring glance at him.

Alguna que otra vez me interrumpía extendiendo la mano.
From time to time he interrupted me by stretching out his hand.

639. In this expression **uno** frequently takes the place of **alguno**:—

Por entre esas ramas, flotantes y sombrías, pasan algunos rayos de luz, y **uno que otro** pájaro atraviesa esas ráfagas, volando perezoso.
A few rays of light penetrate among these dark and waving branches, and occasionally a bird, flying lazily, crosses these streaks of light.

Uno que otro chirrido, **uno que otro** canto interrumpe el silencio del bosque.
An occasional chirp, an occasional carol, interrupts the silence of the forest.

640. Uno, with which we are familiar as a numeral and indefinite article, is also an adjective pronoun of complete inflection, meaning *some*:—

Un día veremos.
Some day we shall see.

Unas señoras están abajo y quieren verla á V.
Some ladies are down stairs and wish to see you, Ma'am.

641. The plural **unos, unas**, is weaker and more indefinite than **algunos**, *some*, and expresses a feeling of indifference as to the exact number:—

Tenía unos cigarros por aquí, pero ya no los encuentro.
I had some cigarettes around here, but I don't find them any more.

Su pintura representaba un canasto con unas frutas.
His painting represented a basket with fruit.

642. Uno may be used with a partitive effect, followed by the preposition **de** and a noun:—

Uno de los puntos principales de interés en este lugar es la fábrica de seda.
One of the principal points of interest in this place is the silk factory.

643. The plural **unos**, however, is not so used; its place is taken by **algunos**:—

Algunos de sus camaradas.	Some of his comrades (chums).
Algunas de las mujeres.	Some of the women.
Algunas de estas fresas (*not* unas).	Some of these strawberries.

REMARK.—We may say **unos camaradas suyos**, *some chums of his*, but not **unos de sus camaradas**.

644. The combination **unos cuantos** is more definite than **unos**, and is interchangeable with **algunos**, *some, a few*:—

Allí ví á **unos cuantos** chicos jugando á la pelota.	I saw a few boys there playing ball.
Con excepción de **unas cuantas** personas cuyos negocios las obligaron á regresar á Barcelona, la partida llegó á la capital al día siguiente.	With the exception of a few persons whose business obliged them to return to Barcelona, the party arrived at the capital the next day.
Después de **unos cuantos** golpes de remo, la piragua tocó tierra.	After a few strokes of the oar, the boat touched land.

645. Uno is contrasted with **otro** in many ways. Contrary to the English usage, when employed absolutely it seldom takes the definite article:—

Una cosa es el agradecimiento, y **otra** el amor.	Gratitude is one thing and love another.
La compañía mantiene dos casas de huéspedes para sus operarios, **una** para los hombres y **otra** para las mujeres.	The company keeps two boarding-houses for its operatives, one for the men, the other for the women.
Le dije que era imposible continuar de este modo—que era preciso resolver **una** cosa ú **otra**.	I told her that it was impossible to go on in this way—that it was necessary to decide on one thing or the other.

646. Uno y otro is used with the meaning of *both* when we wish to preserve the separate identity of *each* of two nouns:—

Uno y otro han contribuido materialmente al buen éxito del proyecto.	Both have contributed materially to the success of the scheme.
Será fácil abrir una carretera entre **uno y otro** punto.	It will be easy to cut a road between the two points.
Los cazadores, introduciendo sus venablos de **uno y otro** lado, lograron poner la tortuga patas arriba.	The hunters, introducing their spears from each side, succeeded in turning the tortoise over on his back.
Al ver allí á Doña Tula y Don Oscar, hice dos profundas y consecutivas reverencias á **una y otro**.	On seeing Doña Tula and Don Oscar there, I made them two profound and separate bows.

647. Uno ú otro means *either* of two individuals; **unos ú otros**, *either* of two groups. Their negative forms are **ni uno ni otro**, *neither*; **ni unos ni otros**, *neither group*. Either, or each, member may assume the feminine form according as may be required:—

¿Quiere V. el "Imparcial" ó el "Globo"?—**Uno ú otro**, no importa cuál.	Do you wish the "Impartial" or the "Globe"? — Either; it does not matter which.
¿Le mandaré libros franceses ó españoles?—**Unos ú otros**; lee ambos idiomas con facilidad.	Shall I send him French or Spanish books? — Either; he reads both languages with ease.
No voto ni por **el uno** ni por **el otro**.	I shall vote for neither.
Juana, si viene la señora Caldas ó su hermano, no estoy en casa ni para **una** ni para **otro**. ¿Entiendes?	Jane, if Mrs. Caldas or her brother comes, I am not at home to either of them. Understand?

648. Uno, to avoid repetition, may take the place of a noun, and be qualified by an adjective or participle:—

La idea de V. es buena, pero creo tener una mejor.	Your idea is good, but I think I have a better one.
¿Quiere V. un cuello grande volteado ó uno corto parado?	Will you have a deep turned-down collar or a small stand-up one?

649. Ambos, *both*, is one of the very few words that may be said to be of the dual number, applicable only to two:—

Resultaron ambas proposiciones aprobadas por unanimidad.	Both propositions were unanimously adopted.
Ambos ríos son muy caudalosos.	Both rivers are very large.
Ambas orillas son altas y escabrosas.	Both banks are high and rugged.

REMARK.—**Ambos** may be replaced by **los dos**; thus we could also say:—

Resultaron las dos proposiciones aprobadas por unanimidad.	Both propositions were unanimously adopted.
Los dos ríos; las dos orillas.	Both rivers; both banks.

650. Entrambos, in its present usage, is interchangeable with **ambos**. It originally signified *between two* (**entre ambos**). But this meaning is now expressed by **ambos á dos**, or **entrambos á dos**, *between the two*:—

Ella se quedó inmóvil, agarrada con entrambas manos á las rejas.	She remained motionless, clinging with both hands to the railings.
Consiguieron levantar la piedra **entrambos á dos**.	They succeeded between them in lifting the stone.

651. Varios, *several, a good many,* is employed either as an adjective or a noun; it has no singular:—

Los operarios de la fábrica han formado varias sociedades de recreo é instrucción.	The factory hands have organized several societies of amusement and instruction.
Varias clases de lámparas de piano y de mesa.	Various styles of piano and table lamps.
Sacos de papel de varios tamaños.	Paper bags of various sizes.

652. A popular equivalent of **varios** is **una porción de,** *several,* although sometimes conveying the idea of considerable extent or numbers:—

Ya se lo había dicho **una porción de** veces.	I had already told him so several times.
Atravesó **una porción de** calles sin apercibirse siquiera de lo que hacía.	He crossed several streets without even taking account of what he was doing.
Había citado **una porción de** casos semejantes.	He had cited quite a number of similar cases.

653. Demás is invariable in form; preceded by the definite article, which serves to distinguish number and gender, it means *the rest, the others.* The neuter **lo demás** is equivalent to *everything else*:—

Cada gobierno, en la forma admitida, puede dar independientemente de **los demás** su adhesión á los referidos tratados.	Each government may, in the prescribed form, give its adhesion, independently of the rest, to the treaties referred to.
Es bien conocido el principio legal de que la afirmación de una cosa implica la exclusión de todas **las demás.**	The legal maxim is well known to the effect that the expression of one thing implies the exclusion of all others.
Por **lo demás,** su observación era lógica.	Besides, his remark was logical.
Lo demás importa poco.	All else matters but little.

REMARK.—**Demás,** in the predicate, means *superfluous*; compare the analogous French *de trop* :—

Abandonó bruscamente aquella sociedad donde se sentía estar demás.	He hastily left that society where he felt himself to be out of place.
En los tiempos tumultuosos actuales no está demás toda clase de precauciones.	In the present troublous times no kind of precaution is superfluous.

654. Mismo, *same,* when used adjectively, precedes its noun, and is itself preceded by some qualifying word—article, or demonstrative or possessive pronoun. The neuter **lo mismo** is used absolutely and means *the same thing*:—

También soy yo del mismo parecer.	I'm of the same opinion too.
Esta nueva tentativa obtuvo el mismo resultado.	This new attempt obtained the same result.
Será lo mismo que si él se lo hubiera dado á V.	It will be the same thing as if he had given it to you.

655. There is a clearly drawn distinction between the values of **el mismo** and **un mismo.** The former supposes a comparison, which the latter does not:—

Esta casa es **del mismo** dueño que la vecina.	This house belongs to the same owner as the one next door.
Eran solteros, mozos de **una misma** edad y **unas mismas** costumbres.	They were bachelors, young fellows of the same age and the same habits.
Ambos tenían **un mismo** odio á los ingleses, **una misma** astucia en concebir sus proyectos, **una misma** crueldad en ejecutarlos; eran una alma en dos cuerpos.	Both had the same hatred of the English, the same cunning in devising their plans, the same cruelty in executing them; they were one soul in two bodies.

656. Mismo, following a noun or the nominative or prepositional form of a personal pronoun, has an intensive or emphatic effect, which may be rendered by *self,*[1] *very* or *even*:—

Habla demasiado de sí mismo.	He talks too much about himself.
Sus hijos saben más que ellos mismos.	Their children know more than they [do] themselves.
Vale más de lo que ella misma se figura.	It is worth more than she herself imagines.
El camino era aquí tan áspero y escarpado que las mulas mismas experimentaron suma dificultad en seguir adelante.	The road was here so rugged and steep that even the mules experienced extreme difficulty in going forward.

REMARK.—The student should avoid confusing **el mismo, la misma,** with **él mismo, ella misma.** The former denote merely likeness or identity; the latter are emphatic:—

Este hombre no es ya **el mismo** [que antes era]. (*Likeness.*)	This man is no longer the same [as he was before].

[1] **Mismo,** though frequently applied to reflexive pronouns, is never reflexive, as the English *self* sometimes is. (See §§ 327–9.)

Esta mujer no es **la misma** [que antes vimos]. (*Identity.*)	This woman is not the **same one** [that we saw before].
Él mismo salió á mi encuentro.	He himself came out to meet me.
Ella misma nos lo dijo.	She told us so herself.

657. In the case of nouns, **mismo** with the definite article or a possessive pronoun may with the same effect be placed *before* a noun. The preposition **hasta** is occasionally used with similar emphasis either alone or in conjunction with **mismo**:—

Los mismos verdugos temblaron al oír sus palabras.	The very executioners trembled on hearing his words.
Hasta los mismos cactos parecían encogerse bajo la influencia de los rayos abrasadores.	Even the very cactus plants seemed to shrivel under the influence of the scorching rays.

658. After adverbs of time and place, **mismo** is invariable with the meaning of *this* or *that very*, though in some cases it cannot be rendered in English:—

Hoy mismo ; ahora mismo.	This very day ; this very moment.
Ayer mismo ; mañana mismo.	Only yesterday ; to-morrow.
Aquí mismo ; allí mismo.	In this very place ; that very place.

659. Mismo has a superlative form **mismísimo**, *very same, self-same*, which is declinable and is used only before nouns:—

Partió por casualidad en el **mismísimo** vapor que su rival.	He left by chance in the very same steamer as his rival.
Y allí ví los **mismísimos** versos.	And there I saw the self-same verses.

660. Propio emphasizes the word it accompanies. After a possessive pronoun it is rendered *own*; after a personal pronoun it is interchangeable with **mismo**, *self*:—

Cada estado hace por sí mismo sus propias leyes respecto á la herencia.	Each state makes for itself its own laws respecting inheritance.
Ellos propios han hecho la mismísima cosa.	They have done the very same thing themselves.

661. As a pure adjective, **propio** is followed by one of the prepositions **de**, **para** or **á**. With **de** it means *becoming, appropriate to*; with **para** or **á**, *suitable for*, with this distinction, that with **para** it denotes immediate *suitableness*, and with **á**, future *adaptability* :—

Su conducta no era **propia de** un oficial y caballero.	His conduct was unbecoming an officer and gentleman.
Me parece que su discurso no era **propio de** ocasión tan solemne.	It seems to me that his speech was not appropriate to so solemn an occasion.
Esta yerba no es **propia para** el ganado.	This grass is not suitable for stock.
Estas frutas son **propias á** hacer dulces.	This fruit is suitable for preserving.
Un hombre **propio para** todo.	A man available for anything.
Un hombre **propio á** todo.	A man adaptable to anything

662. Ajeno (derived from Lat. *alienus*, but equivalent to Lat. *alterius*) serves as a possessive to **otro** with the pronominal signification of *somebody else's, other people's.* It is thus the opposite of **propio,** *own*:—

El hombre discreto percibe las faltas ajenas, pero no habla de ellas.	The discreet man notices the faults of others, but does not speak of them.
Así somos los hombres; hablamos de los dolores ajenos con una gran frialdad.	So it is with us men; we talk of other people's sufferings with great calmness.

663. Ajeno, as a pure adjective, means *foreign to* or *unaware of,* and is followed by **de**:—

La proposición me parece ser ajena del cometido de nuestra comisión.	The proposition appears to me to be foreign to the scope of our committee.
Entretanto el preso se hallaba muy ajeno de la suerte que le aguardaba.	In the meantime the prisoner was quite unaware of the fate that awaited him.
¡Qué ajena estaba de tenerle tan cerca!	How oblivious I was of his being so near!

664. Cierto, *certain,* applies to persons or things which we wish to indicate, but about which we do not care to be explicit. It is then always followed by a noun, and does not admit the indefinite article:—

Hasta cierto punto era esto verdad.	To *a* certain point this was true.
Mostraba cierta superioridad que me humillaba.	He exhibited *a* certain superiority which humiliated me.
Lo dije así por cierto instinto dramático que todas las mujeres tenemos.	I said it so through *a* certain dramatic instinct which all of us women have.
Ciertos inviernos son muy rigurosos en España.	Certain winters in Spain are very severe.

665. Cierto, as a pure adjective, always follows its noun, or stands in the predicate alone; it has the literal meaning of *certain* in the sense of *reliable*:—

Hemos recibido noticias ciertas de que la inundación reciente ha causado grandes perjuicios al trigo.	We have received reliable information that the recent flood has caused great damage to the grain.
Un indicio cierto; pruebas ciertas; una muerte cierta.	A certain indication; sure proof; a certain death.
No es cierto lo que dice.	What he says is not reliable.

666. Tal, *such,* when used adjectively, is not followed by the indefinite article, as is the case in English in the singular:—

No quería arriesgar de tal modo su vida y la de sus compañeros.	He did not wish to risk in such *a* way his life and that of his companions.
Contra tales obstáculos es inútil luchar.	It is useless to struggle against such obstacles.
Por tal y tal causa.	For such and such *a* cause.
Bajo tales y tales condiciones.	Under such and such conditions.

667. Used absolutely, **tal** is frequently followed by a further statement, which is introduced by either **como** or **que,** with this distinction, that **tal como** expresses a comparison, **tal que,** a result:—

Bajo aquella bóveda de hojas la oscuridad era **tal que** no podían distinguir la vereda.	Under that vault of foliage the darkness was such that they could not distinguish the path.
Los estallidos del trueno eran continuos entonces, y su violencia **tal que** era imposible oír una palabra.	The peals of thunder were then continuous, and their violence such that it was impossible to hear a word.
El capitán había hablado con tal acento de convencimiento **que** sus compañeros no tuvieron objección alguna que suscitar.	The captain had spoken with such a tone of conviction that his companions had no objection to raise.
No tengo papel **tal como** V. quiere.	I have no paper such as you want.
No encontramos á los indígenas **tales como** nos los habían descrito los libros de viajes.	We did not find the natives such as the books of travels had described them to us.

668. Tal is used absolutely as an indeclinable neuter, meaning *such a thing*:—

No quiero creer tal de su parte.	I won't believe such a thing of him.
Nunca he visto ni oído tal.	I have never seen or heard of such a thing.

Cuando el cuadrillero tal oyó, le tuvo por hombre falto de seso.

When the vigilante heard such [talk], he took him for a lunatic.

REMARK.—**Tal**, in the above connection, is now commonly replaced by **tal cosa**:—

No permitiré tal cosa.

I will not allow such a thing.

669. **Tal** may be used adverbially to add emphasis to a statement or question:—

¿Qué tal le parece á V. el resultado?

How does the result seem to you?

Sí tal; no tal.

Yes indeed; no indeed.

¿Y qué tal van tus amores con la hija del conde?

And how go your love affairs with the count's daughter?

670. **Tal** is preceded by the indefinite article only when used with the name of a person, in which case it has the meaning of *one, a certain*. Before other nouns the equivalent term is **cierto**, without an article:—

Me lo dijo **un tal** Palomares.

One Palomares told me so.

Cierto joven turco, **un tal** Hassán, que anteriormente había vivido allí, y por consiguiente conocía el país, ofreció enseñarnos la vereda.

A certain Turkish youth, one Hassan, who had formerly lived there and consequently knew the country, offered to show us the path.

671. **El tal, la tal**, etc., applied to names of persons or things familiarly known, imparts an air of joviality:—

Pero **el tal** criado no era tan tonto.

But the said servant wasn't such a fool.

Como **la tal** condesa era muy esclava de la moda, no podía obrar de otro modo.

As the countess was much a slave to fashion, she could not act otherwise.

El tal borrico no quiso ir ni adelante ni atrás.

The rascal of a donkey would neither go forwards nor backwards.

Era un hombre acreditado **el tal** Rodríguez.

He was a man of repute, this Rodriguez.

672. **Cual** is often used as a correlative to **tal** in comparisons of two similar persons, things or statements:—

Según su doctrina, la vida futura será **tal cual** ha sido la de este mundo.

According to their belief, the future life will be in accordance with what that of this world has been.

Habían amueblado de nuevo algunas piezas; pero el resto de la casa lo habían dejado **tal cual** estaba antes.

They had refurnished a few rooms; but the rest of the house they had left just as it was before.

673. Semejante, meaning *such, like, similar,* is interchangeable with **tal** before nouns:—

Semejante conducta merece el vituperio de todos.
Such conduct deserves the condemnation of all.

Los exploradores han hallado restos semejantes en todas partes del Asia.
Explorers have found similar remains in all parts of Asia.

674. Sendos has a distributive effect, being corrupted from the Latin *singulos,* and means *one apiece.* It is used only in the plural:—

Los jueces llevaban sendas pelucas.
The judges all had on wigs.

Regaló al duque sendas espadas de Damasco y de Toledo.
He gave the Duke two swords, of Damascus and Toledo respectively.

Los seis gitanos montados en sendos burros, cabalgaban detrás de los demás.
The six gipsies, mounted on as many donkeys, rode behind the rest.

La reina distribuyó entre los generales sendas medallas de esmalte y oro.
The queen distributed among the generals a medal apiece of gold and enamel.

675. Uno, hombre, gente, and with a negative, **persona,** are occasionally used pronominally, unaccompanied by an article, with the vague meaning of *someone, anyone*; a like effect may be obtained by placing the verb in the plural without a subject:—

No está uno siempre preparado á improvisar un discurso.
One is not always prepared to make an impromptu speech.

No vimos á persona con quien hablar.
We didn't see a person to talk to.

No quedó persona con vida.
No one was left alive.

No siempre es una dueña de sí misma.
One is not always mistress of one's self.

Llegar hombre á su casa y no encontrar escalera para subir á su cuarto, no es cosa de risa para gente cansada.
For a fellow to get home and not find any stairs to go up to his room by, is not a laughing matter for tired folk.

676. Cosa, *thing,* is often used with a pronominal value, while retaining its feminine gender. It is equivalent to *something, anything*; with a negative, *nothing* :—

¿Qué cosa le ha sucedido? Tiene V. la camisa toda ensangrentada. —Oh, no es **cosa** ; un araño.
What has happened to you? Your shirt is all bloody.—Oh, it is nothing ; a mere scratch.

¡Qué paisaje tan monótono! Ya hemos caminado veinte leguas sin ver **cosa** interesante.

What a monotonous landscape! We have already come sixty miles without seeing anything interesting.

El honorable delegado ha llevado su bondad hasta el extremo de intimar que yo sé muy **poca cosa** acerca del asunto.

The honorable delegate has been so kind as to intimate that I know very little about the subject.

677. Alguna cosa is a popular form of **algo**, with which it is interchangeable; in like manner **ninguna cosa** or **cosa alguna** is a substitute for **nada**:—

Ya no se interesa en cosa alguna.

She no longer takes an interest in anything.

No encontraremos ninguna cosa más apropiada.

We shall not find anything more suitable.

678. Tamaño (from the Latin *tam magnus*) is used with exclamatory or relative force referring to size, either large or small:—

Nunca había experimentado tamaña desvergüenza.

He never had experienced so great impudence.

Un brillante tamaño como una avellana.

A diamond as large as a hazel-nut.

REMARK.—As a mere noun, **tamaño** is to be rendered by *size*:—

¿Tiene V. una tuerca de este tamaño?

Have you a nut of this size?

Era un tiburón de gran tamaño.

It was a shark of large size.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

One accident or another always prevented him from seeing her alone. Do you want a watch or a necklace for a present[1] [on] your birthday? I will accept either, or both, with much pleasure. He was ready to testify on (*de*) either side. Some of our most celebrated *artists* have burned incense before the golden calf. I have contributed a thousand dollars; are you willing to give as many more? She talked of *metapsychosis, polar sympathy* and many other things of which we did not understand a word. I have, said the king, a hundred other captains as good as he. He always finds some excuse or other for coming to her house when her father and mother are out. From time to time the Indian applied his ear to the ground and listened. The meadows on either side were carpeted with bright dandelions. Neither told a story that seemed *plausible*. This Mr. *Dunipe* is not the same who received the great prize at the *exposition*.

[1] como regalo (*omit the article*).

The same phenomenon occurred several times during last winter. He did not fear the *censure* of others so much as the reproach of his own conscience. I will send your son a few books suited to his age. Each of the contracting parties will pay the expenses of its own representatives. The earl's power was so great that even the king feared him. He himself acknowledged that he was spending his money and time foolishly. The result was the same as when I tried it before. It is unjust to *impute* to him the short-comings of others. Want, exposure and sorrow have made him such as you now see him. Such an enterprise demands *experience* and *capital*. You will not find such an *opportunity* every day. Sir, I will not tell him such a thing. This *Santánder* was a notorious wag. The case is [a] *curious* [one]: both brothers were in the same regiment and both lost the left arm on the same day and in the same battle.

CHAPTER X.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

679. A relative pronoun connects two propositions having something in common. It belongs logically to the second of the two, and relates back to a person or thing mentioned in the first, which is called the *antecedent*. A relative is generally equivalent to a personal or demonstrative pronoun preceded by a conjunction:—

Last winter my father bought two horses *which* died in the following spring.	Last winter my father bought two horses *and they* died in the following spring.

680. By far the most commonly-used relative in Spanish is **que,** which, as we have seen in Lesson XIX, is applicable alike as subject or object to persons or things of either gender or number.

Que follows close after its antecedent, so that, although it is invariable in form, we are at no loss to see what it refers to. A preposition may intervene when it relates to things; but when it relates to persons, no preposition is admissible:—

Eligió en la playa un sitio despejado que el mar había nivelado perfectamente.	He selected on the beach a clear space which the sea had leveled perfectly.

Los asuntos que hemos sido invitados á considerar.	The matters which we have been invited to consider.
Los albañiles que hemos ajustado.	The bricklayers whom we have hired.
La yerba de que están alfombrados los prados.	The grass with which the meadows are carpeted.
Los estudios á que dedico mis horas desocupadas.	The studies to which I devote my leisure hours.

681. As **que** governed by a preposition is not applied to persons, **quien**, *who*, is used in its place; just as in English we may say "the man *that*," but have to say "the man *from whom*." **Quien** is confined to persons, collective bodies of persons, and things personified:—

La persona á quien me recomendó V., ha prometido conseguirme un empleo.	The person to whom you recommended me has promised to get me a situation.
Los autores de quienes he sacado estos ejemplos.	The authors from whom I have taken these examples.
Era hombre á quien nada significaban los medios si se consiguiera el fin.	He was a man to whom the means were of no consequence if the end was attained.
Pronto se mostraba la Aurora á quien saludaban los pájaros con alegres gorgeos.	Soon the dawn showed itself and the birds saluted it with joyous carols.

682. A peculiarity of **quien** either as subject or object is that it may include its antecedent; it is then equivalent to *he who*, plural *those who*:—

Quien no sabe esto es ignorante de veras.	He who does not know that is ignorant indeed.
La culpa no fué suya, sino **de quien** se lo aconsejó.	The fault was not his, but of the person who advised him [to do] it.
Afirman **quienes** presenciaron la erupción que la columna de cenizas fué proyectada hasta una altura de cinco millas.	Those who witnessed the eruption assert that the column of ashes was thrown to a height of five miles.
Quien más se distinguió en estas escaramuzas fué el teniente C.	He who most distinguished himself in these skirmishes was Lieut. C.
No teniendo **á quien** consultar, ideé una traza que me produjo el mejor resultado posible.	Not having anyone to consult, I devised a scheme which produced the best possible result.

REMARK.—In English a like combination is presented by *what* = *that which*, rendered in Spanish, as we have seen, by **lo que**.

683. Used in this sense, **quien** is not necessarily the first word of the clause:—

Soldados son quienes vienen. Quienes vienen son soldados.	Those who are coming are soldiers.
El corresponsal del Heraldo fué quien hizo esta pregunta.	It was the correspondent of the Herald who asked this question.
Francia fué en efecto quien fundó los primeros establecimientos extranjeros en la parte inferior del Plata.	It was indeed France who founded the first foreign settlements in the lower part of the Plata.

684. When **quien** does not include its antecedent as above, it cannot be the subject of a sentence except when used as supplementary to an antecedent clause which is otherwise complete in itself:—

El tiburón con un vigoroso aletazo se lanzó sobre el negro, **quien**, echándose diestramente á un lado, logró evitar el ataque del animal.	The shark, by a vigorous stroke, darted upon the negro, who, throwing himself dextrously to one side, succeeded in avoiding the animal's attack.
No asistiré á la función de esta tarde; me quedaré en casa para escribir á mi esposa, **quien** está mala en San Francisco.	I shall not go to the play this evening. I shall stay at home and write to my wife, who is sick in San Francisco.
El primer europeo que tendió la vista por el inmenso piélago llamado, á causa de la tranquilidad de sus aguas, Océano Pacífico, fué Vasco Núñez de Balboa, **quien** tomó posesión de él á nombre del rey de España.	The first European who cast his gaze over the immense sea called, because of the stillness of its waters, Pacific Ocean, was Vasco Núñez de Balboa, who took possession of it in the name of the King of Spain.

685. The following contrasted examples illustrate the distinction in the usage and value of **que** and **quien** as subject of a relative clause:—

El rey confió esta misión á un diplomático **que** había vivido seis años en Constantinopla.	The king intrusted this mission to a diplomat who had lived six years in Constantinople.
El rey confió esta misión al conde Roberto, **quien** había vivido seis años en Constantinopla.	The king intrusted this mission to Count Robert, who had lived six years in Constantinople.
El dueño de la casa, **quien** está actualmente en el extranjero, me **ha** encargado de repararla.	The owner of the house, who is at present abroad, has engaged me to repair it.

El dueño de la casa, **que** está muy deteriorada, me ha encargado de repararla.

The owner of the house, which is very dilapidated, has engaged me to repair it.

EL CUAL[1] AND EL QUE.

686. **Cual**, plural **cuales**, corresponds to the English *which*, as **que** does to *that*. **Cual** and **que**, preceded by the article **el, la, lo, los, las**, form relatives more precise than **quien** or **que** alone, as they have the advantage of inflection.

The two do not differ in meaning, and may be used as subject or object relating either to persons or things; but **el cual** belongs rather to a studied or oratorical, and **el que** to a more easy and off-hand, style—just the difference between *which* and *that* in English.

687. **El cual** or **el que** is substituted for **quien** and **que** (according as a person or thing is referred to) under the following circumstances:—

1. When the antecedent clause is lengthy, or when the relative is at some distance from its antecedent, so that the connection is not perfectly obvious:—

Esta carta llegará á manos de V. por conducto de un criado que ha estado largo tiempo á mi servicio y **del cual** estoy seguro.

This letter will reach your hands through the medium of a servant who has been a long time in my service and of whom I am confident.

Sin hablar de una ventaja que no es de despreciarse, **la cual** es que las islas del Cabo Verde no distan mucho del Senegal.

Without speaking of an advantage which is not to be despised, which is that the Cape Verde Islands are not far distant from Senegal.

Registrando mi cuñado los papeles viejos de sus abuelos, halló uno muy amarillento y carcomido, **el cual** reconoció ser un instrumento de cesión de terrenos firmado por el cuáquero Guillermo Penn.

While my brother-in-law was looking over the old papers of his ancestors, he found one, very yellow and worm-eaten, which he recognized as a deed of land signed by William Penn the quaker.

2. When two or more nouns differing in gender or number in the antecedent clause require to be kept distinct. **El cual**, or

[1] The association of the definite article to **cual** was unknown in Spanish prior to the XIVth century. On account of its full inflection of gender and number, which facilitated the connection of clauses, it was universally adopted and had a marked influence upon the style of that period, as was evinced by the interminable sentences, pages in length, which soon became prevalent.

el que, can then by means of its inflection point directly to the word intended:—

Me dió unos apuntes sobre las costumbres del país, **los cuales** me fueron después muy útiles.	He gave me some points on the customs of the country which were very useful to me afterwards.
Le mando á V. la narración de los viajes de Dampier, **la que** hallará V. muy interesante.	I send you the narrative of Dampier's voyages, which you will find very interesting.
Mi abuelo nos contó unas anécdotas de Diógenes, **las que** nos divirtieron bastante.	My grandfather told us some anecdotes of Diogenes which amused us hugely.
Otras veces corría un arroyuelo al través de la espesura, **el que** atravesaban sin trabajo los exploradores.	At other times a brook ran through the undergrowth, which the explorers crossed without difficulty.
El barón de cuando en cuando daba batidas por aquellos bosques á **las cuales** convidaba á sus amigos.	The baron from time to time gave hunting parties in those woods, to which he invited his friends.

3. After a clause making sense by itself, and requiring a pause—more or less slight—in speech or a punctuation mark in writing, **el cual** or **el que** serves to resume the thread of discourse:—

Los cazadores, apenas entraron en la espesura, vieron al perro luchando con un animal desconocido, **al cual** tenía asido por una oreja.	The hunters had scarcely entered the thicket when they saw the dog struggling with an unknown animal which he held fast by one ear.
Acabo de leer un artículo interesante sobre aquella planta notable, el plátano, **la cual** no produce semillas.	I have just read an interesting article upon that remarkable plant, the banana, which produces no seeds.
Pizarro acabó por hacer creer á sus compañeros que la empresa acometida era una empresa religiosa, en **la cual** tendrían siempre el poderoso y directo apoyo del cielo.	Pizarro eventually made his companions believe that the enterprise undertaken was a religious one, in which they would ever have the powerful and direct aid of heaven.

4. When the relative is preceded by one of the longer prepositions, or a prepositional phrase; in this case **el cual** is preferable to **el que**:—

El biombo **tras el cual** nos ocultábamos estaba entre el canapé y el rincón	The screen behind which we were hiding was between the sofa and the corner.

El fin **hacia el que** caminamos está aún muy lejos.

The end to which we are advancing is still very far off.

Un minuto, que fué un siglo, trascurrió, **durante el cual** Núñez trató de sorprender algún latido del corazón del desgraciado.

A minute, which was a century, passed, during which Núñez tried to discover some pulsation of the unfortunate man's heart.

Los náufragos volvieron á la punta roqueña **cerca de la cual** había zozobrado la goleta.

The castaways returned to the rocky point near which the schooner had capsized.

Pero la pared del fondo, **al través del cual** una puerta ancha comunicaba con la sala contigua, estaba adornada de un modo rústico pero pintoresco en alto grado.

But the farther wall, through which a wide door communicated with the adjacent hall, was adorned in a rustic but highly picturesque manner.

688. When the antecedent denotes an idea or a statement and not a material reality, the relative assumes the neuter form **lo cual** or **lo que**; the simple relative **que** is then inadmissible:—

Las aguas del arroyo eran dulces, **lo que** nos hacía suponer que las del lago lo eran también.

The water of the brook was fresh, which made us suppose that that of the lake was so likewise.

B— conocía al mozo y sabía que era muy capaz, por **lo cual** lo había recomendado al obispo.

B— knew the lad, and knew that he was very capable, for which [reason] he had recommended him to the bishop.

Al anochecer el horizonte occidental comenzó á cargarse de brumas espesas, **lo que** indicaba que el monzón iba á establecerse durante la noche.

At nightfall the western horizon began to fill with a dense haze, which [phenomenon] indicated that the monsoon was going to set in during the night.

689. So when the relative is of masculine or feminine form, it relates to some previous noun of that gender; but when it is neuter it refers to the entire statement embodied in the antecedent clause:—

El coronel en su última carta habla en términos muy lisonjeros de la obra de V., **la que** le agrada muchísimo.

The colonel in his last letter speaks in very flattering terms of your work, which pleases him very much.

El coronel en su última carta habla en términos muy lisonjeros de la obra de V., **lo que** me agrada muchísimo.

The colonel in his last letter speaks in very flattering terms of your work, which pleases me very much.

Nuestro corresponsal nos envía libros, informes impresos y recortes de los periódicos del día, **que** nos proporcionan todos los datos que necesitamos.	Our correspondent sends us books, printed reports and cuttings from the newspapers of the day, which give us all the information we need.
Nuestro corresponsal nos envía libros, informes impresos y recortes de los periódicos del día, **lo que** nos proporciona todos los datos que necesitamos.	Our correspondent sends us books, printed reports and cuttings from the newspapers of the day, which gives us all the information we need.

NOTE.—Thus, to analyze the last pair of examples, in the first one the relative refers to the articles sent, in the second to the action of the correspondent.

690. El cual may be followed by a noun, as may the English *which*:—

Trató de fraguar una explicación, en **el cual esfuerzo**, no siendo hombre de imaginación acalorada, fracasó miserablemente.	He tried to invent an explanation, in which effort, not being a man of vivid imagination, he failed miserably.
El conde de Meneses entró y atravesando todo lo largo del salón, salió por la otra extremidad sin fijarse en nadie, **la cual conducta** sorprendió mucho al duque.	The count of Meneses entered and, crossing the entire length of the hall without noticing anybody, went out at the other end, which conduct very much surprised the duke.

691. Instead of this construction the noun (unaccompanied by an article) may be placed in apposition, the relative then following:—

Trató de fraguar una explicación, **esfuerzo en que** fracasó miserablemente.	He tried to invent an explanation, in which effort he failed miserably.
Atravesó todo lo largo del salón sin fijarse en nadie, **conducta que** sorprendió mucho al duque.	He crossed the entire length of the hall without noticing anybody, which conduct very much surprised the duke.
Luego que terminó esta ceremonia el cura nos invitó á visitar el tesoro, **invitación que** fué inmediatamente aceptada.	As soon as this ceremony was over, the priest invited us to visit the treasure, which invitation was immediately accepted.

692. Cuyo is occasionally met with as a substitute for **el cual** in the construction shown above. Although objected to by grammarians, its use is nevertheless gaining acceptance:—

El condor, adorado en otro tiempo por los Incas, es el rey de los Andes meridionales, en **cuyas regiones** alcanza un desarrollo extraordinario.

The condor, worshipped in former times by the Incas, is the king of the southern Andes, in which regions it reaches an extraordinary size.

Toda la región de los contornos se inclina aquí por largas pendientes hacia un centro común, **cuya ancha depresión** está ocupada por el lago Salinas.

All the surrounding region converges here by long slopes towards a common center, which wide depression is occupied by lake Salinas.

693. The possessive relative **cuyo, -a, -os, -as,** relates to either persons or things, and corresponds to the English *whose, of which.* It agrees in gender and number with the thing possessed and not with the possessor.

Un lago trasparente, cuyas aguas reflejan las formas de los árboles que lo asombran.

A transparent lake, whose waters reflect the forms of the trees which overshadow it.

Hermosos jardines cuyas flores perfuman el aire.

Beautiful gardens whose flowers perfume the air.

Es un soldado cuyo valor es incontestable.

He is a soldier whose bravery is unquestionable.

Un pequeño pueblo, cuyo nombre he olvidado.

A small village, the name of which I have forgotten.

El comerciante cuyos jardines acabamos de visitar es excesivamente rico.

The merchant whose gardens we have just visited is exceedingly rich.

El caballero á cuya hermana le he presentado á V., es amigo de mi padre.

The gentleman to whose sister I presented you is a friend of my father's.

694. As the direct possessive is not used in Spanish in speaking of the parts of one's own person or clothing when they are the objects of a verb, **á quien** is employed in that connection instead of **cuyo**:—

Mi esposa, **á quien** ya le empezaba á doler la cabeza, se retiró.

My wife, whose head already commenced to ache, withdrew.

El sarjento **á quien** amputaron ayer la pierna, sigue bien esta mañana.

The sergeant whose leg they amputated yesterday is doing well this morning.

695. Cuyo naturally relates to an antecedent immediately preceding; reference may be made to an anterior word by means of **de quien** or **de quienes**:—

Parmenio y Clito eran dos capitanes de Alejandro **de quienes** el espíritu y valor eran la admiración de la posteridad.

Parmenio and Clitus were two of Alexander's captains whose spirit and valor were the admiration of posterity.

(**Cuyo espíritu y valor** *would refer to* **Alejandro.**)

696. Cuanto, when used relatively, includes its antecedent, and is to be rendered *as many as, as much as, all that*:—

Aquella desgracia inesperada llenó de espanto á **cuantas** personas se hallaban allí reunidas.

This unexpected calamity filled all who were there with terror.

Sus compañeros le dejaron decir **cuanto** quiso.

His companions let him say all he wanted to.

Respecto á comunicación telegráfica, posee Colombia **cuanto** puede necesitar actualmente.

With respect to telegraphic communication, Colombia has all it can need at present.

De **cuantas** personas veo no conozco á ninguna.

Of all the persons I see I do not know one.

Hasta hoy ha sido infructuoso **cuanto** he hecho.

Until now everything I have done has been fruitless.

Estas palabras causaron una impresión extraordinaria en **cuantos** las oyeron.

These words produced an extraordinary impression on all who heard them.

697. Quien and **cual** are repeated as correlatives either in the singular or in the plural, in which case they assume the accent for the purpose of distinction:—

Se disfrazaron quién de una manera, y quién de otra.

They disguised themselves some one way, some another.

Tengo muchos libros, cuáles de inglés, cuáles de otros idiomas.

I have many books, some in English, some in other languages.

LOCATION AND AGREEMENT OF RELATIVES.

698. A relative pronoun is never omitted as it often is in English, and when there is a governing preposition it must precede the relative:—

La nación que me cabe la honra de representar.

The nation I have the honor to represent.

Los resultados á que ya hemos llegado nos hacen esperar un éxito propicio.

The results we have already attained make us hope for success.

699. The sentence should be arranged so that the antecedent may stand as close before the relative as possible. In the following pairs the first version is incorrect:—

Encuentro máximas en sus discursos que son contrarias á la moral.
Encuentro en sus discursos máximas que son contrarias á la moral.

I find maxims in his speeches which are contrary to good morals.
I find in his speeches maxims which are contrary to good morals.

(*In the first,* **que** *would relate to* **discursos**; *in the second, to* **máximas.**)

La pescadora dice que tiene una cantidad de arenques en su carreta que venderá en dos pesos.
La pescadora dice que tiene en su carreta una cantidad de arenques que venderá en dos pesos.

The fish-wife says she has a lot of herrings in her cart which she will sell for two dollars.
The fish-wife says she has in her cart a lot of herrings which she will sell for two dollars.

(*In the first example,* **que** *would relate to* **carreta.**)

Cicerón ha imitado á Demóstenes en todo lo que tiene de más elocuente.
Cicerón, en todo lo que tiene de más elocuente, ha imitado á Demóstenes.

Cicero has imitated Demosthenes in all his most eloquent passages.
Cicero, in all his most eloquent passages, has imitated Demosthenes.

700. The abbreviated and impersonal forms of expression so common in English are often inadmissible in Spanish in connection with relative clauses. The first version of the following is incorrect:—

Es á la hora de la adversidad que se conocen los verdaderos amigos.
La hora de la adversidad es la en que se conocen los verdaderos amigos.

It is in the hour of adversity that we know our true friends.
The hour of adversity is the one in which we know our true friends.

REMARK.—The difference in construction is that in the first the principal verb is impersonal; in the second the subject is "**hora.**"

701. When both antecedent and relative are governed by identical or equivalent prepositions, the second preposition may be omitted:—

En el momento [en] que iban á alcanzarle, el roedor desapareció bajo las aguas del pantano.

At the moment they were about to seize him, the rodent disappeared under the waters of the swamp.

702. When the relative **que**, governed by a preposition, has as its antecedent the demonstrative pronoun **el**, the order of the three words is frequently changed:—

Esta vieja casa es **la en que** pasé mi infancia. Esta vieja casa es **en la que** pasé mi infancia.	This old house is the one in which I spent my childhood.
No son días de fe **los en que** vivimos. No son días de fe **en los que** vivimos.	They are not days of faith, those in in which we live.
El estilo en que se expone un lance dramático debe ser más conciso y enérgico que **el en que (en el que)** se presenta una disertación filosófica.	The style in which a dramatic occurrence is depicted should be more concise and energetic than that in which a philosophical dissertation is presented.
La hora de la adversidad es **la en que (en la que)** se conocen los verdaderos amigos.	The hour of adversity is the one in which we know our true friends.

REMARK.—Such constructions are neatly replaced by an adverb, when there is one that expresses the meaning :—

Esta vieja casa es **donde** pasé mi infancia.	This old house is where I spent my childhood.
La hora de la adversidad es **cuando** se conocen los verdaderos amigos.	The hour of adversity is when we know our true friends.

703. The relative may be either subject or object of the verb which follows it, or may depend upon a preposition. When it is subject, the antecedent, relative and verb agree in number so far as their forms are capable of showing it; when object, the subject of the verb is a noun or pronoun in the relative clause which determines the number of the verb:—

Sacó de su cartera una pequeña hoja de papel que contenía tres ó cuatro palabras escritas con lápiz.	He drew from his pocketbook a small slip of paper which contained three or four words written in pencil.
Tal era su extraña teoría, que defendía el buen hombre con ardor cuantas veces se presentaba ocasión de hacerlo.	Such was his strange theory, which the good man defended with ardor as many times as an occasion for doing so presented itself.
Las plazas contra las cuales el general había concentrado sus fuerzas ocupaban una posición que dominaba el fondo de la bahía.	The places against which the general had concentrated his forces occupied a position which commanded the head of the bay.

704. The verb of a relative clause usually precedes the noun, whether this be subject or object; while in English, when the noun is subject it is placed first:—

El mineral que había recogido el ingeniero era muy puro y rico.
The ore which the engineer had picked up was very pure and rich.

Los faros que revisten la costa de Holanda están todos construidos sobre cimientos artificiales.
The light-houses which line the coast of Holland are all built on artificial foundations.

La barranca que han cavado las aguas del Colorado tiene aquí más de 500 metros de profundidad.
The ravine which the waters of the Colorado have excavated is here more than 1,500 feet deep.

Bajo la bóveda impenetrable de verdura que formaban los árboles, no se adivinaba cuánto había adelantado el sol en su carrera.
Under the impenetrable vault of foliage which the trees formed, it could not be told how far the sun had advanced in his course.

REMARK.—When the verb of the relative clause governs the relative as its direct object and has in addition an indirect object, the subject precedes the verb :—

Se cercioró de que el agua que el arroyo suministraba al lago (*not* que suministraba el arroyo al lago) era abundantísima.
He satisfied himself that the water which the brook furnished the lake was very abundant.

705. In speaking of things or ideas, nothing but a difference in number between the antecedent and the noun in the relative clause will show whether the latter or the relative is the subject of the verb; when both are of the same number there is no clue except the meaning:—

Las riquezas que **brindan** los **bosques** centrales de Sud-América encuentran fácilmente un mercado en todas las partes del globo civilizado.
The treasures which the inland *forests* of South America *afford* easily find a market in all parts of the civilized globe.

El camino **que recorre** la parte inferior de la montaña se bifurca en esta altura.
The road *which skirts* the lower part of the mountain forks at this altitude.

Quizás hay nuevos continentes que en este momento **están fabricando millones y millones** de estos infusorios del coral.
Perhaps there are new continents which millions upon millions of these coral *insects are building* at this moment.

Durante largo tiempo permanecieron en silencio, entregados á todos los temores y esperanzas que **podían** producir en ellos estos **incidentes**.
For a long time they remained in silence, given over to all the fears and hopes which these *occurrences might* produce in them.

Esa parte de la playa estaba ribeteada de árboles magníficos, unos rectos, otros inclinados, cuyas raíces **venían** á bañar las largas **ondulaciones** del mar
This part of the beach was lined with magnificent trees, some erect, some leaning, whose roots were lapped by the long undulations of the sea.

El poder que le había granjeado esta victoria.

The power which this *victory had* gained for him (*or which had* gained him this victory).

REMARK.—The verb and its subject are distinguished above by prominent type.

706. When persons, intelligent animals, or things personified, are treated of, the object is pointed out by being always preceded by the preposition **á** as the sign of the accusative :—

El soldado **que** mató al indio.

The soldier who killed the Indian.

El soldado **á quien** mató el indio.

The soldier whom the Indian killed.

Tenía un par de hurones domesticados **que** cazaban á las ratas.

I had a pair of tame ferrets which used to hunt the rats.

Tenía un par de hurones domesticados **á los cuales** espantaron las ratas.

I had a pair of tame ferrets which the rats frightened away.

707. When the verb in the relative clause is intransitive, it can have no object, and the relative is necessarily subject. When the verb is impersonal, it has no subject, and the relative is necessarily object:—

Esta costa orientada al oeste no está expuesta á los vientos alisios que soplan del noreste.

This coast facing the west is not exposed to the trade-winds which blow from the north-east.

Opino que el tiempo que hace es insoportable.

I am of opinion that the weather is insupportable.

708. When a personal pronoun is followed immediately by a relative which is the subject of the verb in the relative clause, the verb agrees in person as well as number with the antecedent pronoun:—

Yo, que hablo á V., era antes duque de Algaba.

I who speak to you was formerly Duke of Algava.

Tú que tienes tanta influencia podrás conseguirlo.

Thou who hast so much influence wilt be able to obtain it.

Nosotros que somos tan despreciados.

We who are so despised.

709. In designating a particular person, in Spanish the appropriate noun or personal pronoun is placed as the subject of the verb ser; while in English it is oftener made the predicate after the impersonal expression *it is, it was,* etc. The Spanish construction is the more logical and consistent:—

¿Quién es?—Soy yo; somos nosotros.	Who is it?—It is I; it is we.
¿Quién mete tanto ruido?—Son los muchachos.	Who is making such a noise?—It is the boys.
¿Quién ha roto la alcarraza?—No he sido yo.	Who has broken the decanter?—It was not I.

710. When such constructions are followed by a relative clause in which the relative is subject, the relative and its verb agree with the pronoun in number and person, provided there is no predicate:—

Soy yo quien he impedido la sublevación.	It is I who stopped the insurrection.
Seremos nosotros quienes mereceremos la gloria.	It will be we who will deserve the glory.
Nosotros éramos quienes presenciamos la pelea.	It was we who witnessed the combat.

711. But when the personal pronoun is followed by a predicate after the verb *to be*, the relative and its verb agree with that predicate, which is construed to be of the third person:—

Yo soy la persona que ha impedido la sublevación.	I am the person who stopped the insurrection.
Nosotros éramos los oficiales que presenciaron la pelea.	We were the officers who witnessed the combat.

712. When the antecedent is the logical demonstrative **el, la, los, las,** it is more in harmony with the genius of the Spanish language to put the verb of the relative clause in the third person:—

Yo soy el que lo afirma.	It is I who affirm it.
Nosotras somos las que le han cuidado y le han devuelto la vida.	We are the ones who cared for him and brought him back to life.

713. In the two contrasted examples following, the antecedent of the first is **nosotros**, understood. In the second the antecedent (that which is nearest to the relative) is **los dos**, construed as of the third person:—

Somos dos los que **hemos** sido premiados.	We, who have been rewarded, are two [in number].
Somos los dos que **han** sido premiados.	We are the two who have been rewarded.

714. When a relative clause follows the expressions **yo soy**, *it is I*, **somos nosotros**, *it is we*, etc., an antecedent must be

supplied for the relative, since the personal pronoun cannot act in the dual capacity of subject to the verb **ser** and antecedent to the relative:—

Si no los matamos, seremos nosotros los que serán matados.	If we do not kill them, it will be we who will be killed. (*Lit.* we shall be the ones who will be killed.)
Era la naturaleza y no la mano del hombre la que había abierto la vasta caverna.	It was nature and not the hand of man which had hollowed out the vast cavern.

715. The following are of the same nature, the antecedent being contained in the relative clause:—

Soy yo quien lo hice.	I am he who did it.
¿Eres tú quien llamas?	Is it thou who callest?
Él era quien había imaginado tal escena vergonzosa, y él era á quien yo iba á exigir la reparación.	It was he who had devised such a shameful scene, and he it was of whom I was going to demand reparation.

716. The student will often find the relative as object of a following verb in cases where in English, to avoid placing the verb at the end, the relative clause would take the passive form:—

Cuando el gitano penetró en el corredor, dió un silbido bajo, al cual respondió otro idéntico.	When the gypsy entered the passage he gave a low whistle, which *was answered* by another like it.
Los colonos siguieron una larga playa que bañaba el vasto mar.	The colonists followed a long beach which *was bathed* by the open sea.
La cabeza de este distrito es la aldea de Tandil, situada al pie de las laderas setentrionales de la sierra, que protege el fuerte "Independencia."	The county-seat of this district is the village of Tandil, situated at the foot of the northern slopes of the sierra, which *is protected* by Fort Independence.
Un europeo en estas comarcas es un ser útil cuyo valor conocen los salvajes.	A European in these regions is a useful being, whose worth *is* well *known* to the savages.

717. In such constructions in English the relative and the auxiliary verb *to be* may frequently be omitted:—

La navegación de los afluentes del Amazonas está sujeta á restricciones que embarazan el franco trasporte de las riquezas que brindan los bosques centrales de	The navigation of the tributaries of the Amazon is subject to restrictions which impede the free transportation of the treasures *produced* by the inland forests of South

Sud-América; y no sé si los tratados **que existen** para la navegación de los ríos Orinoco, Paraná, Plata y otros, estipulan todas las garantías **que demanda** el crecimiento vertiginoso del comercio y de las explotaciones agrícolas.

America; and I do not know whether the *existing* treaties concerning the navigation of the rivers Orinoco, Paraná, La Plata and others afford all the guarantees *demanded* by the amazing growth of commerce and agricultural enterprises.

Exercise XXXVII.

He who rejects everything as false is not wiser than he who accepts everything as true. It was the junior member who first took the floor. This town has a few factories, and a small harbor for the shipment of the cotton which the country (*el lugar*) produces. They started at daybreak for *Tandil*, at which village they arrived at four o'clock. Those are the individuals whose hearts and whose purses are the lightest. It is we who will bear the *principal* burden of expense (*gastos*). The Government *immediately* despatched one of the most *formidable* battle-ships, three protected cruisers and four torpedo-boats, which fleet passed the straits on the fifteenth. The night was dark and cold, but it was necessary to ford the stream which the road crossed. The water which flows from this lake has a disagreeable taste, on account of the salts of lime and soda which it holds in *solution*. The Spaniards *formed* two attacking parties, of which *Pizarro* commanded the one and *Montenegro* the other. Is this the paltry reward for which I have labored so many years? You will see yonder on that hill the house, half hidden by (*entre*) trees and vines (*viñedos*), in which I passed the happiest years of my life. It is the boys in the street who are making all that noise. I have just written an *article* on the *therapeutic* uses of *electricity*, which I shall send to the *Medical* Gazette to-morrow. We heard a bird in the woods whose cry sounded *precisely* like the human voice. It was *impossible* to see the stage on account of the ladies' hats, which were at (*en*) that time *prodigiously* large. Instead of receiving letters from our friends in *America* (3), we found the post-office closed, which *caused* us a good deal of disappointment.

CHAPTER XI.

NEGATIVES.

718. The usual Spanish negative is **no**, which in most cases applies to a verb. **No** regularly precedes the verb which it negatives; in the case of compound verbal forms in which ser,

estar or **haber** is an element, it precedes the auxiliary, which is grammatically the verb:—

Si nuestros amigos no llegan pronto, no conseguirán asientos.	If our friends do not arrive soon, they will not get seats.
Sus compañeros hasta entonces no habían querido interrogarle respecto del suceso.	His companions until then had not wished to question him about the occurrence.
No estamos dispuestos á negarlo.	We are not prepared to deny it.
Su informe no fué acojido con el interés que merecía.	His report was not received with the interest which it deserved.

719. The order is not affected when the verb is omitted through having been previously expressed:—

Somos simples leñadores y no espías disfrazados.	We are simple woodcutters, and not spies in disguise.
Nos trata como gente honrada y no como presidiarios.	He treats us like honest people and not like convicts.
Sabe tocar, aunque no mucho.	She can play, although not much.
Llegará mañana si no hoy.	He will arrive to-morrow if not to-day.
He corregido la mayor parte de las páginas, pero no todas.	I have corrected most of the pages, but not all.

720. When a verb governs one or more personal pronouns which necessarily precede it, these are placed between the verb and the negative. Otherwise no word should intervene (unless **no** negatives a phrase, as shown at § 721):—

Su proyecto no me parece realizable.	His plan does not seem feasible to me.
No se lo he conseguido todavía.	I have not obtained it for him yet.
Parecen distintos mas no lo son.	They seem different but are not.
Esta licencia no les fué otorgada.	This liberty was not granted them.

721. The influence of the negative is coextensive with that of the word which it precedes, since it equally affects whatever the action or influence of that word extends to. By means of its location, therefore, the negation may be restricted to a particular word or phrase, according to the shade of meaning desired:—

La herida no puede ser mortal.	The wound cannot be mortal.
La herida puede no ser mortal.	It is possible that the wound is not mortal.
Hace bien en no perder el tiempo leyendo novelas.	She does well in not losing time reading novels.

No hace bien en perder el tiempo leyendo novelas.	She does not do well in losing time reading novels.
Se resolvieron á no abandonarle aunque estaba gravemente herido.	They resolved not to abandon him although he was seriously wounded.
No se resolvieron á abandonarle aunque estaba gravemente herido.	They did not decide to abandon him although he was seriously wounded.
De los candidatos no sirven todos para el destino.	Not all of the candidates are fit for the place.
De los candidatos todos no sirven para el destino.	All of the candidates are unfit for the place.
Procuraremos no pronunciar su nombre en presencia de su padre.	We will try not to pronounce his name in his father's presence.
No procuraremos pronunciar su nombre.	We will not try to pronounce his name.
No á todos es dado expresarse con facilidad y elegancia.	It is not given to all to express themselves easily and elegantly.

722. **No** is associated with other negative words, which come after it and do not, as in English, counteract the negation, but rather strengthen it:—

No lo hallo en ninguna parte.	I don't find it anywhere.
No escogí ninguno de los tres.	I did not select any of the three.
No he visto nunca ningún espectáculo tan triste.	I have never seen so sad a sight.

723. From this it has often been supposed that in Spanish a number of negatives never counteract, but strengthen each other. But this is not strictly true. The general negative **no** neutralizes any adjective, adverb or proposition of negative value, and is itself neutralized by repetition:—

"No sin" equivale á "con."	*Not without* is equivalent to *with*.
Se vió insultada la magistratura, no sin general escándalo.	The authorities were seen to be insulted, to the general disgrace.
Canta no sin cierta gracia.	Her singing is not without a certain grace.
Pero no le fué permitido no asistir.	But it was not permitted him not to attend (*i.e.* he was not allowed to be absent).
No podemos no admitir la justicia de sus observaciones.	We cannot fail to acknowledge the justice of his remarks.
Esta precaución no era inútil.	This precaution was not useless.
Se ocupa demasiado de detalles no importantes.	He occupies himself too much with unimportant details.

724. Otherwise, any number of negatives may be combined in the same sentence without destroying the negation; and, in fact, each adverb or pronoun of a negative clause assumes its negative form (when it has one):—

No toleraba nunca ninguna intervención de nadie.	He never tolerated any interference from anyone.
Sin embargo no veían en ninguna parte nada que indicase que hubiese habido naufragio de ninguna especie.	Nevertheless they did not see anything anywhere to indicate that there had been a shipwreck of any kind.

725. One exception to the last statement is that **alguno**, when placed after a noun, is accepted as a negative interchangeable with **ninguno**:—

Hasta esta hora no he recibido noticia alguna de ellos.	Up to this hour I have not received any tidings of them.
No toleraba de nadie broma alguna.	He used not to tolerate any levity from anyone.

726. All auxiliary negatives, when placed after the verb, require **no** before the verb to complete the negation. But they have full negative effect when they precede the verb, and **no** is then inadmissible:—

En cuanto á indígenas, no vimos ningunos.	As for natives, we saw none.
En cuanto á indígenas, ningunos se mostraron.	As for natives, none showed themselves.
Nunca emplea más tiempo que el estrictamente necesario. / No emplea nunca más tiempo que el estrictamente necesario.	He never takes more time than what is strictly necessary.

727. Certain words and phrases, not in themselves negative, are used to emphasize or strengthen **no**:—

No veo gota en este aposento.	I can't see at all in this room.
Por la calle no pasaba un alma.	Not a soul was passing in the street.
No entiendo palabra de lo que dice.	I do not understand a word of what he says.
No lo he hecho mejor en mi vida.	I have never done it better in my life.

728. A usage peculiar to Spanish is that many expressions of this kind, although having nothing negative in their nature, may be used with negative force and unaccompanied by **no**

before a verb, in the same manner as the supplementary negatives above referred to:—

En mi vida he visto tantas telarañas.	I have never seen so many cobwebs in my life.
En parte alguna la pudimos encontrar.	We could not find her anywhere.
En todo el año ha hecho tanto frío como hoy.	In the whole year it has not been so cold as to-day.
En toda la noche he podido dormir.	All night long I was unable to sleep.
En el mundo se hallará otra joven tan simpática.	You won't find another so charming a girl in the world.
En días de Dios ha sucedido tal cosa.	Never has such a thing happened before.

729. In this way three words have become accepted as true negatives which originally had nothing negative in their construction. They are:—

Nadie, nobody. LATIN, *natus*, born; (*homo*, human being, understood.)
Nada, nothing. " *nata*, born; (*res*, thing, understood.)
Jamás, never. (Composed of **ya** and **más**.)

These are now employed either as auxiliary to **no**, or as actual negatives before a verb:—

Yo no le he ofendido jamás.	I have never offended him.
Yo jamás hago las cosas á medias.	I never do things by halves.
No ha ocurrido nada de nuevo. / Nada de nuevo ha ocurrido.	Nothing new has occurred.
Aquella desgracia, no prevista por nadie, llenó de espanto á todos.	That misfortune, not foreseen by anyone, filled all with dismay.
Nadie había previsto semejante desenlace.	No one had foreseen such an outcome.

730. Nada may be employed as a feminine noun denoting the non-existence of everything, equivalent to the English *nothingness*:—

Los millares de individuos que vivieron, pensaron, y cuyas vidas fueron para ellos de tanta importancia, mas cuyos nombres se han sumergido en la nada.	The thousands of beings who lived, thought, and whose lives were to them of so much importance, yet whose names have sunk into nothingness.

REMARK.—There is also a feminine noun **nonada**, meaning a thing of no consequence, a mere nothing; this may be used in the plural:—

Figúrese V. que esos dolores son nonadas, y dejará de padecerlos.	Imagine that those aches are mere nothings and you will cease to feel them.
Su don es una nonada.	His gift is a mere nothing.

731. Jamás may be used as a mere expletive to strengthen **siempre,** *ever,* or **nunca,** *never*:—

La amaré por siempre jamás.	I shall love her for ever and ever.
Nunca jamás consentiré en su unión.	I shall never, never consent to their union.

732. Nadie, nada and **jamás** are employed with their original positive values of *anybody, anything* and *ever* under the circumstances enumerated below. This usage is generally extended by analogy to the true negatives **ninguno** and **nunca**:—

a. In questions expecting negative answers:—

¿Ha visto V. jamás nada que iguale á esto?	Have you ever seen anything to equal this?
¿Quién le exige á V. nada de eso?	Who is requiring of you anything of the kind?
¿Ha olvidado V. que á mí más que á ningún hombre toca hacer justicia de ese asesino?	Have you forgotten that it belongs to me more than to any man to render justice to that assassin?

b. In exclamations of interrogative form:—

¡Hay nada más sublime!	Is there anything more sublime!
¡Se ha visto jamás tal cosa!	Did you ever see the like!
¡Ha sido nadie tan desgraciado como yo en perder todas mis notas de viaje!	Was anyone ever so unfortunate as I in losing all my notes of travel!

c. After comparatives and superlatives:—

Importa á V. más que á nadie.	It matters to you more than any one.
Mis esperanzas renacieron ahora más frescas que nunca.	My hopes now sprang up again fresher than ever.
Se mostró más resuelta que nunca.	She showed herself more determined than ever.
Habla con más elocuencia que ninguno de sus colegas.	He speaks more eloquently than any of his colleagues.

d. After expressions that embody a negative meaning:—

Es imposible entender nada.	It is impossible to hear anything.
Me guardaré de hablar á nadie sobre lo sucedido.	I shall refrain from speaking to anyone about what has happened.
Era inútil hacer ningún esfuerzo para huir.	It was useless to make any effort to flee.

e. In clauses commencing with **sin, antes, ni** or **tampoco**:—

Pero antes de emprender nada, convenía fijarse en el país.	But before undertaking anything, it was best to establish themselves in the country.
Prefiero tener arreglados todos los pormenores antes de avisar á nadie.	I prefer to have all the details arranged before informing anyone.
Ellas me dirigían mil preguntas sin aguardar ninguna respuesta.	They asked me a thousand questions without waiting for any answer.
La noche pasó sin ningun incidente.	The night passed without any incident.
Su marido tampoco dijo nada.	Her husband also said nothing.

733. The location of several negatives in a sentence is governed by the following principles: *a*, when **no** is employed, no other negative is placed before the verb; *b*, when **no** is not used, the other negatives may be distributed at pleasure, provided some one of them precedes the verb:—

Los Araucanos son una raza altiva y fuerte, la única de las tres Américas que no se ha doblado nunca á una dominación extranjera.	The Araucanians are a proud and powerful race, the only one of the three Americas which has never bowed to a foreign supremacy.
Hasta esta noche jamás el alboroto había tomado tales proporciones.	Until this night the revelry had never assumed such proportions.
No hizo absolutamente nada para ayudar á ninguno de ellos.	He did absolutely nothing to aid any of them.
En ninguna parte he estado nunca mejor; ni aún en mi gabinete.	I have never been more comfortable anywhere; not even in my own study.
Voy á batir á V. como no ha sido nunca batido ningún inglés.	I am going to beat you as no Englishman was ever beaten before.

734. When no verb is expressed, the auxiliary negatives are sufficient, and **no** is not admissible in connection with them:—

De ningún modo. De ninguna manera.	By no means, not by any means.
¿Consentirá V. en ello?—¡Nunca!	Will you consent to it?—Never!
Á ningún precio, contestó el duque.	Not at any price, replied the duke.

735. A redundant and nonsensical use of the negative is common to both languages in exclamations of interrogative form:—

¡Qué no daría yo para poseer una voz tan maravillosa!	What wouldn't I give to possess such a wonderful voice!
¡Qué no dirá la Europa al oír tal escándalo!	What will not Europe say on hearing such a scandal!

736. **No** is sometimes used redundantly after **que** in the second term of a comparison, a usage to be avoided,—unless it adds to the euphony of the clause, as in the third example:—

Ella se lo sabrá decir á Vd. mejor que no yo.	She will know how to tell you better than I.
Me gustan más los jardines del Duque que no las Delicias.[1]	I like the Ducal gardens better than the Delicias.
Está más resuelto ahora que no entonces.	He is more resolute now than then.

737. But **no** is required by euphony between two **que's,** meaning *than that,* but does not alter the sense:—

Más bien parecía que le llevaban que no que él andaba.	It seemed rather that they were carrying him than that he walked.
Es más probable que resigne su comisión que no que se someta á semejante injusticia.	It is more likely that he will resign his commission than that he will submit to such injustice.

738. Another common redundant use of **no** is after **hasta,** *until,* in a sentence of negative meaning:—

El capitán no quería decidirse hasta no haber explorado la costa hasta el extremo de la península.	The captain did not wish to decide until he had explored the coast as far as the extremity of the peninsula.
No amé nunca hasta que no ví á V.	I never loved until I saw you.
Hasta que todo no esté arreglado quiero que ella lo ignore.	I do not want her to know it until everything is arranged.

739. **No** followed by a verb and **más que** or **sino** is equivalent to *not more than, not but,* or *only*:—

Pero con eso **no** haremos **más que** retardar la inevitable catástrofe que nos espera.	But by that we will only retard the inevitable catastrophe that awaits us.
No tomaron **más** tiempo **que** el necesario para dar pequeños descansos á los caballos.	They took only what time was necessary to give short rests to the horses.
Durante el primer cuarto de hora de marcha el silencio **no** fué interrumpido **sino** por esta sola observación del guía.	During the first quarter of an hour's march, the silence was broken only by this single remark of the guide's.
Á la verdad, hasta entonces **no** teníamos motivos **más que** para felicitarnos.	In fact until then we had no reason except to congratulate ourselves.

[1] Names of two extensive gardens in Seville, the former private, the latter public.

No les quedaba **más** remedio **que** rendirse.	They had no resource but to surrender.
¿Qué tiene V.? **No** hace V. **sino** bostezar.	What's the matter with you? You don't do anything but yawn.

740. In the expressions **nada más que** and **nada menos que**, the meaning depends essentially upon what word the negative restricts (i.e. before which it is placed):—

Nada más deseo que el reposo de la vida privada.	I desire nothing beyond the quiet of private life.
Nada deseo más que encontrarme con él cara á cara.	Nothing do I more desire than to meet him face to face.
En nada menos piensa que en ocupar un ministerio de Estado.	He thinks of nothing less than getting a cabinet office.
En nada piensa menos que en solicitar el cargo.	There is nothing that he thinks of less than applying for the position.

REMARK.—In the first of each of these pairs, **no más**, **no menos**, may be substituted for **nada más**, **nada menos**, respectively:—

No deseo más que ir á reposar bajo el césped del viejo cementerio de mi pueblo.	I want nothing more than to be laid to rest 'neath the sod of the old cemetery in my village.
No aspira á menos que al mismo poder ejecutivo.	He aspires to no less than the executive power itself.

741. When **no** is limited by a following **sino**, *but*, thus denying one thing and affirming another, these correlatives are placed immediately before the words or expressions which they contrast:—

Los esclavos **no** corrieron **sino** más bien volaron.	The slaves did not run, but rather flew.
Era aquel, **no** el sueño de un volcán, **sino** su extinción completa.	That was not the sleep of a volcano, but its complete extinction.
El cuadro representaba un país iluminado **no** de frente por los rayos solares **sino** desde atrás por medio de su reflexión.	The picture represented a country not lighted from in front by the sun's rays, but from behind by means of their reflection.
Aplaudieron el discurso **no** porque les pareció elocuente **sino** porque era corto.	They applauded the speech, not because it seemed eloquent to them, but because it was short.

REMARK.—To analyze the last example, for instance, if the order were **no aplaudieron el discurso porque**, etc., it would convey the meaning that they did not applaud the speech, for the reason that it seemed eloquent.

742. No sólo . . . sino también are placed before each of two clauses in the same manner as the English *not only . . . but also*; their location is governed by the principle given above:—

No sólo mataron á los prisioneros sino también los cortaron en pedazos.	They not only killed the prisoners but also cut them in pieces.
Degollaron no sólo á los hombres sino también á las mujeres y á los niños.	They massacred not only the men but also the women and children.

REMARK.—In the first example the word restricted is **mataron**; in the second, **hombres**.

743. If two negative clauses are so contrasted, the formula is **no sólo** (or **solamente**) **. . . sino** [que] **tampoco**:—

No solamente ninguna otra voz contestó á la suya, sino que tampoco ningún eco le devolvió el sonido de sus gritos.	Not only did no other voice reply to his own, but no echo returned the sound of his shouts.

744. Tampoco (lit. *as little*) negatives something in addition to a previous negation, and is equivalent to *neither*, *not . . . either*; it requires **no** or **ni** when it follows the verb, but not when it precedes:—

Donde yo no he logrado pasar, el regimiento de V. no pasará tampoco.	Where I have not succeeded in passing, your regiment will not pass either.
Esta nueva tentativa tampoco obtuvo el resultado apetecido.	This new attempt likewise did not obtain the desired result.
Mientras no deseamos abusar de la debilidad de un vecino, no queremos tampoco someternos á su insolencia ni á sus caprichos.	While we do not desire to take advantage of a neighbor's weakness, just as little are we willing to submit to his insolence or caprices.
Á decir verdad, no quiero ir.—Ni yo tampoco.	To tell the truth, I don't want to go.—Nor I either.

745. After an answer by simple **no**, a second similar answer is expressed by **tampoco**:—

¿Sabe V. á dónde ha ido Paco?—No señor.—¿Ni qué comisión lleva?—Tampoco señor.	Do you know where Frank has gone?—No, Sir.—Or what errand he is on?—No, Sir.

746. Siquiera, *even*, strengthens a negative and is always accompanied by one:—

No le conozco ni siquiera de vista.	I do not know him even by sight.
No turbaba el silencio del bosque ni siquiera el más ligero ruido.	Not the slightest sound disturbed the silence of the forest.
Nadie siquiera había oído hablar de él.	No one even had heard tell of him.

747. **Ni** is a negative conjunction equivalent to a negative form of **y**, *and*. Its English equivalent is *nor*, which is not equal to *not or* but to *and not*:—

No veo el libro, ni tengo tiempo para buscarlo.	I do not see the book, *nor* have I time to look for it. I do not see the book *and* have *not* time to look for it.
La peste ha cesado, ni hay motivo para temer su nueva aparición.	The plague has ended, *and* there is *no* reason to fear its reappearance.
El presidente no ha leído aún la memoria de V., ni tiene tiempo hoy para examinarla.	The president has not read your memorial, *and* he has *not* time to look at it to-day.

748. **Ni** connects negative sentences in the same manner that **y** does affirmative ones:—

No lo creo ni me lo persuadirá nadie.	I do not believe it and no one is going to persuade me of it.
Nunca recibí dinero de él ni pensé nunca en solicitárselo.	I never received any money from him, nor did I ever think of asking him for any.
Muchas personas me califican de escéptico, y dicen que no creo en nada ni que en nada espero.	Many persons call me a sceptic, and say that I believe in nothing and hope for nothing.

749. After **ni** the negatives **nadie, ninguno, nada** must be used, and not **alguien, alguno, algo**:—

No tengo vino ni quiero comprar ninguno.	I have no wine and do not wish to buy any.
Ni lo creo, ni me lo persuadirá nadie.	I do not believe it, nor will anyone persuade me to.
No encontraron en aquella vasta sábana de nieve ni leña, ni yerbas, ni musgo ni nada combustible.	They did not find in that vast expanse of snow any wood, or grass, or moss or anything combustible.

750. When repeated, **ni** has the meaning of *neither . . . nor* (or *not . . . either . . . or*); in this usage it requires the additional negative **no** when the phrase follows the verb, but not when preceding it:—

No tengo ni tabacos ni pitillos. Ni tabacos ni pitillos tengo.	I have neither cigars nor cigarettes.

Mi Capitán, no he encontrado vestigios de él ni á la ida ni á la vuelta.
Ni el salvaje, ni el ave ni la fiera habitaban por entonces aquellas regiones de muerte.

Captain, I have not found any traces of him either going or coming.
Neither savage, nor bird nor wild beast then inhabited those regions of death.

751. **Ni** takes the place of **ó**, *or*, after all negatives or clauses embodying a negative or restrictive meaning:—

Los árboles formaban una cúpula impenetrable de muchas millas cuadradas de superficie, sin un claro **ni** una hendedura.
Es difícil formarse una idea cabal de la enfermedad **ni** acertar con su curación.
Será imposible atender á tantas cosas á un tiempo, **ni** dar las órdenes oportunas.
Apenas podía respirar **ni** moverse.
El buque seguía aquellas vueltas y recodos sin vacilar **ni** equivocarse nunca.
¿Quién será capaz de describir el encanto de este lugar pacífico; qué artista sabrá reproducir esos mátices de luz, **ni** qué músico apuntar las notas del murmullo de las aguas cristalinas?

The trees formed an impenetrable dome many square miles in extent, without a clearing or a break.
It is difficult to form a correct idea of the disease or to devise a cure for it.
It will be impossible to attend to so many things at once, or to give the proper orders.
He could scarcely breathe or move.
The vessel followed those turns and bends without hesitating or mistaking ever.
Who is able to describe the charm of this peaceful spot, what artist can reproduce those gradations of light, and what musician can write the notes of the murmur of the crystalline waters?

752. **Ni** is placed before a noun which we cite as evidence to a negation; it then corresponds to the English *not . . . even*:—

No podría arrancarlo de sus manos **ni** el mismo Hércules.
La atmósfera estaba serena y tranquila; **ni** la más tenue nube se descubría por ningun lado.
No lo dudaban **ni** por un momento.
Observaba aquel espectáculo sin pronunciar **ni** una sola palabra.

Not even Hercules himself could wrest it from his hands.
The air was clear and motionless; not even the faintest cloud was to be seen anywhere.
They did not doubt it even for a moment.
He contemplated that spectacle without uttering a single word.

753. **Ni** may in this meaning be strengthened by **siquiera**, *even*, provided the two are placed immediately together:—

Lejos de dar toda la latitud debida á la defensa, ni siquiera dejó hablar al abogado.

So far from giving all necessary scope to the defense, he did not even allow the counsel to speak.

754. But if anything is interpolated between **siquiera** and the negative, the latter is **no** and not **ni**:—

No dejó hablar siquiera al abogado. — He did not allow even the counsel to speak.

REMARK.—Notice that in the first arrangement it is **hablar** that is restricted by **siquiera**; in the second, it is **abogado**.

755. When a series of negative clauses or words are to be expressed, it is usual to employ **no** with the first one and **ni** with the rest when a verb follows the first negation; when a series of nouns or adjectives are to be negatived, it is preferable to place **ni** before each:—

Sus investigaciones más minuciosas **no** revelaron **ni** el menor vestigio de campamento, **ni** cenizas de hoguera apagada **ni** huella de pie humano. — Their minutest investigations did not reveal the least trace of an encampment, nor the ashes of a burnt-out fire nor the print of a human foot.

Ni la templanza y benignidad del clima, **ni** la excelencia y fertilidad del suelo, **ni** su ventajosa posición para el comercio marítimo eran poderosas á superar los obstáculos que oponía á sus progresos la política coartatoria de los Ingleses. — Neither the temperateness and mildness of the climate, nor the excellence and fertility of the soil nor its advantageous location for maritime commerce were sufficient to overcome the obstacles which the restrictive policy of the English opposed to its progress.

756. However, **no** may be repeated before a series of nouns under similar circumstances:—

No la sed de la gloria, **no** una ambición noble, **no** el deseo de hacer feliz á la Gran Bretaña les empujaron á esta guerra, sino el deseo de borrar del mapa á un pueblo que había proclamado morir ó mantener su independencia. — Not the thirst for glory, nor a noble ambition, nor the desire to make Great Britain prosperous incited them to this war, but the desire to wipe from the map a people who had proclaimed their intention to die or maintain their independence.

757. **Sino,** retaining its primary value,—**si no,** *if not*,—is used in presenting an alternative in questions beginning with an interrogative pronoun or adverb and expecting a negative answer:—

Pues ¿cuándo debremos dar el golpe sino ahora? — Then when shall we strike the blow if not now?

¿Á quién he de acudir sino á mi propio hermano?	To whom am I to turn if not to my own brother?
¿Quién tiene el deber de velar sobre la moral pública, sino es la iglesia?	Whose duty is it to watch over the public morals if not that of the Church?

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

I shall never forget your kindness. She is now more beautiful than ever. The passage of the mountains *presented* no difficulty at (*en*) that season of the year. He was learned, but not pedantic; dignified, but not stiff or unapproachable. I do not believe anything that that fellow says. He did not tell it to me, but to a newspaper reporter. I never saw so many crows in my life; where do they all come from? The *general* was a man who never forgot a *favor* or a wrong. The issue of the contest was not for a *moment* doubtful. That man never does what he promises. It has not been for nothing that (*cuando*) he has undertaken a journey of three hundred miles. It is useless to search; we shall find nothing of value here. An *occasional* ambuscade was not an uncommon thing. No one expected a resistance either so long or so obstinate. The sailor also did not discover any leak. I wish to learn (*saber*) all the details before doing anything. What I have done is a mere nothing. Have you ever seen anything so beautiful? Did you ever see [a] rogue so grateful? Although the night was very cold, he wore neither gloves nor overcoat. I have endeavored to *present* the facts as I have found them, without adding, omitting or distorting anything. That (*esta*) strange plant has neither stalk, nor leaf, nor flower. They saw only shells and sea-weed. We did not lose even a single word of his speech. Not only have I not yet read the book, but I have not had time even to (*de*) cut the pages.

CHAPTER XII.

COMPOUND TENSES. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD. ORDER OF WORDS.

758. Besides the simple tenses—present, imperfect, aorist and future, already discussed—grammarians, out of deference to their Latin models, have usually reckoned an equal number of *compound* tenses. These are formed in Spanish by adding an invariable past participle to the various forms of the verb **haber**, *to have*. In such a position **haber** is called an auxiliary or helping verb, and retains no idea of possession. It is varied like any other verb to express mood, tense, person and number.

REMARK.—So far, then, as grammatical construction goes, **haber** is the principal verb in these compound tenses; and it is getting to be so considered by the most eminent philologists. It is only necessary to learn once for all the inflections of **haber** in order to dispense with the repetition of numerous diagrams of compound tenses which needlessly occupy the pages of grammars.

759. The Spanish verb has 7 moods, 2 of which have 4 tenses each; the others exhibiting no distinctions of tense. These 13 heads, with their various distinctions for person, number and gender, include all the inflectional forms of the Spanish conjugation:—

SCHEME OF INFLECTION OF VERBS.

MOOD.	NO. OF TENSES.	DESIGNATION.	NATURE OF SECONDARY INFLECTION.	NO. OF FORMS.
Indicative.	4	Present.	Person and Number.	6
		Imperfect.	" "	6
		Aorist.	" "	6
		Future.	" "	6
Subjunctive.	4	Present.	" "	6
		Imperfect.	" "	6
		Aorist.	" "	6
		Future.	" "	6
Conditional.	1	Future.	" "	6
Imperative.	1	——	2nd person, sing. and plur.	2
Infinitive.	1	——	Invariable.	1
P. Participle.[1]	1	——	Gender and Number.	4
Gerund.[1]	1	——	Invariable.	1
				62

Thus the maximum number of forms of a Spanish verb is 62; but as many of them are identical, and are only distinguished grammatically, the actual number is considerably less. One of the principal Spanish grammars has, by combinations with **haber**, by counting **usted** as a separate number, and by other repetitions, made the number of forms mount up to 179.

It remains now only to discuss the application of the several forms of **haber** to a past participle, and the subject may then be dismissed.

760. The present of **haber** with a past participle constitutes what is generally known as the PERFECT tense, which, as we have

[1] Although the past participle and gerund are not usually called moods, yet they differ from the other moods in the same manner as these moods do from each other.

seen at § 202, represents a past action occurring at an unspecified time or at one in some way connected with the present:—

Hasta ahora no ha contestado á nuestra petición.
Thus far he has not answered our request.

En cambio de la sangre que he derramado ¿que me han hecho el rey y la patria? ¡Nada!
What have the king and the country done for me in payment for the blood I have lost? Nothing!

761. The imperfect of **haber** with a past participle forms what is usually called the PLUPERFECT tense. The pluperfect represents an action or event as not only past but prior to another event also past; this latter is expressed by the aorist or imperfect but not by the perfect. The usage is thus the same in both languages:—

Todo esto me lo dijo no creyendo que yo mismo había presenciado lo que había pasado en la huerta.
She told me all this not knowing that I had witnessed what had happened in the orchard.

Llegó á mi noticia que el rey habia nombrado ya un almirante.
I learned that the king had already appointed an admiral.

Abrieron, no sin trabajo, camino entre aquella espesura y aquellas malezas que jamás habían sido apartadas por mano de hombre.
They opened for themselves, not without labor, a road through that thicket and that undergrowth which had never been separated by human hand.

Dí al cochero las señas de una casa de huéspedes que mi tío me había recomendado.
I gave the driver the address of a boarding-house that my uncle had recommended to me.

762. The aorist of **haber** with a past participle forms the AORIST PLUPERFECT. This tense expresses what took place *immediately* before another event which is also past, this latter being expressed by the aorist and never by the imperfect, as the aorist pluperfect never denotes anything continuous or customary. It is always preceded by some one of the following conjunctions of time:—

apenas, hardly, scarcely.
cuando, when.
después que, **luego que**, } after.
no bien, no sooner.

en cuanto, **así que**, **tan pronto como**, } as soon as.
al punto que, **al momento que**, } as soon as.

En cuanto hube acabado mi obra, se la llevé.
As soon as I had finished my work, I took it to him.

Así que hubo salido al balcón el presidente, la turba se calló.

As soon as the president had stepped out on the balcony, the crowd became silent.

Luego que los convidados hubieron tomado sus puestos, empezó el banquete.

After the guests had taken their places, the banquet began.

Cuando la madre hubo concluído su relación, ó al menos cuando yo creí que la había concluido, tomé la palabra.

When the mother had concluded her narration, or at least when I thought she had concluded, I took the floor.

Después que hubieron discutido un rato, el catedrático intervino sonriendo con superioridad.

After they had argued awhile, the professor interposed, smiling with superiority.

Apenas hubo pronunciado estas palabras cuando un gran golpe de agua cayó encima del puente.

He had scarcely uttered these words when a large volume of water fell upon the deck.

763. When a customary occurrence is to be expressed after these conjunctions, the compound of the imperfect takes the place of that of the aorist:—

En cuanto había acabado una página, yo se la llevaba.

As soon as I had finished a page, I used to take it to him.

No bien habíamos matado á un antílope ó cualquier caza mayor que los buitres aparecían cerniéndose en el aire.

We had no sooner shot an antelope or any large game than the vultures appeared hovering in the air.

Apenas se había levantado algún miembro del partido nacional para tomar la palabra, cuando la oposición ahogaba su voz tosiendo, silbando, pateando y voceando.

Scarcely had any member of the Government party risen to take the floor, when the Opposition drowned his voice by coughing, whistling, stamping and shouting.

764. The aorist pluperfect is little used, not only because it only appears after an adverb of time, but because its place may even then be taken by the simple aorist:—

No bien me vió que me conoció.

No sooner did he see me than he knew me.

En cuanto empezó á hablar le perdí el respeto que le había tenido.

As soon as he commenced to speak I lost the respect which I had had for him.

Luego que el tumulto cesó completamente, Pizarro congregó á todos los reclutas sobre cubierta.

When the uproar had ceased completely, Pizarro assembled all the recruits on deck.

765. The combination of the future of **haber** with a past participle is called FUTURE PERFECT. This expresses an event

or action which *will be* past before some future event or action takes place:—

Los plomeros habrán terminado su trabajo para las seis.
The plumbers will have finished their work by six o'clock.

Según las indicaciones actuales habrá desaparecido cada vestigio de la institución antes de la mitad del siglo venidero.
According to the present indications, every vestige of the institution will have disappeared before the middle of the next century.

☞ Four corresponding compound tenses are formed from the four tenses of the subjunctive mood; these will be treated of when that mood is discussed.

766. The infinitive and gerund of **haber**, in combination with a past participle, form a PERFECT INFINITIVE and GERUND not differing in usage from the simple forms:—

No recuerdo haber visto nada semejante á lo que V. describe.
I do not recollect having seen anything similar to what you describe.

Leibnitz dice que más vale haber aprendido las matemáticas y haberlas olvidado que nunca haberlas aprendido, pues su estudio habrá efectuado en la mente un cambio que no se borrará jamás.
Leibnitz says that it is better to have learned mathematics and forgotten it than never to have learned it at all, for the study of it will have wrought a change in the mind which will never be effaced.

Habiéndole causado estas heridas, como era natural, un copioso derrame de sangre, pronto sintió que la tierra huía bajo sus pies, se le anubló la vista, y vino al suelo abrumado por el peso de la armadura.
These wounds having caused him, as was natural, a profuse loss of blood, he soon felt that the ground was sinking beneath his feet, his sight became dim, and he fell to the ground borne down by the weight of his armor.

THE IMPERATIVE.

767. The IMPERATIVE in Spanish is limited to the second person, and is employed only in direct, positive commands. It has only two forms, a singular and a plural.

768. The singular form is identical with the third person singular of the indicative present, whether that be regular or not; the plural form is obtained by changing the final **r** of the infinitive to **d**, and is therefore always regular:—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
Dar, *to give.*	**Da.**	**Dad.**	*Give.*
Copiar, *to copy.*	**Copia.**	**Copiad.**	*Copy.*
Correr, *to run.*	**Corre.**	**Corred.**	*Run.*
Leer, *to read.*	**Lee.**	**Leed.**	*Read.*
Abrir, *to open.*	**Abre.**	**Abrid.**	*Open.*

769. Eight verbs make the second person singular of the imperative in abbreviated forms, the plural being regular:—

		SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Valer,	*to be worth.*	**Val**	*and* **vale.**	Valed.	*Be worth.*
Salir,	*to go out.*	**Sal**	(*for* sale).	Salid.	*Go out.*
Venir,	*to come.*	**Ven**	(*for* viene).	Venid.	*Come.*
Tener,	*to have.*	**Ten**	(*for* tiene).	Tened.	*Have.*
Poner,	*to put.*	**Pon**	(*for* pone).	Poned.	*Put.*
Hacer,	*to do, make.*	**Haz**	(*for* hace).	Haced.	*Do, make.*
Decir,	*to say, tell.*	**Dí**	(*for* dice).	Decid.	*Say, tell.*
Ir,	*to go.*	**Ve**	(*for* va).	Id.	*Go.*

770. As the Spanish imperative relates only to the second person, it is only applicable in the rare cases where that mode of address is used, and may therefore be disregarded by the foreigner.

REMARK.—In polite language where **usted** is used, and in all negative commands, the imperative is replaced by the subjunctive, as will be explained when that mood is treated of. The substitutes for imperatives of the first and third persons are also subjunctives.

771. In cases where it is applicable, the use of the imperative in Spanish is the same as in English:—

Juan, abre la puerta.	John, open the door.
Toma lo que quieres.	Take what you want.
Da una silla á esta señora.	Give this lady a chair.
Niño, ven acá.	Boy, come here.

772. When the pronoun subject of the imperative is expressed, it usually follows, although in conversational style it may occasionally precede, the imperative:—

Págame tú lo que me debes.	Pay me what you owe me.
Desechad vosotros el miedo.	Dismiss all fear.
Tú déjamelo gobernar.	Let me manage it.

773. A COMPOUND IMPERATIVE, made by associating the imperative of **haber** with a past participle, is met with, though it is of rare occurrence. This applies only to the plural:—

Habed aderezado la comida para cuando yo vuelva.	Have the dinner prepared by the time I return.

774. When the imperative of **tener** is substituted for that of **haber** there is both a singular and a plural form:—

Tenme preparado el desayuno.	Have breakfast ready for me.
Tenedme barrida la alcoba.	Have the alcove swept out.

ORDER OF WORDS.

775. In English the meaning depends so much on the order of words, that we have but little choice as to their arrangement, but in languages derived from Latin there is much greater freedom of movement. In Spanish words are selected and put together with more reference to harmony of sound or rhetorical effect, while the meaning is not generally affected by a change in the order of words; so long as obscurity does not result, they may be placed in almost any order. The following transpositions may serve as an example:—

Halley ocupaba en Inglaterra el primer puesto entre los astrónomos y físicos.	Halley occupied the first place in England among astronomers and physicists.
Ocupaba Halley en Inglaterra el primer puesto entre los astrónomos y físicos.	
En Inglaterra ocupaba Halley el primer puesto entre los astrónomos y físicos.	
Entre los astrónomos y físicos ocupaba Halley el primer puesto en Inglaterra.	

776. The direct and indirect objects may generally assume any location:—

Estos puentes tenían los indígenas antes de la llegada de los españoles.	The natives had these bridges before the advent of the Spaniards.
Tenían los indígenas estos puentes antes de la llegada de los españoles.	
Los indígenas tenían estos puentes antes de la llegada de los españoles.	
Antes de la llegada de los españoles tenían los indígenas estos puentes.	
Á todos nos causó mal efecto aquella escena.	That scene produced a bad effect on all of us.
Nos causó á todos mal efecto aquella escena.	
Mal efecto nos causó á todos aquella escena.	
Aquella escena nos causó á todos mal efecto.	
Aquella escena nos causó mal efecto á todos.	

REMARK.—In the natural arrangement the noun precedes its adjective; the verb precedes the adverb which modifies it; the subject precedes the verb; the governing word precedes the one governed; the object follows the verb, and the adverb, if there be one; but an objective personal pronoun precedes its governing verb, unless attached to it as an enclitic.

In the ornate construction, the order depends largely upon the sound of words, the expression of emphasis, and the desire to avoid monotony of arrangement. In every sentence there are two places of honor—the front and the rear—where words of great dignity are placed; the common herd of vocables are crowded in between. Prominence is given to a word by placing it at the beginning or at the end. A word that is usually last is made conspicuous by placing it first, and for the same reason the first may be put last—in general any change from the natural order attracts attention.

777. The natural order of words is seldom conformed to by elegant writers except in the simplest sentences. In the more complex forms of speech, where the verb has several objects and there are many dependent clauses, a more inverted style is preferred:—

La iglesia acudió con el remedio.	The Church came forward with the remedy.
Contra este gentílico contagio acudió presurosa la iglesia con el remedio.	The Church came promptly forward with the remedy for this pagan corruption.
Los árabes adoptaron un sistema distinto.	The Arabs adopted a different system.
Muy distinto sistema que los godos adoptaron los árabes para hacerse dueños de la península española.	The Arabs adopted a very different system from the Goths to make themselves masters of the Spanish peninsula.

REMARK.—In this excessive freedom of arrangement, care should be taken that perspicuity is not sacrificed for rhetorical effect. Words belonging together should not be too widely separated; as the noun from its adjective, the relative from its antecedent, the verb from its subject and object, etc. And words forming a phrase, or a composite idea, should not be separated or reversed; as, for instance, the compound tenses of verbs, nouns connected by a preposition, etc.

778. A sentence, therefore, may be separated into sections according to meaning, and the order of the sections changed according to taste; but each section should remain unchanged:—

El‿cielo | se‿presentaba | por‿todos‿lados | á‿nuestra‿mirada | como‿un‿océano‿de‿llamas.	The sky on all sides appeared to our gaze like an ocean of flames.

Tres‿grandes‿faltas‿políticas | cometieron | los‿árabes | al‿llegar‿á‿nuestro‿suelo.	The Arabs, on arriving in our territory, committed three grave political errors.

779. An English sentence may be likened to an algebraic equation, the verb representing the sign of equality, and something must be on each side of the verb; when the entire sentence is placed after the verb, the word *there* precedes it. This principle does not apply in Spanish:—

Apareció á lo lejos una pequeña nube de polvo.	*There* appeared in the distance a small cloud of dust.
Vivía en esta aldea un orífice que tenía tres hijas muy lindas.	*There* lived in this hamlet a goldsmith who had three beautiful daughters.

LOCATION OF ADJECTIVES.

780. An adjective placed before a noun loses much of its force; its quality is applied as if it were a matter of course. On the other hand, when placed after the noun it specifies and indicates a particular kind of the thing represented by the noun. The former order, therefore, savors of a poetic style, where it is customary to use a number of adjectives merely to add coloring. When the adjective precedes, the noun is the principal word; when it follows it assumes the chief importance. In English this result is attained by the stress of voice called emphasis:—

Los vivos colores.	The bright colors.
Los colores vivos.	The *bright* colors.
Las olorosas flores.	The fragrant flowers.
Las flores olorosas.	The *fragrant* flowers.
Desnudas peñas.	Barren rocks.
Peñas desnudas.	*Barren* rocks.
La blanca azucena.	The white water-lily.
La azucena blanca.	The *white* water-lily.

781. The following examples will serve further to show the lack of force of an adjective placed before a noun:—

La inconstante luna; su herviente humor; lóbrega noche; el hondo abismo; cano invierno; la tímida liebre; fresca sombra; el ronco trueno; vastas é incultas selvas.	The inconstant moon; his bubbling humor; sombre night; the deep abyss; hoary winter; the timid hare; cool shade; the hoarse thunder; vast and unbroken wilds.
Apenas había el rubicundo Apolo tendido por la faz de la ancha y espaciosa tierra las doradas he-	Scarcely had ruddy Apollo spread over the face of the wide and spacious earth the golden strands of his hair;

bras de sus hermosos cabellos ; y apenas los pequeños y pintados pajarillos con sus arpadas lenguas habían saludado con dulce y meliflua armonía la venida de la rosada aurora, cuando el famoso caballero don Quijote de la Mancha, dejando las ociosas plumas, subió sobre su famoso caballo Rocinante, y comenzó á caminar por el antiguo y conocido campo de Montiel. CERVANTES.

and scarcely had the little bright-feathered songsters with their harp-like tongues greeted with sweet and mellifluous harmony the coming of rosy Dawn, when the famous knight Don Quixote de la Mancha, leaving his downy couch, mounted his famous horse Rozinante, and commenced a journey across the ancient and well-known country of Montiel.

REMARK.—Unless justified by the foregoing reasons, the adjective ordinarily follows the noun. Very lengthy adjectives and past participles rarely precede, except in burlesque. But adjective pronouns, since they do not specify quality but identity, properly precede the noun.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

Six weeks had elapsed since the departure of *Almagro*, and the whole spring had passed, and with it had disappeared the diseases of that season. They had scarcely advanced a league when a *furious* snow-storm overtook them. It was the same thing that the sentry had seen in the darkness. The old soldiers had *abandoned* the island without regret, and without even saying adieu to their old commander, from whom they no longer expected anything and whom they regarded as a fool. The opponents of the protective system asserted that this industry had reached such a degree of development that further support was unnecessary. To have lived fifty years in this world and to have learned nothing and done nothing useful is highly disgraceful. Whenever I had found a *curious* shell or beetle during the day, I carried it to the *professor* in the evening. Scarcely had I entered the cave and advanced a few yards when the drops of water falling from the damp roof extinguished my torch and left me in total darkness.[1] At last we have caught the rat that has been disturbing us so much by (*con*) his nocturnal *excursions*. The explorers having arrived at the bend which the river *formed*, made a halt to eat supper and pass the night. No sooner had he uttered those words than (*cuando*) I struck him[2] in the face. When the sun reached the *meridian*, it discharged a gun by means of a burning-glass. Before to-morrow they will have forgotten more than half of what you have said. Having now studied Spanish with untiring zeal for three years, I hope to begin to read short, easy stories within a few months. To have listened to his lectures, replete with wisdom and sparkling with *humor*, has been one of the greatest *privileges* of my life.

---

[1] en una oscuridad completa.

[2] le pegué un puñetazo.

CHAPTER XIII.

CLASSES OF VERBS.

782. Verbs have, for convenience of treatment, been divided into several classes, with reference to the manner in which their action is represented. These classes are:—

1. Transitive, or Active.
2. Reflexive and Reciprocal.
3. Intransitive, or Neuter.
4. Impersonal.
5. Inceptive, Inchoative, or Continuative.
6. Periphrastic Verbal Expressions.

These classes will now be taken up in order and their definitions and applications considered.

TRANSITIVE VERBS.

783. A transitive verb is one that has a subject and an object—an actor who (or which) acts directly upon some person or thing. This object must be expressed, or the verb ceases to be transitive. Most verbs, either in English or Spanish, belong to this class; and the student is already familiar with their characteristics:—

El tábano pica al caballo.	The horsefly bites the horse.
No quiero plegar el papel.	I do not want to fold the paper.
Apagaron su sed con agua.	They quenched their thirst with water.

REFLEXIVE VERBS.

784. A transitive verb is called *reflexive* when its action returns upon the actor—when its subject and object are identical. Whatever the form of the subject and whether expressed or not, the object is always a pronoun, always expressed, and always agrees in person with the subject and verb. It also agrees with them in number, with this proviso, that the reflexive pronoun of the third person, **se**, is without distinction of number.

785. The usual position of the pronominal object is immediately before the verb, and before the auxiliary in compound

tenses—in short, immediately before the finite verb. The following paradigm will serve for all tenses and combinations:—

yo	me disfrazo,	yo	me he disfrazado,
tú	te disfrazas,	tú	te has disfrazado,
él ella usted	se disfraza,	él ella usted	se ha disfrazado,
nosotros nosotras	nos disfrazamos,	nosotros nosotras	nos hemos disfrazado,
vosotros vosotras	os disfrazáis,	vosotros vosotras	os habéis disfrazado,
ellos ellas ustedes	se disfrazan.	ellos ellas ustedes	se han disfrazado.

786. When the subject is a pronoun, it is usually omitted unless required for emphasis or contrast. When expressed, it either precedes or follows the entire verbal and pronominal phrase. In interrogations it is more frequently placed last:—

Ella se presenta. Se presenta ella.	She presents herself.
Nosotros no nos degradaremos. No nos degradaremos nosotros.	We will not degrade ourselves.
Aunque ellos se habían disfrazado. Aunque se habían disfrazado ellos.	Although they had disguised themselves.
¿Se ha cortado V.?	Have you cut yourself?

787. The reflexive object is regularly attached to the infinitive or the gerund, forming one word with it; if the subject pronoun be then expressed, it is usually placed after these forms:—

Disfrazándome pasaré desapercibido.	By disguising myself I shall pass unobserved.
Quiere disfrazarse.	He wishes to disguise himself.
Habiéndose disfrazado él.	He having disguised himself.
Habiéndome disfrazado yo.	I having disguised myself.
No habiéndose disfrazado ellas.	They not having disguised themselves.
No disfrazarme yo.	For me not to disguise myself.
Haberse disfrazado él.	For him to have disguised himself.
No haberse disfrazado usted.	For you not to have disguised yourself.
Creyéndose fuera del alcance de sus tiros, se expuso temerariamente por encima del parapeto.	Believing himself out of reach of their shots, he exposed himself rashly above the parapet.

788. The reflexive object is in like manner appended to the imperative, and to the subjunctive used imperatively, provided the verb be not negatived. In doing this two elisions take place: 1. the second person plural of the imperative loses the final **d**; 2. the first person plural of the subjunctive loses the final **s**:—

consolaos, *for* consola*d*os ;	**consolémonos**, *for* consolémo*s*nos.
defendeos, " defende*d*os ;	**defendámonos**, " defendámo*s*nos.
cubríos, " cubri*d*os ;	**cubrámonos**, " cubrámo*s*nos.

EXCEPTION.—The imperative of **irse** (**ir-se**) retains the **d** : **idos**, *go away*.

789. In literary or elevated style, the reflexive object may be appended to the verb in the simple tenses, and to the auxiliary in compound tenses, provided the verb stands at the beginning of the phrase. If the subject be then expressed, it follows the entire verbal expression[1]:—

Entregóse en manos de nuestros piquetes.	He gave himself into the hands of our pickets.
Heme equivocado yo sin duda.	I have doubtless made a mistake.
Viéronse forzados á pernoctar allí.	They saw themselves forced to pass the night there.
Habíanse provisto los rebeldes de varios cañones de campaña.	The rebels had provided themselves with several field-pieces.

790. The location, with regard to the verb, of two or more pronominal objects of the same verb is the same as for a single pronoun, they being placed in immediate sequence, and if one be appended to the verb, all are:—

Procurándoselo.	Procuring it for himself.
Después de habérselo procurado.	After having procured it for himself.
Échamelo (*imperative*).	Toss it to me.
No me lo eches de ese modo.	Do not toss it to me that way.

791. What one does to another he may do to himself; and so any transitive verb may be used reflexively if its meaning permit:—

Le culpo ; se culpa.	I blame him ; he blames himself.
La miré ; se miró en el espejo.	I looked at her ; she looked at herself in the mirror.
Me defenderá ; me defenderé.	He will defend me ; I will defend myself.
Nos lisonjean ; nos lisonjeamos.	They flatter us ; we flatter ourselves.

[1] The conditions under which this location is applicable are set forth at length in Chapter XXVII.

792. When the verb is one that usually takes as its objects the dative of a person and the accusative of a thing, the pronominal or reflexive object is dative:—

No se permite diversión alguna.	He does not allow himself any recreation.
Se apropió el único asiento cómodo.	He appropriated to himself the only comfortable seat.
Me he comprado un bastón nuevo.	I have bought myself a new stick.
Nos hemos encontrado una casa de huéspedes.	We have found ourselves a boarding-house.

REMARK.—Unfortunately there is no distinction of form between a dative and an accusative reflexive object.

793. This use of the dative reflexive is extended further in Spanish than in English, imparting a slight degree of energy to the expression which can seldom be rendered into the latter language:—

Se reclama el primer puesto.	He claims the first place.
Me propongo hacer un viaje á las Islas de Barlovento.	I propose to take a trip to the Windward Islands.
Se arrogó el mando.	He usurped the command.
Se pidió un vaso de agua.	He asked a glass of water for himself.
Se guardó la carta.	He kept the letter.
Me lo bebí.	I drank it up.
Me hallé un peso en la calle.	I found a dollar in the street.
Tú te lo sabes todo.	Oh you think you know everything!
Me tomé la libertad de entrar.	I took the liberty of entering.
Los tiburones se tragan á los hombres.	Sharks swallow men.

REMARK.—There is occasionally a chance for confusion between **se** as reflexive dative, and **se** as a substitute for the objective third person, before another objective pronoun of the third person:—

Á Enriqueta se le cayó el pañuelo, y un oficial que iba tras ella, lo recogió y **se lo llevó**.	Henrietta dropped her handkerchief, and an officer who was walking behind her picked it up and carried it off (*or* carried it to her).

NOTE.—The meaning would be made clear by saying **se lo llevó consigo**, or **se lo llevó á ella**, according to which were intended.

794. Many verbs in Spanish are essentially reflexive, and have no meaning without the reflexive pronoun:—

Abstenerse de, to abstain from.	**Dignarse**, to deign to.
Airarse, to fly into a passion.	**Jactarse**, to boast, vaunt.

Arrepentirse de, to repent of. **Quejarse de**, to complain of.
Atreverse á, to dare to. **Ausentarse**, to absent one's self.

REMARK.—In English only two verbs, *betake* and *bethink*, are essentially reflexive; in all other cases the reflexive verbs are merely employed reflexively in a particular meaning.

RECIPROCAL VERBS.

795. If of several actors each acts on another, the verb is called reciprocal. It does not differ in form from the reflexive use, although necessarily the verb is always plural; consequently, when not specified, the expression is susceptible of two renderings (if the meaning permit):—

Se engañan.	They deceive themselves. They deceive one another.
Se felicitaban.	They were congratulating themselves. They were congratulating each other.
Se mostraron por encima de las murallas (*reflex.*).	They showed themselves over the ramparts.
Se mostraban sus condecoraciones (*recip.*).	They were showing each other their decorations.
Se vieron pero no se hablaron.	They saw each other but did not speak to each other.
Los lobos se (*dative*) disputaban los trozos del rengífero.	The wolves were wrangling with one another over the pieces of the reindeer.
Nos quedamos inmóviles y confusos, mirándonos con estupor.	We stood motionless and confused, looking at one another stupidly.
Ellas se parecen como dos gotas de agua.	They resemble each other like two drops of water.
Nosotras no nos parecemos en nada.	We do not resemble each other at all.

796. When, for emphasis or to prevent ambiguity, it is desired to show unmistakably that the action of each of several actors falls upon himself, the pronoun is repeated in the prepositional form strengthened by the appropriate form of **mismo** or **propio**. This may be done solely for emphasis in the case of a singular verb:—

Los bribones se engañaron á sí mismos.	The rogues deceived themselves.
Se burlan de sí mismos.	They make fun of themselves.
El día vendrá en que nos llamaremos borricos á nosotros mismos por no haberlo aprovechado.	The day will come when we will call ourselves asses for not having taken advantage of it.

REMARK.—**Mismo** is sometimes associated with the *subject* of a reflexive verb.

Se educó él mismo.	He educated himself.
Ordinariamente me afeito yo mismo.	Ordinarily I shave myself.

797. When it is desired to show beyond question that the action is mutual among several actors, accuracy is secured by the use of the appropriate forms of **uno . . . otro**, equivalent to the English *each other*:—

Los bribones se engañaron el uno al otro.	The rogues deceived each other.
Los aeronautas, ayudándose unos á otros, lograron desprenderse de las mallas de la red.	The aeronauts, assisting each other, succeeded in freeing themselves from the meshes of the net.

REMARK.—The same effect may be produced by the adverbs **mutuamente** or **recíprocamente**:—

Se detestan mutuamente.	They detest each other.
Debemos ayudarnos recíprocamente.	We must help each other.

798. With regard to the inflection of **uno** and **otro**, the following distinctions are to be observed:—

1.	With two males	**uno . . . otro.**
2.	With two females	**una . . . otra.**
3.	With one male and one female . . .	**uno . . . otra.**
4.	With two or more males	**unos . . . otros.**
5.	With two or more females	**unas . . . otras.**
6.	A group of males only, contrasted with one composed entirely of females . .	**unos . . . otras.**
7.	With any other mixed companies there is no distinction of gender	**unos . . . otros.**

EXAMPLES.

En el minué los caballeros y las señoras se hacen frente los unos á las otras.	In the minuet the ladies and gentlemen face one another.
Se querían entrañablemente y se escribían muchas cartas la una á la otra.	They loved each other fondly and wrote many letters to each other.
Se aborrecen uno á otra.	They hate each other.

REMARK.—Where the objects are of both sexes, the distinction of feminine is generally disregarded in colloquial style.

799. Uno may be thus contrasted with **otro** when the verb has not the reciprocal form, the reciprocal effect being imparted by means of a preposition governing **otro**:—

Los bailadores avanzan los unos hacia las otras.	The dancers advance towards one another.
Los novios parecen haber nacido el uno para la otra.	The lovers appear to have been born for each other.
Estas dos jóvenes son muy íntimas; no puede vivir la una sin la otra.	These two young girls are very intimate; they cannot live without each other.
Disputaban unos con otros.	They disputed with each other.
El padre Íñigo y el joven caminaban uno junto á otro sin hablar.	Father Ignatius and the young man walked along beside each other without speaking.
Será preciso no alejarnos unos de otros.	We must not separate from one another.
Estas dos cordilleras corren casi paralelamente una á otra.	These two mountain chains run almost parallel to each other.

INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

800. An intransitive verb is one whose action is complete in itself; it has a subject, but no object:—

El sol brilla; la yerba crece.	The sun shines; the grass grows.
El caballo relincha; el burro cojea.	The horse neighs; the donkey limps.
El criado no titubeó.	The servant did not hesitate.
Los niños están nadando.	The boys are swimming.

801. The action of an intransitive verb may, in both languages, be further extended by means of adverbial expressions of manner, time or place, but this does not amount to supplying it with an object:—

Los niños nadan en el lago.	The boys swim in the lake.
Quieren salir de la casa.	They want to go out of the house.
El sol brilla sobre la tierra.	The sun shines on the earth.

802. This class is in Spanish relatively—indeed inconveniently—small. Moreover, in English most verbs may be used either transitively or intransitively; but in Spanish they rarely oscillate from the one class to the other:—

Thus in English we may say *the horses trot*, and also that *the driver trots the horses*; in Spanish, **trotar** is intransitive only, and could apply in the first meaning but not in the second. Conversely, we may say in English that *the man opens the door*, and also that *the door opens easily*; but in Spanish **abrir** is purely transitive, and could be used only in the first value. A Spaniard could by no stretch of imagination suppose that the door could, of its own action, *open* anything.

803. In Spanish a few transitive verbs such as the following, whose objects are not very essential to the meaning, may be used intransitively:—

Ella va á cantar una copla.	She is going to sing a couplet.
Ella va á cantar.	She is going to sing.
Ví que escribía una carta.	I saw he was writing a letter.
Ví que escribía.	I saw he was writing.
El niño quiere beber agua.	The child wants to drink water.
El niño quiere beber.	The child wants to drink.
Este camino nos conducirá al castillo.	This road will take us to the castle.
Este caminó conduce al castillo.	This road leads to the castle.

804. Certain intransitive verbs may take an object expressing in substantive form the action, or a variety of the action, signified by the verb itself. This is called a *cognate* object, i.e. one allied or related in meaning to the verb:—

Vive una **vida** miserable.	He lives a miserable life.
Murió una **muerte** horrible.	He died a horrible death.
"Yo he **peleado** buena **batalla**, he acabado mi carrera, he guardado la fe."	"I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith."
Llorar lágrimas de gozo.	To weep tears of joy.
Dormir un **sueño** profundo.	To sleep a deep sleep.

☞ Otherwise verbs can seldom be used interchangeably as transitive or intransitive; resort must be had to either one of the expedients given below, or else a different verb must be chosen.

805. A transitive sense may be imparted to an intransitive verb by placing a verb of causing before its infinitive:—

Al chocar el proyectil contra un obstáculo, la varilla por razón de la inercia es llevada hacia adelante hasta caer sobre el fulminante, el cual se enciende, y comunicando una chispa **á la carga**, **hace estallar** la granada.	When the projectile strikes an obstacle, the plunger is by reason of its inertia thrown forward upon the fulminate, which ignites, and communicating a spark to the charge, *bursts* the shell.
Dejó caer el libro.	He *dropped* the book.
El centinela le **hizo parar.**	The sentinel *halted* him.

806. Transitive verbs may be used intransitively by making them reflexive, so that although their action has an object, yet as that object is the actor, the action passes to no second person or thing. A comparison of the transitive and the intransitive use

of each of the following verbs should make this distinction sufficiently clear:—

TRANSITIVE VALUE.	INTRANSITIVE VALUE.
Acostar, to put to bed.	**Acostarse**, to go to bed.
Levantar, to raise, lift up.	**Levantarse**, to rise, get up.
Enfadar, to anger.	**Enfadarse**, to become angry.
Desmayar, to dismay, discourage.	**Desmayarse**, to faint, swoon.
Sentar, to seat, cause to sit down.	**Sentarse**, to sit down.
Alegrar, to gladden.	**Alegrarse**, to be glad.
Avergonzar, to shame, make ashamed.	**Avergonzarse**, to be ashamed.
Helar, to freeze.	**Helarse**, to freeze, become frozen.
Desatar, to untie.	**Desatarse**, to come untied.
Marchitar, to wither, cause to fade.	**Marchitarse**, to wither, fade.
Acercar, to approach, bring near to.	**Acercarse**, to approach, come near to.
Estremecer, to shake, make tremble.	**Estremecerse**, to tremble, shudder.
Fundir, to melt.	**Fundirse**, to melt.
Extender, to extend.	**Extenderse**, to extend.
Mejorar, to improve.	**Mejorarse**, to improve.
Secar, to dry.	**Secarse**, to dry.
Desgarrar, to tear.	**Desgarrarse**, to tear.
Hender, to split, crack.	**Henderse**, to split, crack.

COMPARATIVE EXAMPLES.

No debo **acostarme** antes de **acostar** á los niños.	I must not go to bed before putting the children to bed.
El fuego **funde** el plomo.	The fire melts the lead.
El plomo **se funde** fácilmente.	Lead melts easily.
El sol ha **marchitado** las flores.	The sun has faded the flowers.
Las rosas **se marchitan** pronto.	Roses fade quickly.
Acercó una silla á la lumbre.	He placed a chair near the fire.
Se acercó á la lumbre.	He approached the fire.
Ella me **enfadó**.	She angered me.
Ella **se enfadó**.	She became angry.
Ellos nos **horrorizaron**.	They horrified us.
Ellos **se horrorizaron**.	They were horrified.
Las aves me **regocijan**.	The birds gladden me.
Las aves **se regocijan**.	The birds rejoice.
Su mujer le **irrita**.	His wife provokes him.
Su mujer **se irrita**.	His wife is provoked.
Le **avergüenzo**.	I put him to shame.
Me avergüenzo.	I am ashamed.
Vende vino y licores.	He sells wine and liquors.
El vino **se vende** bien este año.	Wine sells well this year.
Decidiré la cuestión.	I will decide the question.

Me he decidido á partir.	I have decided to set out.
El generalísimo **opuso** un ejército de 10.000 hombres á su avance.	The commanding general opposed an army of 10,000 men to their advance.
El presidente de la comisión **se opuso** á la medida.	The chairman of the committee opposed the measure.

807. Verbs naturally intransitive are often made reflexive, an idiomatic usage which has no parallel in English. In reality this pleonasm is intended to emphasize the actor's interest, volition or free will and accord in the case:—

Estuvo escondido.	He was hidden.
Se estuvo escondido.	He was in voluntary concealment.
La gente entraba.	The people were going in.
Á pesar de las guardias apostadas á la puerta, la gente **se** entraba.	In spite of the guards stationed at the gate, the people kept getting in.
Los presos salieron.	The prisoners went out.
Los presos **se** salieron.	The prisoners got out.

808. In some cases the meaning of an intransitive verb is so changed by being made reflexive as to amount to a new word, while in others the effect of the reflexive is so slight as not perceptibly to affect the meaning. Careful observation is the only means of determining this usage:—

Caer, to fall.	**Caerse**, to tumble down.
Escapar, to escape.	**Escaparse**, to run away, get clear.
Dormir, to sleep.	**Dormirse**, to fall asleep.
Morir, to die.	**Morirse**, to be on the point of death, to be dying.
Ir, to go.	**Irse**, to go away.
Venir, to come.	**Venirse**, to come along.
Volar, to fly.	**Volarse**, to fly away, fly off.
Marchar, to march.	**Marcharse**, to leave, depart.
Llegar, to arrive.	**Llegarse**, to approach.

809. The following may be used optionally with or without the reflexive:—

Errar, *or* errarse.	To err.
Combatir, *or* combatirse.	To fight.
Parecer, *or* parecerse.	To appear.
Tardar, *or* tardarse.	To delay, tarry.
Quedar, *or* quedarse.	To remain.
Fiar, *or* fiarse de alguno.	To trust somebody.
Chancear, *or* chancearse con alguno.	To joke with some one.
Reír, *or* reírse de alguno.	To laugh at some one.

Exercise XL.

You blame yourself too much, the fault is not yours. The explorers soon found themselves in a *dense* thicket full of mosquitoes and other tormenting *insects* which covered every exposed spot of their bodies. They *procured* themselves a doubtful relief by (*con*) surrounding themselves with a thick smoke that almost suffocated them and filled their eyes with tears. They constructed for themselves a raft of logs in order to cross the stream. Those girls are not sisters, but they resemble each other very much. They take advantage of every opportunity to deceive each other. They interrupted themselves frequently. They interrupted each other frequently. The lion slowly approached his prey. The boys and girls of the school were continually sending letters to each other. The *fugitives* stained their faces and hands[1] with walnut juice to disguise themselves. The wind subsided and the rain entirely ceased. When they met they saluted each other courteously. As soon as I showed myself, the crows flew away. They grappled each other and tried to throw each other into the (*al*) water. We have sworn to defend one another. This cloth is too thin, it tears very easily.[2] The banks of snow will soon melt. I do not tire easily, I am accustomed to walking. The rope broke and I fell to the ground. I gave him a blow which stretched him on (*en*) the ground; then he picked himself up and withdrew, muttering curses. They laughed at us, but later we had *occasion* to laugh at them. We have devoted ourselves to the *investigation* of that matter. The sea receded during the night and left the boat aground.

THE PASSIVE VOICE.

810. The passive voice is a variation in the manner of expressing the action of an active transitive verb, in which the object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive, and the subject of the active verb (if expressed) is connected with the passive by a preposition:—

Active: **El alguacil persigue á los ladrones,** *the sheriff is pursuing the thieves.*

Passive: **Los ladrones son perseguidos por el alguacil,** *the thieves are pursued by the sheriff.*

811. The regular passive is formed in Spanish by associating the past participle of any transitive verb with the various forms of the verb **ser,** in which case the participle agrees with the subject in gender and number:—

Soy respetado. Soy respetada.	I am respected.
Hemos sido insultados.	We have been insulted.

[1] Se tiñeron la cara y las manos. [2] con mucha facilidad.

Ella no será convidada.	She will not be invited.
El salteador fué ahorcado.	The road-agent was hanged.
Los insurgentes habiendo sido derrotados, . . .	The insurgents having been routed, . . .
La máquina necesitaba ser recorrida y limpiada tanto interior como exteriormente.	The engine needed to be gone over and cleaned both inside and out.

812. When the active agent is introduced, it is connected with the passive verb by **por** when the action is a physical or bodily one, and by **de** when it is one of thought or feeling:—

Era envidiada de todas.	She was envied by all.
Fueron ahorcados por el verdugo.	They were hanged by the hangman.
Las órdenes del ingeniero fueron ejecutadas inmediatamente por sus compañeros.	The orders of the engineer were immediately carried out by his companions.

813. The passive is formed with **estar** as auxiliary instead of **ser** when the state or condition of the subject is described without reference to any action. The past participle is then merely an adjective:—

El aposento **está** imperfectamente alumbrado.	The apartment is imperfectly lighted.
El informe **estaba** mal redactado.	The report was badly prepared.
Era evidente que el informe **había sido** redactado con precipitación.	It was evident that the report had been hastily prepared.
El palacio **fué** destruido por el terremoto reciente.	The palace was destroyed by the recent earthquake (*an occurrence*).
El palacio, cuando **yo** lo visité, **estaba** destruido.	The palace, when I visited it, was destroyed (in a destroyed condition).
Las olas **eran** agitadas por el viento.	The waves were agitated by the wind (*action*).
Las olas **estaban** todavía agitadas por el viento.	The waves were still agitated by the wind (*condition*).
Este artículo **está** escrito por una persona indocta. / Este artículo **ha sido** escrito por una persona indocta.	This article is written by an uneducated person.

814. Under such circumstances the expression may be varied by substituting for **estar** one of the following verbs:—

Ir, andar, to go.	**Quedar, quedarse,** to remain.
Verse, to see one's self.	**Sentirse,** to feel one's self.
Hallarse, encontrarse, to find one's self.	**Presentarse,** to present one's self.
	Mostrarse, to show one's self.

These are all to be translated in English by the verb *to be*, and are applicable only when a temporary or transitory condition is to be expressed:—

La entrada de la cueva **se hallaba** obstruida por una cortina de arbustos espesos.	The entrance of the cave was obstructed by a curtain of thick shrubbery.
En las cercanías de Arequipa el país **se presenta** más accidentado.	In the neighborhood of Arequipa the country is more uneven.
El interior de la república del Uruguay **se ve** atravesado por cerros poblados de árboles.	The interior of the Republic of Uruguay is crossed by mountains covered with trees.
El país **se ha visto** frecuentemente desolado por los terremotos.	The country has been frequently devastated by earthquakes.
Se halla enfermo.	He is sick.
Se encontraba desprovisto de todo.	He was destitute of everything.
Quedaron asombrados al oír la noticia.	They were astounded on hearing the news.
Se quedó callado.	He was silent.
Se siente perplejo.	He is perplexed.
Anda muy distraído.	He is very absent-minded.
Los gauchos **iban** vestidos de pieles de guanacos, y llevaban, á más de los acostumbrados lazos y bolas, unas lanzas que tenían quince pies de longitud.	The Gauchos were dressed in guanaco skins, and carried, in addition to the customary lassos and bolas, lances fifteen feet in length.

REMARK.—It is to be observed that **sido** and **estado** are invariable when preceded by any form of **haber**, while a following past participle of a transitive verb agrees in number and gender with its noun. This is because **sido** and **estado** are governed by **haber**, while the other past participle depends upon **ser** or **estar**:—

La casa había sido nuevamente pintada.	The house had been newly painted.
Los marcos habiendo sido limpiados y dorados, . . .	The frames having been cleaned and gilded, . . .
Era evidente que aquella botella había sido arrojada al mar desde un buque náufrago.	It was evident that that bottle had been thrown into the sea from some shipwrecked vessel.

REFLEXIVE SUBSTITUTE FOR PASSIVE.

815. In modern Spanish the formal passive is but little used, as it is considered too lengthy and roundabout; its place is usually taken by the much overworked reflexive form of the

verb. This, however, occurs only with the verb in the third person.

The reflexive may be applied in two ways as a substitute for the passive: 1, personally; 2, impersonally. In the first case the verb can be transitive only; in the second, either transitive or intransitive.

816. When employed personally the subject is an expressed noun or pronoun, with which the verb agrees in number, taking the reflexive **se** as its object. The reflexive force disappears, and the meaning conveyed is purely passive:—

Eso se hará fácilmente.	That will be easily done.
La cena se despachó pronto.	The supper was quickly dispatched.
Por fortuna sus temores no se realizaron.	Fortunately their fears were not realized.
El bosque se componía en aquellos parajes de árboles coníferos semejantes á los que se habían observado en las inmediaciones del lago.	The forest in this region was composed of coniferous trees similar to those which had been noticed in the neighborhood of the lake.
Su crédito se ha agotado.	His credit has been exhausted.
Se dejó á babor el célebre pico de Tenerife.	The celebrated peak of Teneriffe was left to port (larboard).
Se aplazó la construcción del almacén para el verano siguiente.	The building of the warehouse was postponed until the following summer.
En Centro América por lo general no son los hoteles dignos de llamarse así.	In Central America the hotels are generally not worthy of being so called.
Los demás puntos no merecen la pena de visitarse.	The other points are not worth being visited.

817. When employed impersonally the verb is in the third person *singular*, with the reflexive **se** as its object, but *no subject* is expressed and none is understood; the verb is connected by a conjunction, adverb, or equivalent word, with the remainder of the sentence:—

Se dice que las fuerzas del gobierno se han sublevado.	It is said that the government forces have revolted.
No se explica cómo salió del apuro.	It is not explained how he extricated himself from the difficulty.
Se sabe bien que este peso disminuirá en razón inversa del cuadrado de la distancia.	It is well known that this weight will decrease in an inverse ratio to the square of the distance.

Se penetraba en aquella torre de metal por una abertura estrecha practicada en las paredes de la base.
Entrance was effected into the metal turret by means of a narrow aperture cut in the walls of the base.

Se asegura que el pueblo está más enterado sobre la vida de los santos que sobre la geografía de su propio país.
It is asserted that the people are better informed about the lives of the saints than about the geography of their own country.

Se comprenderá fácilmente cuánto impacientaba á ambos esta tardanza inesperada.
It will be easily understood how much this unexpected delay irritated them both.

REMARK.—Nevertheless this construction is sometimes used in familiar style to refer to a person definitely understood.

Á las doce se cerró la vidriera de la ventana y Suárez se largó. No debo ocultar que experimenté cierta satisfacción pueril al pensar que conmigo **se estaba** hasta la una y media y aun más algunas veces.
At twelve o'clock the sash of the window was closed and Suárez moved away. I must not hide [the fact] that I experienced a certain boyish satisfaction in thinking that with me *she* remained until half past one and sometimes even longer.

(*The speaker is telling how he had been watching his rival at his sweetheart's window.*)

Se me **dijo** anoche en el baile que **se estaría** en el paseo á eso de las seis.
Somebody told me at the ball last night that *somebody* was going to be on the promenade about six o'clock.

(*A friendly matron is giving the young man a pointer.*)

¡Con que! ¿**Se ha estado** juiciosa durante mi ausencia?—Sí, papá.
Well, has my little girl been good while I was away?—Yes, Papa.

818. These passives of reflexive form (both the personal and impersonal constructions) are often equivalent in meaning to the English indefinite *they, you, we, one,* used as subject:—

De este modo se ganará tiempo y se ahorrará trabajo.
In this way we will gain time and save work.

Se caminó durante toda la mañana.
They journeyed all the forenoon.

¿Á dónde se nos va á conducir?
Where are they going to take us?

El pueblo es pequeñísimo; al instante se sale de él.
The village is very small; you get outside of it in no time.

¡Jardinero! ¿Cómo se sale de estos jardines?
Gardener! How do you get out of these gardens?

¿Qué se debe hacer?
What's a body to do?

Alemania es un país exclusivamente militar; parece que no se vive más que para la guerra.
Germany is an exclusively military country; it seems that they do not live for anything but war.

En el patio vecino se tocaba la guitarra y se cantaban sentidas peteneras de notas prolongadas.	In the "patio" next door they were playing the guitar and singing sentimental "peteneras" with long-drawn-out notes.
Se cargaron los fusiles con bala.	They loaded the guns with ball.
¿Se puede entrar? ¿Se puede pasar? ¿Se puede subir?	Can I (we) go in? Can I (we) come in? Can I (we) come up?

(*These requests are more modest than if put in the first person.*)

REMARK.—In Latin the verb often assumed the passive form, in the third person singular, with an indefinite meaning :—

Sic itur ad astra.	So one goes to the stars.
Ei resistetur.	They will oppose him.
Nuntiatum est adesse Scipionem.	They reported that Scipio was near.
Diu et acriter pugnatum est.	They fought long and sharply.

REMARK 2.—In French and German there are expressions precisely equivalent in meaning to the Spanish, but different in form :—

On peut le voir à son bureau.	You can see him at his office.
On a doublé la garde.	They have doubled the guard.
Où prend-on les crevettes?	Where do they catch shrimps?
Man hat mich versichert.	They assured me.
Man ist glücklich wenn man zufrieden ist.	We are happy when we are contented.

819. In Spanish also the verb may be used impersonally in the third person plural with the same indefinite meaning as that conveyed by the reflexive:—

¿Á dónde nos van á conducir?	Where are they going to take us?
¿Me han traído las botas?	Have they brought my boots?
Hacen muy buenos quesos allí.	They make very good cheeses there.
¿Qué dicen de la elección?	What do they say of the election?
Producen mejor vino que éste en mi país.	They produce better wine than this in my country.

820. In placards and similar notices in which the reflexive is employed in Spanish, the meaning is usually expressed in English by the past participle alone, with elision of the verb *to be*:—

Se necesita un jardinero.	Wanted, a gardener.
Aquí se habla español.	Spanish spoken here.
Se garantiza el trabajo.	Work warranted.
Se cierra los domingos.	Closed on Sundays.
Se compran y venden libros de lance.	Second-hand books bought and sold.
Se confeccionan tarjetas y facturas en el acto.	Cards and billheads made up without delay.

821. When the personal construction is used, the active agent may be introduced by **de** or **por**, just as with the true passive:—

Las pirámides se edificaron por esclavos.	The pyramids were built by slaves.
El fuego se apagará por la lluvia.	The fire will be put out by the rain.
Estas obras se venden por todos los libreros.	These works are sold by all booksellers.

822. If the subject represents a person capable of performing the action expressed by the verb, the latter will naturally be understood to be reflexive or reciprocal and not passive in meaning, although the form of expression is the same:—

Se envenenó el duque.	The duke poisoned himself. (*Not* the duke was poisoned.)
Se miraban los reyes como superiores á la ley.	The kings regarded themselves (*or* each other) as above the law (*Not* the kings were regarded.)
La joven se lisonjea.	The young girl flatters herself.
Los fugitivos caminaban de noche, y se escondían en los matorrales ó entre los helechos altos durante el día.	The fugitives travelled at night, and hid themselves in the thickets or among the tall fern by day.
Se ataron uno á otro.	They tied themselves together.
Los intendentes se amenazaban.	The overseers threatened each other.

823. When it is desired to render the meaning of such phrases unmistakably passive, the impersonal construction is employed and the noun is made object:—

Se envenenó al duque.	The duke was poisoned, *or* they poisoned the duke.
Se miraba á los reyes como superiores á la ley.	The kings were regarded as above the law, *or* they regarded the kings as above the law.
Se lisonjea á la joven.	They flatter the young girl.
Se escondió á los fugitivos entre los helechos altos.	The fugitives were concealed among the tall ferns.
Se les ató uno á otro.	They tied them together.
Se amenazaba á los intendentes.	They threatened the overseers.
Se les señaló doble pago.	They were given double pay.

824. The same distinction exists when the subject is of the first or second person:—

Se me rechazó.	I was black-balled.

(*Me rechazé* would mean *I black-balled myself.*)

Cuando las llamas me chamuscaron la ropa, **me arrojé** por la ventana.	When the flames scorched my clothing, I threw myself from the window.
En un abrir y cerrar de ojos **se me arrojó** por la ventana.	In the twinkling of an eye I was thrown out of the window.
Nos privábamos de todos los lujos, y aun de muchas cosas necesarias para la comodidad.	We deprived ourselves of all luxuries and even of many things necessary to comfort.
Se nos privaba de todos los lujos, y aun de muchas cosas necesarias para la comodidad.	They deprived us of all luxuries and even of many things necessary to comfort.

REMARK.—This is equally applicable with the redundant construction of personal pronouns :—

Á él se le mató á pedradas.	They stoned him to death.
No se nos dejó entrar á nosotros.	They did not allow us to enter.

825. A transitive verb in the impersonal construction takes as its object only an animate being, or a thing personified; this object consequently requires the preposition **á** to show that it is used objectively:—

Se registró al prisionero.	The prisoner was searched.
Se inspeccionaba á los marineros semanalmente.	The sailors were inspected weekly.
Jamás se había visto al juez J. ni conmovido ni alterado.	Judge J. had never been seen excited or disturbed.
Se silbaba á Pérez siempre que se mostraba en público.	Perez was hissed whenever he showed himself in public.

826. But if the noun represents a thing, it is made subject, and the verb agrees with it in number:—

Se registró el baúl.	The trunk was searched.
Se inspeccionaban los navíos semanalmente.	The ships were inspected weekly.
No se han descubierto volcanes en el Brasil.	No volcanoes have been discovered in Brazil.
Se leían con avidez los periódicos.	The newspapers were eagerly read.

REMARK.—To say **se leía con avidez á los periódicos** would be a strained personification ; while **se leía los periódicos** would be still worse, as it would be using a personified object without the preposition **á** to show that it is object.

827. The impersonal construction is required with all pronouns representing persons, or things personified; and conse-

quently with all personal pronouns of the first and second persons. The pronoun then appears as object:—

Se la admitió.	She was admitted.
Creo que se me engaña.	I believe they are deceiving me.
La gente cree cuanto se le dice.	The people believe whatever is told them.
Se nos resistió hasta lo último.	We were resisted to the last.

EXCEPTION.—But, to avoid ambiguity in long and complex sentences, the impersonal construction may be used of things, when the reflexive verb is at a distance from the noun denoting the thing, which is then represented by a personal pronoun :—

No olvidemos por un momento que es un gran privilegio habitar estos dos vastos continentes, cuyo suelo fértil nos brinda todo lo que necesita la civilización, y á los que, no obstante el trascurso de cuatro siglos, **se les designa** del otro lado de los mares con el nombre de Nuevo Mundo.	Let us not forget for a moment that it is a great privilege to inhabit these two vast continents, whose fertile soil produces all that civilization needs, and which, notwithstanding the lapse of four centuries, are designated on the other side of the seas by the name of the New World.
Si en la fábula cómica se amontonan muchos incidentes, y no **se la reduce** á una acción única, la atención se distrae.	If in fiction many incidents are piled up and it is not concentrated into a single plot, the attention is distracted.

REMARK.—If we said **y no se reduce**, the connection with the subject **fábula** would not be obvious, on account of the intervening clause. In an example like the following this reason does not apply :—

Unas veces se ama la esclavitud, y otras se aborrece como insoportable (*not* se la aborrece).	Sometimes slavery is loved, and at others it is hated as insupportable.

828. It is customary to use the dative form **les** instead of the accusative **los**, when the objective pronoun is masculine plural; otherwise the accusative form is used:—

Se les (*not* los) desterró.	They were banished.
Se les condenó á muerte.	They were condemned to death.
Se las ayudó á bajar.	They were assisted to alight.

829. In many cases it does not matter whether we construe a reflexive verb as truly reflexive or as passive in meaning, and in like manner whether it shall be considered intransitive or passive, the meaning being about the same either way:—

Este obrero se llama Paco.	This workman calls himself Frank. / This workman is called Frank.
La porcelana se rompe fácilmente.	Porcelain breaks easily. / Porcelain is easily broken.

830. A verb that requires a preposition to complete its meaning cannot be used passively. It therefore takes the impersonal construction, the preposition being retained:—

Se jugó al ajedrez y chaquete. (*Not* se jugaron ajedrez y chaquete.)	They played chess and backgammon.
Se habló de varias cosas. (*Not* varias cosas se hablaron.)	Various things were talked of.
Se trata de un asunto importantísimo.	A very important matter is being treated of.

REMARK.—Consequently such constructions as the following English sentences are inadmissible in Spanish, and must be translated by a circumlocution:—

Con profundo sentimiento se dijo adiós á estos lugares.	These places were said adieu to with deep regret.
Se pasó cerca de algunas rocas curiosamente manchadas. / Algunas rocas curiosamente manchadas fueron pasadas de cerca.	Some curiously marked rocks were passed near to.
Quejábanse (*not* quejábase) de la acogida poco hospitalaria. / La acogida poco hospitalaria fué objeto de quejas.	The inhospitable reception was complained of.

831. The repetition of **se** should be avoided unless it applies to the same construction; thus the following would be inelegant:—

Se dice que se ha asesinado al presidente.	They say they have assassinated the President.
Se dice que se ha hallado en el Ródano una sortija que se cree pertenecía á Aníbal.	They say they have found in the Rhone a ring which they believe belonged to Hannibal.

Because (to analyze the last one, for instance) the persons who say, those who found, and those who pronounce the opinion are different individuals. The following would be correct:—

Se dice que el presidente ha sido asesinado.	They say the President has been assassinated.
Según dicen, ha sido hallada en el Ródano una sortija que se cree haber pertenecido á Aníbal.	They say that a ring has been found in the Rhone which is believed to have belonged to Hannibal.

832. When the impersonal construction is employed, the sentence should contain no modifying adjective or pronoun which would refer to a subject of the verb, since it has no subject. Thus the following are incorrect:—

No se está conforme acerca del origen del uso.	They are not agreed about the origin of the usage.
Se vivía feliz en la edad media, aunque no se gozaba de las mejoras de hoy día.	They lived happy in the middle ages, although they did not enjoy the improvements of to-day.
Con dificultad se dejan las preocupaciones que en *sus* primeros años *se le han infundido.*	With difficulty are the prejudices got rid of which in one's early years were instilled into him.

The fault is to be corrected either by doing away with the adjective or pronoun, or by supplying a subject for it to agree with:—

No se está de acuerdo acerca del origen del uso.	They are not agreed about the origin of the usage.
Se vivía felizmente (*or* los hombres vivían felices) en la edad media, aunque no se gozaba de (*or* gozaban de) las mejoras de hoy día.	People lived happily in the middle ages, although they did not enjoy the improvements of to-day.
Con dificultad dejan los hombres las preocupaciones que en sus primeros años se les han infundido.	With difficulty do men get rid of the prejudices which were instilled into them in their early years.

833. If the verb is essentially reflexive, the impersonal construction is not admissible. Thus the following must always refer to a subject, either expressed or understood:—

Se arrepiente.	He repents.
No se atreva á emprenderlo.	He does not dare to undertake it.
Se ausentó.	He absented himself.
Se acordó de la apuesta.	He remembered the bet.
Se ocupaba poco de aquellos rumores.	He concerned himself but little about those rumors.

834. Those verbs which may take the reflexive pronoun to modify their meaning (as when transitive verbs are made intransitive, or intransitives are made vivacious), are susceptible of two acceptations when they appear in the third person singular without an expressed subject. They may be considered either as having the modified meaning and referring to some singular subject, or as being indefinite with the unmodified meaning of the verb:—

Se entró.	He "got in." / People entered. (Fr. *on entra.*)
Se marcha.	He "goes away." / They march. (Fr. *on marche.*)
Se durmió.	He "fell asleep." / They slept. (Fr. *on dormit.*)

835. When it is desired to retain the modifying force conveyed by the reflexive, and at the same time to render the phrase impersonal, the only way is to supply an indefinite subject—**uno** or **gente**—or place the verb in the third person plural (as explained in § 819 of this chapter):—

Se burlan de sus menazas.	They scoff at his menaces. (Fr. *on se fiche de ses menaces.*)
Cuanto más se acerca uno á la cumbre de una alta montaña, menor es la densidad del aire y más difícil la respiración.	The more one approaches the summit (Fr. *plus on s'approche du sommet*) of a high mountain, the less is the density of the air and the more difficult is respiration.
Se abriga uno para no sentir el frío.	A person wraps himself up so as not to feel the cold. (Ger. *man verhüllt sich, um die Kälte nicht zu fühlen.*)
Se acordaron de la apuesta.	They remembered the bet. (Fr. *on se souvint du pari.*)
La gente se ocupaba poco de aquellos rumores.	They concerned themselves but little about those rumors. (Fr. *on s'occupait peu de ces rumeurs.*)

REMARK.—The idea is that **se** either renders the verb passive, or modifies its meaning; but it cannot perform both duties at the same time.[1]

836. In the infinitive any verb of reflexive form may be used impersonally:—

De nada sirve **arrepentirse** tarde.	It is worth nothing to repent late.
Es costumbre **bañarse** en Borneo tres veces al día.	It is customary in Borneo to bathe one's self three times a day.
Cuando llegó el momento de **entregarse** al sueño, se dió fuego al montón de leña apilado á la entrada de la caverna.	When the time arrived for surrendering one's self to sleep, a light was applied to the heap of wood piled up at the entrance of the cavern.
Bien valía la pena de **detenerse** á escucharles.	It was well worth while to stop [one's self] and listen to them.

[1] This can best be illustrated by comparison with the French and German. **Se lisonjea** may mean on the one hand *he flatters himself, il se flatte, er schmeichelt sich,* or on the other *they flatter, on flatte, man schmeichelt*; but could not mean *they flatter themselves, on se flatte, man schmeichelt sich.*

837. The location of the reflexive pronoun se is the same whether the verb be used passively or reflexively:—

La cena se está preparando. La cena está preparándose.	Supper is being prepared.
Habiéndose erigido el cadalso.	The scaffold having been erected.
Más arriba, el río comenzaba á obstruirse con altas yerbas que dificultaban la acción de los remos.	Higher up, the river began to be obstructed with high grass which impeded the action of the oars.
El acta que acaba de leerse. El acta que se acaba de leer.	The minutes which have just been read.
Séneca repetía dos mil nombres, habiéndosele dicho una sola vez, en el mismo orden en que se le habían referido.	Seneca used to repeat two thousand names, they having been said to him once only, in the same order that they had been told him.

Exercise XLI.

They do not permit me a *moment* of leisure. They showed us the spot where a meteor had buried itself in the ground. They riddled the spy with (*de*) bullets. The corpse was thrown into the old *canal*. They searched for the *fugitives* behind every rock and shrub. *Aluminium* has not yet been extracted from common clay. This ring was given me by my grandfather. The old castle was then inhabited only by bats and owls. The lights were extinguished and the doors closed when we arrived. For greater *precaution*, the lights were extinguished and the doors closed. The tracks of the travelers were immediately covered by the snow. The *torrent* is crossed at this point by a rope bridge which is suspended between large trees. I was *informed* that the street had been formerly paved with wooden blocks. The harbor is exposed to the violent winds which blow from the southeast. The soil here is a *tenacious* clay which is *cultivated* with much difficulty and little profit. Great patience is needed in this process. It is said that the revolt has been suppressed, and that the leaders have been captured; but the report has not been *officially confirmed*. They make dyes, *medicines*, perfumery, flavoring extracts, and almost everything now, from coal-tar. The sign contained the following words in gold letters: "Stocks and Securities Bought and Sold and Loans *Negotiated*." His pockets were searched, but nothing was found. The art of engrafting trees and vines was practiced before the *Christian era*. *Platinum* does not melt in a blast-furnace, and yields only to the *influence* of the oxyhydrogen blow-pipe or that of the *electric* current.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

838. Impersonal verbs have neither subject nor object. Whatever they may represent as being or as going on, nothing is suggested as taking any active part in it. There is no perfect

example of such a verb in use in the English language; but Spanish has many that are either always or occasionally employed without a subject, expressed or understood:—

Ha llovido mucho durante la noche.	It rained a great deal during the night.
Relampaguea por el lado del norte.	It lightens towards the north.
Parece que vamos á tener un temporal.	It seems that we are going to have a storm.

REMARK.—The English pronoun *it* is a mere form of expression due to the habit of our language, and in nowise represents the actor. The corresponding neuter pronoun **ello** is sometimes employed in Spanish when emphasis is required, but never in representing natural phenomena:—

Ello importa mucho.	It matters a great deal.
¿Ha oído V. tronar?	Did you hear *it* thunder?
¿Ha visto V. relampaguear?	Did you see *it* lighten?
Me gusta ver nevar.	I like to see *it* snow.

☞ We will first consider those verbs which are strictly impersonal, and then discuss those of occasional impersonal use.

839. The only verbs restricted to the impersonal construction are those which express the phenomena of nature. They are limited in form to the infinitive, gerund, past participle and the third person singular of all other tenses; but within these limits their conjugational forms do not differ from those of other similar verbs. The following are the principal ones in use:—

ALBOREAR:	**alborea**, it dawns.
AMANECER:	**amanece**, it is getting to be morning.
ANOCHECER:	**anochece**, it is getting to be night.
DILUVIAR:	**diluvia**, it is pouring.
ESCAMPAR:	**escampa**, it stops raining.
ESCARCHAR:	**escarcha**, there is hoar-frost.
GRANIZAR:	**graniza**, it is hailing.
HELAR:	**hiela**, it is freezing.
LLOVER:	**llueve**, it is raining.
LLOVIZNAR:	**llovizna**,
MOLLIZNAR:	**mollizna**, } it is drizzling.
MOLLIZNEAR:	**molliznea**,
RELAMPAGUEAR:	**relampaguea**, it is lightening.
TRONAR:	**truena**, it is thundering.
VENTEAR:	**ventea**, it is blowing.
VENTISCAR:	**ventisca**, it is snowing and blowing.

REMARK.—Even some of these verbs may occasionally be supplied with a subject by figure of speech, and examples are to be found with an object:—

Tronaba la artillería por todos lados.	The artillery thundered on all sides.
Sus ojos relampagueaban.	His eyes flashed.
Amaneció el día claro y frío.	The day dawned clear and cold.
Los indígenas acudieron á Cortés, clamando sobre que no llovían sus dioses. SOLÍS.	The natives came to Cortes, complaining that their gods did not rain.
No hicieron caso del pedrisco que llovía sobre ellos. CERVANTES.	They paid no attention to the shower of stones which rained upon them.
Comenzaron los galeotes á llover piedras sobre Don Quijote. *Ibid.*	The galley-slaves began to shower stones upon Don Quixote.

840. Amanecer and **anochecer** are at times, though very rarely, used as verbs of full inflection, with the meaning of *to arrive* or *be present at daybreak* or *nightfall*:—

¿ Anocheceremos en Cienfuegos ?	Shall we get to Cienfuegos by nightfall ?
Amanecimos á vista de tierra.	When day dawned we were in sight of land.

841. The infinitives and gerunds of impersonal verbs communicate their impersonal effect to whatever verbs they depend upon. The same is true of verbs of occasional impersonal use:—

Parece que va á llover.	It looks as if it were going to rain.
Comienza á nevar.	It is beginning to snow.
Acaba de tronar á lo lejos.	It has just thundered in the distance
Seguía diluviando.	It continued pouring.
Eran entonces las cinco de la mañana, y empezaba á amanecer.	It was five o'clock in the morning, and it was beginning to dawn.

842. The verbs of occasional impersonal use are intransitive and correspond very closely to their English equivalents, used impersonally:—

Acaecer, to happen.	**Convenir**, to suit, behoove.
Acontecer, to happen.	**Importar**, to be important, to matter.
Bastar, to suffice.	**Parecer**, to appear, seem.
Constar, to be evident.	**Precisar**, to be necessary.

EXAMPLES.

Precisa, señores, poner término á esas crueles hecatombes, que han venido presenciándose en el nuevo mundo con vilipendio y escarnio de la humanidad y de la civilización.	It is necessary, Gentlemen, to put an end to these cruel sacrifices, which have been witnessed in the new world to the shame and horror of humanity and civilization.

Conviene aquí decir que en las playas asiáticas esta especie de algas entra por mucho en la alimentación de los indígenas.	It should be mentioned here that on the Asiatic coasts this species of algæ is extensively used as food by the natives.
Constaba por las acciones de aquellos animales que no habían visto nunca al hombre.	It was evident from the actions of those animals that they had never seen a human being.
Acaeció que su marido se hallaba ausente por algunos días.	It happened that her husband was absent for a few days.

843. The verbs **ser** and **estar** are used with especial frequency impersonally, followed by nouns or adjectives:—

Es lastima. Es maravilla.	It is a pity. It is a wonder.
Está claro.	It is clear.
Es necesario partir al instante.	It is necessary to start at once.
Estaba todavía oscuro cuando me levanté.	It was still dark when I got up.
Está muy nublado.	It is very cloudy.
Era demasiado tarde para ver la campiña.	It was too late to see the landscape.

REMARK.—There is an impersonal expression, of active form but of passive value, formed by the verb **ser** and an infinitive, the two being connected by **de**:—

Es de esperar.	It is to be hoped.
Es de desear.	It is to be desired.

844. A reflexive impersonal construction is applicable to a few verbs naturally reflexive, by which they are made reflexive in a second degree, so to speak, the meaning remaining the same:—

Me figuro.	I imagine (*I figure to myself*).
Se me figura.	I imagine (*it figures itself to me*).
Me olvidé de hacerlo.	I forgot to do it.
Se me olvidó hacerlo.	I forgot to do it (*it forgot itself to me*).
Me permito.	I allow myself.
Se me permite.	It is allowed me.

845. There are many cases where in English a verb would be used impersonally, governing an infinitive, while in Spanish the infinitive is the subject of the verb:—

Nos costó algún trabajo mantener el trineo en el camino, á causa de las muchas vueltas que fué preciso dar.	It cost us some trouble to keep the sleigh in the road, on account of the many turns it was necessary to make. (I.e., keeping the sleigh in the road cost us some trouble.)

Me tocó sentarme á su lado en la mesa.	It happened to me to be seated beside her at table.

846. Es menester is not an impersonal phrase, since it always has a subject, expressed or understood:—

Es menester mucha paciencia.	Much patience is necessary.
Eran menester muchas reparaciones.	Many repairs were necessary.
Era menester haberlo visto.	It was necessary to have seen it.

But **ha menester,** *there is need of,* is a true impersonal expression:—

Ha menester cien duros para completar la suma.	There is need of $100 to complete the sum.
Había menester largos rodeos para ganar la cumbre.	Long detours were necessary to gain the summit.

INCEPTIVE VERBS.

847. Verbs of this class, when intransitive, signify *to become* of a certain character or condition. They are formed from nouns or adjectives, and have the infinitive termination **-ecer,** in imitation of the corresponding class of Latin verbs ending in *-scere* (generally *-escere*).

A few inceptive verbs are intransitive; but the greater number are active, meaning *to make* of the character or condition expressed by the radical word. These become intransitive by being made reflexive.

848. The following are intransitive:—

Envejecer, to grow old.	**Florecer,** to bloom.
Encanecer, to grow gray.	**Enruinecer,** to become vile.
Encarnecer, to grow fleshy.	**Convalecer,** to get better.
Palidecer, to grow pale.	**Verdecer,** to turn green.

849. The following are transitive, unless used reflexively:—

TRANSITIVE USE.	INTRANSITIVE USE.
Endurecer, to harden.	**Endurecerse,** to become hard.
Ennegrecer, to blacken.	**Ennegrecerse,** to become black.
Enriquecer, to enrich.	**Enriquecerse,** to become rich.
Enrojecer, to redden.	**Enrojecerse,** to become red.
Esclarecer, to make clear.	**Esclarecerse,** to become clear.
Entristecer, to sadden.	**Entristecerse,** to grow sad.
Fortalecer, to strengthen.	**Fortalecerse,** to become strong.
Humedecer, to moisten.	**Humedecerse,** to become moist.

850. The same meaning may be expressed by **hacerse, ponerse, volverse, llegar á ser, venir á ser,** or **venir á parar,** all equivalent to the English *become,* followed by an appropriate noun or adjective:—

¿Qué se ha hecho de su hermano menor?—Se ha hecho médico; se ha trasladado á Nueva York, y á juzgar de las noticias que tengo de él, pronto se hará rico.

What has become of your youngest brother?—He has become a doctor; he has located in New York, and, to judge from the reports I have of him, he will soon become rich.

V. se pondrá malo si come más de esa ensalada de langosta.

You will make yourself sick if you eat any more of that lobster salad.

Se puso como una cereza, y bajó la mirada.

She became [as red] as a cherry, and looked down.

¡Qué caballerete se ha vuelto el nieto de V.!

What a dude your grandson has become!

No es imposible que Alahabad llegue á ser un día la capital de la India inglesa.

It is not impossible that Allahabad may one day become the capital of British India.

Llegó á ser decano de la universidad.

He became dean of the university.

Si su señor hermano sigue así, vendrá á parar en loco.

If your brother keeps on so, he will go crazy.

851. The expressions **ir siendo, irse haciendo,** and **irse poniendo,** have a cumulative value, equivalent to the English *getting to be*:—

Este diálogo va siendo monótono.

This dialogue is getting monotonous.

La conducta del indio iba siendo sospechosa.

The conduct of the Indian was getting to be suspicious.

Al acercarnos á la frontera del Ecuador el aspecto del país iba siendo más agreste.

As we approached the frontier of Ecuador the aspect of the country kept getting wilder.

Me voy poniendo gordo.

I am getting fat.

Este calor se va haciendo insoportable.

This heat is getting to be insupportable.

852. The same progressive value may be obtained by making a transitive verb reflexive (i.e. intransitive), and employing its gerund in connection with **ir**:—

La temperatura se va elevando.

The temperature is rising.

El orador, según avanzaba en el discurso, se iba animando.

The orator, as he progressed in his speech, became more and more animated.

Las sombras se iban espesando.

The shadows were growing deeper and deeper.

Notamos que el terreno se iba elevando poco á poco.

We noticed that the ground was becoming gradually higher.

PERIPHRASTIC VERBAL EXPRESSIONS.

853. By a *periphrastic verbal expression* is meant, primarily, a combination of two or more words to express a single verbal action; the term is here applied to a number of phrases which govern the infinitive, modifying its meaning in various ways, and are sometimes nearly equivalent to additional tense-forms. Let us consider these in detail.

854. Ir á, governing an infinitive, forms a future expression with its starting point either at the present or at a past time, according to the tense assumed by ir:—

No **vamos á** acrecentar las pesadumbres de nuestro honrado jefe, participándole la defección de aquellos hombres.

We are not going to augment the cares of our worthy chief by telling him of the defection of those men.

El cazador apuntaba con mano segura al tigre, que **iba á** lanzarse sobre él.

The hunter aimed with a steady hand at the tiger which was about to spring upon him.

855. Acabar de, governing an infinitive, expresses an action immediately past and prior either to the present or a past time, according as **acabar** is present or imperfect:—

Se anuncia en los periódicos que dos nuevos cruceros acorazados **acaban de** botarse.

It is reported in the papers that two new armored cruisers have just been launched.

Me dejó para ir á dar la bienvenida á un señor gordifión y mofletudo que **acababa de** entrar.

She left me to welcome a corpulent gentleman with pendulous cheeks, who had just come in.

Se veía también que el edificio apenas **acababa de** terminarse.

It was plain, also, that the building had but just been completed.

856. Haber de, with an infinitive, expresses a probable futurity, denoting what is to happen in the ordinary course of events:—

La dirección de los negocios **ha de** confiarse á una comisión de siete accionistas.

The direction of affairs is to be entrusted to a board of seven stockholders.

Y entonces ¿qué **ha de** hacer una?

Then, what is a body to do?

¿Y porqué **hemos de** rehusar los goces que se hallan esparcidos en el difícil camino de la vida? Siendo ellos tan raros, tan es-

And why are we to refuse the pleasures which are scattered along life's difficult road? Since they are so rare, so scarce, why should

casos, ¿porqué no **hemos de** detenernos y hasta separarnos un poco del escabroso sendero para coger todos los que se hallen á nuestro alcance.

we not stop and even step aside a little from the rugged path to gather all that happen to be within our reach?

857. Haber de is also used with reference to the present, expressing then the belief of the speaker in the truth of the following statement:—

Ha de ser muy rico.	He must be very rich.
He de haberle visto en alguna parte.	I am sure I have seen him somewhere.
La palabra ha de estar en el diccionario.	The word must be in the dictionary.

858. Tener que denotes obligation or necessity to perform the action expressed by the following infinitive:—

Tengo que marcharme.	I have got to go. I must be off.
Tengo que copiar cinco páginas.	I have to copy five pages.
Tengo cinco páginas que copiar.	I have five pages to copy.
Su conducta fué tal que tuve que despedirle.	His conduct was such that I had to dismiss him.
El agente tuvo que contentarse con estos insignificantes detalles.	The agent had to be contented with these insignificant details.
Me desagrada sobre manera tener que comprar el silencio de ese hombre.	I dislike extremely having to buy that man's silence.

859. Tener que also denotes provision without implying obligation:—

No teníamos nada que comer.	We had nothing to eat.
¿Qué tiene V. que fumar?	What have you got to smoke?

REMARK.—But should a noun expressive of any sentiment, feeling or duty intervene between the two verbs, then **de** is used instead of **que**: —

Tengo la honra **de** avisar á V. que . . .	I have the honor to inform you that . . .
V. tendrá el gusto **de** presenciarlo.	You shall have the pleasure of witnessing it.
Tuve la satisfacción **de** verla.	I had the satisfaction of seeing her.

EXERCISE XLII.

The rain fell in *torrents* while we were crossing the English Channel. It has been snowing steadily all day, and now the wind is commencing to blow. It dawns now before five o'clock. It is *evident* that this world is not wholly good, nor is it entirely evil; it behooves, then, to accept it as it is. I forgot to wind up the clock last night. Anna is so fond of the *theater* that her mother thinks she will turn actress. Perhaps some

day she will become[1] celebrated. Our friend Raymond, who used to be a good *Catholic*, has changed completely; I believe he is going to be[2] a Methodist preacher. As (*á medida que*) they approached the mountains, the country kept getting wilder and less inhabited, and the road more impassable. The natives are *gradually* acquiring the tastes, habits and wants of the *civilized* races. This *discussion* is getting to be interesting. This work will be finished some time in June[3]; then we shall have nothing to do, and shall have to look out for another job. They have to bring all their water from a *distance* of thirty miles. It was then ten o'clock, and the last light had just been extinguished in the castle. In this city it does not rain much, but it drizzles most (*la mayor parte*) of the time. Great caution is necessary in this process to prevent a premature *explosion*. The *artist* grew thin *rapidly* and lost his (*el*) appetite. The schooner is to sail Tuesday. My uncle says it looks as if it were going to[4] snow, but I think it will rain. That is more likely, to judge from the clouds. It almost always happens that that man comes *immediately* before dinner time.

CHAPTER XIV.

HABER AND HACER USED IMPERSONALLY.

HABER.

860. We have seen that **haber** has practically lost all its original meaning of possession, and that its principal value is that of an auxiliary verb to build up compound tenses in connection with a past participle. It has also one other wide acceptation not yet spoken of, namely when it is used impersonally.

NOTE.—In a few phrases, remnants of the value which it had in the past, **haber** still has the meaning of *to possess*:—

El ladrón no pudo ser habido.	The thief could not be taken.
Tendrá que habérselas conmigo.	He will have to have it out with me.
El difunto, cuya ánima Dios haya.	The deceased, may God have his soul.
Más vale saber que haber. (*Proverb*).	Knowledge is better than riches. (*Lit.* it is worth more to know than to have.)

861. The form **hé,** followed by one of the adverbs **aquí,** *here,* **ahí** and **allí,** *there,* has been generally associated in the popular mind with **haber.** It is really from **ver,** *to see,* the original form having been **ve aquí,** etc. The object, if a noun, is placed last; if a pronoun, affixed to the verb. **Héme aquí** is literally *see me here,* but to be rendered freely *here I am*[5]:—

[1] llegará á ser . . . [2] según creo, va á ser . . . [3] See § 612.
[4] dice que le parece que va á [5] Compare the French *me voici.*

Hé aquí las razones.	These are the reasons (*indicating what follows*).
Hé ahí las razones.	These are the reasons (*indicating what precedes*).
¿Dónde está mi raspador?—Hélo aquí.	Where is my eraser? Here it is.
No veo mis babuchas en ninguna parte.—Hélas ahí, debajo de su butaca.	I don't see my slippers anywhere.—There they are under your easy-chair.

REMARK.—In the Bible **hé aquí** corresponds to the English *lo* or *behold* :—

Hé aquí yo estableceré mi pacto con vosotros.	Behold I will establish my covenant with you.

862. Only the third person singular, the infinitive, past participle and gerund of **haber** are used impersonally. The compound tenses are built up in the usual manner. One irregularity is that the present indicative is not **ha** but **hay.**

IMPERSONAL CONJUGATION OF **HABER.**

SIMPLE TENSES.

INFINITIVE.	GERUND.	PAST PARTICIPLE.
haber, there . . . to be.	**habiendo**, there being.	**habido**, there having been.

INDICATIVE MOOD.	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
PRESENT.	PRESENT.
hay, there is, there are.	**haya**, there may be.
IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.
había, there was, there were.	**hubiera**, there might be.
AORIST.	AORIST.
hubo, there was, there were.	**hubiese**, there might be.
FUTURE.	FUTURE.
habrá, there will be.	**hubiere**, there should be.

FUTURE CONDITIONAL.

habría, there would be.

COMPOUND TENSES.	
PAST INFINITIVE.	COMPOUND GERUND.
haber habido, there . . . to have been.	**habiendo habido**, there having been.
INDICATIVE MOOD.	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
PERFECT.	PERFECT.
ha habido, there has been, there have been.	**haya habido**, there may have been.
PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
había habido, there had been.	**hubiera habido**, there might have been.
FUTURE PERFECT.	FUTURE PERFECT.
habrá habido, there will have been.	**hubiere habido**, there should have been.
FUTURE CONDITIONAL PAST.	
habría habido, there would have been.	

NOTE.—The peculiar form **hay** is a combination of **ha** with the now obsolete *y, there*, from Latin *ibi, i'i, i, y*. **Ha-y** is therefore homologous to the French *il-y-a, it has there = there is, there are.*

863. These forms denote the existence of what follows, and are to be rendered in English by the appropriate forms of the verb *to be* preceded by *there*. In English the verb agrees in number with the following noun or nouns, while in Spanish the verb is singular throughout:—

Habrá mucha fruta este año.
There will be much fruit this year.

Hubo un rato de silencio.
There was a moment of silence.

Ha habido terremotos é inundaciones.
There have been earthquakes and floods.

Por este lado no **había** ni arrecifes ni escollos.
On this side there were neither reefs nor submerged rocks.

Hay manantiales termales y alcalinos en varias provincias.
There are thermal and alkaline springs in several provinces.

No **hay** volcanes activos, pero existen señales de algunos ya extinguidos.
There are no active volcanoes, but traces exist of some now extinct.

En las regiones cubiertas de bosques de estas mirtáceas no **hay** fiebres intermitentes.
In the regions covered with forests of these myrtaceæ, there are no intermittent fevers.

Antes de esta época **había habido** ligeras vibraciones del suelo.
Prior to this time there had been slight vibrations of the ground.

La región que se halla situada entre la latitud 42° y la de 56° posee un clima notablemente saludable, no **habiendo** grandes extremos de calor ni de frío.
The region which is situated between latitudes 42° and 56° has an especially healthful climate, there being no great extremes of heat or cold.

864. If the noun governed by **haber** has been previously expressed, its place may be taken by a personal pronoun, to avoid repetition:—

Se creyó que habría frutas en abundancia y **las hubo**.
They thought there would be an abundance of fruit and there was.

Hay magníficas perspectivas en la cordillera, y no **las hay** menos hermosas y variadas en los valles.
There are magnificent views in the mountains, and there are no less beautiful and varied ones in the valleys.

Yo estaba temiendo un conflicto pero no **lo hubo**.
I was fearing a conflict, but there was none.

Hay humorismo de varias clases; **lo hay** que consiste en mofarse de todo lo creado, poniendo una negación constante al lado de cualquier sentimiento humano.
There are several kinds of humor; there is that which consists in scoffing at all creation, placing a constant negation against every human feeling.

865. The infinitives **haber** and **haber habido** can be used impersonally only when governed by some verb of finite form:—

Puede haber habido ocasión.
There may have been an opportunity.

Solía haber un castillo en esta loma.
There used to be a castle on this hill.

Debe haber habido un lago aquí en otros tiempos.
There must have been a lake here in other times.

866. Hay is used elliptically to denote distance:—

¿Cuánto hay de aquí á Londres?
How far is it from here to London?

¿Hay mucho de aquí á Cádiz?
Is it far from here to Cadiz?

¿Cuántas millas hay de Berlín á París?
How many miles is it from Berlin to Paris?

Hay próximamente quinientas millas.
It is about 500 miles.

Hay más de A. á B. que de C. á D.
It is farther from A. to B. than from C. to D.

867. Haber used impersonally and followed by **que** and the infinitive of some other verb, denotes necessity or obligation, and may be rendered by *to be necessary*:—

Había que perdonarle esta injusticia por lo que el pobre padecía.	It was necessary to forgive him this injustice on account of what the poor fellow suffered.
¿Qué hay que hacer?	What is to be done?
Hay que matarlos como se mata á los perros rabiosos.	They should be killed like mad dogs.
No había que pensar en ello.	That was not to be thought of.
Hay que tomar en cuenta, además, que la mayor parte de las ventas de mercancias importadas se hacen á plazo, concediendo los ingleses á los comerciantes sud-americanos condiciones más favorables que los norte-americanos.	It must be borne in mind, moreover, that the greater part of sales of imported goods are made on credit, the English offering the South-American tradesmen more favorable terms than do the merchants of the United States.

868. When a noun (or equivalent word) intervenes between **haber** and **que**, the meaning of obligation or necessity is more or less modified:—

Había muchos puntos de interés que visitar, pero no teníamos tiempo para todo.	There were many points of interest to visit, but we did not have time for everything.
No habiendo otro asunto que tratar, se suspendió la sesión.	There being no other business to consider, the meeting was adjourned.
Habrá más de una dificultad que vencer.	There will be more than one difficulty to overcome.
No había ningún peligro que temer por aquel lado.	There was no danger to be feared on that side.

869. With similar value **haber** may take a subject, the following infinitive being then introduced by **de** (see § 856):—

¿Qué hemos de hacer?	What are we to do?
El gobernador ha de comer con nosotros esta tarde.	The governor is to dine with us this evening.
Mañana han de principiar las elecciones municipales.	To-morrow the municipal elections are to begin.

870. The perfect **ha habido** closely approaches **ha estado** in meaning, but the two are not interchangeable. The former is impersonal and takes an object; the latter is personal and has a subject, with which it agrees in number. **Ha habido** covers the entire existence of its object, which may be but **short**;

ha estado relates only to the time when its subject was in a certain place or condition:—

Ha habido un incendio en la casa. There has been a fire in the house.
(*It did not exist before or after being in the house.*)

Ha estado un ladrón en la casa. There has been a thief in the house.
(*His presence there was but a part of his existence.*)

Ha habido durante los últimos tres días gran aglomeración de gente en la ciudad. During the last three days there has been a great crowd of people in town.
(*The crowd did not exist as a crowd before or after being in the city.*)

Han estado durante los últimos tres días cuatro gobernadores en la ciudad. During the last three days there have been four governors in town.
(*Their official existence did not begin or end with that visit.*)

Ha habido un cambio de administración. (*Not* **ha estado.**) There has been a change of administration.

HACER.

871. **Hacer** is used impersonally with two values, in reckoning time and in expressing the state of the weather. In either case only the third person singular, the infinitive, gerund and past participle are used. The object of **hacer** is either a measure of time or a noun expressing the state of the weather, and in either case to be rendered in English by the verb *to be* used impersonally:—

Hace todo un año. It is a whole year.
Hace frio, hace viento. It is cold, it is windy.

APPLIED TO TIME.

872. The expression of time containing **hacer** is followed by a date from which this time is reckoned; when this second clause contains a verb, it is connected with **hacer** by the conjunction **que,** equivalent to the English *since*; when it is expressed by a noun, it is introduced by the preposition **desde,** *since*:—

Hace más de seis años que le ví. It is more than six years since I saw him.

No hace más de cuatro días desde el último día de pagos. It is only four days since last pay-day.

873. **Hacer** expresses the length of time between two points. The initial point is always past; the terminal point may be past, present or future. **Hacer** corresponds to the terminal point, and is past, present or future accordingly:—

Hacía diez años que . . .	It was ten years since . . .
Hace diez años que . . .	It is ten years since . . .
Hará diez años que . . .	It will be ten years since . . .

874. The verb following **hacer** corresponds to the initial point. If the initial point is a completed occurrence, the verb is pluperfect when the terminal point is past and aorist when the terminal point is present or future:—

Hacía entonces seis meses que había llegado.	It was then six months since he had arrived.
Hoy hace seis meses que llegó.	It is six months to-day since he arrived.
Mañana hará seis meses que llegó.	It will be six months to-morrow since he arrived.
Eran entonces las siete y media; hacía veinte minutos que el sol se había ocultado detrás de las cumbres occidentales.	It was then half-past seven, and it was twenty minutes since the sun had set behind the western peaks.
Hace sólo una hora que almorcé.	It is only an hour since I breakfasted.
Hacía siete meses, día por día, que los náufragos habían sido arrojados á la isla.	It was seven months to a day since the castaways had been thrown on the island.
Hace poco tiempo que salió.	It is a short time since he went out.

875. When the second verb covers the entire time between the two points it is of the same tense as **hacer.** In English the second verb is one tense anterior to the terminal point:—

Hacía dos años que vivíamos en aquella casa.	We had been living for two years in that house.
Hace dos años que vivimos en esta casa.	We have been living two years in this house.
De hoy en ocho días hará dos años que viviremos en esta casa.	A week from to-morrow we will have been living two years in this house.
No hacía más que media hora que estaba subiendo la marea.	The tide had not been rising more than half an hour.
Hace más de una hora que la aguardo aquí.	I have been waiting for her here for more than an hour.
Es un secreto que hace mucho tiempo guardo en mi corazón.	It is a secret which I have been keeping for a long time in my heart.

876. The following examples show the contrast between the two usages:—

No hace mucho tiempo que **es** V. de nuestra opinión.	You have not been long of our opinion.
No hace mucho tiempo que **era** V. de nuestra opinión.	It is not long since you were of our opinion.
Hace dos años que **estoy** en Arica.	I have been in Arica for two years.
Hace dos años que **estuve** en Arica.	It is two years since I was in Arica.
Hace más de un año que **oí** hablar de él.	It is more than a year since I heard of him.
Hace más de un año que **no oigo** hablar de él.	I have not heard of him for more than a year.

877. Hacer, followed by a measure of time, may be used parenthetically, to give the date of anything. It is then not connected by **que** with a following statement:—

Yo lo sabía hace dos meses.	I knew it two months ago.
El tren salió hace solamente tres minutos.	The train left only three minutes ago.
Desde hace muchos siglos los brahmanes han sucedido á los sacerdotes del Buda.	Since many centuries ago the brahmins have supplanted the priests of the Buddha.
El niño no había comido desde hacía muchas horas.	The child had not eaten for many hours.

878. Haber also may be used impersonally to express time, in which case it uniformly follows the measure of time. The present indicative is then **há** and not **hay**:—

Dos horas há ; quince días há.	Two hours ago ; a fortnight ago.
Años há ; poco há.	Years ago ; a little while ago.
Ví al alcalde hora y media há.	I saw the mayor an hour and a half ago.
Algunos meses há estaba en B.	A few months ago I was in B.

879. Length of time is also idiomatically expressed by **llevar**, *to carry*:—

¿Cuánto tiempo lleva V. en América?	How long have you been in America?
Encendí el cigarro y saboreé sus primeras aspiraciones con el deleite de un aficionado que llevaba dos días sin fumar.	I lit the cigar and enjoyed the first whiffs with the relish of a lover of the weed who had gone two days without smoking.
La luna, que apenas llevaba dos días, se perdía todavía entre los rayos solares.	The moon, which was hardly two days old, was still lost within the sun's rays.

La primavera llevaba entonces dos meses de fecha.	The spring was then two months advanced.

APPLIED TO WEATHER.

880. In speaking of the state of the weather, **hacer** takes as its object a noun expressing the phase desired:—

Hace mucho sol.	The sun shines brightly.
Ha hecho buen tiempo hoy por la mañana pero ahora lo hace malo.	It was fine this morning, but now it is bad weather.
¿Qué tiempo hace?	What kind of weather is it?
Hace un tiempo muy malsano.	The weather is very unhealthy.
¿Qué tiempo hizo ayer?	What kind of weather was it yesterday?
¿Qué tal tiempo hacía cuando V. entró?	What kind of weather was it when you came in?
Hacía mucho viento.	It was very windy.
Hacía un tiempo magnífico para viajar.	It was magnificent weather for travelling.
Se había abandonado el patio por hacer ya demasiado sol.	The court-yard had been deserted on account of being too sunny.
Hace fresco en la sombra.	It is cool in the shade.

881. In expressing temperature, the Spanish verb corresponding to the English *to be* varies according to what is its subject. In speaking of the weather, the verb is **hacer**; of a person, **tener**; and of a thing, **ser** or **estar** according as the quality is inherent or accidental:—

Hace calor, hace frío.	It is hot, it is cold.
Hacía un calor insoportable.	It was unbearably hot.
Me acerco á la lumbre porque tengo frío.	I approach the fire because I am cold.
Teníamos calor, por haber andado aprisa.	We were warm from having walked rapidly.
El hielo es frío.	Ice is cold.
Esta sopa está fría.	This soup is cold.
El agua no está todavía caliente.	The water is not yet hot.
La pimienta es cálida.	Pepper is hot (pungent).

REMARK.—**Frío**, after **hacer** and **tener**, is a noun, and is intensified by **mucho**; after **ser** or **estar**, it is an adjective and requires **muy**. **Calor**, being a noun, requires **mucho**:—

Tengo mucho (muchísimo) frío.	I am very cold.
Hace mucho (muchísimo) frío.	It is very cold.
Esta cama está muy fría.	This bed is very cold.

Tengo mucho (muchísimo) calor.	I am very warm.
Hace mucho (muchísimo) calor.	It is very warm.

882. Haber, used impersonally, also applies to certain natural phenomena:—

Hay luna, hay claridad de luna.	It is moonlight.
Hay neblina; hay niebla.	It is foggy, misty.
Hay humedad; hay mucho polvo.	It is damp; it is very dusty.
Hay tempestad; hay mucho lodo.	It is stormy; it is very muddy.

☞ As the weather is so frequent a subject of conversation, some miscellaneous expressions may not be out of place here:—

Corre mucho aire.	There is a good breeze.
El viento se refresca.	The wind freshens.
El tiempo es húmedo y caluroso, y creo que vamos á tener un temporal.	The weather is hot and damp, and I think we are going to have a storm.
En efecto; ya acabo de sentir unas gotas.	Yes indeed, I just then felt a few drops.
¿Cuándo le parece á V. que escampará?	When do you think it will stop raining?
El tiempo se ha aclarado un poco.	It has cleared up a little.
El cielo se está poniendo despejado.	The sky is getting clearer.
El tiempo se asegura.	The weather is becoming settled.
Ayer fuí sorprendido por un aguacero que me caló hasta los huesos.	Yesterday I was overtaken by a shower which drenched me to the bones.
El tiempo está pesado, el calor es muy molesto, y se ven en el cielo esas nubes cobrizas que anuncian la tempestad.	The weather is close, the heat is very oppressive, and in the sky are seen those coppery clouds which presage a storm.
Opino que el tiempo está para cambiar; los calores continúan siendo excesivos, y se conoce que la atmósfera está cargada de humedad; es realmente de temerse un período de tiempo tempestuoso.	I think the weather is about to change; the heat continues intense, and it is evident that the air is charged with moisture; it is really to be feared that we will have a spell of stormy weather.
El viento se levanta; el cielo se está cubriendo de nubes espesas.	The wind is rising; the sky is becoming covered with dense clouds.
Aquellos nubarrones amenazan resolverse en lluvias tempestuosas.	Those storm-clouds threaten to turn into pouring rain.
Llueve á cántaros, y los truenos retumban con gran violencia.	It is raining pitchforks, and the thunder rolls with great violence.
Las nubes se disipan y aparece de nuevo el sol.	The clouds break and the sun comes out again.
La tormenta ha pasado.	The storm has passed.
Tenemos quince grados bajo cero.	It is fifteen degrees below zero.

Hiela de una manera atroz. Las aceras están muy resbaladizas.	It is freezing fearfully. The sidewalks are very slippery.
El tiempo se ha dulcificado algo.	The weather has moderated somewhat.

EXERCISE XLIII.

There will be a good crop of hay after the rain which has fallen. They say there will be an *annular eclipse* (*m.*) of the sun[1] to-morrow. There is *absolutely* nothing to correct in your letter; your style has improved wonderfully. There was once a garden in this very place; but that was a long time ago. There are great numbers[2] of turtles on the coast; there are some so large that one man is not sufficient to turn one of them upside down. It is about 500 miles from *Guayaquil* to *Trujillo*. It is 128 miles from the mouth of the *Atrato* to the *Pacific*, along the survey of the *canal* of *Darien* (1). It is necessary in time of peace to make preparations for war, and in youth to make *provision* for age. There is to be a boat-race on the lake to-morrow. What were we to do, with a broken axle and a pouring rain,[3] when there was not a house in sight? This room is damp and cold; there has not been a fire in it this winter. There had been a *political* convention in the town during the previous week. There had been a *circus* in the town the day before. It has been extremely hot[4] this summer. It is only three days since you received a month's salary, and now you say that you are without money. It will be 54 years in June since the first steamship, the *Sirius*, crossed the *Atlantic*. He had been studying German three years, and still read it with difficulty. The explorers have been here more than a week. It is more than a week since the explorers were here. I have had years of *experience* in matters of this kind. What kind of weather[5] is it out? It is cold and very windy; if we go out without overcoats we will be cold and perhaps will get pneumonia.[6]

CHAPTER XV.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

883. The subjunctive mood derives its name from the circumstance that it is always *subjoined* to or subservient to some leading or governing idea.

The indicative mood is based upon knowledge or certainty, the subjunctive upon doubt, desire or some emotion or mental inquietude. The indicative is employed in principal and leading clauses, and states positive certainties—things that actually are or are not—or asks direct questions. The subjunctive never

[1] de sol (*omit the article*). [2] hay una multitud . . . [3] una lluvia que caía á torrentes. [4] un calor excesivo. [5] qué tal tiempo. [6] cogeremos una pulmonía.

makes a direct statement nor asks a direct question; it is secondary and dependent for existence either upon some finite verb (expressed or understood) or upon an uncertainty implied in some other way.

This is the fundamental distinction, pervading the various uses of the subjunctive, which must be expounded separately and step by step.

The student should bear in mind that: *a*. The subjunctive is not the only means for expressing contingence or dependence, which may be shown also by the infinitive and indicative. *b*. In many cases where the subjunctive would be adopted in a formal or elevated style, or to emphasize the feature of contingency, it would be deemed affected in more free or colloquial speech. *c*. The line of demarcation is often faint, and not susceptible of clear definition. *d*. In Spanish, as in other modern languages, the use of the subjunctive is decreasing; so that many of the delicate distinctions of the last century would appear strained in writings of the present day.

☞ The subjunctive mood has the same complement of tenses as the indicative; viz., present, imperfect, aorist and future, and the corresponding compound tenses formed by **haber** and a past participle.

884. The present subjunctive is formed in regular verbs by joining the following terminations to the stem of the verb:—

		1st Conjugation.	2nd and 3rd Conjugations.
Sing.	1 pers.	**-e,**	**-a,**
	2 pers.	**-es,**	**-as,**
	3 pers.	**-e,**	**-a,**
Plur.	1 pers.	**-emos,**	**-amos,**
	2 pers.	**-éis,**	**-áis,**
	3 pers.	**-en.**	**-an.**

Remark.—In the present indicative the characteristic vowel of the first conjugation is **a**, of the second and third, **e**. They change places in the present subjunctive.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE MODEL VERBS.

Sing.	1 pers.	compre,	venda,	viva,
	2 pers.	compres,	vendas,	vivas,
	3 pers.	compre,	venda,	viva,
Plur.	1 pers.	compremos,	vendamos,	vivamos,
	2 pers.	compréis,	vendáis,	viváis,
	3 pers.	compren.	vendan.	vivan.

885. The subjunctive present of irregular verbs generally follows the irregularity of the indicative. The subjunctive present of those already introduced is given below,—that of **dar** being regular, and that of **estar** being irregular only in its accentuation[1]:—

QUERER:	quiera,	quieras,	quiera,	queramos,	queráis,	quieran.
TENER:	tenga,	tengas,	tenga,	tengamos,	tengáis,	tengan.
VENIR:	venga,	vengas,	venga,	vengamos,	vengáis,	vengan.
HABER:	haya,	hayas,	haya,	hayamos,	hayáis,	hayan.
HACER:	haga,	hagas,	haga,	hagamos,	hagáis,	hagan.
SER:	sea,	seas,	sea,	seamos,	seáis,	sean.
SALIR:	salga,	salgas,	salga,	salgamos,	salgáis,	salgan.
DECIR:	diga,	digas,	diga,	digamos,	digáis,	digan.
IR:	vaya,	vayas,	vaya,	vayamos,	vayáis,	vayan.
VER:	vea,	veas,	vea,	veamos,	veáis,	vean.
ESTAR:	esté,[1]	estés,	esté,	estemos,	estéis,	estén.
DAR:	dé,[2]	des,	dé,	demos,	deis,	den.

☞ The first and third persons singular are everywhere alike throughout this mood; the pronoun subject must therefore be expressed in cases where ambiguity would result from its omission.

886. The present subjunctive of **haber** followed by a past participle forms the perfect subjunctive, the two tenses bearing the same relation to each other as in the indicative mood:—

SING.	haya	ido, dicho, visto, etc.	
	hayas	" " " "	
	haya	" " " "	
PLUR.	hayamos	ido, dicho, etc.	
	hayáis	" " "	
	hayan	" " "	

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

887. The application of the subjunctive mood may be divided into two heads according as the idea which requires it is expressed or not. We will first consider the various cases where it is expressed.

---

[1] **Estar** is acccented on the last syllable because that is the essential part of the verb. The root is *sta* (Latin and Italian *stare*), and the initial *e* is prefixed in Spanish because that language does not tolerate an initial *s* followed by a consonant.

[2] The accent on **dé** is merely diacritic—to distinguish it from the preposition **de**.

AFTER VERBS OF CAUSING.

888. The principal use of the subjunctive is after verbs expressing an action calculated to cause another person or thing to act. The force of the governing verb varies from an authoritative command to a mere rèquest or preference. What is true of the above is equally applicable to verbs of opposite effect, tending to prevent another from doing something:—

COMMAND.

El general ha mandado que se **fusile** á los desertores.	The general has ordered that the deserters be shot.
El tribunal decreta que se le **restituya** la propiedad.	The court has decreed that the property be restored to him.
Diré al gaitero que se **vaya** en seguida.	I will tell the bag-piper to be off at once.
Se resuelve: Que se **nombre** por el Señor Presidente una Comisión sobre Comisiones, con el objeto de indicar é informar al Congreso el número de comisiones que á su juicio deban establecerse.	Resolved, That there be appointed by the President a Committee on Committees, whose duty it shall be to designate and report to the Congress the number of committees which, in its judgment, should be appointed.

DEMAND, REQUEST.

Nuestro deber exije que lo **intentemos**.	Our duty demands that we attempt it.
Le ruego á V. que me **ayude**.	I beg you to aid me.
Suplico á Vds. que no se **enfaden**.	I entreat you not to be angry.
El conde de Meneses está en la antecámara, y pide que Vuestra Majestad se **digne** acordarle la gracia de una corta audiencia.	Count Meneses is in the anteroom, and asks that Your Majesty deign to grant him the favor of a short audience.

PROPOSAL, SUGGESTION.

Propongo, que, resultando empate en la votación, la cuestión se **considere** resuelta negativamente.	I propose that in case of a tie vote the question be considered as decided in the negative.
Me permito sugerir á la Mesa que **declare** un receso de quince minutos para el cambio de opiniones acerca de esta materia.	I beg to suggest that the Chair declare a recess of fifteen minutes for an exchange of opinions on this matter.

PERMISSION, DISPOSITION.

Permitiré que se **ausente** por dos días.	I will permit him to be absent for two days.
He dispuesto que los empleados **tengan** un día festivo.	I have arranged for the clerks to have a holiday.

APPROVAL, PREFERENCE.

Apruebo que lo **hagan**.	I approve of their doing it.
Prefiero que no se **lea** la carta ahora.	I prefer that the letter be not read now.
¿Tendrá V. á bien que yo no **vaya** allí?	Will you approve of my not going there?

PROHIBITION, HINDRANCE.

Prohibo que **entren**.	I forbid their coming in.
Esto impedirá que **salga** el agua.	This will prevent the water from getting out.
Desapruebo que lo **hagan**.	I disapprove of their doing it.
No permito que los niños **jueguen** con armas de fuego.	I do not permit the children to play with fire-arms.
El objeto de las leyes es impedir que se **cometan** injusticias.	It is the object of the law to prevent injustice from being committed.

AFTER EXPRESSIONS OF EMOTION AND FEELING.

889. By extension of the foregoing usage the subjunctive is required after verbs expressing a feeling about an action of some other person or thing:—

Extraño que V. **haya** necesitado tanto tiempo.	I am surprised that you have needed so much time.
Celebro que le **haya** salido tan bien su empresa.	I rejoice that his undertaking has turned out so well for him.
Temo que se lo **diga** á ella.	I am afraid he will tell it to her.
Siento que Vds. se **hayan** visto precisados á aguardarme.	I am sorry you have been obliged to wait for me.
Tememos que este retardo **sea** fatal para nuestros proyectos.	We fear that this delay may be fatal to our plans.

AFTER IMPERSONAL VERBS AND EXPRESSIONS.

890. When impersonal verbs that do not state a certainty or probability characterize the action of a following verb with an expressed subject, that verb is subjunctive:—

Conviene que V. se lo **avise**.	It is proper for you to inform him of it.
Importa que **lleguen** á tiempo.	It is important for them to arrive in time.
Bastará que yo **recoja** algo más las costuras debajo del brazo.	It will do if I take in the seams under the arms a little more.
Precisa que nos **mantengamos** preparados.	It is necessary that we hold ourselves in readiness.

891. The same is the case when **ser** (or **estar**), used impersonally, is followed by an adjective,—or noun having the value of an adjective:—

Es lástima que **tenga** V. tanta prisa.	It is a pity that you are in such a hurry.
Es cosa singular que no se **haya** tratado nunca de este asunto.	It is a singular thing that this subject has never been treated of.
Es muy raro que se **encuentren** ballenas en esta latitud.	It is very rare that whales are met with in this latitude
Es dudoso que **hallen** un coche á una hora tan avanzada.	It is doubtful if they find a hack at so late an hour.
No es conveniente que V. mismo lo **haga**.	It is not proper for you to do it yourself.
Es tiempo de que **partamos**.	It is time for us to start.
Es triste que **haya** visto fracasar todas sus tentativas.	It is sad that he has seen all his attempts fail.

892. The impersonal expression of passive value (§ 843, **Rem.**), composed of **ser** connected with a following infinitive by **de**, likewise requires the subjunctive:—

Es de esperarse que la noche nos **permita** evadir sus pesquisas.	It is to be hoped that the night will permit us to elude their search.
Es de temerse que el gasto **exceda** á los ingresos.	It is to be feared that the expenditure will exceed the receipts.
Es de desearse que, á fin de disminuir el costo de la obra, se **aprovechen** en cuanto sea posible las vías férreas existentes.	It is desirable that, in order to diminish the cost of the work existing lines of railroad be utilized as far as possible.

AFTER EXPRESSIONS OF DENIAL OR DOUBT.

893. When the verb of the principal clause denies, or expresses uncertainty, doubt or disbelief about the action of another person or thing, the verb expressing that action is subjunctive:—

Niego que el ebanista **tenga** la intención de devolver el cepillo.	I deny that the joiner intends to return the plane.
Dudo que **sea** culpable.	I doubt his being guilty.
Apenas puedo creer que ella **haya** dicho tal cosa.	I can hardly believe that she has said such a thing.
¿Puede ser verdad que **trate** de engañarnos?	Can it be true that he is trying to deceive us?
No me imagino ni por un momento que **abrigue** la menor sospecha acerca de nuestros proyectos.	I do not suppose even for an instant that he entertains the least suspicion with regard to our plans.
No creo que mi padre se **alegre** mucho de este descubrimiento.	I do not think my father will be very glad of this discovery.
¿Cree V. que se **haya** rechazado el proyecto de ley para el aumento de mi pensión?	Do you believe the Bill for the increase of my pension has been rejected?

REMARK.—In questions, if the dependent verb relates to the future, it is put in the future indicative:—

¿Cree V. que llegaremos á tiempo?	Do you think we will arrive in time?
¿Suponen Vds. que se publicará mi novela?	Do you suppose my novel will be published?

AFTER A RELATIVE.

894. After a relative pronoun referring to a person, thing or idea which is either unknown or not definitely known, the verb of the dependent clause is subjunctive:—

Quiero un guía que **hable** inglés.	I want a guide who speaks English.
No tardaremos en encontrar algún aldeano que nos **enseñe** el camino.	We shall not be long in meeting some peasant who will show us the road.
Debemos hacer cuanto **esté** de nuestra parte para ocultar nuestra presencia en la vecindad.	We must do all that is in our power to hide our presence in the neighborhood.
El capitán ha prometido una recompensa al primero de la tripulación que **aborde** un buque enemigo.	The captain has promised a reward to the first one of the crew who boards a vessel of the enemy.
Si V. quiere una hoja cuyo temple **sea** bueno, yo podré proporcionársela.	If you want a blade whose temper shall be good, I can furnish you with one.

895. In the same manner a subjunctive follows a relative adverb of time or place when the time or place is not definitely known:—

Se lo diré cuando **venga**.	I will tell him when he comes.
La pieza se amueblará como V. **quiera**.	The room will be furnished as you may wish.
Iré á donde V. me **mande**.	I will go where you may send me.

896. Hence the indefinite expressions formed by appending the termination **quiera** to relative pronouns and adverbs are followed by a subjunctive. The **quiera** is itself the subjunctive present of **querer**, and corresponds to the English appended *ever* or *soever*, meaning *what you will*:—

Quienquiera que **sea.**	Whoever he may be.
Dondequiera[1] que se **encuentre** Vd.	Wherever you may find yourself.
Cuandoquiera que **vuelvan.**	Whenever they return.
Comoquiera que **obremos.**	However we manage.
Cualquiera disculpa que **ofrezca.**	Whatever excuse he offers.

897. Cualquiera and its plural **cualesquiera** may drop the final **a** when immediately preceding a noun, but not otherwise. The apocopation of the other words is now antiquated:—

Cualesquier noticias que nos traigan.	Whatever news they bring us.
Cualesquier esfuerzos que V. haga.	Whatever efforts you make.

REMARK.—**Quequiera** is not in use; its place is taken by **cualquier[a] cosa**, *whatever*:—

Cualquier cosa que digan.	Whatever they say.
Cualquiera cosa que V. haya hecho por mi hermano.	Whatever you may have done for my brother.
Apuesto cualquier cosa á que no lo intenta.	I'll bet anything that he won't attempt it.

898. Cualquiera may be employed as an adjective before a noun of either number, or after a singular noun preceded by the indefinite article; it is also used partitively before a plural noun preceded by **de**:—

Cualquier día; cualesquier criadas.	Any day at all; any servants at all.
Un defecto cualquiera.	Any fault at all.
Cualquiera de los buques.	Whichever of the vessels.

REMARK.—*Whatever* may also be expressed by **sea el que quiera**, the demonstrative **el** agreeing with a following noun. The phrase is followed by a subjunctive preceded by **que**:—

Sean las que quiera las escalas que **haga** el vapor, no por eso tendremos ocasión de ver mucho del país.	Whatever be the landings made by the steamer, we will not necessarily have a chance to see much of the country.

---

[1] **Dondequiera** has an abbreviated form **doquiera** or **doquier**, found in poetic style.

Sean los que quiera los obstáculos que se opongan á nuestro progreso, no dejaremos de conseguir el fin apetecido.

Whatever obstacles may oppose our advance, we shall not fail to reach the desired goal.

899. The subjunctive is in like manner required by the formula of similar value, **por . . . que,** the interval being filled by an adjective or adverb. The construction is to be rendered in English by *however,* followed by an adjective or adverb:—

Por atrevidos que **sean** sus proyectos.

However daring his plans may be.

Por cuerdamente que **obren.**

However prudently they act.

Por mucho que V. **diga,** no la convencerá.

However much you say you will not convince her.

Por muy sencilla que **parezca** á primera vista aquella pregunta.

However simple that question may appear at first sight.

900. When the intervening word is a noun, it is preceded by **mucho** or **más,** the formula being then translated by *whatever*:—

Por muchas riquezas que **tenga,** bien pronto les verá el fin.

Whatever riches he has, he will soon see the end of them.

Por más dinero que **gane,** nunca se hará rico.

Whatever money he earns he will never get rich.

Por muchos disparates que V. **haga,** no me reiré de V.

Whatever blunders you make I shall not laugh at you.

901. The dependent verb is also subjunctive after a relative when the antecedent clause is negative, restrictive, or interrogative requiring a negative answer:—

No conozco á nadie que **pueda** igualarle.

I know no one who can equal him.

No puede hallar ningún criado que **quiera** servirle.

He cannot find any servant who is willing to serve him.

Aquí no hay cosa que **merezca** nuestra atención.

There is nothing here which deserves our attention.

Los dos hermanos gemelos son tan parecidos en todo que viéndolos juntos no hay quien los **distinga.**

The twin brothers are so much alike in every respect that there is no one who can distinguish them on seeing them together.

¿Acaso existe otra nación á cuya vista se **despliegue** el espectáculo de un porvenir tan grande é inspirador; otro pueblo, digo, que **tenga** como éste, territorios tan amplios, habitantes tan adelan-

Does any other nation exist before whose gaze is unfolded the prospect of so grand and inspiring a future; any other people, I say, which possesses, as this does, such extensive territories, such enlightened in-

tados, leyes tan justas y una libertad tan asegurada?	habitants, such just laws and such a firmly-founded liberty?

REMARK.—The subjunctive may be employed after a relative preceded by a superlative. This is not now generally adhered to, and when used, serves to modify the force of the superlative or to suggest that the statement is merely an opinion:—

Ésta es la mejor presentación del asunto, que yo **haya** visto.	This is the best presentation of the subject that I have seen.
Es el médico más hábil que yo **haya** conocido.	He is the most able physician that I have known.

AFTER CONJUNCTIVE EXPRESSIONS.

902. The theory has been advanced by some that certain conjunctions govern the subjunctive mood. A more correct view is that these conjunctions are themselves required by a previous idea which requires also the subjunctive. This is evidenced by the fact that often the same conjunction may be followed by a subjunctive or an indicative according to the leading idea of the sentence.

The most important of these conjunctions and conjunctive expressions are given in detail below; it is to be borne in mind that the subjunctive is employed after them only when the leading verb or idea expresses causation, or when the dependent verb implies negation or uncertainty.

903. *PURPOSE.*

The subjunctive may be used after the following conjunctions, to express the purpose or intention of an action:—

Á fin de que, in order.	**Para que**, in order that.
De manera que, so as, so that.	**Que**, so that, in order that.
De modo que, so as, so that.	

EXAMPLES.

Las muestras se hallan rotuladas con el mayor esmero, á fin de que los visitantes **sepan** á que atenerse.	The specimens are labelled with the greatest care in order that the visitors may know what they are looking at.
Colocaré el reverbero de manera que su luz se **derrame** sobre el libro de V.	I will place the lamp so that its light shall be shed on your book.
Lo pongo aquí de modo que no lo **vea** nadie.	I put it here so that no one shall see it.

De noche ponen linternas sobre los montones de morrillos para que los transeúntes no **tropiecen** con ellos.
At night they put lanterns on the heaps of rubble so that the passers-by shall not stumble against them.

Ven que te **abrace**.
Come, that I may embrace you.

Colóquese V. aquí que no le **vean**.
Place yourself here so that they may not see you.

904. *RESULT.*[1]

The subjunctive is used after the following conjunctions when they are preceded by a phrase expressing what is calculated to produce the result expressed by the subjunctive:—

Tal que, such that.
Tanto que, so much that.
Tan . . . que, so . . . that.
De tal modo que, in suchwise that.
Para que, so that.
Que, that, for.

NEGATIVE RESULT.

Sin que, without.

EXAMPLES.

Importúnele V. tanto que se **vea** forzado á pagarle.
Dun him so much that he will have to pay you.

Es bastante amigo mío para que **pueda** fiarme de él.
He is sufficiently my friend for me to be able to trust him.

Haré construir por este lado una torre tan alta que **domine** á todas las cercanías.
I will have a tower built on this side so high that it may overlook all the surrounding country.

Trate V. de hablar de tal modo que nadie se **ofenda**.
Try to speak in suchwise that no one will be offended.

No podremos pasar las líneas sin que los piquetes **hagan** fuego sobre nosotros.
We cannot pass the lines without the pickets firing on us.

905. *SUPPOSITION.*

The subjunctive is employed after the following conjunctive expressions indicating supposition:—

Dado que, **Dado caso que**, } in case, supposing that.
En caso de que, **Para el caso de que**, } in case.
Que, whether.
Sea que, **Ya sea que**, } if, whether.
Supóngase que, **Suponiendo que**, **Supuesto que**, } supposing that.

[1] When the result is spoken of as a fact, the dependent verb is indicative.

EXAMPLES.

Dado que él **haya** divulgado el proyecto, como se dice, no veo que tengamos por qué desesperarnos.
Supposing he has divulged the plan, as they say, I do not see that we have reason to give up.

En caso de que **venga** el alcalde, ¿qué le diremos?
In case the mayor comes, what shall we tell him?

Será conveniente apartarnos todos del sitio para el caso de que la pieza **reviente**.
It will be advisable for all of us to get out of the way lest the piece should burst.

Que el "Popol Vuh" **sea** un libro auténtico ó una mera falsificación, es una cuestión que se agita aún entre los sabios.
Whether the "Popol Vuh" be a genuine book or a mere fabrication, is a question which is still discussed among the learned.

Ella tiene necesidad de nuestro auxilio, sea que lo **merezca** ó no.
She needs our assistance, whether she deserves it or not.

Aún suponiendo que **sea** un ciervo, no es posible que nuestras balas le alcancen á una distancia de media milla.
Even supposing that it be a deer, it is not possible for our bullets to hit him at a distance of half a mile.

906.

PROVISO.

Con tal de que, / **Siempre que,** } provided that.

Á condición [de] que, on condition that.

EXAMPLES.

Terminaré este capítulo á eso de las nueve, con tal que no **vengan** visitas que me interrumpan.
I shall finish this chapter about nine o'clock provided no visitors come to interrupt me.

Consentiremos en asegurar su casa con tal de que **mande** demoler las barracas contiguas.
We are willing to insure his house provided he will have the adjoining sheds torn down.

Consiento en comprar la casa por el precio mencionado, siempre que su dueño **mande** reparar los establos.
I am willing to buy the house at the price named, provided the owner has the stables repaired.

Mandaré hacer el apeo á condición de que V. **pague** la mitad de los gastos.
I will have the survey made on condition that you pay half of the expense.

907.

EXCEPTION.

Á menos que, / **Á no ser que,** } unless.

Excepto que, except that.
Salvo que, save that, unless.

EXAMPLES.

No saldré á menos que V. me **acompañe**.
I shall not go out unless you **accompany** me.

Es decir, á no ser que se me **avise** lo contrario.
That is to say, unless I am informed to the contrary.

Partiré mañana á menos que **haga** mal tiempo.
I shall start to-morrow unless the weather be bad.

Nada impedirá que lleguemos á San Francisco en cuatro días excepto que **acontezca** un choque ó un descarrilamiento.
Nothing will prevent us from arriving in San Francisco in four days unless there is a collision or the train runs off the track.

Salvo que los precios **bajen** de un modo inesperado, ganaré por lo menos ochenta por ciento.
Unless prices fall unexpectedly I shall gain at least eighty per cent.

908. *CONCESSION.*

Aunque, **Así,** } although, though.
Á pesar de que, **Á despecho de que,** } in spite of.
Aun cuando, even though.
No obstante que, **Sin embargo de que,** } notwithstanding that.

EXAMPLES.

No acabará V. el traje para la hora prometida aunque **trabaje** toda la noche.
You will not finish the gown by the hour promised, although you work all night.

No faltaré á la cita, así **tenga** que pasar el río á nado.
I shall not break my appointment, though I have to swim the river.

Es un joven que, á pesar de que al principio **tenga** muchos obstáculos que vencer, no tardará en cobrar fama.
He is a young man who, in spite of [the fact] that he may have many obstacles to overcome at first, will not fail to make a name for himself.

Aun cuando la rapidez de su marcha **exceda** quince nudos, no nos alcanzarán con la delantera que les llevamos.
Even if their speed be over fifteen knots, they will not overtake us with the start we have on them.

Lo que se llama "la Sociedad" amenudo rechazará á un hombre sin embargo de que su carácter **sea** intachable, sus modales distinguidos y sus sentimientos elevados.
What is called "Society" will often reject a man notwithstanding that his character may be without fault, his manners refined and his sentiments elevated.

909. *DENIAL.*

Lejos de que, so far from.
No sea que, lest.

EXAMPLES.

Lejos de que la adversidad **sea** un mal, es amenudo un remedio, un contraveneno de la prosperidad.	So far from adversity being an evil, it is often a cure, an antidote to prosperity.
El jurado se rehusa á leer los diarios, no sea que se **exponga** á influencias sobornadoras.	The juror refuses to read the daily papers lest he expose himself to improper influences.

910. *TEMPORAL CLAUSES.*

After the following conjunctive expressions of time or extent, the subjunctive is required when uncertainty is implied:—

Á medida que, according as.
Antes [de] **que**, before.
Como, as, whenever.
Después que, after.
En cuanto, when; as far as.
Hasta donde, as far as.
Cuando, when.
Hasta el momento en que, until the time when.
Hasta que, until.
Luego que, as soon as.
Mientras que, while.
Para cuando, by the time when.
Siempre que, whenever.

EXAMPLES.

Me encargo de corregir las pruebas á medida que **lleguen** de la imprenta.	I will take care to correct the proof according as it comes from the printer's.
Hay que estar en Arequipa antes de que **salga** el sol.	We must be in Arequipa before the sun rises.
Le mandaré á V. los fundos como V. los **necesite**.	I will send you the funds as you need them.
Después que **haya** hecho visar mi pasaporte, estaré á la disposición de V.	After I have had my passport viséed I shall be at your disposal.
En cuanto V. la **conozca** mejor, la hallará simpática é instruida.	When you get better acquainted with her, you will find her congenial and intelligent.
Trataré de complacer á V. en cuanto me **sea** posible.	I shall endeavor to oblige you as far as may be possible for me.
Viajaremos en coche hasta donde el camino **sea** practicable.	We shall travel in a carriage as far as the road is passable.
Juzgo prudente el echar el cerrojo hasta el momento en que no **haya** que temer tan mala visita.	I deem it prudent to bolt the door until the time when there will be no need to fear such an unpleasant visit.
Quedaremos al abrigo de esta choza hasta que la tempestad se **modere**.	We will remain under the shelter of this cabin until the storm moderates.

Luego que V. los **vea**, admitirá que no he exagerado su tamaño.	As soon as you see them you will admit that I have not exaggerated their size.
Seguiré la pista del asesino mientras que me **sostengan** las piernas.	I shall follow the trail of the murderer while my legs sustain me.
Estaremos listos para la partida para cuando **salga** la luna.	We will be ready for the start by the time the moon rises.
Siempre que V. **necesite** al portero, no tendrá V. que hacer más que tocar el botón del timbre eléctrico.	Whenever you need the messenger, you will have but to touch the button of the electric bell.

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

911. The perfect subjunctive occurs only in connection with an independent verb in the present or future tense, and represents an action as completed before the time indicated by that verb:—

Es un milagro que no se **haya roto** el pescuezo.	It is a wonder that he has not broken his neck.
Le prestaré á V. este libro cuando lo **haya leído** yo mismo.	I will lend you this book when I have read it myself.
Se habrá ganado mucho cuando se **haya llegado** á adquirir aquella común confianza sobre la que debe descanzar toda amistad internacional.	Great will have been the gain when we have acquired that common confidence upon which all international friendship must rest.

GENERAL REMARKS.

912. Certain verbs, mostly intransitive, require a preposition both in English and Spanish to connect their meaning with a noun object. But while in English this preposition is omitted before a dependent verb, it is retained in Spanish, the conjunction **que** following:—

Todo contribuye **á** la felicidad de Vds.	Everything contributes to your happiness.
Todo contribuye **á que** Vds. **sean** felices.	Everything contributes to your being happy.
Me alegro **del** restablecimiento de la Srita. hermana de V.	I am glad of your sister's recovery.
Me alegro **de que** la Srita. hermana de V. **esté** restablecida.	I am glad that your sister has recovered.
Se admira **de que hayamos** logrado aprender el ruso.	He wonders that we have succeeded in learning Russian.

Señores, la Mesa insiste **en que** las actas **sean** suscritas por cada uno de los miembros.	Gentlemen, the Chair insists that the minutes be signed by each of the members.

913. The preposition is in like manner retained after an adjective, participle or noun, when followed by **que** and a dependent verb:—

Estamos muy contentos **con que** no se **haya** perdido el original.	We are very glad that the original has not been lost.
Estoy sorprendido **de que** el trabajo **haya** exigido tanto tiempo.	I am surprised that the work has taken so much time.
Tengo el más sincero deseo **de que** se **adopten** lo más pronto posible esas medidas.	I have the most sincere wish that those measures be adopted as soon as possible.
Hemos tenido sumo cuidado **en que** la doctrina de los modelos **sea** ejemplarísima y moral.	We have taken great care that the teaching of the examples may be most exemplary and moral.

914. The idea which causes the dependent verb to be subjunctive is not necessarily expressed by a verb. The ideas of causation and emotion require either a verb or an equivalent noun; but those of negation and uncertainty may be conveyed by a noun, pronoun, adverb or conjunction:—

Su objección á que **emprendamos** el negocio nos tiene con poco cuidado.	His objection to our undertaking the business gives us little concern.
Sólo el temor de que su padre le **castigue**, le hace observar buena conducta.	Only the fear that his father will punish him makes him observe good behavior.
No hay peligro de que los equipajes se **extravíen**.	There is no danger of the baggage going astray.
La sentencia es que **pague** una multa de cien pesos, ó, á falta de esto, que **sufra** tres meses de prisión.	The sentence is that he pay a fine of $100, or, in default thereof, that he receive three months' imprisonment.

915. The conjunction **que** may be omitted before the subjunctive when the latter is governed by an expression of causation or emotion (§§ 888–9):—

Espero se **digne** V. recordar que yo no he abusado nunca de esta autoridad.	I hope that you will be good enough to remember that I have never abused this authority.
Me permito suplicar á V. se **sirva** enviarme, á vuelta de correo, dos ejemplares del mapa de Méjico levantado por V.	I beg to request that you will be so kind as to send me, by return mail, two copies of the map of Mexico prepared by you.

Tememos **sean** socorridos los enemigos.	We are afraid the enemy will **be** reinforced.
Es de esperarse no **tarden** mucho en presentarse.	It is to be hoped they will not **be long** in presenting themselves.

Exercise XLIV.

I fear my brother is ill; it is more than a month since I received[1] a letter from him. I do not think that you have occasion to be *alarmed*; when he wrote to me he said he was very busy, and I doubt whether he has had time to write since. It is a pity that you have to work until so late. When I receive the package of books which I have ordered, I will lend you those which you may desire to read. It will be *necessary* for you to go over the work in order to *verify* the calculations. We have been experimenting with *metallic* alloys with the object of[2] discovering the one that combines in the highest degree lightness with strength. However much he may earn, if he does not save, he will never be rich. However brilliant these *colors* may be now, they will fade quickly. I do not desire anything which will not be consistent with justice or the *public* welfare. I shall not go out while the storm continues so *violent*, unless some one of my patients should need my *services*. I will undertake to correct the errors that you make in your exercises. Whatever *extravagant opinion* arises, there is always some credulous [person] ready to accept it. However great be the dangers that we may have to face, the country demands that we shall not waver in the fulfilment of our duty. As an advancing army is careful that no hostile fortress remain to harass its rear, it is important, gentlemen, that in your studies you leave no unconquered[3] ground behind.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE FORMED FROM THE AORIST STEM.

☞ In the preceding portions of this chapter have been set forth the principal cases in which the subjunctive mood is required. The illustrations have been confined to the present and perfect tenses. In treating the remaining tenses it is to be understood that we are dealing with cases in which the subjunctive mood is required, and that we have only to consider what tense of that mood is to be adopted.

916. The imperfect, aorist and future tenses are formed by means of the terminations in the table below, which are in all cases appended to the stem of the aorist indicative as found by removing the termination of the first person singular. If that

---

[1] que no recibo carta . . . [2] con objeto de . . . [3] por conquistar.

be irregular, the same irregularity pervades these tenses of the subjunctive. In regular verbs, this is the same thing as adding the termination to the stem of the verb as obtained by removing the infinitive ending.

TABLE OF TERMINATIONS.

IMPERFECT.		AORIST.		FUTURE.	
1 CONJ.	2 AND 3 CONJ.	1 CONJ.	2 AND 3 CONJ.	1 CONJ.	2 AND 3 CONJ.
-ara,	-iera,	-ase,	-iese,	-are,	-iere,
-aras,	-ieras,	-ases,	-ieses,	-ares,	-ieres,
-ara,	-iera,	-ase,	-iese,	-are,	-iere,
-áramos,	-iéramos,	-ásemos,	-iésemos,	áremos,	-iéremos,
-arais,	-ierais,	-aseis,	-ieseis,	-areis,	-iereis,
-aran.	-ieran.	-asen.	-iesen.	-aren.	-ieren.

IMPERFECT, AORIST AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

917. The imperfect and aorist tenses, although tolerably distinct in the indicative, have ceased to be so in the subjunctive mood, and are interchangeable (except in expressing conditions, as shown in Chapter XVI).[1] It is found, however, that the aorist is the more frequently used, so that where there is a choice, it has the preference.

918. The imperfect and aorist subjunctive are used after a governing verb in the present or future tense when the action of the subjunctive verb is wholly past:—

Es muy dudoso que Marco Antonio **fuese** un hombre tan disoluto y abandonado como Cicerón le pinta.

It is quite doubtful whether Mark Antony was as dissolute and abandoned a man as Cicero paints him.

Algún día bendecirás á Dios de que tu padre **tuviese** la previsión de inculcarte la importancia de fijarte cuidadosamente en los pormenores.

Some day thou wilt praise God that thy father had the foresight to inculcate in thee the importance of attending carefully to minor details.

919. The imperfect and aorist subjunctive are also used after a governing verb in any past tense, when the action of the

[1] The use of a past tense of the subjunctive as a substitute for the future conditional is not amenable to the ordinary rules of the subjunctive, and will be treated of separately.

subjunctive verb is simultaneous or subsequent to (but not prior to) the governing verb:—

El muro era acantilado sin puntos salientes; y parecía imposible que un hombre **bajara** por aquel sitio.
The wall was vertical without projecting points; and it seemed impossible for a man to descend at that place.

Le dije á la niña que se **alejase** del pozo, porque temía que cayese dentro.
I told the child to go away from the well, for I was afraid she would fall in.

Solón mandó que á su muerte se **llevasen** sus restos mortales á Sálamis, que allí se **quemasen** y que las cenizas se **esparciesen** por el campo.
Solon ordered that on his death his remains be carried to Salamis and burned there, and that the ashes be scattered over the country.

Comisionó á un muchacho que le **trajese** un ejemplar de dicho periódico.
He paid a boy to bring him a copy of the paper in question.

Se había mandado que los soldados **economizasen** las municiones.
It had been ordered that the men were to economize their ammunition.

920. The pluperfect is required after a governing verb in any past tense, when the action of the subjunctive is prior to that of the governing verb:—

Cuanto más reflexionaba, se admiraba más de que no se le **hubieran ocurrido** las objecciones que el agricultor acababa de hacerle.
The more he reflected the more he wondered why the objections which the farmer had just made to him had never occurred to him.

No se podía averiguar si el presidiario **hubiese pasado** por allí.
They could not ascertain if the convict had passed by there.

Antes de leer aquel tratado, siempre había dudado que los Noruegos **hubiesen desembarcado** en el continente americano.
Before reading that treatise I had always doubted whether the Norsemen landed on the American continent.

921. The pluperfect subjunctive is also used after a governing verb in any past tense when the action of the subjunctive verb is subsequent to that of the governing verb, but completed before another action now also past:—

El indio esperó á que se **hubiera apaciguado** la agitación de las aguas, antes de dejar aquel sitio.
The Indian waited until the disturbance of the waters should have subsided before leaving the place.

Preferíamos aguardar á que se **hubiese marchado**.
We preferred to wait until he had left.

922. When the subjunctive is preceded by a conjunction, or relative adverb or pronoun, (in clauses implying causation, negation or uncertainty,) and no governing verb occurs, the tense of the subjunctive is determined by the time of its action with relation to the context:—

Todos se desearon una buena noche sin que nadie la **esperase**.	All wished each other a good night without anyone's expecting it.
Me prometió que cuando su secretario **hubiese copiado** el informe, me lo devolvería.	He promised me that when his clerk should have copied the report, he would return it to me.
Lo dije en voz alta, á fin de que lo **oyesen** los transeúntes.	I said it in a loud tone, so that the passers-by should hear it.
Estaba resuelta á no quedarme en el convento, aunque **tuviese** que saltar por la ventana.	I was determined not to stay in the convent, even though I should have to jump out at the window.
Ví que se preparaban á someterme á un examen, y me disponía yo á contestar como Dios me **sugiriese**.	I saw that they were preparing to subject me to an examination, and I got ready to answer as God might suggest to me.

923. So when the subjunctive depends upon an infinitive or a gerund, its tense is determined by that of the leading finite verb of the sentence:—

Me costó trabajo impedir que se **pusiese** de rodillas.	It cost me some trouble to prevent him from falling on his knees.
Temiendo que se **advirtiese** mi distracción, me despedí de las damas con afectada efusión, y me marché.	Fearing that they would notice my preoccupation, I took leave of the ladies with affected effusiveness, and departed.

924. SYNOPSIS.

a. The present subjunctive may relate to a time either coexistent with, or subsequent to, the time of the governing verb:—

Es dudoso que lo sepa.	It is doubtful whether he knows it.
Merece que le castiguen.	He deserves to be punished.

b. When the governing verb is in the present tense, an imperfect or aorist subjunctive relates only to a prior time:—

Es improbable que los Fenicios **conociesen** la brújula.	It is improbable that the Phœnicians knew of the compass.

c. When the governing verb is imperfect or aorist, the imperfect or aorist subjunctive can refer only to a coexistent or subsequent time:—

No percibí que nadie hablase en el cuarto vecino.	I did not notice whether any one was talking in the next room.
Temíamos todos que el buque fuese á pique.	We all feared the vessel would go down.

d. After a governing verb in the imperfect or aorist, a subjunctive referring to a prior time must be put in the pluperfect:—

En el siglo pasado se dudaba que Troya hubiese existido jamás; pero hoy día se acepta como un hecho histórico.	In the last century they doubted whether Troy ever existed; but nowadays it is accepted as an historic fact.

e. So we see that although the simple forms of the imperfect and aorist subjunctive may relate to a time prior to the present time, they cannot refer to a time prior to a past time:—

Se teme que los refuerzos no partiesen ayer.	It is feared that the reinforcements did not start yesterday.
Se temía que los refuerzos no hubiesen partido (*not* partiesen) el día anterior.	It was feared that the reinforcements had not started the day before.

FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE.

925. The future subjunctive applies only to future contingencies depending upon doubt or uncertainty; it is never dependent upon causation or emotion:—

Devolveré todo cuanto me dieren.	I shall return all they may give me.
Le escribiré á V. lo que decidieren.	I will write you what they may decide.

926. The future subjunctive is never governed by a verb, but is introduced by a conjunction, or a relative pronoun or adverb:—

En lo que tocare á defender mi persona, no tendré mucha cuenta con esas leyes, pues las divinas y humanas permiten que cada uno se defienda de quien quisiere agraviarle.	As far as may concern the defence of my person, I shall not take much account of those laws, for both human and divine ones permit everybody to defend himself against whoever tries to attack him.

Si el próximo invierno **fuere** tan riguroso como el último, los pobres padecerán muchísimo.	If next winter be as severe as the last, the poor will suffer greatly.
Los demás Estados que **tomaren** parte en la Conferencia serán representados por el número de Delegados que cada uno **designare**.	The other States which may participate in the Conference shall be represented by as many Delegates as each may elect.

927. The future subjunctive, although once frequent, is now little used, and only to show that a contingency is future which the present subjunctive or indicative would not specify:—

Si tiene fortuna, le daré la mano de mi hija.	If he has (now) wealth, I will give him my daughter's hand.
Si **tuviere** fortuna, le daré la mano de mi hija.	If he have (at some future time) wealth, I will give him my daughter's hand.
Aunque ha salido.	Although he has gone out (*fact*).
Aunque haya salido.	Although he may have gone out (now).
Aunque **hubiere** salido.	Although he may have gone out (by some future time).
Las calidades que requiere la ley.	The qualities required by law (*fact*).
Las calidades que requiera la ley.	The qualities which the law may require (now).
Las calidades que **requiriere** la ley.	The qualities which the law may require (at some future time).
Con tal que esté en la ciudad.	Provided he be in town (now).
Con tal que **estuviere** en la ciudad.	Provided he be in town (at a future time).

928. It may be remarked here that **si**, *if*, cannot be followed by a present or perfect subjunctive, as is the case in English:—

Si hace viento propicio. Si hiciere viento propicio.	If there *be* a fair wind.

929. Otherwise, the future subjunctive is now usually replaced by the present:—

Mientras durare la vida. Mientras dure la vida.	While life lasts.
Compraré la casa en que vivo {cuando tuviere los medios. {cuando tenga los medios.	I shall buy the house I am living in when I have the means.

930. The future perfect subjunctive (formed from the future subjunctive of **haber** and a past participle) is used when the

action of the verb is regarded as completed prior to a certain future time:—

Si para fines del mes la comisión **hubiere terminado** sus deliberaciones.	If by the end of the month the Committee has concluded its deliberations.
Dado caso que, á la expiración de dicho plazo, no se **hubieren ofrecido** posturas.	In case, at the expiration of said time, no bids shall have been presented.

REMARK.—There is practically no difference in meaning, either in Spanish or English, among the following expressions:—

Cuando algún error se descubra.	When any error is discovered.
Cuando algún error se descubriere.	When any error shall be discovered.
Cuando algún error se haya descubierto.	When any error has been discovered.
Cuando algún error se hubiere descubierto.	When any error shall have been discovered.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES.

931. The subjunctive without any governing word expressed, is of limited application. Expressions of this character may be considered elliptical, as a governing word or clause can easily be supplied, and are referable to the two general principles of causation and uncertainty. Under the first of these the subjunctive expresses a wish or command, and is equivalent to an imperative; under the second, it expresses an alternative.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE USED AS IMPERATIVE.

932. The principal use of the subjunctive when no governing word is expressed, is as a substitute for an imperative. It may either take the place of an existing imperative, or supply the place of forms that are wanting. As the direct imperative is confined to the second person, and is never employed negatively, as in forbidding, its use is extremely limited. The present subjunctive is used for all other purposes of an imperative, and from its indirectness is more courteous.

933. There are various degrees of indirectness:—

1. When the imperative conveys a wish or command as a message through one person to another, the subjunctive is pre-

ceded by **que**, and a verb of wishing or commanding may be understood:—

Que suban la comida.	Let them bring up the dinner.
Que no entre nadie.	Let no one come in.
Que pase á mediodía.	Let him call at noon.
Que se les despida.	Let them be dismissed.
Que todo esté listo para cuando volvamos.	Let everything be ready by the time we return.

2. When the wish or command is not delivered as a message, but is merely expressed indefinitely about some person or thing not present, the employment of **que** is not uniform; its absence, however, pertains rather to an antique or elevated style:—

Que me ahorquen si lo hago.	May they hang me if I do.
Que te caigan los cielos.	May the heavens fall on you.
Que el diablo se vuele con él y sus antojos.	May the D—l fly away with him and his fancies.
Séale la tierra leve.	May the earth rest lightly upon him.
Dios le ampare á V.	God protect you.
Cúmplase la voluntad de Dios.	God's will be done.
Padre nuestro, que estás en los cielos, santificado sea tu nombre.	Our Father who art in heaven, hallowed be thy name.
¡ Viva la República !	Long live the Republic !
Húndase el mundo y vamos adelante.	Let the world sink and let us go forward.

Remark.—Certain stereotype expressions of a passive or impersonal nature, regularly discard the conjunction:—

Baste decir que llegó á su destino sin ser molestado.	Suffice it to say that he reached his journey's end without being molested.
Figúrense mis pensamientos, **figúrese** mi asombro, al verle vivo.	Imagine my thoughts, imagine my dismay, on seeing him alive.
No se **crea** que yo participaba de sus ideas pesimistas.	Let it not be believed that I shared his pessimistic ideas.

3. When the command is addressed to a person who is present, **que** is omitted, and the subjunctive is immediately followed by **V.** or **Vds.**, as the case may require:—

Hable V. más alto.	Speak louder.
Ponga V. la maleta sobre el baúl.	Put the valise on the trunk.
Vuelva V. cerca de las dos.	Come back about two o'clock.
Suban Vds. un piso más.	Come up another flight.
No abran Vds. las ventanas.	Don't open the windows.

4. A courteous or polite form is obtained by applying the above to some such verb as **servirse,** *to please*; **dignarse,** *to deign*; or some other circumlocution:—

Sírvase V. tomar un asiento.	Please take a seat.
Dígnense Vds. pasar adelante.	Please go first.
Tenga V. la bondad de alargarme el apio.	Kindly reach me the celery.
Hágame V. el favor de hablar más alto.	Do me the favor of speaking louder.

934. The subjunctive is substituted for the true imperative in negative commands addressed in the second person:—

Haz lo que te digo.	Do what I tell thee.
No hagas lo que te prohibo.	Do not do what I forbid thee.
Haced lo que os digo.	Do what I tell you.
No hagáis lo que os prohibo.	Do not do what I forbid you.

935. When the subjunctive used imperatively has for object one or more personal pronouns, they are appended to it, forming one word, when the command is affirmative; when negative, they are placed before it. The accent, being on the stem of the verb, must be written if the stem thus stands two or more syllables before the last:—

Váyase V. Acérquese V.	Go away. Come near.
No se vaya V. No se acerque V.	Don't go away. Don't come near.
Dénmelos Vds.	Give me them.
No me los den Vds.	Do not give them to me.
Enséñeselo V. á ella.	Show it to her.
No se lo enseñe V. á ella.	Do not show it to her.
Préstennoslos Vds. á nosotros.	Lend them to us.
Quítenmele Vds.	Take him off of me.
Échemelos V.	Toss them to me.

936. The subjunctive also supplies the want of an imperative of the first person. When so used it is to be rendered in English by *let* or *may*; a personal pronoun, when subject, is then not expressed except for emphasis:—

Salgamos á dar un paseo.	Let us go out and take a walk.
Entremos en la casa.	Let us go into the house.
Ocultémonos aquí, detrás de esta peña.	Let us conceal ourselves here, behind this rock.
Ande yo caliente y ríase la gente.	Let me go warm and the people may scoff.

REMARK.—The verb **ir**, *to go*, has a shortened form, **vamos**, instead of the full form of the first person plural subjunctive present, **vayamos** :—

Vamos á la corrida de toros.	Let us go to the bull-fight.
Vamos á ver lo que haya.	Let's go see what there is.
Vámonos. (*From* irse.)	Let us go, let us be off.

937. The subjunctive is used after **ojalá** in exclamatory wishes; but this is merely a seeming independent use of the subjunctive, as **ojalá** has all the force of a verb, being derived from the Arabic *in shá'llah, Allah grant that*:—

¡ Ojalá que venga pronto !	O that he may come soon !
¡ Ojalá que semejante desgracia no le suceda á V. nunca !	May heaven grant that such a misfortune may never happen to you !

938. Ojalá may be followed by the past tenses of the subjunctive,—the aorist or imperfect relating to the present, and the pluperfect to a past time:—

¡ Ojalá que mi hermano estuviese aquí !	Would that my brother were here !
¡ Ojalá que mi hermano hubiese estado allí !	Would that my brother had been there !

939. It may be added that only the present subjunctive is used as an imperative; a single exception being the imperfect and aorist subjunctive of the irregular verb **placer**, in the expression **pluguiera** or **pluguiese á Dios**, *would to God*:—

¡ Plegue á Dios que no salga así !	God grant it may not turn out so !
¡ Pluguiese á Dios que yo fuera muerto !	Would to God I were dead !
¡ Pluguiese á Dios que no hubiera ido !	Would to God I had not gone !

ALTERNATIVE EXPRESSIONS.

940. The alternative expressions made by the subjunctive used independently, may be regarded as modifications of the imperative, in which the thing commanded is so indeterminate that they are mere general permissions:—

Hagan lo que se les antoje.	Let them do what they please.
Digan lo que quieran, no por eso alteraré mi conducta.	Let them say what they will, I shall not alter my conduct on that account.
Será preciso intentar la fuga, **cueste** lo que cueste.	It will be necessary to attempt an escape, cost what it may.

Venga lo que viniere, le sostendré hasta el ultimo extremo.	Come what may, I will stand by him to the last.

REMARK.—The second subjunctive in these clauses is required by the idea of uncertainty, after a relative.

941. A further deviation from the imperative force is found in such alternative expressions as the following:—

Tendrá que pagarme, que quiera ó que no quiera.	He will have to pay me, whether he be willing or not.
Sea hombre ó sea demonio, no me dejaré amedrentar.	Be he man or be he demon, I will not let myself be frightened.
Que llueva ó que no llueva, iré.	I shall go whether it rain or not.
Que lo consiga ó no, su intención es laudable.	Whether he succeed or not, his intention is laudable.

942. The **que** before the first subjunctive of an alternative clause may be omitted; and when the clause forms part of a sentence whose leading time is past, both subjunctives are put in the appropriate past tense:—

Mañana, **hayan** llegado ó no los refuerzos, intentaremos una surtida.	To-morrow, whether the reinforcements have arrived or not, we will attempt a sortie.
Nos decidimos á que al día siguiente, **hubiesen** llegado ó no los refuerzos, intentaríamos una surtida.	We decided that on the next day, whether the reinforcements should have arrived or not, we would attempt a sortie.
Declaró que, **viniese** lo que **viniese**, me sostendría hasta el último extremo.	He declared that, come what might, he would stand by me to the last.
Nos prometimos fidelidad hasta la muerte, **sucediese** lo que **sucediese**.	We promised each other fidelity until death, no matter what might happen.
Era un hombre sin fe ni ley, aventurero de oficio, á la disposición del primero que le pagase bien, ó del segundo que le pagase mejor, **fuese** cual **fuese** la clase del trabajo.	He was a faithless and lawless man, adventurer by trade, at the disposal of the first man who would pay him well, or of the second who would pay him better, no matter what the class of work might be.

943. The present subjunctive of **saber**, *to know*, **recordar**, *to recollect*, and **ver**, *to see*, may be employed with **que** to modify a preceding negation or question[1]:—

No ha entrado nadie, **que yo sepa**.	No one has entered, so far as I know.
No existen otros ejemplares, **que sepamos**.	No other copies exist, to our knowledge.

[1] Compare the Latin *quod sciam, quod noverim, quod meminerim.*

¿Se ha expedido jamás tal orden, **que V. sepa.**
Has any such order ever been issued so far as you know?

No lo he leído jamás, **que yo recuerde.**
I have never read it, so far as I remember.

No demuestra el menor remordimiento, **que yo vea.**
He doesn't show the slightest remorse, so far as I see.

Exercise XLV.

Let us proceed (*prosigamos*) then with our narrative. Several days passed without any letter coming.[1] The Indian remained hidden among the rocks, waiting for the night to get darker. His *elastic* conscience *accommodated* itself to all kinds of *transactions*, whatever they might be. It was to be feared that he would fail in his enterprise.[2] The Spanish *general* required that they should deliver up to him all the deserters who had taken refuge in their *territory*. I did not expect that the planter would pay me before he should have sold his crop of cotton. The *general* of the invading army *invited* the inhabitants of the city to save it from the *horrors* of a siege by accepting his terms without delay. The enemy denied that any prisoners who had fallen into their hands had ever been cruelly treated. It was doubtful if the speaker had ever seen the book which he quoted so confidently. They all refused to work in the same shop with Andrew even if their wages were doubled. He ordered the servant not to tell anyone where he had gone. It is not believed now that King Charles wrote the "*Eikon Basilike.*" The women denied *positively* that there was any money in the house. They then began to fear that they had been shown the (*un*) wrong road. He deserved to be well paid for his *services*. Do me the *honor* to accept a seat in my carriage. Let us not go to the *theater* to-night. In the morning you say, Would that it were evening; and in the evening, Would it were morning. I shall give the same answer to all those who may ask me that. No *intelligent* man believed that the noises had been made by a ghost or spirit.

CHAPTER XVI.

THE CONDITIONAL FUTURE.

944. There has been much disagreement among grammarians where to class this form of the verb, some having considered it a tense of the indicative, some making it a part of the subjunctive, others leaving it unattached to any mood. But (*a*) as its principal use is in conditions it differs from the indicative, and (*b*) as it cannot be governed by an expression requir-

[1] Use **llegar.** not **venir.** [2] Render: that his enterprise would fail.

ing the subjunctive it is not subject to the restrictions of this latter mood, it differs from these moods quite as much as they differ from each other. It will be found convenient, therefore, to consider it as a sporadic mood, just as the imperative is.[1]

If its mood be conditional its tense is future, both in form and usage. When formed regularly, its terminations are added to the full forms of the infinitive, just as is the case with the indicative future. Both are regularly future with reference to the principal verb of the sentence or to the time in the mind of the speaker.

945. The terminations of the conditional future are as follows:—

SING.	1. **-ía,**	*E.g.:*	comprar**ía,**	vender**ía,**	vivir**ía,**
	2. **-ías,**		comprar**ías,**	vender**ías,**	vivir**ías,**
	3. **-ía,**		comprar**ía,**	vender**ía,**	vivir**ía,**
PLUR.	1. **-íamos,**		comprar**íamos,**	vender**íamos,**	vivir**íamos,**
	2. **-íais,**		comprar**íais,**	vender**íais,**	vivir**íais,**
	3. **-ían.**		comprar**ían.**	vender**ían.**	vivir**ían.**

946. Those verbs which form the indicative future irregularly, present the same irregularity in the conditional future. Five elide the vowel of the infinitive ending, five elide this vowel and interpolate **d,** and two form the futures from obsolete stems. So that in all cases the two futures have the same stem:—

CABER:	cabr-é	—	cabr-ía.	PONER:	pondr-é	—	pondr-ía.
HABER:	habr-é	—	habr-ía.	SALIR:	saldr-é	—	saldr-ía.
PODER:	podr-é	—	podr-ía.	TENER:	tendr-é	—	tendr-ía.
QUERER:	querr-é	—	querr-ía.	VALER:	valdr-é	—	valdr-ía.
SABER:	sabr-é	—	sabr-ía.	VENIR:	vendr-é	—	vendr-ía.

A further similarity between these two futures is their identity of origin. They are not forms descended from the Latin, but were made by appending old forms of the auxiliary **haber** to an infinitive:—

Dar-he,	dar-has,	dar-ha,	dar-hemos,	dar-heis,	dar-han.
Dar-hia,	dar-hias,	dar-hia,	dar-hiamos,	dar-hiais,	dar-hian.

[1] Andrés Bello, one of the most learned writers upon Spanish grammar, also considers this as a separate *mood,* although he does not call it conditional but "hypothetic." (*Gramática,* p. 394, 14th Ed., Madrid, 1887.) The most appropriate name would be "consequential," as it does not express a condition, but the consequence of a condition; but as the majority of grammarians agree in calling the form "conditional," this term has been adopted here.

Formerly in Spanish, as is still the case in Portuguese, these appended forms of the auxiliary were separable to allow an objective personal pronoun to be interpolated :—

OLD SPANISH :	Esforçar-me-he ;	Dir-se-hia.
PORTUGUESE :	Esforçar-me-hei ;	Dir-se-hia.
OLD SPANISH :	Limitar-nos-hemos ;	Escrivir-les-hiamos.
PORTUGUESE :	Limitar-nos-hemos ;	Escrever-lhes-hiamos.

947. The future conditional is always dependent upon a past tense, expressed or understood. Its primary and leading value is to express futurity dating from a past time—thus bearing the same relation to a past tense that the future indicative does to the present or future:—

Me aseguran que guardarán silencio.	They assure me they will keep silent.
Me aseguraban que **guardarían** silencio.	They assured me they would keep silent.
Le preguntaré si tardará en llegar.	I will ask him if he will be long getting there.
Le pregunté si **tardaría** en llegar.	I asked him if he would be long getting there.
Pensamos que lloverá.	We think it will rain.
Pensábamos que **llovería.**	We thought it would rain.
Este desagüe sin duda forma una cascada cuya fuerza mecánica **será** posible utilizar.	This outlet doubtless forms a fall whose mechanical power it will be possible to utilize.
Aquel desagüe sin duda formaba una cascada cuya fuerza mecánica **sería** posible utilizar.	That outlet doubtless formed a fall whose mechanical power it would be possible to utilize.

948. In this manner it is extended to apply as a future after any past tense, whether indicative or subjunctive, or an infinitive or gerund applied to a past time:—

He estado pensando que tal vez le **encontraría** por aquí.	I have been thinking that perhaps I should meet him around here.
Negó que su criado nos hubiese preguntado si **asistiríamos** á la función.	He denied that his servant had asked us if we would attend the performance.
Suponiendo que **llegaría** en el tren directo de las 7, me dirigí inmediatamente á la estación.	Supposing that he would arrive on the seven o'clock express, I started at once for the station.
Era natural creer que lo **haría** después de haberse expresado así.	It was natural to believe that he would do it after having expressed himself in that way.

949. The conditional is inadmissible in such cases if the meaning of the leading verb or clause is such as to require the subjunctive:—

Temíamos todos que se **precipitase** (*not* precipitaría) al abismo.

We all feared he would fall into the abyss.

Era dudoso que este río **proporcionase** (*not* proporcionaría) á los colonos una cantidad suficiente de agua potable.

It was doubtful whether this river would supply the colonists with a sufficient quantity of drinking-water.

Con piedras, ramas entrelazadas y barro se taparon las hendeduras entre las rocas, dejando abierto un solo agujero estrecho y sinuoso para que se **condujese** el humo al exterior y **tuviese** tiro el hogar.

With stones, interlaced branches and clay they stopped up the rifts between the rocks, leaving a single narrow and winding hole open so that the smoke would be carried outside and the fireplace would have a draught.

En su carta suplicaba á su padre que no juzgase á su Guillermo (según ella llamaba á su marido) por lo que oyese decir á los demás; sino que aguardase á hacerlo cuando le **conociese**[1] personalmente.

In her letter she entreated her father not to judge her William (as she called her husband) by what he might hear others say; but to delay doing so until he should know him personally.

CONDITIONS WITH IMPLIED NEGATION.

950. The most frequent application of the conditional future is in conditions with an implied negation, which are grammatically expressed in a past tense although relating to either past or present time.

951. It is a function of the aorist and imperfect to suggest a negation with respect to the present. To say that a thing **fué** is to imply that it is not. Hence a negation is implied in conditional clauses by using the past tenses of the subjunctive after **si**, although speaking of the present time. The following are the possible arrangements for conditions:—

FUTURE.

Si él tuviere poderosos valedores, conseguirá sin duda el empleo.

If he gets powerful backers, he will no doubt get the place.

[1] The subjunctive is here required by the idea of uncertainty when preceded by a relative.

PRESENT.

Si él tiene poderosos valedores, conseguirá sin duda el empleo.	If he has powerful backers, he will no doubt get the place.
Si él tuviera poderosos valedores, conseguiría sin duda el empleo.	If he had powerful backers, he would no doubt get the place.

PAST.

Si él tenía poderosos valedores, no les empleó, porque no obtuvo el empleo.	If he had powerful backers, he did not make use of them, for he did not get the place.
Si él hubiera tenido poderosos valedores, sin duda habría conseguido el empleo.	If he had had powerful backers, he would no doubt have got the place.

952. The clause stating the condition supposed is called by grammarians *protasis*; the corresponding clause stating the consequence is called the *apodosis*. The place of the conditional future is in the apodosis:—

Si yo fuera rico, no trabajaría en nada.	If I were rich, I would not work at all.
Si V. le hubiese dado dinero, él habría comprado ron.	If you had given him money, he would have bought rum.

953. By conditions with an implied negation is meant those in which the protasis supposes a state of affairs not existing. On account of this implied negation the verb of the protasis is subjunctive:—

Si no fuese soldado inválido, le despediría.	If he were not an invalid soldier (but he is), I would discharge him.
Si fuese soldado inválido, le daría el empleo.	If he were an invalid soldier (but he is not), I would give him the place.

954. In the protasis, as in the cases stated in the preceding chapter, the imperfect and aorist forms of the subjunctive are interchangeable:—

Si tuviese (*or* tuviera) tiempo, iría esta noche al teatro.	If I had time, I would go to the theater this evening.
Si hubiésemos (*or* hubiéramos) sabido eso, no habríamos dicho lo que dijimos.	If we had known that, we would not have said what we did.
Si hubiese (*or* hubiera) harina, haría pan.	If there were any flour, I would make some bread.

955. It is unimportant whether the protasis or apodosis be placed first:—

Se lo daría si lo tuviese.	I would give it to him if I had it.
Si lo tuviese, se lo daría.	If I had it I would give it to him.
¿ Iría V. al campo si escampase ?	Would you go to the country if it stopped raining ?
Si escampase, ¿ iría V. al campo ?	If it stopped raining would you go to the country ?

956. The protasis is usually introduced by **si**, *if*, but the result may be obtained by any mode of expression of similar value:—

Aunque viniera (aun si viniera), no le recibiría.	Although he should come (even if he came), I would not receive him.
Vd. haría mal en despedirle (si le despidiese).	You would do wrong in discharging him (if you discharged him).
En otras circunstancias (si las circunstancias fuesen otras), no tendría inconveniente en ello.	Under other circumstances (if the circumstances were different), I should have no objection to it.
No lo habría logrado sin su ayuda (si él no me hubiese ayudado).	I would not have succeeded without his aid (if he had not aided me).
Una perdigonada habría producido una hecatombe en aquella volatería, pero por desgracia no teníamos ninguna arma de fuego.	A shower of bird-shot would have killed a hundred of those birds, but unfortunately we had no fire-arms.

957. The conditional future may appear in sentences without a preceding supposition. Such usages are elliptical, the wanting protasis being easily supplied:—

No colgaría el cuadro ahí (si yo fuese Vd.).	I would not hang the picture there (if I were you).
Dice que no haría cavar la bodega tan cerca de la calle (si á él le tocara dirigir el trabajo).	He says he would not have the cellar dug so near the street (if he had charge of the work).
La razón que V. acaba de dar nunca se me habría ocurrido.	The reason you have just given would never have occurred to me.

958. The use of the conditional in expressing a wish in a modest manner is explainable by supplying a protasis as follows:—

Desearía hablar dos palabras con Vd. (si eso no le molestase).	I should like to say a few words to you (if it would not inconvenience you).
Yo también gustaría de tener una biblioteca (si las circunstancias me lo permitiesen)	I would like to have a library too (if circumstances would permit me).

959. A single exception to the principles stated with regard to the past tenses of the subjunctive is that the imperfect (but not the aorist) may in all cases take the place of the future conditional. The latter, however, cannot be substituted for the imperfect subjunctive, and cannot, therefore, stand in the protasis:—

Si V. no hubiera acudido generosamente á mi ayuda, ya habría (*or* hubiera) muerto de hambre.	If you had not generously come to my aid, I should have starved to death. (*Lit.* I should already have died of hunger.)
Si la casualidad permitiera el encuentro de esos dos buques de guerra, habría (*or* hubiera) probabilidades de un combate naval que el valor reconocido de chilenos y norte-americanos y lo equilibrado de sus fuerzas haría (*or* hiciera) reñidísimo.	If chance were to permit the encounter of those two war-vessels, there would be a likelihood of a naval combat which the recognized valor of the Chileans and U. S. seamen, and the equality of their forces, would make a very hard-contested one.

960. Therefore a condition with implied negation has the following latitude of expression:—

Si tuviese dinero, / Si tuviera dinero, } lo compraría.	If I had money, I would buy it.
Si tuviese dinero, / Si tuviera dinero, } lo comprara.	

REMARK.—A convenient thumb-rule is to consider that the protasis requires the aorist subjunctive, and the apodosis the future conditional; that these are not interchangeable; but that the imperfect subjunctive may take the place of either:—

Si tuviese (tuviera) dinero, lo compraría (comprara).	If I had money, I would buy it.

961. The future perfect conditional, formed by the future conditional of **haber** and a past participle, is used only when the verb of the protasis is pluperfect. That occurs when the action of both verbs is anterior to the time of uttering the sentence:—

Imagino que si en vez de dos pesetas hubiera tenido ánimo para ofrecerle cinco duros, no me lo **habría rehusado.**	I imagine that if instead of two francs I had had the courage to offer him five dollars, he would not have refused me.
Si el camino no hubiera estado sombreado por grandes árboles, creo que **habríamos sido** abrasados.	If the road had not been shaded by large trees, I believe we should have been roasted.

Si me hubiese dicho tal cosa le **habría pegado** un puñetazo.	If he had said such a thing to me I should have struck him with my fist.

962. The future and future perfect conditional may govern a subjunctive, in which case they are treated as the imperfect and pluperfect respectively and require the subjunctive to be in the past tense:—

Sería bueno que V. **tuviese** tiempo para dar este paseo.	It would be nice if you had time to take this outing.
Preferiríamos que **lloviese** á que **hiciese** tanto polvo.	We would rather have it rain than be so dusty.
Habríamos mandado que se **preparase** la comida antes, si hubiéramos sabido que Vds. tenían tanta prisa.	We would have ordered dinner to be prepared earlier if we had known you were in such a hurry.

963. The imperfect subjunctive of **querer, quisiera,** is usually substituted for the future conditional **querría,** to prevent confusion with the imperfect indicative **quería. Quisiera** is a standard mode of expressing a request politely:—

Quisiera que V. viese mi colección de fotografías.	I should like you to see my collection of photographs.
Quisiéramos visitar la galería de pinturas.	We should like to visit the picture-gallery.
Vengo de parte de mi hermano, quien está indispuesto y quisiera pedirle prestado su ejemplar ilustrado del Quijote.	I come on behalf of my brother, who is under the weather and would like to borrow your illustrated copy of "Don Quixote."
Quisiera que V. me enseñase su biblioteca.	I should like you to show me your study.

REMARK.—The present indicative, **quiero que V. me enseñe,** *etc.*, would be tantamount to a peremptory order.

964. Quisiera is also equivalent to the present indicative of the English *wish,* which is likewise followed by a past tense:—

Quisiera que viniesen.	I wish they would come.
Quisiera tener un alfiler.	I wish I had a pin.
Quisiéramos que sucediese como V. desea.	We wish it may turn out as you desire.
En cuanto á mí, quisiera que no hubiéramos venido.	As for me I wish we hadn't come.
Quisiera que hubiese medio de ahorrarnos esta perdida de tiempo.	I wish there were some way of saving ourselves this loss of time.

965. In expressing a wish about a past event, there is a distinction in Spanish which is not so strictly maintained in English, between the future perfect conditional and the future conditional followed by the infinitive of **haber** and a past participle. The former (the most usual construction) expresses a wish entertained in the past; the latter a wish entertained at present about the past:—

Hubiera querido presenciar aquella escena.	I should have liked (at that time) to witness that scene.
Quisiera haber presenciado aquella escena.	I should like (now) to have witnessed that scene. (*I.e.* I wish I had witnessed it.)
Hubiera querido que V. me acompañase.	I should have liked you to accompany me.
Quisiera que V. me hubiese acompañado.	I should like you to have accompanied me. I wish you had accompanied me.
Hubiera querido que mi hijo aprendiese el castellano durante su permanencia en California, pero no tenía inclinación para ello.	I should have liked my son to learn Spanish during his stay in California, but he had no inclination towards it.
Hubiéramos querido que los músicos hubiesen llegado un poco antes.	We should have liked the musicians to have come a little earlier.

966. When the apodosis is governed by a verb which requires a subjunctive, the future and future-perfect conditional are inadmissible, and they are replaced by the imperfect or aorist and the pluperfect subjunctive respectively:—

No creo que los otros señores de esta aldea, si se hubieran hallado en el caso de V., **hubiesen** (*or* **hubieran**, *but not* habrían) obrado tan honradamente.	I do not believe that the other gentlemen of this village, if they had found themselves in your position, would have acted so honestly.
Si el Sr. profesor hubiese sabido que V. había hecho un estudio tan profundo de las lenguas muertas, dudo que se **hubiese** (*not* habría) atrevido á expresar sus opiniones delante de V., por temor de que V. las confutara.	If the professor had known that you had made such a profound study of the dead languages, I doubt whether he would have dared to express his ideas before you, for fear you might disprove them.

967. The future and future-perfect conditional are equally inadmissible when the apodosis is dependent upon any idea of doubt, denial, uncertainty or negation not expressed by a verb:—

Se le veía sorbiendo su chocolate, sin que nada indicara que aquel hombre de trazas tan pacíficas se **convirtiese** (*not* convertería) en tigre furibundo si le contrariase algo.

He was sipping his chocolate without anything to indicate that that man with such a placid expression would become a raging tiger if anything should cross him.

El criado ocultó las pistolas, no sea que su amo, si las viera, **sintiese** (*not* sentiría) la tentación de acabar con la vida.

The servant hid the pistols, lest his master, if he saw them, should feel a temptation to put an end to his life.

968. When the supposition is introduced by **si** (but in no other case), the verb of the protasis may be imperfect or pluperfect indicative. This usage, besides savoring of Gallicism, should be avoided for the reason given at § 952:—

El ventor parecía estar cazando por su propia cuenta, y era probable que si alguna pieza de caza le **caía** entre los dientes, no quedaría á los cazadores la menor parte de ella.

The pointer seemed to be hunting on his own account, and it was probable that if any game got between his teeth, there would not be the least bit of it left for the hunters.

969. In constructions like the following, however, the imperfect indicative is the only form admissible, since it relates to a fact:—

Si este razonamiento no **era** lógico, parecía sin embargo conformado al genio de sus oyentes, puesto que consiguió el efecto apetecido.

If this reasoning was illogical, it seemed nevertheless suited to the humor of his hearers, since it obtained the desired effect.

Si **estaban** mojados, atormentados por el hambre y rendidos de la fatiga, al menos tendrían aquí un abrigo donde guarecerse y fuego con que secar su ropa y estirar sus miembros.

If they were wet, famished with hunger and exhausted with fatigue, at least they would have here a shelter to take refuge in and a fire to dry their clothes and thaw out their limbs.

970. In elevated style, the **si** of the protasis may be omitted, in which case the apodosis begins with **que** or **y**:—

Tuviesen todos los países la misma base para su moneda, que entonces sería exacto el argumento alegado por mi ilustrado amigo.

If all the countries had the same standard for their coinage, then the argument adduced by my learned friend would be correct.

Pidiesen mi consentimiento abiertamente y no se lo negara á ellos.

If they asked my consent openly I would not refuse it to them.

Exercise XLVI.

There was great danger that the supply of water would be exhausted before the reinforcements would arrive. If that child were mine I would chastise him severely. If I had the riches of that man I would employ them in a better manner.[1] If I had been *present* I would not have permitted him to speak to you so. We foresaw several months ago that the bank would *inevitably* fail, but we did not expect that it would fail so soon. If there were anyone in the house, there would be a light in some of the windows. No one believed that the peace would be durable. I had told the boy several times that he would break his legs, for he was very reckless. If I had had a gun I would have fired at the intruder. I should like to see your *collection* of postage-stamps. We should like to hear what you may have to say concerning the causes of sun-spots. Even if we should obtain a search-warrant and should search their house, it is doubtful whether we should find anything which would serve as *positive evidence.* They had provided themselves with a quantity of bacon and hardtack that would suffice for ten days. If you bought all the tickets of the lottery you would lose by (*en*) the bargain. As for me,[2] I wish I had never learned to use tobacco ; but now it would be *impossible* for me to *abandon* the habit if I tried. It would be preferable for you to *present* the subject to the committee yourself, as you are familiar with the details. I should have liked that they had allowed me more time for *preparing* an answer. I should have liked to see the launch of (*ver botar*) the new steel cruiser. I should like to have been *invited* to witness the autumn manœuvres of the German army. If the *convention* has accomplished nothing useful, we have still the consolation of reflecting that it has done little harm.

CHAPTER XVII.

CORRESPONDENCE OF TENSES.

971. The tense of the leading verbs of a sentence depends upon the date of their action with reference to the present time (i.e., the date of speaking or writing the sentence). The leading verbs may be of any tense whatever; but the tense of a dependent verb is more or less restricted by that of the leading verb. The term *correspondence of tenses* relates to the extent of this control.

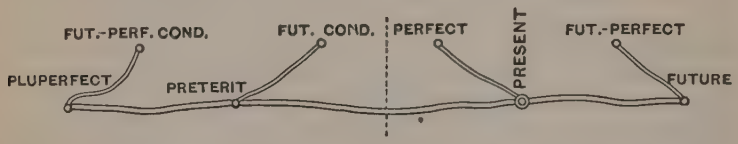
Remark.—The extent of the control exercised by a leading verb depends, in a considerable degree, on its lexical meaning. Some verbs have inhe-

[1] de mejor modo. [2] en cuanto á mí.

rently a prospective or a retrospective reference, whatever their tense may be. We *remember* or *regret* the past; *foresee* and *anticipate* the future. All verbs of causing or influencing are prospective, since causes precede their effects.

972. So far as one verb can influence the tense of another, the aorist and imperfect are alike. Whatever influences the one would influence the other in the same way. For the purposes of the present lesson the two may, for the sake of brevity, be called the *preterit.*

973. The order of the tenses with relation to time may be aptly represented by a railroad diagram, in which the present is the central station:—



The roads to the left of the central station are assigned to the past, and those on the right to the future. The branch roads run to the dependent tenses, and the direction in which these lie shows whether they are anterior or subsequent to the tenses on which they depend. The various tenses have intercommunication only through existing lines: thus from the present the pluperfect can be reached only through the preterit, and the future-perfect only through the future.

974. A line may be drawn between the perfect and the preterit, dividing the whole into two groups of tenses,—the past tenses on the left, and the perfect, present and the futures on the right. We may in this case call them collectively the *past* and *non-past* tenses. Very generally the dependent verbs must belong to the same group with the leading verb, and will change their tense when it changes:—

Le preguntaré si ha considerado el asunto.	I will ask him if he has considered the matter.
Le pregunté si había considerado el asunto.	I asked him if he had considered the matter.

Remark.—In the first sentence, the leading verb being future, the dependent verb is perfect, because it relates to an action prior to the time of *asking.* When the asking is thrown into the past, the considering is thrown still farther back so as to retain its relative priority.

975. The influence of a governing verb is seen in the indicative as well as in the subjunctive mood. The infinitive, gerund and past participle, having no distinction of tense, are of the same time as the immediate governing verb:—

Opinamos que la Comisión no excedió los límites de sus facultades **proponiendo** que se incluyese en el tratado la cláusula respecto á procedimientos judiciales.

We consider that the Committee did not overstep the limits of its functions in proposing that the clause relative to judicial procedure be included in the treaty.

Apresuraron su marcha, pero **tomando** más precauciones con el objeto de sorprender y no exponerse á ser sorprendidos.

They quickened their step, taking additional precautions, however, so as to surprise without exposing themselves to being surprised.

El agua estaba excesivamente profunda, pues al **sondear** cerca de la orilla no se encontró fondo con veinte brazas de sonda.

The water was extremely deep, for on sounding near the shore they did not touch bottom with twenty fathoms of line.

976. The past infinitive and gerund (formed respectively of the infinitive and gerund of **haber** and a past participle), however, always date one tense prior to the governing verb:—

Me alegro de **verlo**.

I am glad to see it.

Me alegro de **haberlo visto**.

I am glad to have seen it.

Wilkes, oyendo decir que d'Urville había descubierto la tierra el 19 de enero, pretendió **haberla descubierto** el día anterior.

Wilkes, hearing that d'Urville had discovered land on the 19th of January, claimed to have discovered it on the day preceding.

La borrasca duró treinta y seis horas; y **habiéndonos librado** muchas veces de estrellarnos contra las rocas, nos encontramos al fin á 60 millas á sotavento del cabo.

The squall lasted thirty-six hours; and having saved ourselves many times from being dashed to pieces on the rocks, we found ourselves finally 60 miles to leeward of the cape.

977. The perfect tense is dependent upon the present, the future-perfect upon the future, the pluperfect on the preterit, and the two conditionals on the preterit and pluperfect respectively. These secondary tenses have always an expressed or implied reference to their respective primary tenses. When the primary tenses change, the dependent verbs, in preserving the same relation, change according to the following proportions:—

Present	: Non-past	: :	Preterit	: Past.
Future	: "	: :	Future Conditional	: "
Fut.-Perfect	: "	: :	Fut.-Perf. Conditional	: "
Perfect	: "	: :	Pluperfect	: "
Preterit	: "	: :	Pluperfect	: "

978. A governing verb in the non-past tenses may be followed by a dependent verb in any one of these tenses or in the preterit, provided the meaning of the particular verb admits of its being so employed:—

He sabido que la cosecha de naranjas **será** abundantísima.	I have learned that the crop of oranges will be most abundant.
He sabido que el Sr. tío de V. **está** enfermo.	I have learned that your uncle is ill.
He sabido que el banco **ha quebrado.**	I have learned that the bank has failed.
He sabido que nuestros amigos **llegaron** sin novedad á su destino.	I have learned that our friends reached their journey's end without mishap.
Es dudoso que **logre** convencer al jurado de la inocencia de su cliente.	It is doubtful whether he will succeed in convincing the jury of his client's innocence.
Es dudoso que dicho libro se **encuentre** en la Biblioteca Nacional.	It is doubtful whether the book in question is in the National Library.
Es dudoso que el buque se **haya hecho** á la mar todavía.	It is doubtful whether the ship has put to sea yet.
Es dudoso que Parry **llegase** más allá de los 78° de latitud norte.	It is doubtful whether Parry went beyond the 78th degree of north latitude.

(These examples might be varied and extended to great length.)

979. A past tense cannot have a non-past tense dependent upon it. Hence when a leading verb is made past, all its dependent tenses become past. This is best shown by taking a sentence whose leading verb is present, and, in changing it to past or future, observing the consequent changes of the dependent verbs:—

Quiero saber si el arquitecto ha prometido que la casa estará terminada antes que nosotros volvamos de Europa.	I wish to know if the architect has promised that the house will be ready before we return from Europe.
Preguntaré al arquitecto si ha prometido que la casa estará terminada antes que nosotros volvamos de Europa.	I will ask the architect if he has promised that the house will be ready before we return from Europe.

Pregunté al arquitecto si había prometido que la casa estaría terminada antes que nosotros volviesemos de Europa.

I asked the architect if he had promised that the house would be finished before we should return from Europe

Propongo que se manden imprimir las recomendaciones que hemos escuchado, como también las que se presentaren en lo sucesivo.

I propose that we authorize the printing of the recommendations which we have heard, as well as of those which may be presented in future.

Propondré que se manden imprimir las recomendaciones que hemos escuchado, como también las que se presentaren en lo sucesivo.

I shall propose that we authorize the printing of the recommendations which we have heard, as well as of those which may be presented in future.

Propuse que se mandaran imprimir las recomendaciones que habíamos escuchado, como también las que se presentaran en lo sucesivo.

I proposed that we should authorize the printing of the recommendations which we had heard, as well as of those which might be subsequently presented.

980. In cases where a leading verb in a non-past tense would be followed by a future subjunctive, a leading verb in a past tense takes a preterit subjunctive. In like manner a future-perfect subjunctive becomes pluperfect subjunctive:—

El general { mandará / manda / ha mandado } que todos los que **desertaren sean** fusilados.

The general { will order / orders / has ordered } that all who desert be shot.

El general { mandó / había mandado } que todos los que **desertasen fuesen** fusilados.

The general { ordered / had ordered } that all who deserted should be shot.

El comandante declara que, **obtenga ó** no condiciones favorables del enemigo, si para mañana no **hubiere llegado** el socorro que se **espera, será** preciso capitular la plaza.

The commandant declares that, whether he obtain favorable terms from the enemy or not, if the expected reinforcements have not arrived by to-morrow, it will be necessary to surrender the position.

El comandante declaró que, **obtuviese ó** no condiciones favorables del enemigo, si para el día siguiente **no hubiese llegado** el socorro que se **esperaba, sería** preciso capitular la plaza.

The commandant declared that, whether he obtained favorable terms from the enemy or not, if the expected reinforcements did not arrive by the following day, it would be necessary to surrender the position.

981. The past tenses may be followed by a dependent verb

in the present tense when it expresses something that is always true:—

El doctor Kane descubrió que la Groenlandia **es** una isla.	Doctor Kane discovered that Greenland is an island.
El autor del Libro de Job sabía que la tierra **está** sin apoyo.	The author of the Book of Job was aware that the earth is unsupported.

982. The future conditional may be followed by a present or a perfect subjunctive expressing something represented as taking place at the time of speaking:—

Podría creerse que esté dormido, mas no lo está.	One might think he is asleep, but he is not.
Se supondría por la manera como habla que tenga la oreja del príncipe, pero no es así.	One would imagine from the way he talks that he has the ear of the prince, but it is not so.
Parecería que haya profundizado el asunto.	It would seem that he has thoroughly investigated the subject.

983. After a leading verb in a past tense, a dependent subjunctive is in the present tense if its action applies to all time or extends beyond the time of speaking:—

Dios nos dió la razón para que **distingamos** lo bueno de lo malo.	God gave us reason in order that we may distinguish good from evil.
Le escribí que **esté** aquí á las ocho.	I wrote to him to be here at eight o'clock. (*It is not yet eight.*)
Le escribí que **estuviese** aquí á las ocho.	I wrote to him to be here at eight o'clock. (*It is now eight or later.*)
El primer día se pasó sin incidentes que **merezcan** la pena de mencionarse.	The first day was passed without any occurrences which are worth being mentioned.

984. So far as dependence of tenses is concerned, a relative clause is excluded, being in effect an independent sentence, having any tense required by the date of the action, irrespective of the tense of the leading verb in the sentence:—

Discutíamos si convendría comprar el cuadro que el artista había pintado, pintaba, está pintando, pintare, está para pintar, *etc.*	We were discussing if it would be desirable to buy the picture which the artist had painted, was painting, is painting, may paint, is about to paint, *etc.*
No hay rango á que él no aspire, aspirare, haya aspirado, aspirase, hubiese aspirado, *etc.*	There is no rank to which he does not aspire, will not aspire, has not aspired, would not aspire, would not have aspired, *etc.*

985. The leading time of a sentence may sometimes be indicated and the tenses of dependent verbs determined without a leading verb; still the time must be indicated in some way:—

Había mostrado evidentes indicios de talento antes de su décimoquinto año.	He had shown evident marks of genius before his fifteenth year.
Para el fin del mes próximo habré terminado el segundo tomo de mi novela.	By the end of next month I shall have finished the second volume of my novel.

TENSE-EQUIVALENTS.

986. A peculiarity of the subjunctive mood is that each tense, besides covering its own appropriate time, extends to subsequent time.

This will be made clear by taking sentences containing dependent verbs in the various tenses of the indicative, and changing the construction so as to require these verbs to become subjunctives. One tense of the subjunctive will be seen throughout to correspond to two of the indicative:—

1. Present and future indicative become alike present subjunctive:—

Es claro que se engaña.	It is clear that he is mistaken.
Es posible que se engañe.	It is possible that he is mistaken.
Estoy seguro de que vendrá.	I am sure he will come.
No estoy seguro de que venga.	I am not sure he will come.

2. Perfect and future-perfect indicative become perfect subjunctive:—

Afirma que V. lo ha escrito.	He declares you have written it.
Niega que V. lo haya escrito.	He denies that you have written it.
Es probable que para la puesta del sol se habrá moderado la tempestad.	It is probable that by sunset the storm will have moderated.
Es dudoso que para la puesta del sol se haya moderado la tempestad.	It is doubtful whether the storm will have moderated by sunset.

3. Preterit indicative and future conditional become preterit subjunctive:—

El gobernador estaba seguro de que las noticias eran exactas.	The governor was certain the news was authentic.
El gobernador dudaba que las noticias fuesen exactas.	The governor doubted whether the news was authentic.

Los periódicos aseguraban que al día siguiente llegarían las tropas.	The newspapers declared that on the next day the troops would arrive.
La guarnición no creía que al día siguiente llegasen las tropas.	The garrison did not believe that the troops would arrive on the next day.

4. Pluperfect indicative and future-perfect conditional become pluperfect subjunctive:—

Era evidente que por allí había pasado un ejército grande.	It was evident that a large army had passed by there.
Era dudoso que por allí hubiese pasado un ejército grande.	It was doubtful if a large army had passed by there.
Me dijo que para cuando yo volviese, su secretario habría copiado la carta.	He said that by the time I got back, his clerk would have copied the letter.
Dispuso que para cuando yo volviese, su secretario hubiese copiado la carta.	He arranged it so that by the time I got back, his clerk would have copied the letter.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE CONTRASTED WITH THE INDICATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

987. It may be seen from the foregoing lessons that the subjunctive depends essentially upon two principles; viz.:—

1. It depends upon a preceding verb (or equivalent word) which influences, or expresses an emotion or opinion about, the action of some person or thing *other than the subject of that preceding verb.*

2. The verb which is put in the subjunctive is dependent upon an idea implying *negation, doubt* or *future uncertainty.*

(The words italicized show the reason for the subjunctive.)

988. Under the first of these principles, the dependent verb is subjunctive when its subject is different from that of the principal verb; if the subject of both be the same, the dependent verb is *infinitive.*

Under the second principle, the dependent verb is subjunctive when it relates to something unknown, uncertain or future; when it relates to what is regarded by the speaker as certain, it is *indicative.*

☞ These two principles underlie the distinction in the contrasted usages given below.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND INFINITIVE.

989. Verbs of causation and influence do not apply to the action of the speaker. But verbs expressing a desire or prefer-

ence require a dependent verb to be subjunctive when its subject is different from that of the principal verb; when there is no change of subject, the dependent verb is infinitive:—

Quiero borrar una palabra.	I want to rub out a word.
Quiero que se **borre** esta palabra.	I want this word to be rubbed out.
Preferimos ir á la biblioteca.	We prefer to go to the library.
Preferimos que V. **vaya** á la biblioteca.	We prefer that you go to the library.
Me permito llamar la atención de V. sobre lo que sigue.	I take the liberty of calling your attention to what follows.
Le permito que **juegue** en la huerta.	I permit him to play in the orchard.
Me propongo ir á las Bermudas.	I propose to go to the Bermudas.
Propongo que se **trate** de indagar su paradero.	I propose that some one endeavor to find out his abode.

990. So verbs expressing a feeling or emotion about an occurrence require the subjunctive when there is a change of subject, but the infinitive when there is no change:—

Siento no haber presenciado la pelea.	I am sorry not to have witnessed the combat.
Siento que V. no **presenciase** la pelea.	I am sorry you did not witness the combat.
Temen no llegar á tiempo.	They are afraid they will not arrive in time.
Temen que no **lleguemos** á tiempo.	They are afraid we will not arrive in time.
Celebro hacer su conocimiento, señora.	I am pleased to make your acquaintance, Madam.
Celebro que V. **tenga** tan buen semblante.	I am pleased that you are looking so well.

991. After impersonal expressions, when the dependent verb also has no subject, it is infinitive; but if the dependent verb has a subject, it is equivalent to a change of subject, and the dependent verb is subjunctive:—

Es menester ganar la delantera.	It is necessary to gain the advance.
Es menester que los exploradores **ganen** la delantera.	It is necessary for the scouts to gain the advance.
Convendrá hacer la escalera menos empinada.	It will be advisable to make the staircase less steep.
Convendrá que V. **haga** la escalera **menos empinada.**	It will be advisable for you to make the staircase less steep.

Bastaría mandarle una tarjeta postal.	It would be sufficient to send him a postal card.
Bastaría que ella le **mandase** una tarjeta postal.	It would be sufficient for her to send him a postal card.

992. A verb denying or expressing doubt or disbelief about the action of another, requires the verb expressing that action to be subjunctive. If the negation or doubt applies to the action of the speaker, the dependent verb is infinitive:—

Niego haber redactado aquel documento.	I deny that I prepared that document.
Niego que mi secretario **redactase** aquel documento.	I deny that my clerk prepared that document.
Dudo poder lograrlo.	I doubt whether I will be able to accomplish it.
Dudo que nuestro agente **pueda** lograrlo.	I doubt whether our agent will be able to accomplish it.
¿ Cree V. tener los medios?	Do you believe you have the means?
¿ Cree V. que **tenga** los medios?	Do you believe he has the means?

993. Clauses giving the purpose of an action require the subjunctive when there is a change of subject from the principal to the dependent verb. If the subject be the same for both, the dependent verb is infinitive:—

Construyeron un puente para pasar el río.	They made a bridge to cross the river on.
Construyeron un puente para que el ejército **pasase** el río.	They made a bridge for the army to cross the river on.
He hecho esto á fin de obtener el ascenso.	I have done this in order to obtain the promotion.
He hecho esto á fin de que V. **obtenga** el ascenso.	I have done this in order that you may obtain the promotion.
No entablaré el negocio ahora, á menos de recibir informes sobre la condición actual de la mina.	I shall not undertake the business unless I receive information of the present status of the mine.
No entablaré el negocio ahora, á menos de que mi agente me **dé** informes satisfactorios de la condición actual de la mina.	I shall not undertake the business now unless my agent gives me a satisfactory account of the present status of the mine.

REMARK.—In such connections a mere result is expressed by the indicative:—

Ha encerrado todo el papel de modo que no puedo escribir la esquela.	He has locked up all the paper so that I cannot write the note.
Encerró todo el papel de modo que yo no pudiese escribir la esquela.	He locked up all the paper so that I should not be able to write the note.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND INDICATIVE.

994. Verbs expressing the action of the perceptive faculties, and those with the value of declaring or affirming, are followed by an indicative when used affirmatively, and by a subjunctive when employed negatively, interrogatively or in a condition:—

Preví que encontraría grandes obstáculos.	I foresaw that I would meet with great obstacles.
No preví que **encontrara** tan grandes obstáculos.	I did not foresee that I would meet with such great obstacles.
Se vé por sus ojos que ha llorado.	It is apparent from her eyes that she has been weeping.
¿Se vé por sus ojos que **haya** llorado?	Is it apparent from her eyes that she has been weeping?
Me imagino que se atreverán á acometerle.	I imagine that they will dare to attack him.
Si V. se imagina que se **atrevan** á acometerle, yo mismo le escoltaré.	If you imagine that they will dare to attack him I myself will be his escort.
Estoy persuadido de que es su intención el engañarnos.	I am persuaded that it is his intention to deceive us.
No estoy persuadido de que **sea** su intención el engañarnos.	I am not persuaded that it is his intention to deceive us.

995. Nevertheless, when the leading verb is negative, interrogative or in a condition, the dependent verb is indicative if there is no doubt in the mind of the speaker or he wishes to make a fact prominent:—

Ese hombre es un ateísta; no cree que existe un ser supremo. (*An undoubted fact, hence the indicative.*)	That man is an atheist; he does not believe that there exists a Supreme Being.
No cree que **existan** aparecidos.	He does not believe that there are ghosts.
¿Cree V. que su hermano ha jurado matarle?	Do you believe your brother has sworn to kill you? (*I.e.* he has sworn to kill you; do you believe it?)
¿Cree V. que su hermano **haya** jurado matarle?	Do you believe [this unlikely story that] your brother has sworn to kill you?
Si nuestro jefe averigua que V. ha hablado así, le reprenderá severamente.	If our chief learns that you have spoken thus, he will censure you severely.
Si averiguo que **quiera** venir, se lo mandaré decir á V.	If I learn that she wants to come, I will send you word.

996. Some verbs take the subjunctive or indicative according as their meaning directs something to be done or merely makes a statement:—

Diré al criado que es un borrico.	I will tell the servant that he is an ass.
Diré al criado que **barra** el suelo.	I will tell the servant to sweep the floor.
Mi hermano me ha escrito que no lo cree.	My brother has written me that he does not believe it.
Mi hermano me ha escrito que no lo **crea**.	My brother has written me not to believe it.
Isabel me hizo una mueca para indicarme que no tenía miedo.	Isabel made me a gesture to indicate to me that she was not afraid.
Isabel me hizo una mueca para indicarme que no **tuviese** miedo.	Isabel made me a gesture to indicate to me not to be afraid.

997. Impersonal expressions bearing upon the certainty, uncertainty, truth or probability of what follows, take the indicative in affirmative sentences, but the subjunctive when used negatively or interrogatively:—

Se sigue que es incorrecto.	It follows that it is incorrect.
¿Se sigue que **sea** incorrecto?	Does it follow that it is incorrect?
No se sigue que **sea** incorrecto.	It does not follow that it is incorrect.
Es cierto que volverá.	It is certain he will return.
¿Es cierto que **vuelva**?	Is it certain that he will return?
No es cierto que **vuelva**.	It is not certain he will return.

998. A dependent verb in a relative clause is subjunctive when it refers to what is unknown or uncertain; if it refers to what is regarded as certain, it is indicative:—

La próxima vez que la **vea**.	The next time I see her.
La primera vez que la ví.	The first time I saw her.
Quiero una criada que **sepa** guisar.	I want a servant who knows how to cook.
Tengo una criada que sabe guisar.	I have a servant who knows how to cook.
Haré lo que V. me **diga**.	I will do what you may say.
Haré lo que V. me dice.	I will do what you say.
El cuadro se colgará como V. **sugiera**.	The picture shall be hung as you may suggest.
El cuadro se colgará como V. sugiere.	The picture shall be hung as you suggest.

Le mandaré á V. alguno de mis batidores que **conozca** el terreno. (*The man is yet to be found.*)	I will send you one of my scouts who knows the country.
Le mandaré á V. uno de mis batidores que conoce el terreno. (*The man is known.*)	I will send you one of my scouts who knows the country.

999. The indefinite relative expressions made by the addition of **-quiera** to a relative may be followed by the indicative if referring to something known:—

Dondequiera que iba María, el tal cordero no dejaba de seguirla.	Everywhere that Mary went the lamb was sure to go.
Los tigres se encontraban en gran número dondequiera que la llanura les ofrecía altas yerbas.	The tigers were found in great numbers wherever the plain was covered with tall grass.
Á cualquiera parte que he ido, le he encontrado siempre.	Wherever I have gone, I have always met him.

1000. Conjunctional phrases after an idea implying negation or uncertainty are followed by the subjunctive. When the dependent verb expresses a fact or certainty, it is indicative:—

Aunque me lo jura, no lo creo.	Although he swears to it, I do not believe it.
Aunque me lo **jure**, no lo creeré.	Even if he swears to it, I will not believe it.
Mientras que estaba en mi empleo era muy laborioso.	While he was in my employ he was very industrious.
Mientras **quede** en mi empleo será bien pagado.	While he remains in my employ he shall be well paid.

1001. The temporal conjunctions already mentioned require the subjunctive when they relate to a subsequent time, since what is future is uncertain. They are followed by the indicative when referring to a past or present time:—

Nos embarcaremos en cuanto nuestros equipajes **estén** á bordo.	We shall go aboard as soon as our baggage is on board.
Nos embarcamos en cuanto nuestros equipajes estuvieron á bordo.	We went aboard as soon as our baggage was on board.
Teníamos la intención de embarcarnos en cuanto nuestros equipajes **estuviesen** á bordo.	We intended to go aboard as soon as our baggage was on board.

1002. Verbs expressing a doubt, or something unknown, take

the indicative if the dependent verb is introduced by **si**, but the subjunctive if **que** is employed:—

No sé si vendrá.	I do not know whether he will come.
No sé que **venga**.	I do not know that he will come.
Dudo si lo obtendrá. } Dudo que lo **obtenga**. }	I doubt whether he will obtain it.

EXERCISE XLVII.

I am not astonished that those who have lost so much are afraid to play any more. She begged him to listen to her for even a *moment*. I was certain that, whatever efforts we should make, we should not save the cargo. The captain promised a reward to the first one of the crew who should board the frigate. I asked him to lend me the book when he had read it himself. The editor said that even if peace had been *declared*, as was reported, he did not believe that our armies would be disbanded until all the opposing forces had laid down their arms. Wherever you go, do not forget my counsels. Wherever I have gone I have not forgotten your counsels. Who would have believed that they would carry out your orders so literally? Do not read the works of that author; he does not believe that the soul is *immortal*, and consequently denies (*niega*) that there is a *future* life. The city government feared that the strike would endanger the safety of the private citizens. No sooner have I entered than (*cuando*) you order me to go out. No sooner had I entered than (*cuando*) he ordered me to go out. It is commonly believed that *Newton* discovered that *gravity* is *caused* by the *attraction* of the earth. I do not think I am mistaken in my judgment. It is not *possible* that I am mistaken in my judgment. I wish you would do me the *favor* of lending me five dollars. I doubt whether I have that amount in my purse. I told him to be silent. I ordered the porter, when the guests should have gone, to lock the doors and put out the *gas*. There is no doubt that he would have taken the money if he had been certain that the theft would not be discovered.

CHAPTER XVIII.

THE AUXILIARY VERBS **DEBER** AND **PODER**.

DEBER.

1003. Deber is conjugated regularly throughout. Its primary meaning, which it still has before a noun, is *to owe*:—

Llegó á mi noticia que mi hijo **debía** grandes sumas de dinero.	I learned that my son owed large sums of money.
Debe su puesto al favor del general B.	He owes his position to the favor of General B.

1004. The infinitive is used as a noun meaning *duty*:–

Es nuestro **deber** ayudarlos.	It is our duty to aid them.
Ha hecho su **deber**.	He has done his duty.

1005. Placed as an auxiliary verb before an infinitive, **deber** has the two following values:—

1. It expresses the ideas of duty, obligation or undefined necessity which are represented in English by the defective verbals *ought, should, must*:—

V. **debe** contestar á su esquela.	You ought to reply to his note.
Este hecho **debe** tomarse en consideración.	This fact should be taken into consideration.
Debo ir al correo ahora.	I must go to the post-office now.

2. It expresses an inference from circumstantial evidence, represented in English by one acceptation of *must*:—

Debe haber viajado mucho.	He must have travelled a great deal.
Esa gente **debe** tener ideas muy extrañas acerca de la América del Sur.	Those people must have very strange ideas about South America.

REMARK.—With the latter meaning it may be connected with the following infinitive by the preposition **de**; but generally it governs the infinitive directly without a preposition :—

Su casa **debe de** estar, me parece, en la manzana vecina.	It seems to me their house must be in the next block.

1006. When **deber**, expressing an inference or conjecture, is preceded by a negative, it is rendered in English by *cannot* or *ought not*, and not *must not*:—

Este bosque **no debe** ser interminable; debemos hallar salida en esta dirección.	This forest cannot be endless; we must surely find an outlet in this direction.
No debe ser difícil hallar un hombre tal como V. lo necesita.	It ought not to be difficult to find a man such as you need.

1007. As the manner in which **deber** is to be rendered in English varies considerably according as it expresses a past, present or future obligation or probability, the various moods and tenses will be illustrated separately.

☞ As the English words *ought, should* and *must*, which correspond most nearly to **deber**, are practically invariable, the full inflectional forms of **deber** can, in cases of difficulty, be more adequately represented in English by some expression equally capable of inflection, as *to be obliged to*

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

1008. Expresses an obligation or probability existing at the present time:—

OBLIGATION.

La luna **debe** salir dentro de diez minutos.	The moon ought to be up in ten minutes.
Mi hija **debe** quedarse en Marsella hasta fines del mes de Mayo.	My daughter is to stay in Marseilles till the latter part of May.
Consideraciones de esta especie **deben** inspirar á los americanos el más vivo presentimiento del poder y de la grandeza que les espera.	Considerations of this character should inspire Americans with the liveliest expectations of future grandeur and power.

INFERENCE.

Debe haber algún medio de lograrlo.	There must be some way of attaining it.
V. debe estar cansada después de andar tanto.	You must be tired after walking so much.
La extensión de este contrabando no **debe** ser desconocida á las autoridades fiscales.	The extent of this smuggling cannot be unknown to the fiscal authorities.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

1009. Expresses an obligation or a probability which existed during the past:—

OBLIGATION.

Debían encontrarnos aquí.	They were to meet us here.
Allí se detuvieron para examinar el sitio donde **debía** construirse el puente.	They halted there to examine the location where the bridge should be built.
Como la cantera estaba expuesta directamente al sol levante, no **debía** tardar en estar alumbrada por las luces del alba.	As the quarry was exposed directly to the rising sun, it ought soon to be illuminated by the light of the dawn.
Al pasar cerca del farol lo rompió, y todo quedó sumergido en una oscuridad profunda que **debía** favorecer su fuga.	In passing by the lantern he broke it, and everything was thrown into profound darkness calculated to favor his flight.

INFERENCE.

Según ese viejo retrato la abuela de **V. debía** ser hermosa á la edad de veinte años.	According to that old portrait, your grandmother must have been a beauty at the age of twenty.

El médico era un buen hombre, pero no **debía** de saber gran cosa.
Adelantóse con precaución hacia popa para llegar bajo la toldilla del bergantín, donde **debía** estar la Santa Bárbara.

The doctor was a good man, but it was not likely that he knew much.
He advanced carefully towards the stern so as to get under the quarter-deck of the brigantine, where the powder magazine was likely to be.

AORIST INDICATIVE.

1010. Expresses a past obligation to perform a momentary act, or an inference that something momentary took place:—

OBLIGATION.

Ocho días después **debimos** salir para Londres.
La criada robaba tanto que **debí** despedirla.
Me sentí tan mareado que **debí** subir sobre cubierta.

Eight days afterwards we were obliged to start for London.
The servant-girl stole so much that I had to discharge her.
I felt so sea-sick that I had to go up on deck.

INFERENCE.

Imaginé yo que la fuga de las jóvenes **debió** de ser causada por la indiscreción y necedad de D. Nemesio.
La buena mujer **debió** de observar mi turbación, porque al levantar los ojos ví una sonrisa en sus labios.

I imagined that the flight of the young ladies must have been caused by the indiscretion and stupidity of Don Nemesio.
The good woman must have noticed my confusion, for on raising my eyes I saw a smile on her lips.

REMARK.—The line separating the aorist from the imperfect of **deber** is so fine that it is not consistently maintained. In cases of doubt, the preference is for the imperfect.

PERFECT INDICATIVE.

1011. Expresses an obligation of the past whose effects extend to the present time, or a conjecture about the past judging from evidence of the present time:—

OBLIGATION.

He debido salir inmediatamente para Londres.
He debido sufrir muchos desaires.
Mi General, nuestra ala izquierda **ha debido** abandonar las obras avanzadas.

I have been obliged to start at once for London.
I have had to bear many affronts.
General, our left wing has been obliged to abandon the outworks.

INFERENCE.

Esa señora ha debido ser muy guapa durante su juventud.	That lady must have been very pretty during her youth (*judging from what she is now*).
Ha debido haber un desbordamiento considerable en este punto.	There must have been a considerable overflow at this point (*judging from appearances*).

1012. When any tense of **deber** is followed by a past infinitive (i.e. a past participle preceded by the infinitive **haber**) it expresses merely a conjecture about the past. It cannot express duty because no one can be under obligation *now* to have done anything yesterday:—

El tren **debe haber** llegado.	The train must have arrived.
Mi hermano creyó que el tren **debía haber** llegado.	My brother thought the train must have arrived.
La baja de los fondos públicos por aquella época en las principales plazas de Europa **debía haberle** afectado seriamente.	The fall in state stocks about that time in the principal markets of Europe must have affected him seriously.

1013. The perfect, when used to express a conjecture, nearly approaches in meaning the present followed by a past infinitive. The former construction is, however, more definite:—

Ha debido hacer fortuna en California.	He must have made a fortune in California (*judging from some evidence at hand*).
Debe haber hecho fortuna en California.	He must have made a fortune in California (*merely a conjecture*).
No veo ni gente ni equipajes en el andén; el tren **ha debido salir**.	I see no people or baggage on the platform; the train must have gone.
Ya son las once; nuestros amigos **deben haber llegado** á su destino.	It is now eleven; our friends must have arrived at their destination.

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

1014. Expresses an obligation that had existed prior to some past event; it does not express a conjecture:—

El marinero **había debido** renunciar á aquel trabajo que le crispaba horrorosamente los nervios.	The sailor had been obliged to give up that work, which made him terribly nervous.

Al principio **habían debido** creer que Paco, sorprendido en la garita, había sido muerto.

At first they had been obliged to think that Frank, surprised in the sentry-box, had been killed.

1015. An inference under the same circumstances would be expressed by the imperfect followed by a past infinitive:—

Los fugitivos **debían haber sido** vistos, porque una lluvia de balas fué dirigida contra la balsa.

The fugitives must have been seen, for a shower of balls was aimed at the raft.

¿Leña en las cimas de los Andes? Cosa imposible.—Puesto que los que construyeron esta choza pusieron en ella una chimenea, **debían haber hallado** combustible por aquí.

Firewood on the summit of the Andes? Impossible.—Since those who built this cabin put a fireplace in it, they must have found fuel around here somewhere.

FUTURE INDICATIVE.

1016. Expresses a duty or obligation which will exist in the future, or an inference about a future occurrence:—

OBLIGATION.

Deberemos levantarnos muy de mañana.

We shall have to get up very early in the morning.

Se resuelve: Que se nombre una comisión de diez y siete delegados, la cual **deberá** examinar y presentar informe acerca de la comunicación por ferrocarril entre los diferentes países representados en esta Conferencia.

Resolved, That a committee of seventeen delegates be appointed, whose duty it shall be to consider and report upon the subject of railway communication between the several countries represented in this Conference.

INFERENCE.

El proyecto de V. presenta muchas y grandes ventajas, pero los gastos **deberán** ser inmensos.

Your scheme offers many and great advantages, but the expense will necessarily be enormous.

Si tratamos ahora de pasar este canal, correremos el riesgo de que la corriente nos arrastre hasta el mar, porque es muy rauda; pero **deberá** comenzar el reflujo dentro de poco, y teniendo paciencia, en la marea baja será probable[1] que encontremos un paso vadeable.

If we try at present to cross this channel we will run the risk of being carried out to sea by the current, for it is very swift; but the tide will most likely turn within a little, and if we have patience we will probably find a ford at low water.

[1] It would be equally proper to say **en la marea baja deberemos encontrar un paso vadeable**, were it not that it would allow less variety of expression, in view of the preceding **deberá**.

FUTURE-PERFECT.

1017. Expresses a future obligation to have done something. It does not express an inference:—

Antes de que los socorros puedan llegar, **habremos debido** rendirnos por falta de víveres.

Before the reinforcements can arrive, we will have been obliged to surrender for want of provisions.

1018. An inference under the same circumstances would be expressed by the future of **deber** followed by a past infinitive:—

La familia **deberá haberse acostado** antes de que nosotros lleguemos.

The family will probably have gone to bed before we get there.

FUTURE CONDITIONAL.

1019. The value of the future conditional of **deber** is further subdivided according as it expresses a future dating from a past time, or stands in the apodosis of a condition of implied negation.

As a past future:—

OBLIGATION.

Nos previno que **deberíamos** levantarnos muy de mañana.

He informed us that we would have to get up very early in the morning.

Colocóse á un criado en la puerta de la galería, quien **debería** impedir la entrada á las personas que no tuviesen billetes.

A servant was stationed at the door of the gallery, whose duty it was to prevent persons from entering who had not tickets.

INFERENCE.

Conocimos que el choque **debería** de ser espantoso.

We knew that the shock would most likely be frightful.

Según los nuevos síntomas que se habían presentado, la calentura no **debería** durar sino dos días más.

According to the new symptoms which had appeared, the fever ought not to last more than two days longer.

Los isleños creían que de esta manera haciéndo fuego en los piratas desde cuatro puntos diferentes, **deberían** éstos pensar que la isla estaba suficientemente poblada y al mismo tiempo bien defendida.

The islanders thought that by firing on the pirates in this manner from four different points, the latter would naturally think that the island was sufficiently populated and at the same time well defended.

1020. In conditions of implied negation the meaning of probability disappears and only that of obligation remains:—

Si aquella casa quebrase, **deberíamos** suspender el crédito.	If that house were to fail we should have to suspend payments.
Si llegara su señor tío esta noche, **debería** V. cederle su aposento.	If your uncle should arrive to-night you would have to give up your room to him.
Si aconteciera que V. descubriese el autor del robo, **debería** avisar á las autoridades civiles.	If you should happen to discover the author of the robbery, it would be your duty to inform the authorities.

1021. The most frequent use of the future conditional of **deber** is when the protasis is wanting; in which case it expresses an obligation to perform something that is not being done,—or the contrary:—

V. **debería** manejarse mejor con su hermano.	You ought to behave better towards your brother.
No **deberíamos** permanecer más tiempo aquí.	We ought not to stay here any longer.
V. **debería** contentarse con esta suma, porque excede al valor del trabajo.	You ought to be content with this sum, for it is more than the work is worth.

FUTURE-PERFECT CONDITIONAL.

1022. Is employed only to express a past obligation to perform something which was not done,—or the contrary:—

V. **habría debido** mostrarle más indulgencia.	You ought to have shown him more indulgence.
V. no **habría debido** romper el sello de una carta dirigida á mí.	You ought not to have broken the seal of a letter addressed to me.
Confieso que no **habría debido** hacerlo.	I confess I ought not to have done so.

1023. The future conditional followed by a past infinitive expresses a present obligation to have performed, in the past, something which was not done,—or the contrary,—and is scarcely distinguishable from the preceding usage. It is of rare occurrence:—

V. **debería haberse preparado** para este examen.	You ought to have prepared yourself for this examination.

1024. The values of the remaining forms of **deber** follow in such regular sequence those which have been given, that their usages will be sufficiently apparent from the examples without further explanation:—

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

OBLIGATION.

Siento que **deba** V. marcharse tan temprano.	I am sorry you have to go so early.
Este libro no contiene nada que la srita. hija de V. no **deba** leer.	This book contains nothing which your daughter should not read.

INFERENCE.[1]

No creo que el error de observación **deba** pasar de unos cuantos segundos en latitud.	I do not think the error of observation ought to exceed a few seconds in latitude.
No me imagino que ella **deba** divertirse mucho allí.	I don't imagine she can be very much entertained there.

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

OBLIGATION.

Es lástima que **haya debido** V. sacrificar su biblioteca.	It is a pity you have had to sacrifice your library.

INFERENCE.

No creo que **él haya debido** aprender gran cosa en el colegio.	I don't believe it likely that he has learned much at college.

IMPERFECT AND AORIST SUBJUNCTIVE.

OBLIGATION.

El coronel mandó destruir el puente, de modo que los enemigos, al llegar, **debieran** hacer un rodeo.	The colonel ordered the bridge to be destroyed, so that the enemy, on coming up, should be obliged to make a detour.
Si hubiéramos sabido que V. **debiese** venir, habríamos mandado preparar una comida mejor.	If we had known that you were coming we should have had a better dinner prepared.

INFERENCE.

No creo que **debiese** de entender lo que yo dije, porque siguió leyendo.	I do not believe he could have heard what I said, for he kept on reading.
No nos imaginábamos que el ruido **debiera** significar nada.	We did not suppose that the noise meant anything.

[1] The value of **deber** as expressing an inference is of extremely limited application in the dependent tenses.

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE AS SUBSTITUTE FOR FUTURE CONDITIONAL.

Si el camino estuviese en buen estado, **debiera** V. recorrer la distancia en tres horas.

If the road were in good condition you ought to walk the distance in three hours.

FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE.

Dejo este punto para los que **debieren** resolver los enigmas políticos de lo futuro.

I leave this point for those whose duty it may be to solve the political riddles of the future.

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

Era de sentirse que **hubiera debido** renunciar á su proyecto.

It was to be regretted that he had been obliged to give up his project.

INFINITIVE.

Había cedido á sus deseos sin **deber** hacerlo.

He had yielded to his impulses when he ought not to have done so.

Creemos **deber** añadir que la sociedad que frecuenta estas termas y la belleza de las perspectivas que se presentan á la vista, igualan por completo á las ventajas sanitarias que acaban de exponerse.

We think we ought to add that the society and the scenery at these springs are fully equal to the sanitary advantages which have just been set forth.

PAST INFINITIVE.

Siento **haber debido** despedirlo.

I am sorry to have been obliged to discharge him.

Don Ramón se jacta de no **haber debido** nunca reconocer una derrota.

Mr. Ramón boasts that he has never been obliged to acknowledge a defeat.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

When not employed with **haber** in the formation of the compound tenses, the past participle is used only as an adjective with the original value of *due*:—

Para espantar á los cuervos, se pusieron maniquíes grotescos, **debidos** á la imaginación fantástica de Ruiz, los que bastaron para ahuyentarlos.

To frighten the crows, grotesque effigies were erected, due to the fantastic imagination of Ruiz, which were sufficient to scare them away.

GERUND.

Debiendo leer esta noche un ensayo delante de la Sociedad Filológica, suplico á V. se sirva recibir mis

As I am to read an essay before the Philological Society this evening I beg you to accept my regrets with

excusas con la expresión de mi agradecimiento por su atento convite.	the expression of my thanks for your kind invitation.

COMPOUND GERUND.

Habiendo debido enviar últimamente una remesa á mi hijo, quien está haciendo sus estudios en Europa, siento deber manifestar que no tengo disponible la suma que V. dice.	Having been lately obliged to send a remittance to my son who is studying in Europe, I am sorry to have to say that I have not at my disposal the sum you name.

1025. CORRESPONDENCE OF TENSES OF DEBER.

Necesitábamos tiempo para juzgar lo que **debíamos** hacer en aquel asunto.	We needed time to consider what we ought to do in the matter.
Necesitamos tiempo para juzgar lo que **debemos** hacer en este asunto.	We need time to consider what we ought to do in the matter.
Necesitaremos tiempo para juzgar lo que **deberemos** hacer en este asunto.	We will need time to consider what we will need to do in the matter.
En este caso necesitaríamos tiempo para juzgar lo que **deberíamos** hacer en este asunto.	In that case we would need time to consider what we ought to do in the matter.
En ese caso habríamos necesitado tiempo para juzgar lo que **hubiéramos debido** hacer en aquel asunto.	In that case we should have needed time to consider what it would have been our duty to do in the matter.

PODER.

1026. Poder is quite irregular in its inflection; its complete conjugation will be found in § 1098. For convenience, however, each tense will be conjugated here as it is presented.

1027. The infinitive is used as a noun meaning *power*[1]:—

---

[1] Mechanical *power* is **fuerza**; *power* in mathematics and when it relates to the authority of states, is **potencia**:—

Fuerza motriz; fuerza de tracción; fuerza hidráulica; fuerza propulsora.	Motive power; power of traction; water power; propelling power.
Elevar un guarismo á la décima potencia.	To raise a figure to the tenth power.
Estas dos potencias han celebrado un tratado de reciprocidad.	These two powers have ratified a treaty of reciprocity.
Las potencias del cielo; las potencias de las tinieblas.	The powers on high; the powers of darkness.
Un torno mecánico; un telar mecánico; una prensa mecánica de rotación.	A power lathe; a power loom; a rotary power press.

Nos tiene en su **poder**.	He has us in his power.
El **poder** ejecutivo.	The executive power.
El fuego tiene el **poder** de calcinar todos los cuerpos.	Fire has the power **of calcining** all bodies.

1028. **Poder** is a true auxiliary, as it always applies either to a following infinitive, or relates to a foregoing infinitive which does not need to be repeated. It has the following values:—

1. It corresponds to the English *be able*, and expresses physical power or ability, generally represented in English by the defective verb *can*:—

El niño ya **puede** andar.	The child can walk now.
Puedo probar que es verdad.	I can prove that it is true.

2. By extension of the above, it is used like the English *may* to express permissibility:—

Se puede también emplear la gasa yodoformizada.	Iodoform gauze may also be employed.
Vds. pueden salir si quieren.	You may go out if you want to.

3. It expresses the liability of an occurrence, or the possibility of the truth of a statement or supposition which the speaker is not prepared to deny; this value is represented in English by *may*, in interrogations by *can*:—

El niño **puede** caerse.	The child may fall.
Puede ser verdad.	It may be true.
¿ **Puede** ser posible que haya descubierto la clave ?	Can it be possible that he has discovered the clue ?

1029. For the sake of clearness, usage 3 may be distinguished from the others by employing the third person singular of **poder** impersonally before **ser**; the whole being followed by the subjunctive of the dependent verb:—

Puede hacerse.	It can be done.
Puede ser que se haga.	It may be done.

1030. Moreover when **poder** is used in a negation, the negative **no** is placed before **poder** when it denotes power or ability; but when mere liability or possibility is intended, the negative is restricted to the infinitive by being placed between it and **poder**:—

El espejo **no puede** caerse.	The mirror cannot fall.
El espejo **puede no** caerse.	The mirror may not fall.

1031. Poder may be used before an indefinite pronoun, expressed or understood, without relating to a previous infinitive, in which case **hacer**, *to do*, is understood:—

Contra tales adversarios no **podemos** nada.	Against such adversaries we can [do] nothing.
No **puedo** con él.	I cannot [do anything] with him.
Estoy agotado; no **puedo** más.	I am exhausted; I can [do] no more.

☞ As the English auxiliaries *may, might*, and *can, could*, which correspond most nearly to **poder**, are fragmentary and have but two forms respectively, the full inflectional forms of **poder** can often be better rendered by some expression equally capable of inflection, as *to be able to, to be possible that.*

1032. In the exposition of **deber** the student has seen the effects of the several moods and tenses in expressing an obligation or inference. Their varying effects upon **poder**, in expressing ability or possibility, are precisely similar, and will be sufficiently apparent from the examples without need of further explanation. The various moods and tenses will be treated separately (as was done with **deber**):—

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

[*Puedo, puedes, puede; podemos, podéis, pueden.*]

Aquellos batidores son gente escogida, hombres disciplinados y diestros, con los cuales se **puede** contar con seguridad.	Those scouts are picked men, expert and well disciplined, who may be safely counted on.
Los buques de mayor calado **pueden** atracarse á los muelles.	Vessels of the largest draught can come alongside of the wharves.
No se **puede** repicar y andar en la procesión.	One cannot be in two places at once.
La exportación anual de productos naturales del Istmo **puede** estimarse en $1.200.000.	The annual export of natural products from the Isthmus may be estimated at $1,200,000.

FOLLOWED BY PAST INFINITIVE.

La escuadra todavía no **puede haber doblado** el cabo de Hornos.	The fleet cannot yet have doubled Cape Horn.
La escuadra **puede** no **haber doblado** todavía el cabo de Hornos.	The fleet may not have doubled Cape Horn yet.
Las corrientes **pueden haberlos llevado** más lejos de la costa.	The currents may have carried them farther from the coast.

PERFECT INDICATIVE.

[*Ha, has, ha podido ; hemos, habéis, han podido.*]

La escuadra todavía no **ha podido** doblar el cabo de Hornos.
The fleet has not yet been able to double Cape Horn.

Le hemos buscado por todas partes, pero no le **hemos podido** encontrar.
We have looked for him everywhere, but have not been able to find him.

Los jurados no **han podido** ponerse de acuerdo.
The jurors have not been able to agree.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

[*Podía, podías, podía ; podíamos, podíais, podían.*]

Se preguntaba lo que **podía** haber de cierto en la noticia, dada la poca confianza que debía tenerse en aquél que la refería.
It was asked what certainty there could be in the report, considering the little confidence to which the narrator was entitled.

Escuchaban ávidamente todos los rumores que **podían** llegar del exterior.
They listened eagerly to every noise that could reach them from without.

Su proyecto era atrevido, pero **podía** tener buen éxito gracias á la oscuridad de la noche.
Their project was daring, but might succeed through favor of the darkness of the night.

FOLLOWED BY PAST INFINITIVE.[1]

Claro era que ninguno de ellos **podía haber sido** visto, porque ellos mismos no distinguían el buque al través de la niebla.
It was clear that none of them could have been seen, for they themselves did not distinguish the ship through the fog.

El torpedero no **podía haberse alejado** mucho, por rápida que hubiera sido su marcha.
The torpedo boat could not have got very far away, however great might have been her speed.

AORIST INDICATIVE.

[*Pude, pudiste, pudo ; pudimos, pudisteis, pudieron.*]

Cada cual trató de acomodarse para dormir, como mejor **pudo**.
Each one tried to accommodate himself, as best he could, to sleep.

Hablaban los piratas en alta voz, refiriendo sus proezas mientras bebían desmesuradamente, y Ramírez **pudo** oír la siguiente relación : . . .
The pirates were talking in a loud voice, recounting their exploits, while they kept on drinking immoderately, and Ramírez was able to hear the following recital : . . .

---

[1] **Poder** followed by a past infinitive, expresses not power but probability or possibility. It never corresponds to "be able," but to "may" or "can."

Carlos no **pudo** contener un suspiro de satisfacción al oír aquella respuesta.

Charles could not restrain a sigh of relief on hearing this answer.

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

[*Había, habías, había podido ; habíamos, habíais, habían podido.*]

Los pasajeros habían hecho todo lo que **habían podido** para apagar las llamas.

The passengers had done all they could to extinguish the flames.

Los toros habían tratado de romper la empalizada, pero no **habían podido** lograrlo.

The bulls had tried to break through the palisade, but had not been able to effect it.

Estos síntomas no **habían podido** escapar á la penetración del médico.

These symptoms had not been able to escape the doctor's penetration.

FUTURE INDICATIVE.

[*Podré, podrás, podrá ; podremos, podréis, podrán.*]

Desde la cima de aquel cerro **podremos** obtener, sin duda, un conocimiento exacto de la isla.

From the top of that ridge we shall no doubt be able to obtain a correct understanding of the island.

Aquel oficial **podrá** sin duda proporcionar á V. todos los informes que V. desee.

That officer will doubtless be able to furnish you with all the information which you may desire.

FUTURE-PERFECT INDICATIVE.

Para entonces **habré podido** enterarme de todos los pormenores de la fábrica.

By that time I shall have been able to acquaint myself with all the details of the manufacture.

Estoy seguro de que antes del viernes próximo la comisión **habrá podido** terminar sus presupuestos.

I am positive that the committee will have been able to complete its estimates before next Friday.

FUTURE CONDITIONAL.

[*Podría, podrías, podría; podríamos, podríais, podrían.*]

AS A PAST FUTURE.

Se acordó pasar la noche en la choza abandonada, la cual **podría** calentarse suficientemente por medio de la provisión de leña que se hallaba en un rincón.

It was agreed to pass the night in the deserted hut, which could be sufficiently warmed with the stock of wood that was found in one corner.

Como les separaba media milla de la costa, á tal distancia sus tiros **podrían** no ser muy dañosos.

As they were half a mile from the shore, their shots might not be very dangerous at that distance.

IN CONDITIONS.

¿ **Podría** V., sin inconveniente, prestarme cinco pesos ?

Could you without inconvenience lend me five dollars ?

Si la brisa no se dirigiese ahora hacia la catarata, creo que **podríamos** oír el susurro á esta distancia.

If the breeze were not now blowing towards the falls, I think we would be able to hear their roaring at this distance.

Si estuviéramos en uno de los balcones, **podríamos** ver mejor los fuegos artificiales.

If we were in one of the balconies we could see the fireworks better.

FOLLOWED BY PAST INFINITIVE.

Por otra parte, los indígenas **podrían haber dificultado** mucho la operación proyectada.

Besides, the natives might have seriously interfered with the projected operation.

La joven se quitó la boina, y al sacudir la cabeza á uno y otro lado, comenzaron á desprenderse y esparcirse sobre sus hombros unos cabellos que **podrían** los del sol **haberles tenido** envidia.

The young girl took off her tam-o'shanter, and shaking her head from side to side, her hair, which the sun's rays might have envied, began to escape and fall down over her shoulders.

FUTURE-PERFECT CONDITIONAL.

[*Habría, habrías, habría podido ; habríamos, habríais, habrían podido.*]

El centinela **habría podido** ver que le espiaban y hasta que era seguido de cerca, pero no **habría podido** oír los pasos del indio, porque éste, con los pies descalzos, más bien se deslizaba que andaba, y ningún ruido daba indicio de su presencia.

The sentinel might have seen that he was watched and even that he was closely followed, but he could not have heard the Indian's footsteps, for the latter, with bare feet, glided rather than walked, and no sound betrayed his presence.

Los marineros fácilmente **habrían podido** matar con sus remos algunos de los pinguinos, pero no pensaron en entregarse á aquella matanza inútil.

The sailors could easily have killed some of the penguins with their oars, but they did not think of devoting themselves to that useless slaughter.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

[*Pueda, puedas, pueda ; podamos, podáis, puedan.*]

Es dudoso que **podamos** escaparnos de la tormenta, puesto que las tempestades de los trópicos se declaran con rapidez asombrosa.

It is doubtful whether we can escape the storm, for these tropical tornadoes come up with frightful rapidity.

Es imposible predecir lo que se **pueda** hacer antes de hacer una tentativa.
¡Ojalá **podamos** salvar la vida de nuestro compañero!
Esta isla no ofrece ni siquiera un puerto que **pueda** servir de abrigo á buques de calado medio.

It is impossible to say what can be done before making an attempt.
God grant we may be able to save the life of our companion!
This island does not even offer a port which can accommodate vessels of medium draught.

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

[*Haya, hayas, haya podido; hayamos, hayáis, hayan podido.*]

Es de sentir que el asunto no se **haya podido** arreglar amigablemente.
No creo que ninguno de estos tunantes **haya podido** irse lejos.
Nos alegramos de que **haya podido** probar su inocencia.

It is to be regretted that it has not been possible to arrange the matter amicably.
I do not believe any of the rascals can have gone far.
We are delighted that he has been able to prove his innocence.

IMPERFECT AND AORIST SUBJUNCTIVE.

[*Pudiera, pudieras, pudiera; pudiéramos, pudierais, pudieran.*]
[*Pudiese, pudieses, pudiese; pudiésemos, pudieseis, pudiesen.*]

La embarcación fué amarrada sólidamente para que el reflujo no **pudiera** llevársela.
Tomó un puñado de yerbas secas, y lo puso bajo los leños y astillas dispuestas de manera que el aire **pudiese** circular fácilmente é inflamar con rapidez la leña seca.
El perro, antes de que su amo **pudiese** contenerlo, se precipitó sobre la garganta del desconocido.

The boat was firmly moored in order that the ebb-tide might not carry it away.
He took a handful of dry grass and put it under the sticks and twigs arranged so that the air would be able to circulate freely and rapidly ignite the dry wood.
The dog, before his master could restrain him, leaped at the stranger's throat.

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE FOR FUTURE CONDITIONAL.

Si V. me permitiese emplear el éter, **pudiera** extraer esta muela sin ocasionarle dolor.
En efecto él supo tan bien fingir la necesidad de su ausencia que nadie **pudiera** entender que era fingida.

If you would permit me to employ ether I could extract this tooth without causing you pain.
In fact he knew so well how to feign the necessity for his absence that no one could know that it was a pretense.

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

[*Hubiera, hubieras, hubiera podido ; hubiéramos, hubierais, hubieran podido.*]
[*Hubiese, hubieses, hubiese podido ; hubiésemos, hubieseis, hubiesen podido.*]

No creo que **hubiesen podido** evadirse por este lado del muro.

I do not think they could have escaped on this side of the wall.

Si **hubiese podido** pasar la puerta de Perona y llegar adonde dejé á mi caballo, no me hallaría en el apuro en que me veo.

If I had been able to pass through the Perona gate and reach the place where I left my horse, I should not find myself in the fix I am in now.

AS SUBSTITUTE FOR FUTURE-PERFECT CONDITIONAL.

Sin embargo, **hubiera podido** hacerme el más dichoso de los mortales si me hubiera dirigido una sola palabra cariñosa.

Still, she could have made me the happiest of mortals if she had addressed to me a single affectionate word

La corriente marchaba hacia alta mar, y aun cuando hubiera querido, no **hubiera podido** volver á tierra.

The current was running out to the open sea, and even if I had wanted to I could not have returned to land.

FUTURE SUBJUNCTIVE.

[*Pudiere, pudieres, pudiere ; pudiéremos, pudiereis, pudieren.*]

El que **pudiere** recojer y almacenar para su uso los recursos no utilizados de la Naturaleza, que los mandare trabajar en su taller, calentar y alumbrar su domicilio y fertilizar sus campos, alcanzará una soberanía desconocida para los Césares y más singular que todas las fábulas del Oriente.

Whoever shall be able to gather and store for his use the waste resources of Nature, who will make them work in his shop, warm and light his dwelling and fertilize his fields, will acquire a sovereignty unknown to the Cæsars and stranger than all the fables of the East.

INFINITIVE.

[*Poder.*]

Al mismo tiempo se dispusieron las municiones y las armas para **poder** utilizarlas en el primer instante en caso de una agresión repentina.

At the same time the arms and ammunition were disposed so as to be available on the first instant in case of a sudden attack.

Sí señor, debo ; pero deber no es **poder.**

Yes, Sir, I ought ; but ought is not can.

Quisiera **poder** hacerlo.

I should like to be able to do it.

Espero **poder** hacerlo mañana.

I hope to be able to do it to-morrow.

PAST INFINITIVE.

[*Haber podido.*]

Ellos se quedarán sorprendidos de **haber podido** pensar un solo instante en semejante proyecto.	They will be astonished at having ever been able to think for a single instant of such a scheme.
Napoleón se vanagloriaba de **haber podido** dictar á la Europa la paz ó la guerra á su albedrío.	Napoleon boasted of having been able to dictate peace or war to Europe at his will.

GERUND.

[*Pudiendo.*]

Desde esta altura la mirada, **pudiendo** extenderse sin límites, abarca todos los detalles de un panorama que se extiende por un horizonte de sesenta millas.	The sight being able, from this elevation, to extend itself without limits, takes in all the details of a panorama stretching out to a horizon sixty miles distant.
Me refugié entre las niaras, y **pudiendo** más la fatiga que el hambre, me dormí.	I crept in among the hay-ricks, and fatigue being more potent than hunger, I fell asleep.

COMPOUND GERUND.

[*Habiendo podido.*]

No comprendía el buen sacerdote los malos corazones, no **habiendo podido** nunca despedir á un desgraciado sin darle socorro.	The good priest did not understand hard hearts, never having been able himself to turn away an unfortunate without aiding him.

NO PODER MENOS DE.

1033. This expression, in its various moods and tenses, may be rendered by some form of the English *cannot help*, followed by a present participle, or *cannot fail to*, followed by an infinitive:—

No puedo menos de temer un desenlace funesto.	I cannot help fearing a disastrous outcome.
No podrá menos de querernos, porque seremos buenos para él.	He cannot fail to like us, for we will be good to him.
No podían menos de sentir grande ansiedad por saber la importancia del nuevo incidente.	They could not help feeling great anxiety to know the importance of the new occurrence.
No pudo menos de sentir una especie de secreta satisfacción.	He could not help feeling a kind of secret satisfaction.
No pudieron menos de advertir que algo extraordinario acontecía.	They could not help noticing that something unusual was going on.

Atrevidas y felices especulaciones de bolsa, gran número de negocios de importación, importantes empréstitos cuya emisión le había sido confiada, **no habían podido menos** de llevar mucho dinero á su caja.

Bold and successful speculations on the Exchange, a large amount of importing trade, important loans whose issue had been intrusted to him, had not failed to net him large sums.

Exercise XLVIII.

However much cunning he employs he will not be able to deceive them. I wish I could accompany you this evening, but I must stay at home to finish up my delayed *correspondence*. Couldn't you postpone that until (*para*) to-morrow? I could, it is true; but my duty tells me not to do it. You must have seen many *curious* sights during your travels in Mexico; how much I wish I could have been with you. Your mother must have been astonished to see you so soon. I should like to be able to take an outing of a month this summer, but I doubt whether I shall be able to permit myself such an extravagance. The storm must have been very *violent* in this section; I have noticed many large trees uprooted. The wind blew with such fury that we were all afraid that the house would not be able to withstand its force. The *minister* received me politely, but I could not help thinking (*pensar*) that he might have shown more interest in what I had to *communicate* to him. It is useless for you to say that the work ought to have been done sooner; three men could not have done it in less time. I could often *imitate* the sounds of a foreign language if I could distinguish them by the ear. You ought not to study so assiduously; your brain will not be able to endure the strain to which you subject it. I am glad that you have been able to sell your crop so readily. If they insist further we shall be obliged to yield the point to them. You ought to be able to speak French fluently after a stay of two years in Paris. I cannot understand how a man so utterly devoid of ability has been able to hold such an *important* position for so long a time (*tanto tiempo*).

CHAPTER XIX.

THE INFLECTION OF THE MODEL VERBS.

1034. Spanish verbs are inflected by means of a series of terminations, expressing distinctions of person, number, tense and mood, added to a basis, called the *stem*, which embodies the meaning of the verb.

a. We have seen that all Spanish verbs in the infinitive end in **-ar**, **-er** or **-ir**, and are classified into conjugations according to these terminations :—

-ar : 1st conjugation ;
-er : 2nd conjugation ;
-ir : 3rd conjugation.

b. By removing the infinitive ending of a verb we obtain the stem.

c. In regular verbs, the terminations of the future indicative and conditional are added to the full infinitive ; all other terminations are applied to the unchanged stem.

1035. With the exception of the infinitive and those forms constructed upon it, the inflections of the second and third conjugations differ only in the 1st and 2nd persons plural of the indicative present and in the 2nd person singular of the imperative. The two conjugations are combined in the following table when their terminations are identical:—

INFLECTIONAL ENDINGS OF THE THREE CONJUGATIONS.

INFINITIVE.			PAST PARTICIPLE.		GERUND.	
1.	2.	3.	1.	2 and 3.	1.	2 and 3.
-ar,	**-er,**	**-ir.**	**-ado,**	**-ido.**	**-ando,**	**-iendo.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.			SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT.			PRESENT.	
1.	2.	3.	1.	2 and 3.
-o,	**-o,**	**-o.**	**-e,**	**-a.**
-as,	**-es,**	**-es.**	**-es,**	**-as.**
-a,	**-e,**	**-e.**	**-e,**	**-a.**
-amos,	**-emos,**	**-imos.**	**-emos,**	**-amos.**
-áis,	**-éis,**	**-ís.**	**-éis,**	**-áis.**
-an,	**-en,**	**-en.**	**-en,**	**-an.**
IMPERFECT.			IMPERFECT.	
1.		2 and 3.	1.	2 and 3.
-aba,		**-ía.**	**-ara,**	**-iera.**
-abas,		**-ías.**	**-aras,**	**-ieras.**
-aba,		**-ía.**	**-ara,**	**-iera.**
-ábamos,		**-íamos.**	**-áramos,**	**-iéramos.**
-abais,		**-íais.**	**-arais,**	**-ierais.**
-aban,		**-ían.**	**-aran,**	**-ieran.**

AORIST.	
1.	2 and 3.
-é,	-í.
-aste,	-iste.
-ó,	-ió.
-amos,	-imos.
-asteis,	-isteis.
-aron,	-ieron.

AORIST.	
1.	2 and 3.
-ase,	-iese.
-ases,	-ieses.
-ase,	-iese.
-ásemos,	-iésemos.
-aseis,	-ieseis.
-asen,	-iesen.

FUTURE.
1, 2 and 3.
-é.
-ás.
-á.
-emos.
-éis.
-án.

FUTURE.	
1.	2 and 3.
-are,	-iere.
-ares,	-ieres.
-are,	-iere.
-áremos,	-iéremos.
-areis,	-iereis.
-aren,	-ieren.

CONDITIONAL FUTURE.
1, 2 and 3.
-ía.
-ías.
-ía.
-íamos.
-íais.
-ían.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
1.	2.	3.
—	—	—
-a,	-e,	-e.
—	—	—
—	—	—
-ad,	-ed,	-id.
—	—	—

1036. These terminations are applied as follows to the three model verbs, like which all other regular verbs are to be inflected, according to conjugation:—

PARADIGMS OF THE THREE MODEL VERBS.

	1st Conjugation.	2nd Conjugation.	3rd Conjugation.
Infinitive.	compr-ar.	vend-er.	viv-ir.
Gerund.	compr-ando.	vend-iendo.	viv-iendo.
P. Participle.	compr-ado.	vend-ido.	viv-ido.
	INDICATIVE MOOD.		
Present.	compr-o,	vend-o,	viv-o,
	compr-as,	vend-es,	viv-es,
	compr-a,	vend-e,	viv-e,
	compr-amos,	vend-emos,	viv-imos,
	compr-áis,	vend-éis,	viv-ís,
	compr-an.	vend-en.	viv-en.

IMPERFECT.	compr-aba, compr-abas, compr-aba, compr-ábamos, compr-abais, compr-aban.	vend-ía, vend-ías, vend-ía, vend-íamos, vend-íais, vend-ían.	viv-ía, viv-ías, viv-ía, viv-íamos, viv-íais, viv-ían.
AORIST.	compr-é, compr-aste, compr-ó, compr-amos, compr-asteis, compr-aron.	vend-í, vend-iste, vend-ió, vend-imos, vend-isteis, vend-ieron.	viv-í, viv-iste, viv-ió, viv-imos, viv-isteis, viv-ieron.
FUTURE.	compr-ar-é, compr-ar-ás, compr-ar-á, compr-ar-emos, compr-ar-éis, compr-ar-án.	vend-er-é, vend-er-ás, vend-er-á, vend-er-emos, vend-er-éis, vend-er-án.	viv-ir-é, viv-ir-ás, viv-ir-á, viv-ir-emos, viv-ir-éis, viv-ir-án.
	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
PRESENT.	compr-e, compr-es, compr-e, compr-emos, compr-éis, compr-en.	vend-a, vend-as, vend-a, vend-amos, vend-áis, vend-an.	viv-a, viv-as, viv-a, viv-amos, viv-áis, viv-an.
IMPERFECT.	compr-ara, compr-aras, compr-ara, compr-áramos, compr-arais, compr-aran.	vend-iera, vend-ieras, vend-iera, vend-iéramos, vend-ierais, vend-ieran.	viv-iera, viv-ieras, viv-iera, viv-iéramos, viv-ierais, viv-ieran.
AORIST.	compr-ase, compr-ases, compr-ase, compr-ásemos, compr-aseis, compr-asen.	vend-iese, vend-ieses, vend-iese, vend-iésemos, vend-ieseis, vend-iesen.	viv-iese, viv-ieses, viv-iese, viv-iésemos, viv-ieseis, viv-iesen.
FUTURE.	compr-are, compr-ares, compr-are, compr-áremos, compr-areis, compr-aren.	vend-iere, vend-ieres, vend-iere, vend-iéremos, vend-iereis, vend-ieren.	viv-iere, viv-ieres, viv-iere, viv-iéremos, viv-iereis, viv-ieren.

	CONDITIONAL MOOD.		
FUTURE.	compr-ar-ía, compr-ar-ías, compr-ar-ía, compr-ar-íamos, compr-ar-íais, compr-ar-ían.	vend-er-ía, vend-er-ías, vend-er-ía, vend-er-íamos, vend-er-íais, vend-er-ían.	viv-ir-ía, viv-ir-ías, viv-ir-ía, viv-ir-íamos, viv-ir-íais, viv-ir-ían.
	IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
PRESENT.	compr-a, compr-ad.	vend-e, vend-ed.	viv-e, viv-id.

REMARKS ON THE INFLECTION OF VERBS.

1037. When an inflectional ending is unlike any other, or when it is not likely to be mistaken for another of the same form, it may serve the purpose of a personal pronoun as subject; in that case the personal pronoun is dispensed with unless required by way of emphasis or contrast.

1038. It will be seen by the paradigms that the endings of the first and third persons singular are alike in the conditional, the imperfect indicative and all the tenses of the subjunctive; with these the pronoun-subject is to be expressed when ambiguity would result from its omission:—

IMPERFECT INDIC.:	Yo, él, ella, Vd.	compraba,	vendía, vivía.
PRESENT SUBJ.:	Yo, él, ella, Vd.	compre,	venda, viva.
IMPERFECT SUBJ.:	Yo, él, ella, Vd.	comprara,	vendiera, viviera.
AORIST SUBJ.:	Yo, él, ella, Vd.	comprase,	vendiese, viviese.
FUTURE SUBJ.:	Yo, él, ella, Vd.	comprare,	vendiere, viviere
FUTURE COND'L:	Yo, él, ella, Vd.	compraría,	vendería, viviría.

These persons became identical by the dropping of the original Latin terminations *m* and *t*, since no Spanish words end in these letters. It may be interesting to note the simplification undergone by the Latin inflectional endings, as exemplified by the imperfect indicative:—

LATIN.	SPANISH.
ama-ba-*m*,	ama-ba-,
ama-ba-s,	ama-ba-s,
ama-ba-*t*,	ama-ba-,
ama-ba-mus,	ama-ba-mos,
ama-ba-*tis*,	ama-ba-is,
ama-ba-n*t*,	ama-ba-n-.

1039. The first person plural is the same in the present and aorist indicative of the first and third conjugations, and is only distinguishable by the context:—

Compramos, vendemos, vivimos.	We buy, we sell, we live.
Compramos, vendimos, vivimos.	We bought, we sold, we lived.

1040. The singular of the imperative is identical with the third person singular of the indicative present in all three conjugations:—

Compra, vende, vive.	Buy, sell, live.
Compra, vende, vive.	Buys, sells, lives.

1041. All other forms that are composed of the same letters are distinguished by the accent both in pronunciation and writing:—

Compre,	compré.	Compro,	compró.
Comprare,	compraré.	Comprara,	comprará.
Compraras,	comprarás.	Comprareis,	compraréis.
Compráremos,	compraremos.	Compraran,	comprarán.

REMARK.—There are no such pairs of homonymous forms in the second and third conjugations.

In popular language the aorist terminations of the second person—**aste, asteis** and **iste, isteis**—are very generally assimilated into the forms **astes** and **istes**:—

Tú, *or* vos { **comprastes,** / **vendistes,** / **vivistes,** } *for* { tú compraste, *or* vos comprasteis; / tú vendiste, " vos vendisteis; / tú viviste, " vos vivisteis. }

In familiar style the **d** of the past participle of the first conjugation is very generally omitted in pronunciation; it is pronounced in careful speaking:—

He **comprao, negao, tomao,** *for* he comprado, negado, tomado.

☞ Many other tense, mood and voice forms may be compounded from the infinitive, gerund or past participle by means of the auxiliaries **haber, ser** and **estar**, and various other verbs. These constructions have been already explained under the heads of "Compound Tenses," "The Passive Voice" and "Periphrastic Verbal Expressions."

ORTHOGRAPHIC CHANGES.

1042. An irregular verb is, strictly speaking, one which in its inflection varies in any way from that of the model verb of its conjugation. If this definition were rigorously adhered to, the number of irregular verbs in Spanish would be very large;

but in the greater number the deviations are so uniform as to constitute a kind of secondary regularity, and may be grouped into several general classes.

1043. The majority of the deviations are purely orthographic, and should not be considered as irregularities, as they are mere changes of spelling for the sake of preserving the sound of the stem as pronounced in the infinitive.

In stamping a verb as irregular, we are not to consider the letters with which it is written, but the sound it has when pronounced. As the spoken word is the original of which the written is but a copy, there is no irregularity in changes of letters necessary to maintain uniformity of sound.

1044. The inflectional endings of verbs begin only with **a**, **o**, **e** and **i** (*or* its substitute **y**), although **i** or **y** occurs only in the 2nd and 3rd conjugations. Therefore, since certain consonantal sounds are variously expressed according to the vowel which follows (§ 17), the following changes are necessary for uniformity in pronunciation:—

a. Verbs whose infinitives end in **-car** and **-gar**, change the **c** and **g** to **qu** and **gu** respectively before **e**, in order to preserve the hard sound:—

Tocar, to touch.

Aor. Indic.	**toqué**	tocaste	tocó	tocamos	tocasteis	tocaron.
Pres. Subj.	**toque**	**toques**	**toque**	**toquemos**	**toquéis**	**toquen.**

Pagar, to pay.

Aor. Indic.	**pagué**	pagaste	pagó	pagamos	pagasteis	pagaron.
Pres. Subj.	**pague**	**pagues**	**pague**	**paguemos**	**paguéis**	**paguen.**

b. Verbs in **-guar** require the diæresis over the **u** (**gu**) before **e**, in order to prevent it from becoming mute:—

Averiguar, to ascertain.

Aor. Ind.	**averigüé**	averiguaste	averiguó	-guamos	-guasteis	-guaron.
Pr. Subj.	**averigüe**	**averigües**	**averigüe**	**-güemos**	**-güéis**	**-güen.**

c. Verbs in **-ger** and **-gir** change the **g** into **j** before **o** and **a**:—

Escoger, to choose, select.

Pres. Indic.	**escojo**	escoges	escoge	escogemos	escogéis	escogen.
Pres. Subj.	**escoja**	**escojas**	**escoja**	**escojamos**	**escojáis**	**escojan.**

d. Verbs in **-guir** and **-quir** discard the orthographic **u** and revert to simple **g** and **c** before **o** and **a**:—

Distinguir, to distinguish.

PR. IND. **distingo** distingues distingue -tinguimos **-tinguís -tinguen.**
PR. SJ. **distinga distingas distinga -tingamos -tingáis -tingan**

Delinquir, to transgress.

PR. IND. **delinco** delinques delinque delinquimos delinquís delinquen.
PR. SUBJ. **delinca delincas delinca delincamos delincáis delincan.**

REMARK.—There are no infinitives in **-guer**, **-quer**; and **delinquir** is the only example in **-quir.**

e. Verbs ending in **-cer** or **-cir** *preceded by a consonant*, change the **c** to **z** before **o** and **a**:—

Vencer, to conquer.

PRES. INDIC. **venzo** vences vence vencemos **vencéis** vencen.
PRES. SUBJ. **venza venzas venza venzamos venzáis venzan.**

Esparcir, to scatter.

PRES. IND. **esparzo** esparces esparce esparcemos esparcéis esparcen.
PRES. SUBJ. **esparza esparzas esparza esparzamos esparzáis esparzan.**

f. Verbs ending in **-cer** or **-cir** *preceded by a vowel*, interpolate **z** before the **c**, when followed by **o** or **a**:—

Crecer, to grow.

PRES. INDIC. **crezco** creces crece crecemos crecéis crecen.
PRES. SUBJ. **crezca crezcas crezca crezcamos crezcáis crezcan.**

Lucir, to shine.

PRES. INDIC. **luzco** luces luce lucimos **lucís** lucen.
PRES. SUBJ. **luzca luzcas luzca luzcamos luzcáis luzcan.**

REMARK.—The latter change is not to preserve the value of the consonant, but is required by the Spanish ideas of harmony. It must therefore be considered an irregularity, being introduced here merely for the purpose of contrast with the foregoing paragraph.

EXCEPTIONS.—**Mecer**, *to rock, stir*, and its derivative **remecer**, *to rock, swing*; **cocer**, *to boil*, and its derivatives **recocer**, *to over-boil*, and **escocer**, *to smart*, are exceptions and change the **c** to **z** before **o** and **a**. The irregular verbs **decir**, **hacer** and **yacer**, moreover, do not undergo this change.

1045. The following changes do not affect the pronunciation, but are required by the laws of Spanish orthography:—

a. Verbs in **-zar** change the **z** to **c** before **e**, as **z** should not be written before **e** or **i** (§ 16):—

Rezar, to pray.

AOR. INDIC.	**recé**	rezaste	rezó	rezamos	rezasteis	rezaron.
PRES. SUBJ.	**rece**	**reces**	**rece**	**recemos**	**recéis**	**recen.**

b. The palatalized consonants **ll** and **ñ**, when coming before the diphthongs **ie**, **io**, absorb the vowel **i**, as being no longer necessary:—

Bullir, to boil, seethe.

GERUND.	**bullendo** (*not* bulli*e*ndo).					
AOR. INDIC.	**bullí**	bulliste	**bulló**	bullimos	bullisteis	**bulleron.**
IMP. SUBJ.	**bullera**	**bulleras**	**bullera**	**bulléramos**	**bullerais**	**bulleran.**
AOR. SUBJ.	**bullese**	**bulleses**	**bullese**	**bullésemos**	**bulleseis**	**bullesen.**
FUT. SUBJ.	**bullere**	**bulleres**	**bullere**	**bulléremos**	**bullereis**	**bulleren.**

Tañer, to play (a stringed instrument).

GERUND.	**tañendo** (*not* tañ*i*endo).					
AOR. INDIC.	tañí	tañiste	**tañó**	tañimos	tañisteis	**tañeron.**
IMP. SUBJ.	**tañera**	**tañeras**	**tañera**	**tañéramos**	**tañerais**	**tañeran**
AOR. SUBJ.	**tañese**	**tañeses**	**tañese**	**tañésemos**	**tañeseis**	**tañesen.**
FUT. SUBJ.	**tañere**	**tañeres**	**tañere**	**tañéremos**	**tañereis**	**tañeren.**

Bruñir, to burnish.

GERUND.	**bruñendo** (*not* bruñ*i*endo).					
AOR. INDIC.	bruñí	bruñiste	**bruñó**	bruñimos	bruñisteis	**-ñeron.**
IMP. SUBJ.	**bruñera**	**bruñeras**	**bruñera**	**-ñéramos**	**-ñerais**	**-ñeran.**
AOR. SUBJ.	**bruñese**	**bruñeses**	**bruñese**	**-ñésemos**	**-ñeseis**	**-ñesen.**
FUT. SUBJ.	**bruñere**	**bruñeres**	**bruñere**	**-ñéremos**	**-ñereis**	**-ñeren.**

REMARK.—This usage is by some writers extended to **ch**, but is not justified by analogy.

1046. Where the stem of the verb ends in a vowel, the **i** of the diphthongal endings **ie**, **io**, must be changed to **y**, since Spanish orthography does not allow unaccented **i** to come between vowels:—

Caer, to fall.

GERUND.	**cayendo** (*not* ca*i*endo).					
AOR. INDIC.	caí	caíste	**cayó**	caímos	caísteis	**cayeron.**
IMP. SUBJ.	**cayera**	**cayeras**	**cayera**	**cayéramos**	**cayerais**	**cayeran.**
AOR. SUBJ.	**cayese**	**cayeses**	**cayese**	**cayésemos**	**cayeseis**	**cayesen.**
FUT. SUBJ.	**cayere**	**cayeres**	**cayere**	**cayéremos**	**cayereis**	**cayeren.**

Creer, to believe.

GERUND.	**creyendo** (*not* creiendo).					
AOR. INDIC.	creí	creíste	**creyó**	creímos	creísteis	**creyeron**
IMP. SUBJ.	**creyera**	**creyeras**	**creyera**	**creyéramos**	**creyerais**	**creyeran.**
AOR. SUBJ.	**creyese**	**creyeses**	**creyese**	**creyésemos**	**creyeseis**	**creyesen.**
FUT. SUBJ.	**creyere**	**creyeres**	**creyere**	**creyéremos**	**creyereis**	**creyeren.**

Huir, to flee.

GERUND.	**huyendo** (*not* huiendo).					
AOR. INDIC.	huí	huiste	**huyó**	huimos	huisteis	**huyeron.**
IMP. SUBJ.	**huyera**	**huyeras**	**huyera**	**huyéramos**	**huyerais**	**huyeran.**
AOR. SUBJ.	**huyese**	**huyeses**	**huyese**	**huyésemos**	**huyeseis**	**huyesen.**
FUT. SUBJ.	**huyere**	**huyeres**	**huyere**	**huyéremos**	**huyereis**	**huyeren.**

Argüir, to argue.

GERUND.	**arguyendo** (*not* argüiendo).					
AOR. IND.	argüí	argüiste	**arguyó**	argüimos	argüisteis	**-yeron.**
IMP. SUBJ.	**arguyera**	**-guyeras**	**-guyera**	**-guyéramos**	**-guyerais**	**-yeran.**
AOR. SUBJ.	**arguyese**	**-guyeses**	**-guyese**	**-guyésemos**	**-guyeseis**	**-yesen.**
FUT. SUBJ.	**arguyere**	**-guyeres**	**-guyere**	**-guyéremos**	**-guyereis**	**-yeren.**

REMARK.—When the termination begins with accented **i** followed by a vowel, it does not constitute a diphthong, and the above does not apply :—

CAER :	caía	caías	caía	caíamos	caíais	caían.
CREER :	creía	creías	creía	creíamos	creíais	creían.
HUIR :	huía	huías	huía	huíamos	huíais	huían.
ARGÜIR :	argüía	argüías	argüía	argüíamos	argüíais	argüían.

1047. In the case of verbs ending in **-guir**, **-quir**, since the **u** of the stem is a mere orthographic expedient to preserve the hard sound of the preceding consonant, it does not count as a vowel, and the above principle does not apply:—

Distinguir, to distinguish.

GERUND.	distinguiendo.					
AOR. IND.	distinguí	-guiste	-guió	-guimos	-guisteis	-guieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	distinguiera	-guieras	-guiera	-guiéramos	-guierais	-guieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	distinguiese	-guieses	-guiese	-guiésemos	-guieseis	-guiesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	distinguiere	-guieres	-guiere	-guiéremos	-guiereis	-guieren.

Delinquir, to transgress.

GERUND.	delinquiendo.					
AOR. IND.	delinquí	-quiste	-quió	-quimos	-quisteis	-quieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	delinquiera	-quieras	-quiera	-quiéramos	-quierais	-quieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	delinquiese	-quieses	-quiese	-quiésemos	-quieseis	-quiesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	delinquiere	-quieres	-quiere	-quiéremos	-quiereis	-quieren.

1048. When the stem of a verb of the first conjugation ends in a weak vowel, this vowel bears the written accent before unaccented terminations beginning with a vowel:—

Variar, to vary.

PRES. INDIC	varío	varías	varía	variamos	variáis	varían.
PRES. SUBJ.	varíe	varíes	varíe	variemos	variéis	varíen.
IMPERAT.	——	varía	——	——	variad	——

Continuar, to continue.

PR. IND.	continúo	continúas	continúa	continuamos	continuáis	continúan.
PR. SUBJ.	continúa	continúes	continúe	continuemos	continuéis	continúen.
IMPERAT.	——	continúa	——	——	continuad	——

☞ These principles of orthographic change are of regular application in all cases; but the conditions requiring them occur only in the parts of the conjugation given in each case.

EXERCISE XLIX.

When you arrive at *Panama* (1), send me a telegram. He does not distinguish the genuine from the *imitation*. Select one or the other, it matters not which. It is not very *probable* that they will conquer. In case you ascertain that my conjecture is *incorrect*, advise me to that effect.[1] When my tenants pay me I shall be able to lend you the sum you need. The rabbits fled in all *directions*. The astronomer, while gazing at the stars, fell into (*á*) a well. As soon as I arrived, I sought a hotel and breakfasted there.[2] I am sorry that you have bought a house in this out-of-the-way place; I would have preferred you to have located nearer me. I do not agree[3] with you; there are so many trees here that it is almost as pleasant as if we were in the woods, and my house being *situated* on an *elevation*, I can enjoy the view of the city without its noise disturbing me. A fine and penetrating rain began to fall, and they would have had no place to[4] shelter themselves if they had not accidentally discovered an *abandoned* and dilapidated fisher's hut. The north wind *penetrated* between the badly-joined boards which composed the walls of the *miserable* shelter, mimicking, now the roar of wild beasts when it blew with greater strength, now sighs and lamentations when its *violence* diminished. In the distance was heard the dull boom of the breakers, as (*que*) they dashed with fury against the reefs along the shore. When it came to[5] selecting the sailors who were to take part in the *expedition*, all offered their *services*, so that the captain had nothing to do but[6] to choose; but he preferred the question to be decided by lot, so that no one should feel aggrieved.

---

[1] al efecto. [2] en ella. [3] no estoy de acuerdo. [4] lugar donde . . . [5] cuando se trató de . . . [6] no tenía más que . . .

CHAPTER XX.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

1049. We have seen that in regular verbs the stem, as obtained by removing the infinitive ending, is the same throughout the conjugation, except for those changes of letters necessary to maintain uniformity of sound or required by the laws of orthography. The only deviation from this is that the terminations of the future indicative and conditional are added to the full infinitive form.

1050. In irregular verbs, with a few isolated exceptions, the irregularity is entirely in the stem, which may change several times in the conjugation.

1051. Irregular verbs, primarily, are inflected on three stems —present, aorist and future—as bases. The groups of tenses formed from these stems are as follows:—

I. *PRESENT STEM:*
Infinitive,
Past Participle,
Gerund (*usually*),
Present Indicative,
Imperfect Indicative,
Present Subjunctive,
Imperative.

II. *AORIST STEM:*
Gerund (*occasionally*),
Aorist Indicative,
Imperfect Subjunctive,
Aorist Subjunctive,
Future Subjunctive.

III. *FUTURE STEM:*
Future Indicative,
Future Conditional.

REMARK.—Some one or two of these may be regular. The present and aorist stems may contain internal irregularities which depend upon the form or accent of the termination. The future stem, when irregular, retains the same irregularity throughout.

PRESENT STEM.

1052. The present stem of irregular verbs is never irregular throughout; its regular and irregular forms are distributed according to the following conditions:—

1. The stem is either accented or unaccented;
2. The termination begins either with a strong vowel (**a**, **o**) or a weak vowel (**e**, **i**).

1053. One of each of these alternatives is present in every verbal form. The combinations are therefore limited to four; viz.:—

a. accented stem, weak termination ;	e.g.:	**dices, sienten.**
b. accented stem, strong termination ;	"	**digo, sientas.**
c. unaccented stem, weak termination ;	"	**decimos, sentís.**
d. unaccented stem, strong termination ;	"	**digáis, sintamos.**

1054. The unaccented stem followed by a weak termination is always regular; any or all of the remaining combinations may be irregular.

NOTE.—The form of the stem that is peculiar to any of the above combinations is always the same wherever that combination occurs.

IRREGULARITIES.

1055. The irregularities of the present stem are methods of strengthening it either when accented or followed by a strong vowel. This strengthening is effected by adding to or changing either the stem vowel, stem consonant, or both:—

PERDER :	pierd-*a*,	pierd-*as*,	pierd-*a*,	perd-*amos*,	perd-*áis*,	pierd-*an*.
VESTIR :	vist-*a*,	vist-*as*,	vist-*a*,	vist-*amos*,	vist-*áis*,	vist-*an*.
SALIR :	salg-*a*,	salg-*as*,	salg-*a*,	salg-*amos*,	salg-*áis*,	salg-*an*.
ASIR :	asg-*a*,	asg-*as*,	asg-*a*,	asg-*amos*,	asg-*áis*,	asg-*an*.
CAER :	caig-*a*,	caig-*as*,	caig-*a*,	caig-*amos*,	caig-*áis*,	caig-*an*.
HACER :	hag-*a*,	hag-*as*,	hag-*a*,	hag-*amos*,	hag-*áis*,	hag-*an*.

1056. Four verbs add **y** to the original **o** of the first person singular of the present indicative:—

SER,	*to be* :	ancient *so*,	modern **soy**,	*I am.*
ESTAR,	*to be* :	" *estó*,	" **estoy**,	*I am.*
DAR,	*to give* :	" *do*,	" **doy**,	*I give.*
IR,	*to go* :	" *vo*,	" **voy**,	*I go.*

1057. The imperfect indicative is irregular only in the three following verbs:—

IR :	iba,	ibas,	iba,	íbamos,	ibais,	iban.
VER :	veía,	veías,	veía,	veíamos,	veíais,	veían.
SER :	era,	eras,	era,	éramos,	erais,	eran.

AORIST STEM.

1058. The aorist stem may be irregular throughout or only in part.

1059. When only *partially* irregular, it is irregular only when followed by a diphthong:—

SENTIR: sentí, sentiste, sintió, sentimos, sentisteis, sintieron.
DORMIR: dormí, dormiste, durmió, dormimos, dormisteis, durmieron.

1060. The verbs whose aorist stems are irregular *throughout* are seventeen in number, which have retained more or less distinctly the form of the Latin irregular perfects as they must have been popularly used in the Iberian peninsula.

a. Fourteen of these, in addition to the stem irregularity, agree in having the first and third persons singular of the aorist indicative end in **e** and **o** respectively, the accent falling on the penultimate instead of the final vowel:—

			HABER.		
hube,	**hub**-iste,	**hubo,**	**hub**-imos,	**hub**-isteis,	**hub**-ieron.
			TENER.		
tuve,	**tuv**-iste,	**tuvo,**	**tuv**-imos,	**tuv**-isteis,	**tuv**-ieron.
			ESTAR.		
estuve,	**estuv**-iste,	**estuvo,**	**estuv**-imos,	**estuv**-isteis,	**estuv**-ieron.
			ANDAR.		
anduve,	**anduv**-iste,	**anduvo,**	**anduv**-imos,	**anduv**-isteis,	**anduv**-ieron.
			CABER.		
cupe,	**cup**-iste,	**cupo,**	**cup**-imos,	**cup**-isteis,	**cup**-ieron.
			SABER.		
supe,	**sup**-iste,	**supo,**	**sup**-imos,	**sup**-isteis,	**sup**-ieron.
			PODER.		
pude,	**pud**-iste,	**pudo,**	**pud**-imos,	**pud**-isteis,	**pud**-ieron.
			PONER.		
puse,	**pus**-iste,	**puso,**	**pus**-imos,	**pus**-isteis,	**pus**-ieron.
			VENIR.		
vine,	**vin**-iste,	**vino,**	**vin**-imos,	**vin**-isteis,	**vin**-ieron.
			HACER.		
hice,	**hic**-iste,	**hizo,**	**hic**-imos,	**hic**-isteis,	**hic**-ieron.
			QUERER.		
quise,	**quis**-iste,	**quiso,**	**quis**-imos,	**quis**-isteis,	**quis**-ieron.
			DECIR.		
dije,	**dij**-iste,	**dijo,**	**dij**-imos,	**dij**-isteis,	**dij**-eron.[1]
			TRAER.		
traje,	**traj**-iste,	**trajo,**	**traj**-imos,	**traj**-isteis,	**traj**-eron.[1]
			Compounds in -DUCIR.		
deduje,	**deduj**-iste,	**dedujo,**	**deduj**-imos,	**deduj**-isteis,	**deduj**-eron.[1]

[1] The **i** of the termination is omitted after **j**. *Cf.* § 1045*b*.

b. In the remaining three, **ser** and **ir** form the aorist upon the Latin root *fu*, while **dar**, though of the first conjugation, takes the terminations of the second conjugation in all the tenses made from the aorist stem:—

SER:	**fu**-í,	**fu**-iste,	**fué**,	**fu**-imos,	**fu**-isteis,	**fu**-eron.
IR:	**fu**-í,	**fu**-iste,	**fué**,	**fu**-imos,	**fu**-isteis,	**fu**-eron.
DAR:	**d**-í,	**d**-iste,	**d**-ió,	**d**-imos,	**d**-isteis,	**d**-ieron.

FUTURE STEM.

1061. Five verbs form the future stem by eliding the vowel of the infinitive ending; five others replace this vowel by a phonetic **d**:—

CABER:	**cabr**-é,	**cabr**-ía.	PONER:	**pondr**-é,	**pondr**-ía.
HABER:	**habr**-é,	**habr**-ía.	SALIR:	**saldr**-é,	**saldr**-ía.
PODER:	**podr**-é,	**podr**-ía.	TENER:	**tendr**-é,	**tendr**-ía.
QUERER:	**querr**-é,	**querr**-ía.	VALER:	**valdr**-é,	**valdr**-ía.
SABER:	**sabr**-é,	**sabr**-ía.	VENIR:	**vendr**-é,	**vendr**-ía.

1062. Finally, two verbs form the future stem from older infinitives which are now obsolete:—

DECIR (*dir*): **dir**-é, **dir**-ía. HACER (*far*): **har**-é, **har**-ía.

PARADIGMS OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

1063. The addition of a prefix to a verb rarely alters the manner of its inflection; hence derivatives will be understood to be inflected like their primitives. The few exceptions to this will be noted in each case.

1064. It usually happens that the irregularities of a given verb are also found in other verbs which present the same conditions. Consequently most of the irregular verbs may be grouped into classes, a representative verb then sufficing to exhibit the irregularities of its class.

a. By counting obsolete and very rare words, and repetitions of the same simple stems with different prefixes, the number of irregular verbs may be raised to nearly 900. By omitting those additions, the number is reduced to 416. The greater part of these belong to two or three classes so regular in their departure from the normal models as to present no difficulty. The other classes, although more irregular, are smaller; and finally a few are so erratic that they have to be treated singly.

b. There are irregularities affecting only the past participle that will be treated of separately.

☞ In the following paradigms the irregularities are printed in bold-faced type :—

FIRST CLASS.

1065. This class is composed of verbs of the 1st and 2nd conjugations only. Their irregularity consists in the expansion of the stem vowels **e** and **o** into **ie** and **ue** respectively whenever they receive the accent in pronunciation. When the accent is transferred to another syllable, the original vowel resumes its place.

This irregularity occurs only in the 1st, 2nd and 3rd persons singular and the 3rd person plural of the present indicative and present subjunctive, and in the 2nd person singular of the imperative, for in all other forms of the verbs the accent falls on the inflectional ending and not on the stem.

E STEM. FIRST CONJUGATION.

1066. **Cerrar**, cerrando, cerrado, *to shut.*

PRESENT STEM : *accented,* **cierr** ; *unaccented,* cerr.

PRES. IND.	**cierr**-o	**cierr**-as	**cierr**-a	cerr-amos	cerr-áis	**cierr**-an.
PRES. SUBJ.	**cierr**-e	**cierr**-es	**cierr**-e	cerr-emos	cerr-éis	**cierr**-en.
IMPERAT.	——	**cierr**-a	——	——	cerr-ad	——.
IMPERF.	cerr-aba	-abas	-aba	-ábamos	-abais	-aban.

AORIST STEM : REGULAR.

AOR. IND.	cerr-é	-aste	-ó	-amos	-asteis	-aron.
IMP. SUBJ.	cerr-ara	-aras	-ara	-áramos	-arais	-aran.
AOR. SUBJ.	cerr-ase	-ases	-ase	-ásemos	-aseis	-asen.
FUT. SUBJ.	cerr-are	-ares	-are	-áremos	-areis	-aren.

FUTURE STEM : REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	cerrar-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	cerrar-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

E STEM. SECOND CONJUGATION.

1067. **Perder**, perdiendo, perdido, *to lose.*

PRESENT STEM : *accented,* **pierd** ; *unaccented,* perd.

PRES. IND.	**pierd**-o	**pierd**-es	**pierd**-e	perd-emos	perd-éis	**pierd**-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**pierd**-a	**pierd**-as	**pierd**-a	perd-amos	perd-áis	**pierd**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	**pierd**-e	——	——	perd-id	——
IMPERF.	perd-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

AORIST STEM: REGULAR.

AOR. IND.	perd-í	-iste	-ió	-imos	-isteis	-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	perd-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	perd-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	perd-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	perder-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	perder-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

O STEM. FIRST CONJUGATION.

1068. **Costar**, costando, costado, *to cost.*

PRESENT STEM: *accented*, **cuest**; *unaccented*, cost.

PRES. IND.	**cuest**-o	**cuest**-as	**cuest**-a	cost amos	cost-áis	**cuest**-an.
PRES. SUBJ.	**cuest**-e	**cuest**-es	**cuest**-e	cost-emos	cost-éis	**cuest**-en.
IMPERAT.	——	**cuest**-a	——	——	cost-ad	——.
IMPERF.	cost-aba	-abas	-aba	-ábamos	-abais	-aban.

AORIST STEM: REGULAR.

AOR. IND.	cost-é	-aste	-ó	-amos	-asteis	-aron.
IMP. SUBJ.	cost-ara	-aras	-ara	-áramos	-arais	-aran.
AOR. SUBJ.	cost-ase	-ases	-ase	-ásemos	-aseis	-asen.
FUT. SUBJ.	cost-are	-ares	-are	-áremos	-areis	-aren.

FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	costar-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	costar-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

O STEM. SECOND CONJUGATION.

1069. **Morder**, mordiendo, mordido, *to bite.*

PRESENT STEM: *accented*, **muerd**; *unaccented*, mord.

PRES. IND.	**muerd**-o	**muerd**-es	**muerd**-e	mord-emos	mord-éis	**muerd**-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**muerd**-a	**muerd**-as	**muerd**-a	mord-amos	mord-áis	**muerd**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	**muerd**-e	——	——	mord-ed	——.
IMPERF.	mord-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

AORIST STEM: REGULAR.

AOR. IND.	mord-í	-iste	-ió	-imos	-isteis	-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	mord-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	mord-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	mord-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	morder-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	morder-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

EUPHONIC AND ORTHOGRAPHIC CHANGES.

1070. When the expansion of **e** takes place at the beginning of a verb, the initial **i** of the diphthong **ie** is changed to **y**, since no word may begin with **ie** (§ 10):—

Errar, errando, errado, *to err*.

PRES. IND.	**yerro**	**yerras**	**yerra**	erramos	erráis	**yerran.**
PRES. SUBJ.	**yerre**	**yerres**	**yerre**	erremos	erréis	**yerren.**
IMPERAT.	——	**yerra**	——	——	errad	——.

erraba; erré, errara, errase, errare; erraré, erraría.

1071. In like manner when the stem vowel **o** is initial, the resultant diphthong **ue** is preceded by **h**, since no word may begin with **ue** (§ 10):—

Oler, oliendo, olido, *to emit a smell*.

PRES. IND.	**huelo**	**hueles**	**huele**	olemos	oléis	**huelen.**
PRES. SUBJ.	**huela**	**huelas**	**huela**	olamos	oláis	**huelan.**
IMPERAT.	——	**huele**	——	——	oled	——.

olía; olí, oliera, oliese, oliere; oleré, olería.

1072. Desosar, *to bone* (*remove the bones from meat*), and **desovar**, *to spawn*, introduce an **h** before the diphthong **ue**, as they are derived from **hueso**, *bone*, and **huevo**, *egg*, respectively:—

Desosar, desosando, desosado, *to bone*.

PR. IND.	**deshueso**	**deshuesas**	**deshuesa**	-osamos	-osáis	**deshuesan.**
PR. SUBJ.	**deshuese**	**deshueses**	**deshuese**	-osemos	-oséis	**deshuesen.**
IMPERAT.	——	**deshuesa**	——	——	-osad	——.

desosaba; desosé, desosara, -ase, -are; desosaré, -ía.

1073. The orthographic changes laid down in § 1044 are also to be observed:—

Plegar, plegando, plegado, *to fold*.

PRES. IND.	pliego	pliegas	pliega	plegamos	plegáis	pliegan.
PRES. SUBJ.	**pliegue**	**pliegues**	**pliegue**	**pleguemos**	**pleguéis**	**pliegue**
IMPERAT.	——	pliega	——	——	plegad	——.

plegaba; **plegué**, plegara, -ase, -are; plegaré, -ía.

Empezar, empezando, empezado, *to begin*.

PR. IND.	empiezo	empiezas	empieza	-pezamos	-pezáis	-piezan.
PR. SUBJ.	**empiece**	**empieces**	**empiece**	**-pecemos**	**-pecéis**	**-piecen.**
IMPERAT.	——	empieza	——	——	-pezad	——.

empezaba; **empecé**, empezara, -ase, -are; empezaré, -ía.

Trocar, trocando, trocado, *to barter.*

PRES. IND. trueco truecas trueca trocamos trocáis truecan.
PRES. SUBJ. **trueque trueques trueque troquemos troquéis truequen.**
IMPERAT. —— trueca —— —— trocad ——.
trocaba; **troqué**, trocara, -ase, -are; trocaré, -ía.

Colgar, colgando, colgado, *to hang.*

PRES. IND. cuelgo cuelgas cuelga colgamos colgáis cuelgan.
PRES. SUBJ. **cuelgue cuelgues cuelgue colguemos colguéis cuelguen**
IMPERAT. —— cuelga —— —— colgad ——.
colgaba; **colgué**, colgara, -ase, -are; colgaré, -ía.

In this place belongs the verb **jugar** (Lat. *jocari*), as its stem vowel was originally **o**, but has degenerated to **u** when not accented:—

Jugar, jugando, jugado, *to play, gamble.*

PRES. IND. **juego juegas juega jugamos jugáis juegan.**
PRES. SUBJ. **juegue juegues juegue juguemos juguéis jueguen.**
IMPERAT. —— **juega** —— —— **jugad** ——.
jugaba; **jugué**, jugara, -ase, -are; jugaré, jugaría.

Forzar, forzando, forzado, *to force.*

PRES. IND. fuerzo fuerzas fuerza forzamos forzáis fuerzan.
PRES. SUBJ. **fuerce fuerces fuerce forcemos forcéis fuercen.**
IMPERAT. —— fuerza —— —— forzad ——.
forzaba; **forcé**, forzara, -ase, -are; forzaré, -ía.

Agorar, agorando, agorado, *to divine, augur.*

PRES. IND. **agüero agüeras agüera**, agoramos agoráis **agüeran.**
PRES. SUBJ. **agüere agüeres agüere** agoremos agoréis **agüeren.**
IMPERAT. —— **agüera** —— —— agorad ——
agoraba; agoré, agorara, -ase, -are; agoraré, -ía.

Torcer, torciendo, torcido, *to twist.*

PRES. IND. **tuerzo** tuerces tuerce torcemos torcéis tuercen.
PRES. SUBJ. **tuerza tuerzas tuerza torzamos torzáis tuerzan**
IMPERAT. —— tuerce —— —— torced ——.
torcía; torcí, torciera, -iese, -iere; torceré, -ía.

1074. One verb of the third conjugation, **discernir**[1] (originally *discerner*), belongs to this class. Although the change of the last vowel has placed it in the third conjugation, it still retains the irregularities of its primitive **cerner**:—

Discernir, discerniendo, discernido, *to discern.*

PRES. IND. **discierno -ciernes -cierne** discernimos **-cernís -ciernen.**
PRES. SUBJ. **discierna -ciernas -cierna** discernamos -cernáis **-ciernan.**
IMPERAT. —— **discierne** —— —— discernid ——.
discernía; -cerní, -cerniera, -iese, -iere; cerniré, -ía.

[1] So also the defective verb **concernir** (§ 1125).

SECOND CLASS.

1075. This class is composed of verbs of the third conjugation only whose stem vowels are **e** or **o**. In the present stem these vowels are expanded to **ie** and **ue** respectively in the same places as the verbs of the preceding class, and in addition subside into **i** and **u** respectively when unaccented and followed by a strong termination.

In the aorist stem the vowels **e** and **o** become **i** and **u** respectively when the termination begins with a diphthong.

The gerund in this class belongs uniformly to the aorist system.

E STEM.

1076. **Sentir**, sentido, *to feel, perceive.*

PRESENT STEM: *accented*, **sient**; *unac. weak*, sent; *unac. strong*, **sint**.

PRES. IND.	**sient**-o	**sient**-es	**sient**-e	sent-imos	sent-ís	**sient**-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**sient**-a	**sient**-as	**sient**-a	**sint**-amos	**sint**-áis	**sient**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	**sient**-e	——	——	sent-id	——.
IMPERF.	sent-ía	sent-ías	sent-ía	sent-íamos	sent-íais	sent-ían.

AORIST STEM: *before diphthongs*, **sint**; *otherwise*, sent.

AOR. IND.	sent-í	-iste	**sint**-ió	sent-imos	-isteis	**sint**-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	**sint**-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**sint**-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**sint**-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.
GERUND.	**sint**-iendo.					

FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	sentir-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	sentir-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	ían.

O STEM.

1077. **Dormir**, dormido, *to sleep.*

PRESENT STEM: *accented*, **duerm**; *unac. weak*, dorm; *unac. strong*, **durm**.

PR. IND.	**duerm**-o	**duerm**-es	**duerm**-e	dorm-imos	dorm-ís	**duerm**-en.
PR. SJ.	**duerm**-a	**duerm**-as	**duerm**-a	**durm**-amos	**durm**-áis	**duerm**-an.
IMP'VE.	——	**duerm**-e	——	——	dorm-id	——.
IMPERF.	dorm-ía	dorm-ías	dorm-ía	dorm-íamos	dorm-íais	dorm-ían.

AORIST STEM: *before diphthongs,* **durm** ; *otherwise,* dorm.

AOR. IND.	dorm-í	-iste	**durm**-ió	dorm-imos	-isteis	**durm**-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	**durm**-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**durm**-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**durm**-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

GERUND. **durm**-iendo.

FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	dormir-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	dormir-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1078. Adquirir and **inquirir**, being derived from a primitive root **quer** (Lat. *quærere*), still have the diphthong **ie** in the present stem when accented; otherwise the stem is **i** throughout:—

Adquirir, adquiriendo, adquirido, *to acquire.*

PR. IND. **adquiero adquieres adquiere** -quirimos -quirís **-quieren.**
PR. SUBJ. **adquiera adquieras adquiera** -quiramos -quiráis **-quieran.**
IMPERAT. —— **adquiere** —— —— adquirid ——.
adquiría ; adquirí, adquiriera, -iese, -iere ; adquiriré, -ía.

1079. Podrir *or* **pudrir**, pudriendo, podrido, *to decay.* The stem vowel of this verb formerly changed to **u** when accented or followed by a strong vowel or diphthong; it has now been fixed as **u** throughout, except in the past participle (and the infinitive, where it is optional).

THIRD CLASS.

1080. This class is composed exclusively of verbs of the third conjugation with the stem vowel **e**.

In the present stem the stem vowel **e** becomes **i** where in the two preceding classes it became a diphthong, namely when accented. In addition to this it becomes **i** whenever the termination begins with a strong vowel. Consequently it is regular only when the stem is unaccented and the termination begins with a weak vowel.

In the aorist stem (as in the preceding class) the stem vowel becomes **i** whenever the termination begins with a diphthong.

The gerund in this class belongs uniformly to the aorist stem.

1081. **Servir**, servido, *to serve.*

PRESENT STEM: *accented*, **sirv**; *unac. strong*, **sirv**; *unac. weak*, serv.

PRES. IND.	**sirv**-o	**sirv**-es	**sirv**-e	serv-imos	serv-ís	**sirv**-en
PRES. SUBJ.	**sirv**-a	**sirv**-as	**sirv**-a	**sirv**-amos	**sirv**-áis	**sirv**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	**sirv**-e	——	——	serv-id	——.
IMPERF.	serv-ía	serv-ías	serv-ía	serv-íamos	serv-íais	serv-ían.

AORIST STEM: *before diphthongs*, **sirv**; *otherwise*, serv.

AOR. IND.	serv-í	-iste	**sirv**-ió	serv-imos	-isteis	**sirv**-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	**sirv**-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**sirv**-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**sirv**-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.
GERUND.	**sirv**-iendo.					

FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	servir-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	servir-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1082. The verb **erguir** is conjugated either as of the third class or of the second; in the latter case the diphthong **ie**, being initial, is changed to **ye**. The two styles are united below.

The **u** following the **g** is merely orthographic and disappears before a strong vowel.

Erguir, erguido, *to raise erect.*

PRES. IND.	**yergo** / **irgo**	**yergues** / **irgues**	**yergue** / **irgue**	erguimos	erguís	**yerguen.** / **irguen.**
PRES. SUBJ.	**yerga** / **irga**	**yergas** / **irgas**	**yerga** / **irga**	irgamos	irgáis	**yergan.** / **irgan.**
IMPERAT.	——	**yergue** / **irgue**	——	——	erguid	——.
IMPERF.	erguía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.
GERUND.	**irguiendo.**					
AOR. IND.	erguí	erguiste	**irguió**	erguimos	erguisteis	**irguieron.**
IMP. SUBJ.	**irguiera**	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**irguiese**	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**irguiere**	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.
FUT. IND.	erguiré	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	erguiría	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1083. Five verbs ending in **-eir**, on changing the stem vowel **e** to **i**, lose the **i** of terminations beginning with the diphthongs **ie** and **io** throughout the aorist stem:—

Reír, reído, *to laugh.*

PRES. IND.	**rí**-o	**rí**-es	**rí**-e	re-ímos	re-ís	**rí**-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**rí**-a	**rí**-as	**rí**-a	**ri**-amos	**ri**-ais	**rí**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	**rí**-e	——	——	reíd	——.
IMPERF.	re-ía	re-ías	re-ía	re-íamos	re-íais	re-ían.
GERUND.	**ri-endo** (*not* ri-*i*endo).					
AOR. IND.	re-í	re-íste	**ri**-ó	re-ímos	re-ísteis	**ri-eron.**
IMP. SUBJ.	**ri-era**	**ri-eras**	**ri-era**	**ri-éramos**	**ri-erais**	**ri-eran.**
AOR. SUBJ.	**ri-ese**	**ri-eses**	**ri-ese**	**ri-ésemos**	**ri-eseis**	**ri-esen.**
FUT. SUBJ.	**ri-ere**	**ri-eres**	**ri-ere**	**ri-éremos**	**ri-ereis**	**ri-eren.**
FUT. IND.	reir-é	reir-ás	reir-á	reir-emos	reir-éis	**reir-án.**
FUT. COND.	reir-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

ORTHOGRAPHIC CHANGES.

1084. The orthographic changes laid down in § 1044 are also to be observed:—

Regir, regido, *to rule.*

PRES. IND.	**rijo**	riges	**rige**	**regimos**	**regís**	rigen.
PRES. SUBJ.	**rija**	**rijas**	**rija**	**rijamos**	**rijáis**	**rijan.**
IMPERAT.	——	rige	——	——	regid	——.
IMPERF.	**regía**	regías	regía	regíamos	regíais	**regían.**
GERUND.	rigiendo.					
AOR. IND.	regí	registe	rigió	regimos	registeis	rigieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	rigiera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	rigiese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	rigiere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.
FUT. IND.	regiré	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	**-án.**
FUT. COND.	regiría	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	**ían.**

Seguir, seguido, *to follow.*

PRES. IND.	**sigo**	sigues	**sigue**	**seguimos**	**seguís**	**siguen.**
PRES. SUBJ.	**siga**	**sigas**	**siga**	**sigamos**	**sigáis**	**sigan.**
IMPERAT.	——	sigue	——	——	seguid	——.
IMPERF.	seguía	seguías	seguía	seguíamos	seguíais	seguían.
GERUND.	siguiendo.					
AOR. IND.	seguí	-iste	siguió	seguimos	-isteis	**siguieron.**
IMP. SUBJ.	siguiera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	siguiese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	siguiere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.
FUT. IND.	seguiré	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	seguiría	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

Verbs of this class ending in **-ñir**, in addition to modifying

the stem vowel **e** into **i**, absorb the initial **i** of the diphthongal endings **ie**, **io**, as prescribed in § 1045 *b*:—

Reñir, reñido, *to quarrel.*

Pres. Ind.	**riño**	**riñes**	**riñe**	reñimos	reñís	**riñen.**
Pres. Subj.	**riña**	**riñas**	**riña**	**riñamos**	**riñáis**	**riñan.**
Imperat.	——	**riñe**	——	——	**reñid**	——
Imperf.	reñía	reñías	reñía	reñíamos	reñíais	reñían.
Gerund.	**riñendo** (*not* riñiendo).					
Aor. Ind.	reñí	reñiste	**riñó**	reñimos	reñisteis	**riñeron.**
Imp. Subj.	**riñera**	**riñeras**	**riñera**	**riñéramos**	**riñerais**	**riñeran.**
Aor. Subj.	**riñese**	**riñeses**	**riñese**	**riñésemos**	**riñeseis**	**riñesen.**
Fut. Subj.	**riñere**	**riñeres**	**riñere**	**riñéremos**	**riñereis**	**riñeren**
Fut. Ind.	reñiré	reñirás	reñirá	reñiremos	reñiréis	reñirán.
Fut. Cond.	reñiría	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

FOURTH CLASS.

1085. This class is composed of verbs of the second and third conjugations ending in **-cer** or **-cir** preceded by a vowel. Their irregularity consists in strengthening the stem by interpolating **z** before the **c** when followed by a strong termination.

Verbs of this class generally are what are called *inceptives*, which have been treated of in Chapter XIII. The Latin pattern upon which these are formed was characterized by an intruded *sc*, which becomes **zc** in Spanish:—

SECOND CONJUGATION.

1086. **Crecer**, creciendo, crecido, *to grow.*

PRESENT STEM: *weak*, crec; *strong*, **crezc.**

Pres. Ind.	**crezc-o**	crec-es	crec-e	crec-emos	crec-éis	crec-en.
Pres. Subj.	**crezc-a**	**crezc-as**	**crezc-a**	**crezc-amos**	**crezc-áis**	**crezc-an.**
Imperat.	——	crec-e	——	——	crec-ed	——
Imperf.	crec-ía	crec-ías	crec-ía	crec-íamos	crec-íais	crec-ían.

AORIST STEM: REGULAR.

Aor. Ind.	crec-í	-iste	-ió	-imos	-isteis	-ieron.
Imp. Subj.	crec-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
Aor. Subj.	crec-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
Fut. Subj.	crec-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

Fut. Ind.	crecer-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
Fut. Cond.	crecer-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

1087. **Lucir**, luciendo, lucido, *to shine*.

PRES. IND.	**luzc**-o	luc-es	luc-e	luc-imos	luc-ís	luc-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**luzc**-a	**luzc**-as	**luzc**-a	**luzc**-amos	**luzc**-áis	**luzc**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	luc-e	——	——	luc-id	——.
IMPERF.	luc-ía	luc-ías	luc-ía	luc-íamos	luc-íais	luc-ían.

☞ The aorist and future stems are regular (as above).

FIFTH CLASS.

1088. This class is composed of those verbs terminating in **-uir** in which both vowels are sounded (excluding therefore those in **-guir**, **-quir**, but including **-güir**). Their irregularity consists in strengthening the stem by the addition of **y** when accented or followed by a strong vowel.

The aorist stem is regular, but the initial **i** of the diphthongal terminations **ie**, **io**, is changed to **y** since it comes between two vowels (§ 1046).

The gerund in this class belongs uniformly to the aorist system.

1089. **Huir**, huido, *to flee*.

PRESENT STEM: *accented*, **huy**; *unac. strong*, **huy**; *unac. weak*, hu.

PRES. IND.	**huy**-o	**huy**-es	**huy**-e	hu-imos	hu-is	**huy**-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**huy**-a	**huy**-as	**huy**-a	**huy**-amos	**huy**-áis	**huy**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	**huy**-e	——	——	hu-id	——
IMPERF.	hu-ía	hu-ías	hu-ía	hu-íamos	hu-íais	hu-ían.

AORIST STEM: REGULAR (**i** of diphthongs becomes **y**).

AOR. IND.	hu-í	hu-iste	hu-yó	hu-imos	hu-isteis	**-yeron.**
IMP. SUBJ.	hu-**yera**	hu-**yeras**	hu-**yera**	**-yéramos**	**-yerais**	**-yeran.**
AOR. SUBJ.	hu-**yese**	hu-**yeses**	hu-**yese**	**-yésemos**	**-yeseis**	**-yesen.**
FUT. SUBJ.	hu-**yere**	hu-**yeres**	hu-**yere**	**-yéremos**	**-yereis**	**-yeren.**
GERUND.	hu-**yendo.**					

FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	huir-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	huir-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1090. Verbs in **-güir** necessarily discard the diæresis upon the insertion of the **y**:—

Argüir, argüido, *to argue.*

PRES. IND.	**arguyo**	**arguyes**	**arguye**	argüimos	argüís	**-guyen.**
PRES. SUBJ.	**arguya**	**arguyas**	**arguya**	**-guyamos**	**-guyáis**	**-guyan.**
IMPERAT.	——	**arguye**	——	——	argüid	——.
IMPERF.	argüía	argüías	argüía	-güíamos	-güíais	-güían.
GERUND.	**arguyendo.**					
AOR. IND.	argüí	argüiste	**arguyó**	argüimos	-isteis	**-guyeron.**
IMP. SUBJ.	**arguyera**	-yeras	-yera	-yéramos	-yerais	-yeran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**arguyese**	-yeses	-yese	-yésemos	-yeseis	-yesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**arguyere**	-yeres	-yere	-yéremos	-yereis	-yeren.
FUT. IND.	argüiré	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	argüiría	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

SIXTH CLASS.

1091. This class is composed of verbs that have irregular aorist systems which are more or less close imitations of the Latin and have the spoken accent on the stem in the first and third persons singular of the aorist indicative.

☞ As the present and future stems present various irregularities, each verb of the class will be given separately and in full.

1092. **HABER** (Lat. *habere*).

The **b** has disappeared wholly from the present subjunctive, and in the present indicative remains only in the second person plural. The present subjunctive is from the Latin *habeam*, etc., by dropping *b* and parts of some of the personal endings; the *e*, which is properly a part of the termination, becomes **y**.

The aorist stem is **hub.** The future stem drops the **e** of the infinitive ending: **habr.**

Haber, habiendo, habido, *to have.*

PRESENT STEM: *strong*, **hay**; *weak*, hab, **he** *and* **h.**

PRES. IND.	**he**	**has**	**ha**	**hemos**	hab-éis	**han.**
PRES. SUBJ.	**hay-a**	**hay-as**	**hay-a**	**hay-amos**	**hay-áis**	**hay-an.**
IMPERAT.	——	**hé**	——	——	hab-ed	——.
IMPERF.	hab-ía	hab-ías	hab-ía	hab-íamos	hab-íais	hab-ían.

AORIST STEM: **hub.**

AOR. IND.	**hube**	**hub**-iste	**hubo**	**hub**-imos	-isteis	-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	**hub**-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**hub**-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**hub**-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM: **habr**.

FUT. IND.	**habr**-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	**habr**-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1093. ANDAR.

Andar is irregular only in the aorist stem, which is supposed to have been made by appending the aorist of **haber** to the infinitive **andar**; thus: **andar-hube**, *I had to go*, becomes *and-hube* = **anduve**.

Andar, andando, andado, *to go*.

PRESENT STEM: REGULAR.

PRES. IND.	and-o	and-as	and-a	and-amos	and-áis	and-an.
PRES. SUBJ.	and-e	and-es	and-e	and-emos	and-éis	and-en.
IMPERAT.	——	anda	——	——	and-ad	——.
IMPERF.	and-aba	and-abas	and-aba	and-ábamos	and-ábais	and-aban.

AORIST STEM: **anduv**.

AOR. IND.	**anduve**	**anduv**-iste	**anduvo**	-imos	-isteis	-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	**anduv**-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**anduv**-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**anduv**-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	andar-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	andar-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1094. TENER (Lat. *tenere*).

The present stem is strengthened by the addition of **g** before a strong vowel. When accented, the stem vowel is expanded to **ie** before a weak termination. The singular imperative has the shortened form **ten**.

The aorist stem is **tuv**; the future, **tendr**.

Tener, teniendo, tenido, *to have, possess*.

PRESENT STEM: *strong*, **teng**; *accented weak*, **tien**; *unac. weak*, ten.

PRES. IND.	**teng**-o	**tien**-es	**tien** e	ten-emos	ten-éis	**tien**-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**teng**-a	**teng**-as	**teng**-a	**teng**-amos	**teng**-áis	**teng**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	**ten**	——	——	ten-ed	——.
IMPERF.	ten-ía	ten-ías	ten-ía	ten-íamos	ten-íais	ten-ían.

AORIST STEM: **tuv.**

AOR. IND.	**tuve**	**tuv**-iste	**tuvo**	**tuv**-imos	**tuv**-ísteis	**tuv**-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	**tuv**-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**tuv**-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**tuv**-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM: **tendr.**

FUT. IND.	**tendr**-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	**tendr**-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1095. ESTAR (Lat. *stare*).

This verb adds **y** to the first person present indicative; the monosyllabic terminations of the indicative and subjunctive, and the singular imperative are accented. The aorist stem is **estuv.** In other respects it is regular.

Estar, estando, estado, *to be.*

PRESENT STEM: **est.**

PRES. IND.	**estoy**	est-ás	est-á	est-amos	est-áis	est-án.
PRES. SUBJ.	est-é	est-és	est-é	est-emos	est-éis	est-én.
IMPERAT.	——	est-á	——	——	est-ad	——.
IMPERF.	est-aba	est-abas	est-aba	est-ábamos	est-abais	est-aban.

AORIST STEM: **estuv.**

AOR. IND.	**estuve**	**estuv**-iste	**estuvo**	**estuv**-imos	-isteis	**estuv**-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	**estuv**-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**estuv**-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**estuv**-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	estar-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	estar-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1096. CABER (Lat. *capere*).

The present stem is changed to **quep** before a strong vowel. The aorist stem is **cup**; the future, **cabr.**

Caber, cabiendo, cabido, *to be contained in.*

PRESENT STEM: *strong*, **quep**; *weak*, cab.

PRES. IND.	**quep**-o	cab-es	cab-e	cab-emos	cab-éis	cab-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**quep**-a	**quep**-as	**quep**-a	**quep**-amos	**quep**-áis	**quep**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	cab-e	——	——	cab-ed	——.
IMPERF.	cab-ía	cab-ías	cab-ía	cab-íamos	cab-íais	cab-ían.

AORIST STEM: **cup.**

AOR. IND.	**cupe**	**cup**-iste	**cupo**	**cup**-imos	**cup**-isteis	**cup**-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	**cup**-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**cup**-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**cup**-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM: **cabr.**

FUT. IND.	**cabr**-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	**cabr**-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1097. SABER (Lat. *sapere*).

The present stem is changed to **sep** before a strong vowel. The first person present indicative is shortened to **se.** The aorist stem is **sup**; the future, **sabr.**

Saber, sabiendo, sabido, *to know.*

PRESENT STEM: *strong,* **sep** ; *weak,* sab.

PRES. IND.	**sé**	sab-es	sab-e	sab-emos	sab-éis	sab-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**sep**-a	**sep**-as	**sep**-a	**sep**-amos	**sep**-áis	**sep**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	sab-e	——	——	sab-ed	——.
IMPERF.	sab-ía	sab-ías	sab-ía	sab-íamos	sab-íais	sab-ían.

AORIST STEM: **sup.**

AOR. IND.	**supe**	**sup**-iste	**supo**	**sup**-imos	**sup**-isteis	**sup**-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	**sup**-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**sup**-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**sup**-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM: **sabr.**

FUT. IND.	sabr-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	sabr-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1098. PODER (Lat. *posse* [*pot-esse*]).

The vowel of the present stem is expanded to **ue** when accented. The aorist stem is **pud**; the gerund is formed on this stem. The future stem is **podr.**

Poder, podido, *to be able.*

PRESENT STEM: *accented,* **pued** ; *unaccented,* pod.

PRES. IND.	**pued**-o	**pued**-es	**pued**-e	pod-emos	pod-éis	**pued**-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**pued**-a	**pued**-as	**pued**-a	pod-amos	pod-áis	**pued**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	——	——	——	——	——
IMPERF.	pod-ía	pod-ías	pod-ía	pod-íamos	pod-íais	pod-ían.

AORIST STEM: **pud.**

GERUND.	**pud**-iendo.					
AOR. IND.	**pud**e	**pud**-iste	**pud**o	**pud**-imos	**pud**-isteis	**pud**-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	**pud**-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**pud**-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**pud**-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM: **podr.**

FUT. IND.	**podr**-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	**podr**-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1099. PONER (Lat. *ponere*).

The present stem is strengthened by the addition of **g** before a strong vowel. The singular imperative has the shortened form **pon.** The aorist stem is **pus**; the future, **pondr.**

Poner, poniendo, puesto, *to put, place.*

PRESENT STEM: *strong*, **pong**; *weak*, pon.

PRES. IND.	**pong**-o	pon-es	pon-e	pon-emos	pon-éis	pon-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**pong**-a	**pong**-as	**pong**-a	**pong**-amos	**pong**-áis	**pong**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	**pon**	——	——	pon-ed	——.
IMPERF.	pon-ía	pon-ías	pon-ías	pon-íamos	pon-íais	pon-ían.

AORIST STEM: **pus.**

AOR. IND.	**puse**	**pus**-iste	**puso**	**pus**-imos	**pus**-isteis	**pus**-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	**pus**-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**pus**-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**pus**-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM: **pondr.**

FUT. IND.	**pondr**-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	**pondr**-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1100. VENIR (Lat. *venire*).

The present stem is strengthened by the addition of **g** before a strong vowel; before a weak vowel it is expanded to **vien** when accented. The singular imperative has the shortened form **ven.**

The aorist stem is **vin**; the gerund is formed on this stem. The future stem is **vendr.**

Venir, venido, *to come.*

PRESENT STEM: *strong*, **veng**; *accented weak*, **vien**; *unac. weak*, ven.

PRES. IND.	**veng**-o	**vien**-es	**vien**-e	ven-imos	ven-ís	**vien**-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**veng**-a	**veng**-as	**veng**-a	**veng**-amos	**veng**-áis	**veng**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	**ven**	——	——	ven-id.	——.
IMPERF.	ven-ía	ven-ías	ven-ía	ven-íamos	ven-íais	ven-ían.

AORIST STEM: **vin.**

GERUND.	**vin**-iendo.					
AOR. IND.	**vine**	**vin**-iste	**vino**	**vin**-imos	**vin**-isteis	**vin**-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	**vin**-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**vin**-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**vin**-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM: **vendr.**

FUT. IND.	**vendr**-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	**vendr**-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1101. HACER (Lat. *facere*).

The **c** of the present stem is changed to **g** before a strong vowel. The singular imperative is shortened, and to preserve the soft sound is written **haz.** The past participle is irregular, **hecho.**

The aorist stem is **hic,** changing to **hiz** before a strong vowel to preserve the sound.

The future stem is **har,** from a now obsolete infinitive *far.*

Hacer, haciendo, **hecho,** *to do, make.*

PRESENT STEM: *strong,* **hag**; *weak,* hac.

PRES. IND.	**hag**-o	hac-es	hac-e	hac-emos	hac-éis	hac-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**hag**-a	**hag**-as	**hag**-a	**hag**-amos	**hag**-áis	**hag**-an
IMPERAT.	——	**haz**	——	——	hac-ed	——.
IMPERF.	hac-ía	hac-ías	hac-ía	hac-íamos	hac-íais	hac-ían.

AORIST STEM: **hic.**

AOR. IND.	**hice**	**hic**-iste	**hizo**	**hic**-imos	**hic**-isteis	**hic**-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	**hic**-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**hic**-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**hic**-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM: **har.**

FUT. IND.	**har**-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT COND.	**har**-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

Three of the compounds of **hacer, liquefacer, rarefacer** and **satisfacer,** have not changed the original Latin *f* to **h.** **Satisfacer** has the duplicate imperative forms **satisfaz** and **satisface.**

1102. **Satisfacer**, satisfaciendo, **satisfecho**, to satisfy.

	satis-	*satis-*	*satis-*	*satis-*	*satis-*	*satis-*
PRES. IND.	**fago**	faces	face	facemos	facéis	facen.
PRES. SUBJ.	**faga**	**fagas**	**faga**	**fagamos**	**fagáis**	**fagan.**
IMPERAT.	——	**faz** *or* face	——	——	faced	——.
IMPERF.	facía	facías	facía	facíamos	facíais	facían.
AOR. IND.	**fice**	**ficiste**	**fizo**	**ficimos**	**ficisteis**	**ficieron.**
IMP. SUBJ.	**ficiera**	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**ficiese**	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**ficiere**	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.
FUT IND.	**faré**	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	**faría**	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1103. QUERER (Lat. *quærere*).

The present stem is expanded to **quier** when accented. The aorist stem is **quis**. The future stem, by elision of the **e** of the infinitive ending, becomes **querr.**

Querer, queriendo, querido, *to want, wish.*

PRESENT STEM: *accented*, **quier**; *unaccented*, quer.

PRES. IND.	**quier**-o	**quier**-es	**quier**-e	quer-emos	quer-éis	**quier**-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**quier**-a	**quier**-as	**quier**-a	quer-amos	quer-áis	**quier**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	**quier**-e	——	——	quer-ed	——.
IMPERF.	quer-ía	quer-ías	quer-ía	quer-íamos	quer-íais	quer-ían.

AORIST STEM: **quis.**

AOR. IND.	**quise**	**quis**-iste	**quiso**	**quis**-imos	**quis**-isteis	**quis**-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	**quis**-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**quis**-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**quis**-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM: **querr.**

FUT. IND.	**querr**-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	**querr**-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1104. DECIR (Lat. *dicere*).

The vowel of the present stem changes to **i** when accented; before a strong vowel this vowel change takes place also, and the **c** is changed to **g**. The imperative singular has the shortened form **di**. The past participle is irregular, **dicho.**

The aorist stem is **dij**; the **j** represents an original *x* of Latin and early Spanish, before which (as in the case of **ll** and **ñ**) the **i** of the diphthongs **ie** and **io** is absorbed.

The future is formed upon an obsolete infinitive *dir.*

There is a special form **diz**, used occasionally and familiarly as the equivalent of **se dice** (Lat. *dicitur*), *they say*.

Decir, diciendo, dicho, *to say, tell.*

PRESENT STEM : *strong*, **dig** ; *accented weak*, **dic** ; *unac. weak*, dec.

PRES. IND.	**dig**-o	dic-es	dic-e	dec-imos	dec-ís	dic-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**dig**-a	**dig**-as	**dig**-a	**dig**-amos	**dig**-áis	**dig**-an
IMPERAT.	——	dí	——	——	dec-id	——.
IMPERF.	dec-ía	dec-ías	dec-ía	dec-íamos	dec-íais	dec-ían.

AORIST STEM : **dij**.

AOR. IND.	**dije**	**dij**-iste	**dijo**	**dij**-imos	**dij**-isteis	**dij**-eron.
IMP. SUBJ.	**dij**-era	-eras	-era	-éramos	-erais	-eran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**dij**-ese	-eses	-ese	-ésemos	-eseis	-esen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**dij**-ere	-eres	-ere	-éremos	-ereis	-eren.

FUTURE STEM : **dir**.

FUT. IND.	**dir**-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	**dir**-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1105. The compounds of **decir** are inflected like their primitive except in the following particulars:—

All the compounds have the singular imperative **dice** instead of **di**.

Bendecir, *to bless*, and **maldecir**, *to curse*, have the future stem regular, **decir** instead of **dir**. The Academy is in favor of this form for all the compounds, but it is not very generally adopted.

The archaic participles **bendito** and **maldito** are still in use, but are employed only adjectively.

Bendecir, bendiciendo, bendecido *or* **bendito**, *to bless.*

	ben-	*ben-*	*ben-*	*ben-*	*ben-*	*ben-*
PRES. IND.	**digo**	**dices**	**dice**	decimos	decís	**dicen.**
PRES. SUBJ.	**diga**	**digas**	**diga**	**digamos**	**digáis**	**digan.**
IMPERAT.	——	dice	——	——	decid	——.
IMPERF.	decía	decías	decía	decíamos	decíais	decían.
AOR. IND.	**dije**	**dijiste**	**dijo**	**dijimos**	**dijisteis**	**dijeron.**
IMP. SUBJ.	**dijera**	-eras	-era	-éramos	-erais	-eran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**dijese**	-eses	-ese	-ésemos	-eseis	-esen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**dijere**	-eres	-ere	-éremos	-ereis	-eren.
FUT. IND.	decir-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	decir-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1106. TRAER (Lat. *trahere*,—compare Eng. *drag*).

The present stem is strengthened to **traig** before a strong vowel. The gerund belongs to the present stem, but the **i** of the termination is changed to **y** since it comes between two vowels.

The aorist stem is **traj** (Lat. *trax*), after which the **i** of the diphthongs **ie** and **io** is absorbed, as shown above under **decir.** The future stem is regular.

Traer, trayendo, **traído**, *to bring.*

PRESENT STEM: *strong*, **traig**; *weak*, **tra.**

PRES. IND.	**traig**-o	tra-es	tra-e	tra-emos	tra-éis	tra-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**traig**-a	**traig**-as	**traig**-a	**traig** amos	**traig**-áis	**traig**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	tra-e	——	——	tra-ed	——.
IMPERF.	tra-ía	tra-ías	tra-ía	tra-íamos	tra-íais	tra-ían.

AORIST STEM: **traj.**

AOR. IND.	**traje**	**traj**-iste	**trajo**	**traj**-imos	**traj**-isteis	**traj**-eron.
IMP. SUBJ.	**traj**-era	-eras	-era	-éramos	-erais	-eran.
AOR SUBJ.	**traj**-ese	-eses	-ese	-ésemos	-eseis	-esen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**traj**-ere	-eres	-ere	-éremos	-ereis	-eren.

FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	traer-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	traer-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1107. COMPOUNDS OF DUCIR (Lat. *ducere*).

Ducir, *to lead*, is now obsolete; its compounds have the following irregularities in common:—

The present stem is strengthened to **duzc** before a strong vowel.

The aorist stem is **duj** (Lat. *dux*), after which the **i** of the diphthongs **ie** and **io** is absorbed, as shown under **decir.**

The future stem is regular.

Deducir, deduciendo, deducido, *to deduce.*

PRESENT STEM: *strong*, **deduzc**; *weak*, deduc.

PRES IND.	**deduzc**-o	-duc-es	-duc-e	-duc-imos	-duc-ís	-duc-en.
PRES. SB.	**deduzc**-a	-**duzc**-as	-**duzc**-a	-**duzc**-amos	-**duzc**-áis	-**duzc**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	-duc-e	——	——	-duc-id	——.
IMPERF.	deduc-ía	-duc-ías	-duc-ía	-duc-íamos	-duc-íais	-duc-ían.

AORIST STEM: **deduj.**

AOR. IND.	**deduje**	**deduj**-iste	**dedujo**	**deduj**-imos	-isteis	**deduj**-eron.
IMP. SUBJ.	**deduj**-era	-eras	-era	-éramos	-erais	-eran.
AOR. SUBJ.	**deduj**-ese	-eses	-ese	-ésemos	-eseis	-esen.
FUT. SUBJ.	**deduj**-ere	-eres	-ere	-éremos	-ereis	-eren.

FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	deducir-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	deducir-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

SEVENTH CLASS.

1108. This class is composed of miscellaneous verbs whose irregularities are not reducible to any of the previous classes.

1109. DAR (Lat. *dare*).

Dar has irregularities of two kinds. It is one of those that add **y** to the first person singular of the present indicative. If the infinitive ending **ar** be removed, there remains as a stem only **d**; taking this **d** as the present stem, it is conjugated regularly in the first conjugation with the exception of the added **y**.

The same **d**, as the aorist stem, is conjugated regularly as of the *second or third conjugation.*

The future stem is regular.

Dar, dando, dado, *to give.*

PRESENT STEM: d (*1st Conj.*).

PRES. IND.	**doy**	d-as	d-a	d-amos	d-ais	d-an.
PRES. SUBJ.	d-é	d-es	d-é	d-emos	d-eis	d-en.
IMPERAT.	——	d-a	——	——	d-ad	——.
IMPERF.	d-aba	d-abas	d-aba	d-ábamos	d-abais	d-aban.

AORIST STEM: d (*2nd Conj.*).

AOR. IND.	d-í	d-iste	d-ió	d-imos	d-isteis	d-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	d-iera	d-ieras	d-iera	d-iéramos	d-ierais	d-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	d-iese	d-ieses	d-iese	d-iésemos	d-ieseis	d-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	d-iere	d-ieres	d-iere	d-iéremos	d-iereis	d-ieren.

FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	dar-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	dar-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1110. SER (Lat. *esse*).

This verb is made from two distinct roots, **es** and **fu**, the first of which is in some places so transformed as to be scarcely

recognizable. The parts formed on the present stem are so erratic that they are not reducible to any principle.

The aorist is regularly formed on the stem **fu**, except that the third person singular of the aorist indicative is **fue**, and that the **i** of the diphthong **ie** is everywhere lost.

The future stem is regular.

Ser, siendo, sido, *to be.*

PRESENT STEM: *phases of* **es.**

PRES. IND.	**soy**	**eres**	**es**	**somos**	**sois**	**son.**
PRES. SUBJ.	se-a	se-as	se-a	se-amos	se-áis	se-an.
IMPERAT.	——	sé	——	——	s-ed	——.
IMPERF.	**era**	**eras**	**era**	**éramos**	**erais**	**eran.**

AORIST STEM: **fu.**

AOR. IND.	**fu-í**	**fu-iste**	**fué**	**fu-imos**	**fu-isteis**	**fu-eron.**
IMP. SUBJ.	**fu-era**	**fu-eras**	**fu-era**	**fu-éramos**	**fu-erais**	**fu-eran.**
AOR. SUBJ.	**fu-ese**	**fu-eses**	**fu-ese**	**fu-ésemos**	**fu-eseis**	**fu-esen.**
FUT. SUBJ.	**fu-ere**	**fu-eres**	**fu-ere**	**fu-éremos**	**fu-ereis**	**fu-eren.**

FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	ser-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	ser-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1111. IR (Lat. *ire*).

This verb is extremely irregular. At first sight there seems to be nothing of it but a termination; but it is known that the root is *i*, which is found in Sanskrit and in the Latin imperative. But as a whole it is made up of fragments from different sources.

We may reckon three distinct roots: **i**, **va** or **ve**, and **fu**. The tenses usually formed on the present stem are in part from the first and in part from the second of these roots. The imperfect indicative, gerund and participle are from the root **i**. In the gerund, **i** is changed to **y** since it is initial before **e**.

When the first person plural of the present subjunctive, **vayamos**, is used as an imperative, it is syncopated to **vamos**.

The aorist stem **fu** is the same root as the corresponding part of **ser**, *to be*, and the forms constructed upon it are identical with those of **ser**. The future stem is regular, **ir.**

Ir, yendo, ido, *to go.*

PRESENT STEMS : *strong*, **vay** ; *weak*, **v**, *and phases of* **i**.

PRES. IND.	voy	vas	va	vamos	vais	van.
PRES. SUBJ.	vay-a	vay-as	vay-a	vay-amos	vay-áis	vay-an.
IMPERAT.	——	v-e	——	vamos	id	——.
IMPERF.	iba	ibas	iba	íbamos	ibais	iban.

AORIST STEM : **fu**.

AOR. IND.	fu-í	fu-iste	fué	fu-imos	fu-isteis	fu-eron.
IMP. SUBJ.	fu-era	fu-eras	fu-era	fu-éramos	fu-erais	fu-eran.
AOR. SUBJ.	fu-ese	fu-eses	fu-ese	fu-ésemos	fu-eseis	fu-esen.
FUT. SUBJ.	fu-ere	fu-eres	fu-ere	fu-éremos	fu-ereis	fu-eren.

FUTURE STEM : REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	ir-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	ir-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1112. VER[1] (Lat. *videre*).

Ver was originally *veer*, and the irregularities of the forms made upon the present stem are relics of a former regularity. The past participle is irregular, **visto**.

The aorist stem is **v**, and is conjugated regularly. The future stem is regular.

Ver, viendo, **visto**, *to see.*

PRESENT STEM : *strong*, **ve** ; *weak*, **v**.

PRES. IND.	ve-o	v-es	v-e	v-emos	v-eis	v-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	ve-a	ve-as	ve-a	ve-amos	ve-áis	ve-an.
IMPERAT.	——	v-e	——	——	v-ed	——.
IMPERF.	ve-ía	ve-ías	ve-ía	ve-íamos	ve-íais	ve-ían.

AORIST STEM : REGULAR.

AOR. IND.	v-í	v-iste	v-ió	v-imos	v-isteis	v-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	v-iera	v-ieras	v-iera	v-iéramos	v-ierais	v-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	v-iese	v-ieses	v-iese	v-iésemos	v-ieseis	v-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	v-iere	v-ieres	v-iere	v-iéremos	v-iereis	v-ieren.

FUTURE STEM : REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	ver-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	ver-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1113. Authorities are not agreed as to the most correct way to conjugate the compounds of this verb, whether the original vowel should, as above, be omitted in most places, or should be

[1] **Dar, ser, ir** and **ver** are the only monosyllabic infinitives in the language.

retained throughout. The preference is for the latter mode, in which case the **i** of the diphthongs **ie** and **io** in the terminations of the gerund and the aorist stem, is changed to **y**, as required by the laws of Spanish orthography.

Proveer, proveyendo, proveído *or* **provisto**, *to provide.*

PRES. IND.	proveo	provees	provee	proveemos	proveéis	proveen.
PRES. SUBJ.	provea	proveas	provea	proveamos	proveáis	provean.
IMPERAT.	——	provee	——	——	proveed	——
IMPERF.	proveía	proveías	proveía	proveíamos	proveíais	proveían
AOR. IND.	prove-í	-iste	-yó	-imos	-isteis	-yeron.
IMP. SUBJ.	prove-yera	-yeras	-yera	-yéramos	-yerais	-yeran.
AOR. SUBJ.	prove-yese	-yeses	-yese	-yésemos	-yeseis	-yesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	prove-yere	-yeres	-yere	-yéremos	-yereis	-yeren.
FUT. IND.	proveer-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	proveer-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1114. CAER (Lat. *cadere*).

The present stem is strengthened to **caig** before a strong vowel.

The remainder of the verb is conjugated regularly, except that in the terminations of the gerund and the aorist stem, the **i** of the diphthongs **ie** and **io** is changed to **y**.

Caer, cayendo, caído, *to fall.*

PRESENT STEM: *strong*, **caig**; *weak*, **ca.**

PRES. IND.	**caig**-o	ca-es	ca-e	ca-emos	ca-éis	ca-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**caig**-a	**caig**-as	**caig**-a	**caig**-amos	**caig**-áis	**caig**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	ca-e	——	——	ca-ed	——.
IMPERF.	ca-ía	ca-ías	ca-ía	ca-íamos	ca-íais	ca-ían.

AORIST STEM: REGULAR.

AOR. IND.	ca-í	ca-íste	ca-yó	ca-ímos	ca-ísteis	ca-yeron.
IMP. SUBJ.	ca-yera	-yeras	-yera	-yéramos	-yerais	-yeran.
AOR. SUBJ.	ca-yese	-yeses	-yese	-yésemos	-yeseis	-yesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	ca-yere	-yeres	-yere	-yéremos	-yereis	-yeren.

FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	caer-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	caer-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1115. OÍR (Lat. *audire*).

The present stem is strengthened to **oig** before a strong vowel; it is, moreover, changed to **oy** when accented before a weak vowel.

The remainder of the verb is regular, except that in the terminations of the gerund and the aorist stem, the **i** of the diphthongs **ie**, **io**, is changed to **y**.

Oír, oyendo, oído, *to hear.*

PRESENT STEM: *strong*, **oig**; *accented weak*, **oy**; *unac. weak*, o.

PRES. IND.	**oig**-o	**oy**-es	**oy**-e	o-ímos	o-ís	**oy**-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**oig** a	**oig**-as	**oig**-a	**oig**-amos	**oig**-áis	**oig**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	**oy**-e	——	——	o-íd	——.
IMPERF.	o-ía	o-ías	o-ía	o-íamos	o-íais	o-ían.

AORIST STEM: REGULAR.

AOR. IND.	o-í	o-íste	o-yó	o-ímos	o-ísteis	o-yeron.
IMP. SUBJ.	o-yera	o-yeras	o-yera	o-yéramos	o-yerais	o-yeran.
AOR. SUBJ.	o-yese	o-yeses	o-yese	o-yésemos	o-yeseis	o-yesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	o-yere	o-yeres	o-yere	o-yéremos	o-yereis	o-yeren.

FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	oir-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	oir-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

1116. ASIR.

The present stem is strengthened by the addition of **g** before a strong vowel.[1] The remainder of the verb is regular.

Asir, asiendo, asido, *to seize, lay hold of.*

PRESENT STEM: *strong*, **asg**; *weak*, **as**.

PRES. IND.	**asg**-o	as-es	as-e	as-imos	as-ís	as-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**asg**-a	**asg**-as	**asg**-a	**asg**-amos	**asg**-áis	**asg**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	as-e	——	——	as-id.	——.
IMPERF.	as-ía	as-ías	as-ía	as-íamos	as-íais	as-ían.

AORIST STEM: REGULAR.

AOR. IND.	as-í	as-iste	as-ió	as-imos	as-isteis	as-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	as-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	as-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	as-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM: REGULAR.

FUT. IND.	asir-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	asir-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

[1] The irregular forms are rarely used.

1117. VALER AND SALIR.

Valer and **salir** have the following irregularities in common: The present stem is strengthened by the addition of **g** before a strong vowel. The imperative singular is the unmodified stem; **valer** has also the regular imperative **vale.** The aorist stem is regular. The future stem drops the last vowel and inserts **d.**

Valer, valiendo, valido, *to be worth.*

PRESENT STEM: *strong*, **valg**; *weak*, val.

PRES. IND.	**valg**-o	val-es	val-e	val-emos	val-éis	val-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**valg**-a	**valg**-as	**valg**-a	**valg**-amos	**valg**-ais	**valg**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	**val** *or* vale	——	——	val-ed	——.
IMPERF.	val-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

AORIST STEM: REGULAR.

AOR. IND.	val-í	val-iste	val-ió	val-imos	val-isteis	val-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	val-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	val-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	val-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.

FUTURE STEM: **valdr.**

FUT. IND.	**valdr**-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	**valdr**-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

Salir, saliendo, salido, *to go* or *come out.*

PRESENT STEM: *strong*, **salg**; *weak*, sal.

PRES. IND.	**salg**-o	sal-es	sal-e	sal-imos	sal-ís	sal-en.
PRES. SUBJ.	**salg**-a	**salg**-as	**salg**-a	**salg**-amos	**salg**-áis	**salg**-an.
IMPERAT.	——	**sal**	——	——	sal-id	——.

salía; salí, saliera, saliese, saliere; **saldré, saldría.**

EXERCISE L.

It is *important* that they lose no time, notwithstanding what the labor may cost. He errs who denies the *possibility* of aërial navigation. What is death? if I die, I sleep and feel not. Let us laugh. When it commences to rain we shall return to the house. It is to be hoped that all will turn out as you wish. Let us put an end to this dispute. The next time you come, bring your guitar; I want you to play us some of the serenades you learned in *Cuba.* Hear how it thunders; the very earth seems to tremble. I suppose it would be useless to suggest that you permit me to intercede with the judge. The court orders that the property be restored to him. I abhor *Wagner*'s music. It is because you do not understand it. Water boils at the *temperature* of 100° centigrade. Joseph, do not wake me early if it is raining. When my son obtains the degree of M.D., he will go to pursue his studies in the *hospitals* of Vienna. I have given him permission to act as may seem best to him. I have translated a poem into (*al*) Spanish, and

am desirous of finding some one who will correct it for me. I do not believe that there is any one in the city who knows how to[1] do it. My uncle attributes his cure to the sea voyage that he took (*ha hecho*). Place the mirror so that it will not fall. He told the servant to place the mirror so that it would not fall. The doctor begs his children not to dress in (*de*) mourning when he dies. I prefer the picture to be hung here. They were looking for a road that would lead to the reservoir. As we were afraid that he would laugh at us, we did not tell him of our adventure.

CHAPTER XXI.

DEFECTIVE VERBS. IRREGULAR PAST PARTICIPLES.

1118. Verbs are called *defective* when they are employed only in certain tenses or persons. This limited use may be to avoid cacophony, or it may result from the meaning of the respective verbs. The latter class comprises the impersonal verbs, which have been already considered in Chapter XIII.

1119. Of the following ten verbs the only forms in use are those in which the inflectional endings begin with **i**, including, however, the forms made from the future stem:—

Abolir, to abolish.	*Reg.*	**Despavorir**, to take fright.	*Reg.*
Aguerrir, to inure to war.	*Cl.* III.	**Embaír**, to impose upon.	"
Arrecirse, to grow numb.	" "	**Empedernir**,[2] to harden.	*Cl.* III.
Aterirse, " " "	" "	**Garantir**,[3] to guarantee.	*Reg.*
Desmarrirse, to grow sad.	*Reg.*	**Manir**, to become tender.	"

1120. The following paradigm will serve as a model:—

PRES. IND.	——	——	——	abolimos	abolís	——
PRES. SUBJ.	——	——	——	——	——	——
IMPERAT.	——	——	——	——	abolid	——
IMPERF.	abol-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.
AORIST.	abol-í	-iste	-ió	-imos	-isteis	-ieron.
IMP. SUBJ.	abol-iera	-ieras	-iera	-iéramos	-ierais	-ieran.
AOR. SUBJ.	abol-iese	-ieses	-iese	-iésemos	-ieseis	-iesen.
FUT. SUBJ.	abol-iere	-ieres	-iere	-iéremos	-iereis	-ieren.
FUTURE.	abolir-é	-ás	-á	-emos	-éis	-án.
FUT. COND.	abolir-ía	-ías	-ía	-íamos	-íais	-ían.

REMARK.—**Blandir** originally belonged to this class, but the forms **blande, blanden** are now coming into use.

[1] Knows how to, **sepa.**
[2] The missing forms may be supplied from **empedernecer.**
[3] The missing forms may be supplied from **garantizar.**

1121. Antojarse, *to long for,* is limited to the third persons, singular and plural, of the several tenses.

1122. Aplacer, *to please,* and **atañer,** *to appertain,* are nearly obsolete, and appear only in the infinitive and the third persons, singular and plural, of the present and imperfect indicative:—

PRES. IND.	aplace, aplacen.	PRES. IND.	atañe, atañen.
IMPERF. IND.	aplacía, aplacían.	IMPERF. IND.	atañía, atañían.

1123. Balbucir, *to stammer,* is not used where irregular verbs of Class IV take **z** before **c.**

1124. Cocer, *to boil,* is rarely employed in those forms of which the termination begins with a strong vowel: **cuezo; cueza, cuezas,** etc.

1125. Concernir, *to concern,* is little used, and is limited to the third persons, singular and plural, of the several tenses:—

PRES. IND.	concierne, -ciernen.	IMP. SUBJ.	concerniera, -cernieran.
PRES. SUBJ.	concierna, -ciernan.	AOR. SUBJ.	concerniese, -cerniesen.
IMP. IND.	concernía, -cernían.	FUT. SUBJ.	concerniere, -cernieren.
AOR. IND.	concernió, -cernieron.	FUT. COND.	concerniría, -cernirían.
FUT. IND.	concernirá, -cernirán.	GERUND.	concerniendo.

1126. Nacer, *to be born,* on account of its meaning is not employed in the first person singular[1] of the present indicative or in the singular of the imperative.

1127. Pacer, *to graze,* is not used in those forms where the stem would be strengthened by the addition of **z** before a strong vowel: **pazco; pazca, pazcas,** etc.

1128. Placer, *to please,* (impersonal, Lat. *placet,*) is rarely, if ever, used at the present time, except in certain exclamations. Being impersonal, it is restricted to the third person singular. It is used in the following persons and tenses:—

PRES. IND.	place,	AOR. IND.	**plugo,**
PRES. SUBJ.	**plegue,** *or* **plazga,**	IMP. SUBJ.	**pluguiera,**
IMPERAT.	**plegue,**	AOR. SUBJ.	**pluguiese,**
IMP. IND.	placía,	FUT. SUBJ.	**pluguiere.**

REMARK.—The compounds of **placer, complacer, desplacer,** are conjugated throughout like irregular verbs of Class IV.

[1] There are many verbs which, on account of their meaning, do not take a personal object, and therefore occur only in the third person. These need not be enumerated, since the circumstance in question will be evident from their meaning.

1129. Raer, *to erase,* is in a great measure replaced by **borrar** and **raspar**; but when found, it is generally inflected like **caer**:—

PRES. IND.	**raigo** / **rayo**	raes,	rae,	raemos,	raéis,	raen.
PRES. SUBJ.	**raiga**, / **raya**,	**raigas**, / **rayas**,	**raiga**, / **raya**,	**raigamos**, / **rayamos**,	**raigáis**, / **rayáis**,	**raigan.** / **rayan.**
IMP. IND.	raía,	raías,	raía,	raíamos,	raíais,	raían.
AOR. IND.	raí,	raíste,	**rayó**	raímos,	raísteis,	**rayeron.**

rayera, rayese, rayere; raeré, raería; **rayendo.**

1130. Reponer, when it has the meaning of *to reply,* is restricted to the aorist indicative; **repuse, repusiste, repuso,** etc.

1131. Roer, *to gnaw,* has three forms of the present stem before a strong vowel:—

PRES. IND.	ro-o / **roig-o** / **roy-o**	roes	roe	roemos	roéis	roen.
PRES. SUBJ.	ro-a	ro-as	ro-a	ro-amos	ro-áis	ro-an.
	roig-a	**roig-as**	**roig-a**	**roig-amos**	**roig-áis**	**roig-an.**
	roy-a	**roy-as**	**roy-a**	**roy-amos**	**roy-áis**	**roy-an.**

REMARK.—**Corroer,** *to corrode,* makes **corroe, corroen,** in the present indicative, and **corroa, corroan,** in the subjunctive.

1132. Soler, *to be in the habit of,* is used only in the two following tenses:—

PRESENT INDICATIVE.		IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	
suelo,	I am wont (*or* accustomed).	solía,	I was wont (*or* I used to).
sueles,	thou art wont.	solías,	thou wast wont.
suele,	he is wont.	solía,	he was wont.
solemos,	we are wont.	solíamos,	we were wont.
soleis,	you are wont.	solíais,	you were wont.
suelen,	they are wont.	solían,	they were wont.

1133. Usucapir, *to acquire by right of possession,* occurs only in the infinitive, as a legal term.

1134. Yacer, *to lie,* (Lat. *jacere,*) is now rarely used except in epitaphs, for which only the third persons, singular and plural, of the present and imperfect indicative are required:—

Aquí yace, *or* yacen.	Here lieth, or lie.
Aquí yacía, *or* yacían.	Here lay.

REMARK.—Formerly it was used in the sense of *to repose, to rest,* and was conjugated throughout. Its only irregularity was in the present stem, variously strengthened to **yazc, yazg** or **yag** before a strong vowel. The singular imperative, in addition to the regular form **yace,** had the shortened form **yaz**;—

PRES. IND.	yazc-o yazg-o yag-o	yaces	yace	yacemos	yacéis	yacen.
PRES. SUBJ.	yazc-a	yazc-as	yazc-a	yazc-amos	yazc-ais	yazc-an.
	yazg-a	yazg-as	yazg-a	yazg-amos	yazg-áis	yazg-an.
	yag-a	yag-as	yag-a	yag-amos	yag-áis	yag-an.
IMPERAT.	yace yaz					

IRREGULAR PAST PARTICIPLES.

1135. Participles in the first conjugation end in **ado**, in the other two conjugations in **ido**. Those having any other endings are said to be irregular, and have been in part exhibited among the irregular verbs. The irregularities are generally due to a closer adherence to the original Latin form of the participle, whether classic or post-classic.

1136. The following verbs, which are otherwise regular, have an irregular past participle:—

Abrir, to open.	*pp.*	**abierto.**	LATIN, *apertus.*
Cubrir, to cover.		**cubierto.**	*co-opertus.*
Escribir, to write.		**escrito.**	*scriptus.*
Imprimir, to impress, print.		**impreso.**	*impressus.*

REMARK.—The compounds of **abrir**, **cubrir** and **escribir** form their past participles in the same manner.

1137. The following irregular verbs, together with their compounds, have an irregular past participle:—

Decir, to say, tell.	*pp.*	**dicho.**	LATIN, *dictus.*
Hacer (*facer*), to do, make.		**hecho.**	*factus.*
Morir, to die.		**muerto.**	*mortuus.*
Poner, to put, place.		**puesto.**	*positus.*
Solver, to loosen.		**suelto.**	*solutus.*
Ver, to see.		**visto.**	*vistus.*
Volver, to turn, return.		**vuelto.**	*volutus.*

1138. In the cases given above, the irregular past participle is the only one in use. There are, however, a considerable number of verbs which have two past participles: one regular in form and usage; and the other, a closer imitation of the Latin, irregular. The list need not be given in full, since the irregular forms are restricted to use as adjectives, and are to be found as such in the dictionaries. The following will serve as examples:—

INFINITIVE.	REGULAR.	IRREGULAR.	LATIN.
Abstraer	abstraído	abstracto	*abstractus.*
Atender	atendido	atento	*attentus.*
Bendecir	bendecido	bendito	*benedictus.*
Comprimir	comprimido	compreso	*compressus.*
Confundir	confundido	confuso	*confusus.*
Desertar	desertado	desierto	*desertus.*
Distinguir	distinguido	distinto	*distinctus.*
Elegir	elegido	electo	*electus.*
Excluir	excluido	excluso	*exclusus.*
Fijar	fijado	fijo	*fixus.*
Invertir	invertido	inverso	*inversus.*
Juntar	juntado	junto	*junctus.*
Manifestar	manifestado	manifiesto	*manifestus.*
Ocultar	ocultado	oculto	*occultus.*
Pervertir	pervertido	perverso	*perversus.*
Requerir	requerido	requisito	*requisitus.*
Soltar	soltado	suelto	*solutus.*
Torcer	torcido	tuerto	*tortus.*

1139. There are a few verbs, having two participial forms, which require more particular notice:—

INFINITIVE.	REGULAR.	IRREGULAR.	LATIN.
Bienquerer	bienquerido	bienquisto	
Freír	freído	frito	*frictus.*
Ingerir	ingerido	ingerto	*insertus.*
Malquerer	malquerido	malquisto	
Oprimir	oprimido	opreso	*oppressus.*
Prender	prendido	preso	*prensus.*
Romper	rompido	roto	*ruptus.*
Suprimir	suprimido	supreso	*suppressus.*

1140. Bienquerer and **malquerer** preserve the usual distinction between the regular forms in **-querido** and the irregular in **-quisto.**[1] Except in the past participles, these two verbs are oftener used as separable:—

Queremos bien á todo el mundo.	We wish well to everybody.
Me dijo que me quería bien, que no me quería mal.	He told me he wished me well, that he did not wish me ill.
Mi madre era bienquista de cuantos la conocian.	My mother was liked by all who knew her.
Es un hombre malquisto de todos.	He is a man disliked by everybody.

See, also, § 1103.

1141. Both participles of **freír**, *to fry*, may be used with **haber**; with **ser** and **estar**, as an adjective, **frito** alone is admissible:—

¿Han freído (*or* frito) ó asado el escombro?	Have they fried or baked the mackerel?
Ya está frito.	It is already fried.
Media docena de ostiones fritos.	Half a dozen fried oysters.

1142. **Ingerir**, *to graft*, has **ingerido** and **ingerto**. This is the spelling sanctioned by the Spanish Academy, although **injerir** would have been more correct and would have preserved the distinction between the Latin *ingero* and *insero*. **Ingerido** is used after both **haber** and **estar**, **ingerto** as an adjective only:—

Los ramos han sido quebrados, para que yo sea ingerido.	The branches were broken off, that I might be grafted in. *Romans*, **xi. 19.**
Un peral ingerto en membrillo.	A pear tree grafted on a quince.

REMARK.—The regular verb **ingertar** is now more frequently used than **ingerir**.

1143. **Muerto**, although from **morir**, an entirely different word, is used as a euphemism for **matado**, past participle of **matar**, *to kill, slaughter*. **Matado** is confined to the killing of animals, suicide, and figurative uses. **Muerto**, when intransitive, has its primary meaning—*to die*:—

El herido ha muerto.	The wounded man is dead (*lit.* has died).
Hemos muerto al salteador.	We have killed the robber.
Se ha muerto de tristeza.	He died broken-hearted.
Se ha matado.	He has killed himself.
El aguacero ha matado el polvo.	The shower has laid the dust.
Este caballo está matado.	This horse is saddle-galled.
Este caballo está muerto.	This horse is dead.
Hay tan grande escasez de forraje que los hacendados han matado gran parte de su ganado.	Fodder is so scarce that the farmers have killed many of their cattle.
Me ha matado con su palabrería.	He has worn me out with his long talk.

REMARK.—In speaking of the casualties of battles and accidents it is customary to use the active **morir** instead of the passive **ser muerto** (contrary to the English usage):—

De los nuestros 43 murieron y 152 fueron heridos.	On our side 43 were killed and 152 were wounded.
Trece obreras murieron debajo de los escombros.	Thirteen work girls were killed under the ruins.

1144. **Oprimir**, *to oppress*, and **suprimir**, *to suppress*, prefer the regular participle, **oprimido** and **suprimido**, even before **ser** and **estar**:—

Todas las loterías han sido suprimidas.	All the lotteries have been suppressed.
Su testimonio fué suprimido.	His testimony was suppressed.
La clase obrera es muy oprimida.	The working classes are much oppressed.

1145. With **prender** the usual distinction holds good generally between **prendido** and **preso**; but in the sense of *to arrest*, either may be used after **haber**:—

Dos de los ladrones han sido presos.	Two of the robbers have been arrested.
Los civiles han prendido (*or* preso) otros dos.	The police have arrested two others.
El fuego ha prendido en la bodega de popa.	Fire has broken out in the afterhold.

REMARK.—The participles of the compound of **prender**—**aprender**, *to learn*, **comprender**, *to understand*, **emprender**, *to undertake*—are regular.

1146. **Romper**, *to break*, has **rompido** and **roto**; but the latter is preferred even after **haber** whenever the meaning is transitive:—

La granizada ha roto muchos vidrios del invernadero.	The hail has broken many panes of glass in the greenhouse.
La cuerda de mi reloj está rota.	The mainspring of my watch is broken.
Ella ha rompido con su novio.	She has broken with her lover.
Ha rompido un día de principios nuevos.	A day of new dispensation has dawned.

REMARK.—The compounds of **romper** form their past participles regularly: **corrompido**, *corrupted*; **interrumpido**, *interrupted*; etc.

1147. There are a few participles which, although passive in form, are employed as designations of the person who manifests (generally in an active manner) the action of the verb. They are then to all intents true adjectives:—

Agradecido, grateful.
Almorzado, who has breakfasted.
Atrevido, daring.
Bebido, having drunk plenty; **bien bebido**, drunk.
Callado, silent.
Cansado, tiresome.
Cenado, who has eaten supper.
Comedido, polite.
Comido, having eaten enough.
Considerado, considerate, prudent.
Desconfiado, distrustful.
Descreído, unbelieving.
Desesperado, without hope, desperate.
Disimulado, dissembling.
Emigrado, an emigrant.
Encogido, spiritless, timid.
Esforzado, stout, brave.
Fingido, dissembling.
Leído, well-read.
Medido, cautious, moderate.
Mirado, circumspect, precise.
Moderado, moderate.
Osado, fearless, bold.
[Bien] parecido, [good-]looking.
Porfiado, opinionated, disputatious.
Precavido, cautious.
Preciado, self-important.
Presumido, presuming, boastful.
Recatado, modest, circumspect.
Resuelto, resolute, determined.
Sabido, knowing.
Sacudido, a rough customer.
Sentido, sensitive.
Valido, influential.

ALPHEBETICAL INDEX OF THE IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS.

1148. In the list of irregular verbs to be presented, those compounded with prefixes are "indented" (i.e. *set in* from the margin) when their primary verbs are conjugated in the same manner. When the primary verb is inflected differently, or is no longer in use, the first compound, reckoned alphabetically, is "flush" with the margin. It will be seen that the number of verbs not indented is 415 as compared with 461 derivatives. The apportionment of these 876 verbs among the several classes is as follows:—

Class 1	342
" 2	53
" 3	54
" 4	268
" 5	37
" 6	102
" 7	27
Defective	21
Orthographic and Miscellaneous	32

☞ In the following list the verbs belonging to the first five classes are indexed accordingly. Of the miscellaneous verbs remaining, each is followed by the number of the section in which that particular verb, or the model upon which it is conjugated, is to be found.

Abastecer IV
Abnegar I
Abolir . . . . . § 1119
Aborrecer IV
Absolver I
Absonar I
Abstenerse . . . . . § 1094
Abstraer . . . . . § 1106
Abuñolar I
Acaecer IV
Acertar I
Aclocar I
Acollar I
Acontecer IV
Acordar[1] I
Acornar I
Acostar I
Acrecentar I
Acrecer IV
Adecentar I
Adestrar I
Adherir II
Adolecer IV
Adormecer IV
Adormir II
Adquirir (§ 1078) II
Aducir . . . . . § 1107
Advertir II
Afollar I
Aforar[2] I
Agorar I
Agradecer IV
Aguerrir . . . . . § 1119
Alebrarse I
Alentar I
Aliquebrar I
Almorzar I
Alongar I
Amanecer IV
Amoblar I
Amolar I
Amollecer IV
Amorecer IV
Amortecerse IV
Amover I
Andar . . . . . § 1093
Anochecer IV
Antedecir . . . . . § 1104
Anteponer . . . . . § 1099
Antever . . . . . § 1112
Apacentar I
Aparecer IV
Apercollar I
Apernar I
Apetecer IV
Aplacer . . . . . § 1122
Apostar[3] I
Apretar I
Aprobar I
Argüir V
Arrecirse . . . . . § 1119
Arrendar I
Arrepentirse II
Ascender I
Asentar I
Asentir II
Aserrar I
Asir . . . . . § 1116
Asolar I
Asoldar I
Asonar I
Asosegar I
Atañer . . . . . § 1122
Atender I
Atenerse . . . . . § 1094
Atentar[4] I
Aterirse . . . . . § 1119
Aterrar[5] I

[1] Regular when meaning *to tune* a musical instrument.
[2] Regular when meaning *to gauge* or *appraise*.
[3] Regular when meaning *to post* troops, guards, etc.
[4] Regular with the more usual modern meaning of *to attempt* a crime.
[5] **Aterrar** (from **terror**), *to terrify*, is regular; **aterrar** (from **tierra**), *to fell to the ground*, is irregular.

Atestar[1]	I
Atraer	§ 1106
Atravesar	I
Atribuir	V
Atronar	I
Avalentar	I
Avanecerse	IV
Avenir	§ 1100
Aventar	I
Avergonzar	I
Azolar	I
Balbucir	§ 1123
Bendecir	§ 1105
Bienquerer	§ 1103
Blanquecer	IV
Bregar	I
Bruñir	§ 1045
Bullir	§ 1045
Caber	§ 1096
Caer	§ 1114
Calentar	I
Canecer	IV
Carecer	IV
Cegar	I
Ceñir	III
Cerner	I
Cerrar	I
Cimentar	I
Circuir	V
Clarecer	IV
Clocar	I
Cocer	I
Colar	I
Colegir	III
Colgar	I
Comedir	III
Comenzar	I
Compadecer	IV
Comparecer	IV
Competir	III
Complacer	III
Complañir	§ 1045
Componer	§ 1099
Comprobar	I
Concebir	III
Concernir	§ 1125
Concertar	I
Concluir	V
Concordar	I
Condescender	I
Condolerse	I
Conducir	§ 1107
Conferir	II
Confesar	I
Confluir	V
Conmover	I
Conocer	IV
Conseguir	III
Consentir	II
Consolar	I
Consonar	I
Constituir	V
Constreñir	III
Construir	V
Contar	I
Contender	I
Contener	§ 1094
Contorcerse	I
Contracordar	I
Contradecir	§ 1104
Contraer	§ 1106
Contrahacer	§ 1101
Contraponer	§ 1099
Contravenir	§ 1100
Contribuir	V
Controvertir	II
Convalecer	IV
Convenir	§ 1100
Convertir	II
Corregir	III
Corroer	§ 1131
Costar	I
Crecer	IV
Creer	§ 1046
Dar	§ 1109
Decaer	§ 1114
Decentar	I
Decir	§ 1104

[1] Regular when meaning *to testify*.

Decrecer IV
Deducir . . . . . § 1107
Defender I
Defenecer IV
Deferir II
Degollar I
Demoler I
Demostrar I
Denegar I
Denegrecer IV
Denostar I
Dentar I
Deponer . . . . . § 1099
Derrenegar I
Derrengar I
Derretir III
Derrocar I
Derruir V
Desabastecer IV
Desacertar I
Desacollar I
Desacordar I
Desadormecer IV
Desadvertir II
Desaferrar I
Desaforar I
Desagradecer IV
Desalentar I
Desamoblar I
Desandar . . . . . § 1093
Desaparecer IV
Desapretar I
Desaprobar I
Desarrendar I
Desasentar I
Desasir . . . . . § 1116
Desasosegar I
Desatender I
Desatentar I
Desaterrar I
Desatraer . . . . . § 1106
Desatravesar I
Desavenir . . . . . § 1100
Desaventar I
Desbastecer IV
Desbravecer IV
Descabullirse . . . . . § 1045
Descaecer IV
Descender I
Desceñir III
Descolgar I
Descollar I
Descomedirse III
Descomponer . . . . . § 1099
Desconcertar I
Desconocer IV
Desconsentir II
Desconsolar I
Descontar I
Desconvenir . . . . . § 1100
Descordar I
Descornar I
Descrecer IV
Desdar . . . . . § 1109
Desdecir . . . . . § 1104
Desdentar I
Desembebecerse IV
Desembellecer IV
Desembravecer IV
Desempedrar I
Desempobrecer IV
Desencarecer IV
Desencerrar I
Desencordar I
Desencrudecer IV
Desencruelecer IV
Desenfurecerse IV
Desengrosar I
Desenmohecer IV
Desenmudecer IV
Desensoberbecer IV
Desentenderse I
Desenterrar I
Desentorpecer IV
Desentristecer IV
Desentumecer IV
Desenvolver I
Deservir III
Desfallecer IV
Desfavorecer IV
Desferrar I
Desflaquecerse IV

Desflocar	I
Desflorecer	IV
Desfortalecer	IV
Desgobernar	I
Desguarnecer	IV
Deshacer	§ 1101
Deshelar	I
Desherbar	I
Desherrar	I
Deshombrecerse	IV
Deshumedecer	IV
Desimponer	§ 1099
Desinvernar	I
Desleír	III
Deslendrar	I
Deslucir	IV
Desmajolar	I
Desmarrirse	§ 1119
Desmedirse	III
Desmelar	I
Desmembrar	I
Desmentir	II
Desmerecer	IV
Desmullir	§ 1045
Desnegar	I
Desnevar	I
Desobedecer	IV
Desoír	§ 1115
Desolar	I
Desoldar	I
Desollar	I
Desobstruir	V
Desosar[1] (§ 1072)	I
Desovar (§ 1072)	I
Desparecer	IV
Despavorir	§ 1119
Despedir	III
Despedrar	I
Desperecer	IV
Despernar	I
Despertar	I
Despezar[2]	I
Desplacer	III
Desplegar	I
Despoblar	I
Desproveer	§ 1113
Destentar	I
Desteñir	III
Desterrar	I
Destituir	V
Destorcer	I
Destrocar	I
Destruir	V
Desvanecer	IV
Desventar	I
Desverdecer	IV
Desvergonzarse	I
Desvolver	I
Detener	§ 1094
Detraer	§ 1106
Devolver	I
Dezmar	I
Diferir	II
Difluir	V
Digerir	II
Diluir	V
Discerner	I
Discernir (§ 1074)	II
Disconvenir	§ 1100
Discordar	I
Disentir	II
Disminuir	V
Disolver	I
Disonar	I
Dispertar	I
Displacer	III
Disponer	§ 1099
Distender	I
Distraer	§ 1106
Distribuir	V
Divertir	II
Dolar	I

[1] **Desosar**, *not to dare*, (derived from **osar**,) is regular. When irregular, **desosar** is from **hueso**.

[2] Regular when it means to taper the end of a tube so that it will fit into another.

Doler	I
Dormir	II
Educir	§ 1107
Elegir	III
Embaír	§ 1119
Embarbecer	IV
Embastecer	IV
Embebecer	IV
Embellecer	IV
Embermejecer	IV
Embestir	III
Emblandecer	IV
Emblanquecer	IV
Embobecer	IV
Embosquecer	IV
Embravecer	IV
Embrutecer	IV
Emparentar	I
Empecer[1]	IV
Empedernir	§ 1119
Empedrar	I
Empellar	I
Empequeñecer	IV
Empezar	I
Emplastecer	IV
Emplumecer	IV
Empobrecer	IV
Empodrecer	IV
Empoltronecerse	IV
Emporcar	I
Enaltecer	IV
Enardecer	IV
Encabellecerse	IV
Encalvecer	IV
Encallecer	IV
Encandecer	IV
Encanecer	IV
Encarecer	IV
Encarnecer	IV
Encender	I
Encentar	I
Encerrar	I
Enclocar	I
Encloquecer	IV
Encomendar	I
Encontrar	I
Encorar	I
Encordar	I
Encorecer	IV
Encornar	I
Encovar	I
Encrudecer	IV
Encruelecer	IV
Encubertar	I
Endentar	I
Endentecer	IV
Endurecer	IV
Enfierecerse	IV
Enflaquecer	IV
Enfranquecer	IV
Enfurecer	IV
Engorar	I
Engrandecer	IV
Engreír	III
Engrosar	I
Engrumecerse	IV
Engullir	§ 1048
Enhambrecer	IV
Enhambrentar	I
Enhestar	I
Enlenzar	I
Enloquecer	IV
Enlucir	IV
Enllentecer	IV
Enmagrecer	IV
Enmalecer	IV
Enmarillecerse	IV
Enmelar	I
Enmendar	I
Enmohecer	IV
Enmollecer	IV
Enmudecer	IV

[1] Vicente Salvá (Gramática 10th Ed., p. 65) considers **empecer** as regular, in which he disagrees with the majority of classic authors. The verb is now obsolete. Since it did not take a person as subject, the present subjunctive was the only form in which the irregularity could occur.

Ennegrecer	IV
Ennoblecer	IV
Ennudecer	IV
Enorgullecer	IV
Enrarecer	IV
Enriquecer	IV
Enrobustecer	IV
Enrodar	I
Enrojecer	IV
Enronquecer	IV
Enroñecer	IV
Enruinecerse	IV
Ensalmorar	I
Ensandecer	IV
Ensangrentar	I
Ensoberbecer	IV
Ensoñar	I
Ensordecer	IV
Entallecer	IV
Entender	I
Entenebrecer	IV
Enternecer	IV
Enterrar	I
Entigrecerse	IV
Entontecer	IV
Entorpecer	IV
Entortar	I
Entredecir	§ 1104
Entregerir	II
Entrelucir	IV
Entremorir	II
Entreoír	§ 1115
Entreparecerse	IV
Entrepernar	I
Entreponer	§ 1099
Entretener	§ 1094
Entrever	§ 1112
Entristecer	IV
Entullecer	IV
Entumecer	IV
Envanecer	IV
Envejecer	IV
Enverdecer	IV
Envestir	III
Envilecer	IV
Envolver	I
Enzurdecer	IV
Equivaler	§ 1117
Erguir (§ 1082)	II
Errar (§ 1070)	I
Escabullirse	§ 1045
Escandecer	IV
Escarmentar	I
Escarnecer	IV
Esclarecer	IV
Escocer	I
Escolar	I
Esforzar	I
Establecer	IV
Estar	§ 1095
Estatuir	V
Estregar	I
Estremecer	IV
Estreñir	III
Excluir	V
Expedir	III
Exponer	§ 1099
Extender	I
Extraer	§ 1106
Fallecer	IV
Favorecer	IV
Fenecer	IV
Ferrar	I
Florecer	IV
Fluir	V
Follar[1]	I
Fortalecer	IV
Forzar	I
Fregar	I
Freír	III
Gañir	§ 1045
Garantir	§ 1119
Gemecer	IV
Gemir	III
Gobernar	I
Gruir	IV

[1] Regular with the meaning *to shape into leaves.* (When irregular it is derived from **fuelle**, *a bellows*).

Gruñir	§ 1045
Guañir	§ 1045
Guarecer	IV
Guarnecer	IV
Haber	§ 1092
Hacendar	I
Hacer	§ 1101
Heder	I
Helar	I
Henchir	III
Hender	I
Heñir	III
Herbar	I
Herbecer	IV
Herir	II
Herrar	I
Hervir	II
Holgar	I
Hollar	I
Huir	V
Humedecer	IV
Imbuir	V
Impedir	III
Imponer	§ 1099
Improbar	I
Incensar	I
Incluir	V
Indisponer	§ 1099
Inducir	§ 1107
Inferir	II
Infernar	I
Influir	V
Ingerir (*or* injerir)	II
Inhestar	I
Inquirir (§ 1078)	II
Inseguir	III
Instituir	V
Instruir	V
Interdecir	§ 1104
Interponer	§ 1099
Intervenir	§ 1100
Introducir	§ 1107
Invernar	I
Invertir	II
Investir	III
Ir	§ 1111
Jimenzar (*or* simenzar)	I
Jugar (§ 1073)	I
Languidecer	IV
Leer	§ 1046
Liquefacer	§ 1102
Lobreguecer	IV
Lucir	IV
Luir	V
Llover	I
Maldecir	§ 1105
Malherir	II
Malquerer	§ 1103
Malsonar	I
Maltraer	§ 1106
Mancornar	I
Manifestar	I
Manir	§ 1119
Mantener	§ 1094
Medir	III
Melar	I
Mentar[1]	I
Mentir	II
Merecer	IV
Merendar	I
Moblar	I
Mohecer	IV
Moler	I
Morder	I
Morir	II
Mostrar	I
Mover	I
Muir	V
Mullir	§ 1045
Muñir	§ 1045
Nacer	IV
Negar	I
Negrecer	IV
Nevar	I
Obedecer	IV
Oscurecer	IV
Obstruir	V
Obtener	§ 1094

[1] The derivatives **comentar** and **dementar** are regular.

Ofrecer	IV
Oír	§ 1115
Oler (§ 1071)	I
Oponer	§ 1099
Pacer	IV
Padecer	IV
Palidecer	IV
Parecer	IV
Pedir	III
Pensar[1]	I
Perder	I
Perecer	IV
Permanecer	IV
Perniquebrar	I
Perseguir	III
Pertenecer	IV
Pervertir	II
Pimpollecer	IV
Placer	§ 1128
Plañir	§ 1045
Plastecer	IV
Plegar	I
Poblar	I
Poder	§ 1098
Podrecer	IV
Podrir (*or* pudrir)	II
Poner	§ 1099
Poseer	§ 1046
Posponer	§ 1099
Preconocer	IV
Predecir	§ 1104
Predisponer	§ 1099
Preferir	II
Prelucir	IV
Premorir	II
Preponer	§ 1099
Presentir	II
Presuponer	§ 1099
Prevalecer	IV
Prevaler	§ 1117
Prevenir	§ 1100
Prever	§ 1112
Probar	I
Producir	§ 1107
Proferir	II
Promover	I
Proponer	§ 1099
Proseguir	III
Prostituir	V
Proveer	§ 1113
Provenir	§ 1100
Quebrar	I
Querer	§ 1103
Raer	§ 1129
Rarefacer	§ 1102
Reagradecer	IV
Reaparecer	IV
Reapretar	I
Reaventar	I
Rebendecir	§ 1105
Reblandecer	IV
Rebullirse	§ 1045
Recaer	§ 1114
Recalentar	I
Recentar	I
Receñir	III
Recluir	V
Recocer	I
Recolar	I
Recolegir	III
Recomendar	I
Recomponer	§ 1099
Reconducir	§ 1107
Reconocer	IV
Reconstruir	V
Recontar	I
Reconvalecer	IV
Reconvenir	§ 1100
Recordar	I
Recostar	I
Recrecer	IV
Recrudecer	IV
Redargüir	V
Redoler	I
Reducir	§ 1107
Reelegir	III
Reencomendar	I
Referir	II

[1] The derivatives **compensar**, **recompensar**, are regular.

Reflorecer IV
Refluir V
Reforzar I
Refregar I
Refreír III
Regañir . . . . . § 1045
Regar I
Regimentar I
Regir III
Regoldar I
Regruñir . . . . . § 1045
Rehacer . . . . . § 1101
Rehenchir III
Reherir II
Reherrar I
Rehervir II
Rehollar I
Rehuir V
Rehumedecer IV
Reír III
Rejuvenecer IV
Relentecer IV
Relucir IV
Remendar I
Rementir II
Remolar I
Remoler I
Remorder I
Remover I
Remullir . . . . . § 1045
Renacer IV
Rendir III
Renegar I
Renovar I
Reñir III
Repacer IV
Repadecer IV
Repedir III
Repensar I
Repetir III
Replegar[1] I
Repoblar I
Repodrir II
Reponer . . . . . § 1099
Reprobar I
Reproducir . . . . . § 1107
Repudrir II
Requebrar I
Requerer . . . . . § 1103
Requerir II
Resaber . . . . . § 1097
Resalir . . . . . § 1117
Resegar I
Resembrar I
Resentirse II
Resolver I
Resollar I
Resonar I
Resplandecer IV
Resquebrar I
Restablecer IV
Restituir V
Restregar I
Restreñir . . . . . § 1045
Retallecer IV
Retemblar I
Retener . . . . . § 1094
Retentar I
Reteñir III
Retiñir . . . . . § 1045
Retoñecer IV
Retorcer I
Retostar I
Retraer . . . . . § 1106
Retribuir V
Retronar I
Retrotraer . . . . . § 1106
Revejecer IV
Revenirse . . . . . § 1100
Reventar I
Rever . . . . . § 1112
Reverdecer I
Reverter I
Revestir III
Revolar I
Revolcarse I
Revolver II
Robustecer IV

[1] Regular when meaning *to fold again.*

Rodar	I
Roer	§ 1131
Rogar[1]	I
Saber	§ 1097
Salir	§ 1117
Salpimentar	I
Salpullir	§ 1045
Sarmentar	I
Sarpullir	§ 1045
Satisfacer	§ 1102
Segar	I
Seguir	III
Sembrar	I
Sementar	I
Sentar	I
Sentir	II
Ser	§ 1110
Serrar	I
Servir	III
Simenzar (*see* jimenzar)	I
Sobrecrecer	IV
Sobrentender	I
Sobreponer	§ 1099
Sobresalir	§ 1117
Sobresembrar	I
Sobresolar	I
Sobrevenir	§ 1100
Sobreventar	I
Sobreverterse	I
Sobrevestir	II
Sofreír	III
Solar	I
Soldar	I
Soler	§ 1133
Soltar	I
Solver	I
Sollar	I
Somover	I
Sonar	I
Sonreír	III
Sonrodarse	I
Soñar	I
Sorregar	I
Sosegar	I
Sostener	§ 1094
Soterrar	I
Subarrendar	I
Subentender	I
Subseguir	III
Subtender	I
Subvenir	§ 1100
Subvertir	II
Sugerir	II
Superponer	§ 1099
Supervenir	§ 1100
Suponer	§ 1099
Sustituir	V
Sustraer	§ 1106
Tallecer	IV
Tañer	§ 1045
Temblar	I
Tender[2]	I
Tener	§ 1094
Tentar[2]	I
Teñir	III
Torcer	I
Tostar	I
Traducir	§ 1107
Traer	§ 1106
Trascender	I
Trascolar	I
Trascordarse	I
Trasegar	I
Trasferir	II
Trasfregar	I
Traslucirse	IV
Trasoír	§ 1115
Trasoñar	I
Trasponer	§ 1099
Trastrocar	I
Trasverter	I
Trasvolar	I
Travesar	I
Trocar	I

[1] All the derivatives of **rogar** are regular.
[2] The derivative **prtender** is regular.
[3] The derivatives **contentar, detentar, intentar,** are regular.

Tronar	I	Verter	I
Tropezar	I	Vestir	III
Tullir	§ 1045	Volar	I
Tumefacerse	§ 1102	Volcar	I
Usucapir	§ 1134	Volver	I
Valer	§ 1117	Yacer	§ 1135
Venir	§ 1100	Yuxtaponer	§ 1099
Ventar	I	Zabullir	§ 1045
Ver	§ 1112	Zaherir	II
Verdecer	IV	Zambullirse	§ 1045

Exercise LI.

The citizens, having been grievously oppressed by the taxes which had been imposed upon them, revolted and deposed the governor. Do not interfere in matters that do not concern you. It is reported[1] that the mail-carrier has been killed[2] by robbers near the pass of *Las Peñas*. There are in South America many mountainous and *arid regions* in which journeys and the transportation of merchandise are very difficult. In them there are neither trees nor water, except at long *distances*. It is very hot during the summer; and besides, the ground is covered with a *fine* sand which renders (*hace*) walking very arduous. But the wise *providence* of God has placed in those *regions* an *animal* which seems *created* expressly to live in them and to render[3] *services* which no other could perform (*desempeñar*). This *animal* is the *llama* (*f.*), which performs (*hace*) in South America the same *office* which the camel [does] in the deserts of *Africa* (*f.* 3). The *llama*, besides serving as a beast of burden, produces a wool which, although somewhat (*algo*) *inferior* to that of the sheep, is much more *abundant*; and its flesh furnishes[4] food to the inhabitants of the countries in which it is found; its hide serves also for many uses. But what makes this *animal* most useful[5] as a beast of burden, is its extreme *frugality*. In fact it not only sustains itself upon a very small (*poca*) quantity of pasturage or grain (*pl.*) but it can go (*pasar*) entire days without water.[6] The *llama* is *docile* and *obedient*; it allows itself to be guided[7] even[8] by a child, and knows[9] the voice of the leader of the train; in the marches across the mountains it manifests great *prudence*, avoiding the *precipices* and walking always with [a] sure tread.

---

[1] Se dice . . . [2] See § 1143. [3] para vivir y prestar en ellas . . . [4] y con su carne suministra . . . [5] lo que hace más útil á este . . . [6] sin beber agua. [7] se deja guiar. [8] See § 287. [9] conoce.

CHAPTER XXII.

IDIOMATIC USES OF CERTAIN VERBS AND VERBAL EXPRESSIONS.

1149. Abusar de is *to abuse* in the sense of using wrongfully or excessively. **Maltratar** is *to abuse* in the sense of ill-treat. **Denostar, decir injurias á,** *to abuse* with words only:—

Hay individuos á quienes no pueden permitirse privilegios sin que abusen de ellos.	There are some persons who cannot be allowed privileges without abusing them.
Maltrata atrozmente á sus niños.	He abuses his children shamefully.
Con tal que se limite á decirme injurias, poco me importa.	Provided he confines himself to abusing me, I don't care.

1150. Acordarse de, *to remember,* is used almost interchangeably with **recordar,** *to recollect,* which governs its object directly. **Recuerdo** is a *souvenir, memento*:—

No me acuerdo de la fecha.	I do not remember the date.
¿Se acuerda V. de la promesa que me hizo?	Do you remember the promise you made me?
No puedo recordar el apellido de aquel caballero.	I cannot recall that gentleman's name.
No recordaba ni cuándo ni dónde había visto antes al recién venido.	I did not remember when or where I had seen the new-comer before.
Conservaré esta flor como recuerdo de nuestro delicioso paseo.	I shall keep this flower as a souvenir of our delightful walk.

1151. Admirar may be construed in three different ways:—

Admiramos la incansable laboriosidad de los antiguos Egipcios. La incansable laboriosidad de los antiguos Egipcios nos admira. Nos admiramos de la incansable laboriosidad de los antiguos Egipcios.	We wonder at the untiring industry of the ancient Egyptians.

1152. Alegrarse de means *to be glad of,* followed by a verb or noun:—

Me alegro de la dicha de V.	I am glad of your good fortune.
Me alegro de saber que es verdad.	I am glad to know that it is true.
Me alegro de que no hayan venido á las manos.	I am glad they did not come to blows.

1153. Andar and **ir** both correspond to the English *go*. **Andar** applies to the motion of animals and inanimate objects, and to undefined going of persons. **Ir** is *to go* in a specific direction or for a definite purpose:—

Andar en mangas de camisa, en carnes, con los pies descalzos, con la cabeza al aire.	To go in one's shirt-sleeves; to go naked; to go barefooted; to go bareheaded.
Andar despacio, de prisa.	To go slow, fast.
Andar á gatas; andar á tientas.	To go on all fours; to grope.
Todavía no anda con pies de mar.	He has not got his sea legs yet.
El buque anda bien, es un buen andador.	The ship sails well, is a good goer.
El reloj no anda.	The clock is not going.
Ir al despacho, á palacio.	To go to office, to the palace.
Ir de un recado, ir de campo.	To go on an errand, on a picnic.
Va de cónsul á Colón.	He goes as consul to Colon.
Á eso voy.	That's what I'm driving at.

REMARK.—In answer to a call, the English say *I am coming*, the Spaniards **voy**, literally *I am going*:—

¡ Pepe !—Allá voy, señor.	Joe!—I'm coming, Sir.
Ya voy.	I'm coming right now.
Allá vamos en seguida, mamá.	We are coming in a moment, mamma.

1154. Antojarse takes a person as indirect object, and is to be rendered in English by *take a notion to*, the person being subject:—

Se me antojó registrar este hoyo con la punta de mi bastón.	I took a notion to feel in this hollow with the point of my stick.
Si á V. se le antoja hacer eso, le castigaré.	If you take it into your head to do that I will punish you.

1155. Caber, which is literally equivalent to the English *to get into*, is usually rendered by *to hold*, the Spanish subject then becoming object. It is connected with its object by **en**:—

Todos estos objetos no cabrán en el baúl.	The trunk won't hold all these things.
En cada cargador caben cinco cartuchos.	Each clip holds five cartridges.
No cabe más en el saco.	The bag won't hold any more.
Meta V. todo cuanto quepa.	Put in all it will hold.
No cabíamos ni parados.	We had not room to stand.

Caber is also used figuratively, expressing the ideas of possibility or capability:—

No cabe en la imaginación lo grandioso de la perspectiva.	The imagination can form no conception of the grandeur of the view.
Me rehuso á creer que quepa en él semejante vileza.	I refuse to believe that he is capable of such a contemptible action.
Todo cabe en él.	He is capable of anything.
Es más feo que el otro, si cabe.	It is uglier than the other, if that be possible.

1156. Caer, *to fall,* has the following usages which deserve notice here:—

La levita le cae bien á V.	The coat fits you well.
Cae bien á caballo.	He looks well on horseback.
No caigo en la cosa.	I don't understand the affair.
Ya caigo en ello.	I see, I understand.
No cayó en la cuenta.	He did not see the point, catch on.
La pascua cae en abril este año.	Easter comes in April this year.
El plazo cae, mi pagaré cae mañana.	The time expires, my note falls due to-morrow.
La ventana cae á la plaza.	The window overlooks the square.
La hija menor me ha caído en gracia.	The youngest daughter has taken my fancy.
Ha caído de la gracia del príncipe.	He has fallen in the prince's esteem.
Esta fonda ha caído en mala fama.	This hotel has fallen into ill repute.

1157. Casar.—The meaning and usage of **casar** varies according to the person who is its subject. When it governs the object directly it means *to join in wedlock,* and *to dispose of in marriage.* The action of either of the parties to the match is expressed by **casarse con,** *to marry* or *wed*:—

Los casó el obispo.	The bishop married them.
Casó á su hija con un barón alemán sin seso.	She married her daughter to a brainless German baron.
¿Es V. casado?—Aun no, pero me voy á casar luego.	Are you married?—Not yet, but I am going to get married soon.

1158. Dar has the usual values of the English *give,* except in the sense of *to make a present of,* which latter meaning is expressed by **regalar**:—

Me dió la carta.	He gave me the letter.
Me regaló un cortaplumas.	He gave me a penknife.
Me dará mucho gusto.	It will give me much pleasure.
Me dió, me extendió la mano.	She gave me her hand.
Me doy por vencido.	I give up.
Ella le dió un beso, un abrazo, un apretón de manos.	She gave him a kiss, an embrace, a squeeze of the hand.

Eso da motivo para quejarse.	That gives opportunity for complaint.
Dar el santo al centinela.	To give the countersign to the sentry.
Dió á la isla el nombre de San Salvador.	He gave the island the name of San Salvador.

Dar frequently has the value of *to perform*:—

Dar un paseo.	To take a walk.
Dar una vuelta, vueltecita.	To take a turn, short walk.
Dió una carcajada.	He burst out laughing.
Dar saltos.	To jump about.
Dar cabezadas; dar manotadas.	To nod with drowsiness; to throw up the hands (as in falling).
Dar un nudo al pañuelo.	To tie a knot in one's handkerchief.
Dar cima, dar cabo á alguna obra.	To conclude, to finish a work.
Dar la última pincelada.	To give the finishing stroke.
Dar guerra.	To wage war.
Esta mula da coces.	This mule kicks.
Dar un chillido.	To utter a scream.
Dar voces, gritos, gemidos.	To cry out, shout, groan.
Dar una visita.	To pay a call.

1159. Dejar has the two leading meanings of *to leave* and *to let* (i.e. *to permit*):—

Dejar á alguien plantado.	To leave anyone in the lurch.
Déjele V. que salga.	Let him go out.
El caballo no quiere dejarse ensillar.	The horse will not let himself be saddled.

Dejar de, followed by an infinitive, means *to fail* and *to leave off*:—

No dejaré de decírselo.	I shall not fail to tell him so.
Déje V. de molestarme.	Stop bothering me.
Dejemos de ocuparnos de semejantes frioleras.	Let us cease to concern ourselves with such trifles.
No hay que creer que esta caza deja de tener sus peligros.	You must not believe that this kind of hunting is devoid of danger.
Los demás testigos dejaron de comparecer.	The other witnesses failed to appear.

1160. Doler, *to ache,* takes as its subject a noun expressing a part of the body, and a person as indirect object:—

Me duele la cabeza.	My head aches.
Le duele el pulmón derecho.	He has a pain in his right lung.
Me dolían los pies.	My feet pained me.

1161. Echar, while regular in form, is in meaning the most irregular verb in the language. Its primary meaning is *to throw* or *cast*, but this suffers many modifications:—

Echaron al intruso.	They ejected the intruder.
Se preparaban á echar el ancla.	They were preparing to cast anchor.
Echó el documento á un lado.	He threw the document aside.
Echó mano á la espada.	He grasped his sword.
Echar las cartas.	To deal the cards.
Echar el cocido, la verdura.	To serve the meat, the vegetables.
Echó el café de una taza á otra para refrescarlo.	He poured the coffee from one cup into another to cool it.

Echar with the value of *to apply*, governing a noun:—

Echar la regla.	To verify by applying a measure.
Echar el cerrojo.	To bolt.
Echar llave á la puerta.	To lock the door.
Echar la tijera.	To apply the shears, to cut.
Echar el cordel.	To use the chalk-line.
Echar un candado á la puerta.	To put a padlock on the gate.

Echar in many cases has the secondary sense of *to put forth* or *develop*:—

Echar carnes ; echar barriga (*low*).	To grow fleshy ; to grow corpulent.
Echar bigotes ; echar canas.	To begin to grow a mustache ; to begin to grow gray.
Echar carrillos.	To grow fat in the cheeks.
Echar coche ; echar novio.	To set up a coach ; to have a beau.
Echar raíces.	To take root.
Echar botones, hojas, flores.	To put forth buds, leaves, flowers.

Echar menos means *to miss* (i.e. to be sensible of the absence of):—

Le echemos á V. menos en el baile.	We missed you at the ball.
Echaré menos nuestros paseos por la tarde.	I shall miss our evening walks.
Á mí nadie me echará menos cuando muera.	No one will miss me when I die.

REMARK.—The expression also occurs in the form **echar de menos á alguien** or **algo**.

Echar de ver means *to notice*:—

Echo de ver que V. ha omitido la fecha.	I notice you have omitted the date.
Se echa de ver fácilmente que es de buena alcurnia.	It is easy to see that he comes of good stock.

Echar á, followed by an infinitive, is *to begin to, set to work at*:—

Me eché á dormir.	I went to sleep.
Se echó á reír, á llorar, á barajar los naipes.	He began to laugh, to cry, to shuffle the cards.
Lo echó á rodar.	He sent it rolling.

Echar á perder is a stereotype expression meaning *to spoil*:—

Con su indiscreción lo echará á perder todo.	He will spoil all with his indiscretion.
La lluvia ha echado á perder mi sombrero.	The rain has spoiled my hat.
Temo que se eche á perder.	I am afraid it will be spoiled.

1162. Entender de is *to be a judge of*:—

¿Entiende V. de brillantes?—Entiendo bastante de eso.	Are you a judge of diamonds?—I am a tolerable judge of them.
Yo no entiendo nada de pinturas.	I am no judge of paintings.
Entiende de vinos, de caballos.	He is a judge of wines, of horses.

1163. Faltar and **hacer falta**, which are rendered into English by *need* or *want*, take a person as indirect object, the thing wanted being *subject*:—

Sólo le hace falta á V. un poco de práctica.	You only need a little practice.
Nos faltan brazos.	We are short of hands (i.e. workmen).
No falta más.	That caps the climax.

1164. Guardarse de, followed by an infinitive, signifies *to take care not to*; it is to be noticed that the Spanish expression lacks a negative:—

Guárdese V. de caer.	Take care not to fall.
Me guardaré de decirles nada.	I will take care not to tell them anything.
Se guardará muy bien de mostrarse.	He will take good care not to show himself.

1165. Gustar, in its simplest usage, as a transitive verb, means *to taste*; with this meaning it is more commonly replaced by **probar**, meaning literally *to try*:—

Guste V. (pruebe V.) esta leche.	Taste this milk.
No he probado bocado desde ayer.	I haven't tasted a mouthful since yesterday.
Dejé el guisado sin probarlo.	I left the stew untasted.

The Spanish verb for representing the English *taste* as an intransitive verb referring to a thing, is **saber**, followed by **á** where the English verb takes *of* or *like*:—

Esta mantequilla sabe rancia.	This butter[1] tastes rancid.
La leche sabe fuertemente á ajo.	The milk tastes strongly of garlic.

Gustar, *to please, give pleasure,* is employed in connections where the English use *like*, for which there is no exact equivalent in Spanish. The construction is then reversed as follows:—

Me gustan los pasteles.	I like pies.
¿Cómo le gusta á V. mi alcoba?	How do you like my bed-room?
Parece que á la anciana le gusta charlar.	It seems the old lady likes to talk.
Á mí no me gustan las tragedias.	I do not like tragedies.

Gustar may be followed by the preposition **de**, with a person as subject as in English, and meaning *to be fond of*:—

Yo gusto de bailar.	I am fond of dancing.
Gusta demasiado del teatro.	She is too fond of the theater.

REMARK.—After **como**, **encontrar**, *to find,* is preferable to **gustar** in asking an opinion:—

¿Cómo encuentra V. el vino?	How do you like the wine?
¿Cómo encontraron Vds. la vista?	How did you like the view?
¿Qué tal ha encontrado V. el estreno?	How did you like the new play?

1166. Hacer is used to reproduce other verbs in the same manner as the English *do*; the object of the verb is reproduced by the neuter **lo**:—

No es extraño que todos se burlen del que de sí mismo lo hace.	It is not strange that every one makes fun of him who does so of himself.
La caballería española desbarató á los aztecas como lo hace á la niebla el viento.	The Spanish cavalry scattered the Aztecs as the wind does the mist.

Hacer por is *to try to, arrange it so as to*:—

Haga V. por venir.	Try to come.
Hagan Vds. por permitirle todo el tiempo posible.	Arrange it so as to allow him all the time possible.
Haré por verle hoy mismo.	I shall try to see him this very day.

[1] Butter is called in Spain **manteca**; in Spanish America, **mantequilla**. In the latter part of the world **manteca** means *lard*, which in Spain is called **manteca de cerdo**.

1167. Llegar á is used with a future reference equivalent to the familiar English *get to*:—

Cuando llegue V. á comprender el sistema, lo hallará muy fácil.	When you get to understand the system you will find it very easy.
El descuido y falta de método con que la corteza era extraída hizo temer que la producción de la quina disminuyera considerablemente, y aun llegara á agotarse.	The carelessness and lack of method with which the bark was removed caused fear to be entertained lest the production of cinchona would be considerably diminished and even eventually be exhausted.

1168. Meterse á, followed by a noun, means *to set one's self up for*:—

Se mete á sabio.	He pretends to be very learned.
Se metía á caballero.	He set himself up for a gentleman.
No vayan Vds. á creer que me meta á ingenio al manifestarles lo que acaban de oír.	Do not believe that I am posing as a genius in stating what you have just heard.

Meterse en is *to meddle with* or *in*:—

Le gusta meterse en vidas ajenas.	He likes to meddle with other people's business.
Fulano se mete en todo.	So-and-so is in everything.
Meterse en honduras.	To "get into deep water."
Meterse en camisa de once varas.	To bite off more than one can chew.
No se meta V. de por medio.	Don't you interfere in this.

1169. Mudar means *to change* in various acceptations:—

Los pollos están mudando la pluma.	The chickens are moulting.
Mudar de ropa blanca.	To change one's linen.
Vamos á mudarnos de casa al fin del mes.	We are going to move at the end of the month.

1170. Nacer, which in Spanish is active intransitive, is translated in English by *to be born*, which is used as a passive:—

Nací en X, tres años antes de la guerra civil.	I was born in X, three years before the civil war.
Todo esto sucedió antes que V. naciera.	All this happened before you were born.
Quien nació para ahorcado no morirá ahogado.	He who was born to be hanged will never be drowned.
No le pesa haber nacido.	He does not regret having been born. (*Said of a self-conceited person.*)

1171. Oír, entender and **comprender.**—**Oír** is simply to perceive a sound by the ear, and may apply to sounds of any nature

whatever. **Entender** is to hear understandingly, to understand articulate speech. **Comprender** is to understand written language, ideas, and spoken language which is obscure or otherwise difficult of comprehension:—

¿Oye V. repicar las campanas?	Do you hear the bells chime?
Óigame V. antes de condenarme.	Hear me before condemning me.
Oigo subir á alguno.	I hear some one coming up-stairs.
Le oigo pero no le entiendo.	I hear him but do not understand him.
No entiendo lo que V. dice porque habla demasiado aprisa.	I don't understand what you say because you talk too fast.
No comprendo nada de esa gerigonza.	I don't understand a word of that gibberish.
Su razonamiento es difícil de comprender.	His reasoning is difficult to understand.

1172. Pagar, *to pay,* may take as its direct object either the amount paid or the thing paid for, while the person paid is the indirect object. The thing paid for may be preceded by **por**:—

He pagado el vestido, *or* por el vestido.	I have paid for the suit of clothes.
He pagado cuarenta pesos por el vestido.	I paid forty dollars for the suit of clothes.
He pagado el vestido al sastre.	I have paid the tailor for the suit of clothes.
He pagado cuarenta pesos al sastre.	I paid the tailor forty dollars.
He pagado al sastre cuarenta pesos por el vestido.	I paid the tailor forty dollars for the suit of clothes.

1173. Pasarse sin is *to do without, get along without*:—

Hay muchas cosas sin las cuales tiene uno que pasarse.	There are many things that one has to do without.
Puesto que en tanto valúa sus servicios, trataremos de pasarnos sin ellos.	Since he values his services so highly, we will try to get along without them.
No podría pasarme sin mi máquina de escribir.	I could not do without my typewriter.

1174. Pedir prestado and **tomar prestado** are equivalent to the English verb *borrow*:—

Quiero pedirle á V. prestada su caña de pescar.	I want to borrow your fishing-rod.
Lo siento infinito, pero mi hermano la ha tomado prestada.	I am very sorry, but my brother has borrowed it.
He tomado esta suma prestada á mi hermano.	I borrowed this sum from my brother.

1175. Pesar, expressing regret or sorrow, is construed impersonally, the person being indirect object and the noun denoting the cause of the sorrow being preceded by **de.** This preposition, however, may be omitted before either a noun or an infinitive, which in that case is considered as subject:—

Me parece que le pesa ahora [de] su grosería.	I think he is sorry now for his churlishness.
Me pesa mucho [de] haberle ofendido.	I am sorry I offended him.
¡Cuánto me pesa verla á V. tan triste!	How sorry I am to see you so sad!

1176. Poner, meter, colocar.—**Poner en** is to *put on* the surface or outside of anything; **meter en,** *to put into* or *insert.* **Poner** may be accompanied by other prepositions,—**sobre, encima de, enfrente de,** etc. Either verb may be replaced by **colocar,** except in figurative significations:—

Puso la mano en mi hombro.	He laid his hand on my shoulder.
Metió las pulseras en la cajita de prendas.	She put the bracelets in the jewel box.
Colocó el vaso en la repisa.	She put the vase on the bracket.
El artista metió los lienzos detrás del escaparate.	The artist thrust the canvases behind the cupboard.
Puso, colocó la caja de cartón encima del armario.	She put the paper box on top of the wardrobe.
Pusieron en fuga al enemigo.	They put the enemy to flight.
Poner en música, en verso, en castellano.	To set to music, to put in verse, to render into Spanish.
Poner algo en limpio.	To make a final *or* engrossed copy of something.
Poner una cosa por escrito.	To put a thing in writing.
Las gallinas ya ponen huevos.	The hens are already laying eggs.
¿Han puesto la mesa?	Have they set the table?
Quiero poner á prueba su amistad.	I want to put his friendship to a test.

Ponerse á means *to set to work at*:—

Se pusieron á reparar los perjuicios.	They set to work to repair the damages.
Se pusieron á discutir el significado de la orden.	They began to discuss the meaning of the order.
Me puse á pensar sus palabras.	I set to thinking over his words.
Se puso el salvaje á dar brincos como un endemoniado.	The savage began to leap about like one possessed.

1177. Querer decir is equivalent to the English verb *to mean*:—

¿Qué quiere V. decir con eso? — What do you mean by that?
¿Qué quieren decir estos señales? — What do these marks mean?
No comprendo lo que quiere V. decir. — I don't understand what you mean.
Mi papá no quiere decir que á él no le gusta V., sino que no le gusta que V. se quede tan tarde. — Papa does not mean that he does not like you, but that he does not like you to stay so late.

1178. Saber and **conocer.**—**Conocer** is applied directly to objects of perception and is never followed by **que** and a verb. It expresses such knowledge as suffices to distinguish one person or thing from another. **Saber** is to know a fact, a reason or branch of learning as a subject of thought or understanding:—

¿**Conoce** V. al doctor N.?—Sí, le **conozco** intimamente, y **sé** que es un médico muy hábil. — Do you know Dr. N.?—Yes, I know him intimately, and I know that he is a very able physician.
¿**Conoce** V. el camino?—Sí, mas no **sé** si está en buen estado. — Do you know the road?—Yes, but I do not know whether it is in good condition.
¿**Sabe** V. el álgebra? ¿**Sabe** V. su tema? ¿**Sabe** V. que su hijo fuma? — Do you know algebra? Do you know your lesson? Do you know that your son smokes?
¿**Conoce** V. esta letra? ¿**Conoce** V. la España? — Do you know this handwriting? Are you acquainted with Spain?

1179. Saber and **poder** are both used before infinitives to express ability, but with this distinction: **saber** denotes knowledge or mental ability; **poder**, purely physical ability. **Saber** may often be rendered *to know how to*:—

No sabe leer (porque nunca lo ha aprendido). — He cannot read (because he never learned how).
No puede leer (porque es ciego, *ó* porque ha perdido sus anteojos). — He cannot read (because he is blind *or* because he has lost his spectacles).
¿Sabe V. nadar? ¿Sabe V. bailar vals? ¿Sabe V. patinar? — Can you swim? Can you waltz? Can you skate?
¿Puede V. levantar ese peso? — Can you lift that weight?
¿Puede V. saltar por encima de aquel seto? — Can you jump over that hedge?

1180. Seguir is both *to follow* and *to continue, go on*:—

Sígame V. de lejos. — Follow me at a distance.
Mi hijo mayor sigue las letras. — My eldest son follows the profession of literature.

Siga V. leyendo, no se interrumpa V. á causa mía.	Go on reading, don't disturb yourself on my account.
El anciano siguió con su narración.	The old man went on with his story.

1181. Sentir means *to perceive* by the senses, *to feel*, and also *to hear*. Followed by an infinitive, or by **que** with a subjunctive, it also means *to be sorry*. Therefore **sentimiento** means both *feeling* and *regret*; and **sensible**, when applied to things, means *regrettable*, and when applied to rational beings, *tender-hearted*:—

Sentir el frío ; sentir hambre.	To feel the cold ; to feel hunger.
Sentir un ruido ; sentir pasos.	To hear a noise ; to hear footsteps.
Sintió que su fin se acercaba.	He felt that his end was approaching.
Siento no poder ir.	I am sorry I can't go.
¡ Cuánto siento que lo haya divulgado !	How sorry I am that he has divulged it !
Se siente enfermo ; se siente mejor.	He feels ill ; he feels better.
Decir su sentir.	To express one's feelings
Una ocurrencia sensible ; una pérdida sensible.	A lamentable occurrence ; a sad loss.
Es muy sensible que . . .	It is much to be regretted that . . .
He sabido con profundo sentimiento que . . .	I have learned with deep sorrow that . . .

1182. Servir para, servir de, used intransitively, mean *to be of use as*; **servirse de,** *to make use of*:—

¿ Para qué le sirven esas botellas al amo de V.?	What does your master use those bottles for ?
Este viejo carro le sirve para llevar sus legumbres al mercado.	He uses this old cart to take his vegetables to market in.
¿ Sirve este papel para escribir ?—No sirve para nada.	Is this paper good to write on ?—It is not good for anything.
¿ De qué le sirve á V. llorar ?	What use is it for you to cry ?
Mi paraguas me sirve de bastón.	My umbrella is of use as a cane.
¿ Me permite V. que me sirva de su velocípedo ?—Claro, sírvase V. todo cuanto quiera.	Will you allow me to use your bicycle ?—Certainly, use it as much as you want to.
Los chinos se sirven de palillos para comer.	The Chinese use chop-sticks to eat with.

REMARK.—**Servir de** may be replaced by **hacer las veces de** :—

Esta mesa me hace las veces de escritorio.	This table serves me as a desk.

1183. Soler, which is employed only in the present and imperfect indicative, is variously expressed in English by *to be*

accustomed to, used to, usually. This verb is never used alone, being always followed by an infinitive:—

Suelo comer despacito.	I usually eat quite slowly.
Heródoto refiere que los babilonios solían vender sus niñas bonitas para dotar á las feas con los ingresos.	Herodotus relates that the Babylonians used to sell their pretty girls for money to portion the ugly ones.

1184. Tardar en, followed by an infinitive, means *to be long in* doing something:—

Tarda mucho en decidirse.	He is long in deciding.
El enfermo no tardó en experimentar alguna mejoría.	It was not long before the patient showed some improvement.

1185. Tratar de, means *to endeavor to*:—

Trate V. de ser más puntual en lo futuro.	Endeavor to be more punctual in the future.
Trataré de reparar la pérdida lo más pronto posible.	I shall try to repair the loss as soon as possible.

Tratarse de is used impersonally to express that something is under consideration:—

¿De que se trata aquí?	What is going on here?
No se trata del gusto de un individuo sino del bienestar de la comunidad.	It is not a question of the pleasure of one individual but of the welfare of the community.
No se trata de reír ahora.	It is not a laughing matter.

1186. Valer is *to be worth,* expressing either the value of an article or the possessions of a person:—

Este género vale $3 el metro.	This cloth is worth $3 a yard.
Diz que fulano vale quince millones.	They say that So-and-so is worth fifteen millions.
Eso no vale la pena de mencionarse.	That is not worth mentioning.
No vale absolutamente nada.	It is worth absolutely nothing.
Esta navaja vale más que ésa.	This knife is worth more than that one.
No hacen nada que valga.	They do nothing of ànу account.

Vale más, used impersonally, is equivalent to the English expression *it is better*:—

Creo que vale más callar sobre este suceso.	I think it is better to keep silence on this occurrence.
Más valdrá que guarde V. cama por algunos días.	It will be better for you to keep your bed for a few days.

Más vale tarde que nunca.	Better late than never.
Más valiera si aguardásemos un poco, me parece.	It would be better for us to wait a little, I think.

Hacer valer, is *to turn to account*; **valerse de,** *to avail one's self of*:—

Tiene pocos conocimientos, pero sabe hacerlos valer.	He has few acquirements, but he knows how to turn them to account.
V. no se hace valer, V. no hace valer sus conocimientos.	You do not assert yourself, you do not turn your talents to account.
El comandante se valió de esta perturbación de los salvajes para cambiar su punto de acecho.	The major availed himself of this diversion among the savages to change his place of observation.

1187. Volver á, governing an infinitive, means to perform again the act expressed by the infinitive. It often corresponds to the Latin and English prefix *re-*, which is of limited use in Spanish:—

Volver á forrar ; volver á casarse.	To reline ; to remarry.
Volver á visitar ; volver á llenar.	To revisit ; to refill.
En 1822 el mismo fenómeno volvió á suceder.	The same phenomena again occurred in 1822.
Á la una volvieron á ponerse en marcha.	At one o'clock they again set out.
Nunca más nos volveremos á ver.	We shall never see each other again.
El catorce de noviembre volvieron á encontrarse las barreras de hielo.	On the 14th of November the ice-fields were again encountered.
Hágame V. el favor de no volver á hablar del asunto.	Oblige me by not speaking of the matter again.

1188. There is no single Spanish equivalent for the English verb *stand*. In speaking of inanimate objects, and unemphatically of men and the larger animals, **estar** is the word used. **Estar en pie** is employed of persons and animals when required for distinction. **Mantenerse en pie** is *to stand* or *remain standing*. **Ponerse en pie** is *to stand up, to rise to one's feet*; speaking of animals, however, the expression is **alzarse en los pies.** **Sostenerse en pie** is *to stand* viewed as an effort:—

No permita V. que esta señora se mantenga en pie.	Do not permit that lady to remain standing.
Estoy tan débil que apenas puedo sostenerme en pie.	I am so weak I can scarcely stand.
Esté V. quieto.	Stand still.

La iglesia está sobre una lijera eminencia.	The church stands on a slight elevation.
En medio de este claro estaba una encina majestuosa.	In the middle of this clearing stood a majestic oak.
El burro se alzó en los pies.	The donkey stood up.

1189. There are in Spanish no single equivalents for the English verbs *ride, drive* and *walk*. The various locutions for expressing these ideas in Spanish are as follows:—

Andar.	To walk (unemphatic).
Ir á pie.	To walk (in opposition to "to ride" or "to drive").
Pasearse.	To walk, to take a walk (for exercise or diversion).
Dar un paseo, una vuelta, una vueltecita.	To take a walk, a stroll.
Ir á paseo, ir á pasearse.	To go for a walk.
Salir á paseo.	To go out for a walk.
Sacar los niños á pasear.	To take the children out walking.
Ir á caballo, ir en coche.	To ride, to drive.
Montar á caballo.	To ride horseback (as an accomplishment or custom).
Montar bien á caballo, tenerse bien á caballo.	To ride well.
Conducir [á los caballos, un coche].	To drive (to act as driver).
Pasearse en coche.	To take a drive.
Pasearse en trineo.	To take a sleigh-ride.

These expressions are employed in conversation as follows:—

Estoy rendido; no puedo andar más.	I am exhausted; I can walk no farther.
Ya hemos andado media legua.	We have already walked nearly two miles.
¿Iremos á pie ó en simón?	Shall we walk or take a hack?
Hemos recorrido toda la distancia á pie.	We have walked the whole way.
Vamos á dar la vuelta al jardín.	Let us take a turn around the garden
Los caballos caminaban al paso.	The horses were going at a walk.
El cura iba montado en un asno pardo.	The priest rode a gray donkey.
El chiquillo iba á caballo en un bastón.	The little boy was riding on a cane.
Quiero que mi hija aprenda á montar á caballo.	I want my daughter to learn to ride horseback.
¿Sabe V. montar á caballo?—Sí, monto muy á menudo.	Do you know how to ride horseback?—Yes, I ride very often.

Montar en pelo, á horcajadas, á mujeriegas.	To ride bareback, astraddle, sidewise (like a woman).
Mi hermano sabe conducir dos troncos.	My brother can drive a four-in-hand.
Si la nevada continúa, nos podremos pasear en trineo mañana.	If the snowstorm continues we shall be able to go sleigh-riding to-morrow.

1190. The following modes of expressing the reception of news in Spanish are equivalent to the respective English phrases placed opposite them:—

Entender decir que.	To understand that.
Oír decir que.	To hear that.
Oír hablar de.	To hear of, to hear tell of.
Saber que.	To learn that.
Recibir, tener las noticias de.	To hear from.

EXAMPLES.

Oigo hablar á menudo de un testamento ológrafo, pero no sé lo que es.	I often hear talk of a holographic will, but I don't know what it is.
He sabido que V. ha ganado el premio gordo.	I have learned that you have drawn the capital prize.
¿Ha recibido V. últimamente noticias de su primo?—Hace más de un mes que no tengo noticias suyas.	Have you heard from your cousin lately?—It is more than a month since I heard from him.
Oigo decir que Pepe Romero va á batirse en desafío.	I hear that Joe Romero is going to fight a duel.
Yo no he oído hablar palabra de ello.	I haven't heard a word of it.
No deje V. de darme noticias suyas de cuando en cuando.	Do not fail to let me hear from you from time to time.
Entiendo decir que ha jurado vengarse de la afrenta.	I understand that he has sworn to avenge the affront.
¿Dónde ha sabido V. eso?	Where did you learn that?

Exercise LII.

Does your head ache? Yes, very much. Do you know that man? I am not acquainted with him, but I know he is a foreigner. Oh yes, that is easily noticed. If you do not know your lesson it is because you have not tried to learn it. When (*en cuanto*) you know my brother you will like him, I am sure. Would you like to come out and take a walk with me? It is too hot to go walking; I should prefer to take a drive. How much did you pay for your shoes? I have not yet paid for them; I have

not received the bill. Do you usually get up early?[1] No, I *ordinarily* rise late. The country-house stands on the crest of a hill and the front windows look towards the river. Do you think our parlor will hold all the guests? No, but we shall throw open the library. I wonder at your calmness; you cannot fail to be annoyed at his stupidity. I hope to have the pleasure of meeting you again, Miss Josie. I assure you, Sir, that I share in that hope. I am glad to learn that your sister has recovered from the fever. Do you remember the pleasant walks we used to take along the banks of the river? Yes, I shall always preserve the sweetest recollections of that summer. When is your sister going to be married? She has not yet fixed the day. When are you going to give me the box of candy you promised me? I do not recollect having promised you any. My blood boiled to see[2] the driver abuse his horse so; people who (*los que*) do not know how to drive always throw the blame on the (*al*) horse. If you can do without your Spanish *dictionary* I should like you to lend it to me for a few weeks. All right; but take care not to let the children handle it. What was going on in the street as you came along? What did all those shouts mean? I don't know; I did not think it was worth while paying any attention to them. It is better to turn all our *talents* to account than to run the risk of their being unappreciated[3] because we are over-modest.

CHAPTER XXIII.

PARTICULAR USES OF THE TENSES.

☞ This chapter is designed to explain minor peculiarities, not yet touched upon, in the usage of certain tenses, and to treat more fully of the application of the infinitive and past participle than has been done in Lessons VI and XIV.

1191. The present tense is frequently substituted in Spanish for the imperfect and aorist in narrations, and thus by bringing the occurrence to the present time, we represent it as if it were passing before our eyes, giving more animation to the recital. The pluperfect is then changed to perfect, and the future conditional to future indicative:—

El prisionero corre hacia la playa, y después de dar algunos saltos, alcanza las primeras olas del mar. Siente tras sí á los guardias civiles, y oye el estampido de sus armas,

The prisoner dashed towards the beach, and with a few bounds reached the first waves of the sea. He heard the police behind him, heard the crack of their rifles; and their bullets, fired

---

[1] ¿ Acostumbra V. levantarse . . . ? [2] se me hirvió la sangre al ver . . .
[3] de que se menosprecien . . .

cuyas balas, disparadas al azar, le rozan á veces la cabeza. Salva los charcos de agua, saltando de roca en roca; pero entonces su silueta se destaca más visiblemente sobre el fondo menos oscuro del horizonte, los guardias le divisan, y se lanzan todos á su persecución. Hasta ahora el fugitivo ha logrado conservar su delantera, pero el terreno sólido le faltará bien pronto. En efecto, llega á las últimas rocas del arrecife, y ve que los guardias están tan sólo á unos cien pasos de él. Lanza entonces un último grito, grito de adiós dirigido al cielo, y en el momento en que una nueva descarga le envuelve en una granizada de balas, se precipita al mar.

at random, at times grazed his head. He cleared the pools of water, leaping from rock to rock; but then his profile was more clearly outlined against the lighter background of the horizon, the police descried him, and they all dashed on in pursuit. So far the fugitive had managed to keep the lead, but the solid ground was soon to fail him. In fact, he reached the last rocks of the reef and saw that the police were only about a hundred paces from him. He gave a last cry, a cry of adieu directed to heaven, and at the moment when a fresh volley enveloped him in a shower of bullets, he threw himself into the sea.

REMARK.—The same usage is found in English, although not so extensively.

1192. The present tense is also substituted for the future, giving more vivacity and color to the statement, as well as expressing greater certainty of its occurrence:—

El baile empezará á las diez.	The ball will commence at ten.
El baile empieza á las diez.	The ball commences at ten.
El buque se hará á la vela mañana.	The vessel will set sail to-morrow.
El buque se hace á la vela mañana.	The vessel sets sail to-morrow.
El mes que viene habrá un eclipse anular de sol.	Next month there will be an annular eclipse of the sun.
El mes que viene hay un eclipse anular de sol.	Next month there is to be an annular eclipse of the sun.

1193. Future contingencies may be expressed with greater energy and certainty of result by means of the present indicative; and by making this present apply graphically to a past time, it may take the place of the future perfect conditional and the pluperfect subjunctive:—

Si abres la boca, estás muerto.	If you open your mouth you are a dead man.
Si da un paso más, se precipita al abismo.	If he had taken another step he would have pitched headlong into the abyss.

Si no acudo tan pronto, sucede un desastre.	If I had not got there so soon, there would have been an accident.

1194. In the same manner as the present expresses positively a future occurrence, the imperfect expresses the same relation with regard to some point in the past:—

Yo iba ayer al campo, pero amanecí indispuesto y tuve que diferir el paseo.	I was going to the country yesterday, but I got up feeling badly and had to postpone the trip.

1195. The future is frequently used in place of the present tense to convey an idea of conjecture, or of probability in which we do not place implicit confidence:—

¿Qué hora es?—Son las tres.	What time is it?—It is three o'clock
¿Qué hora es?—Serán las tres.	What time is it?—It is probably three o'clock.
Resolví cinco años há retirarme de los negocios.	Five years ago I decided to retire from business.
Resolví, hará cinco años, retirarme de los negocios.	I decided some five years ago to retire from business.

1196. The future and future perfect are used in this manner to express surprise in interrogative sentences:—

¿Será posible que yo, hasta ahora el juguete de la fortuna, haya heredado tan inmenso caudal?	Is it possible that I, until now the sport of fortune, have inherited such an immense property?
Pero ¿qué interés habrá tenido Mendoza en ello?	But what interest can Mendoza have had in it?

1197. The future conditional in like manner expresses a conjecture about a past event:—

Su madre tendría entonces treinta años.	His mother was then probably thirty years old.
Casi todos los convidados estarían entre los treinta y los cuarenta años.	Nearly all the guests were probably between thirty and forty years of age.
Una anciana regordeta entró; presumí que sería la madre de Gloria.	A stout old lady entered; I supposed she was Gloria's mother.

1198. The same degree of conjecture or probability is indicated by the two future-perfects, indicative and conditional, about an action regarded as completed at the present, or a past time, respectively:—

¿Dónde ha cogido ese hombre tantos peces?—Los **habrá comprado** en el mercado.	Where did that man catch so many fish?—He probably bought them at the market.

¿Cómo ha sabido V. eso?—lo **habré leído** en alguno que otro periódico.	How did you learn that?—I probably read it in some newspaper or other.
Les **habrá parecido** inverosímil el relato.	The account must have seemed improbable to them.
Todavía se descubría en sus facciones que en su mocedad **habría hecho** puntear á sus rejas[1] bastantes guitarras.	One could still see from her features that in her youth she had caused many a guitar to be thrummed at her window.
De joven la madre **habría sido** una mujer muy linda.	As a girl the mother had probably been a very beautiful woman.

1199. The future indicative, in Spanish as in English, is used as an imperative in orders which are to be carried out at a future time:—

Se formará la parada á las diez.	The parade will be formed at ten o'clock.
No matarás; no hurtarás.	Thou shalt not kill; thou shalt not steal.

1200. The aorist will occasionally be found where the perfect would naturally be expected:—

Ya **dí** con lo que me conviene.	Now I have found what I want.
Se **acabó** todo.	All is over.
¡Adiós! Retiraos, no me incomodéis más. Ya **pronuncié** la última palabra que se oirá salir de mi boca.	Adieu! Go, do not molest me more. I have spoken the last word that will ever be heard to issue from my mouth.

1201. After **por poco**, meaning, *within a little*, the present is used where a past tense would naturally be expected:—

Por poco le matan.	They came near killing him.
Por poco pierdo la vida.	I came near losing my life.
Por poco se cae.	He came near falling.

1202. The imperfect subjunctive is met with in poetry or in elevated style with the value of the pluperfect indicative. The usage is now rather archaic, and is restricted to relative clauses:—

No tuvo Magallanes motivo para arrepentirse de la buena acción que **ejecutara**.	Magellan did not have occasion to regret the good action that he had performed.

[1] **Rejas** are the iron bars with which all accessible windows are provided, in order to maintain the seclusion of the female inmates—an inheritance from the Moors.

Pero pronto un revés de fortuna debía nublar aquel cielo de esperanza que hasta entonces le **sonriera**.

But soon a reverse of fortune was to cloud the sky of hope which until then had smiled upon him.

Apoyada la joven en aquel mismo ajimez, quizá, donde algunos siglos antes la sultana granadina se **apoyara** pensativa, soñando con los recuerdos de algún amor perdido, contemplaba la pintoresca vega que se extendía á sus pies.

The young girl, leaning against the very same window, perhaps, where, a few centuries before, the sultana of Granada had leaned in thought, dreaming of the memories of some lost love, was watching the picturesque valley stretched out at her feet.

The explanation of this usage is that the Latin pluperfect in *-eram* and the imperfect subjunctive in *-rem* took the same form in Spanish. Its pluperfect use has finally become nearly obsolete; in Portuguese, however, it is still quite common.

THE INFINITIVE.

1203. The infinitive represents the abstract action of the verb, without distinction of time, number, person or determining circumstance. It partakes of the nature of both a verb and a noun. It is with its substantive use that we are principally to deal here.

1204. Like a noun, it may be preceded by an article or governed by a preposition, and may be the subject or object of another verb. When an article precedes, it is always **el**. But the infinitive lacks the characteristics of a noun in admitting no plural and no distinction of gender, and in being rarely qualified by an adjective or adjective pronoun:—

Hacer desaparecer en todo el país los obstáculos que se opongan al crecimiento del comercio; **derramar** á torrentes la instrucción general, sobre todo la instrucción profesional; **establecer** relaciones cada vez más íntimas entre el agricultor y el manufacturero; **hacer** de fácil acceso, por medio de la construcción de ferrocarriles y de canales navegables, todas estas tierras ricas y vírgenes que no aguardan sino los brazos del hombre para producir riquezas incalculables; y **disminuir**

To cause to disappear throughout the entire country all obstacles which may oppose the growth of trade; to diffuse general and, above all, technical instruction; to establish ever closer relations between the farmer and the manufacturer; to open up, by the construction of railways and canals, all those rich, virgin lands which only await the hand of man in order to produce incalculable riches; and thus diminish the cost of transportation, which is the most formidable obstacle that opposes the

así los gastos de trasporte, que forman el más poderoso obstáculo que se opone al progreso de las sociedades humanas: tal es, señores, la resolución del problema económico que ofrezco á la consideración de los hombres de estado de la América latina.

progress of human society: such is, Gentlemen, the solution of the economic problem which I offer for the consideration of the statesmen of Latin America.

1205. It is like a verb in that, even when used as a noun, it may have a subject and retains its original power of governing an object. When the infinitive is replaced by a true noun, this must be connected with the subject or object by means of a preposition:—

Informado el general de estar ya á poca distancia el enemigo, mandó reforzar las avanzadas.

The general, being informed of the enemy's being at a short distance, ordered the advance-guard to be reinforced.

Informado el general de la aproximación del enemigo, ordenó el refuerzo de las avanzadas.

The general, being informed of the nearness of the enemy, gave orders for the reinforcement of the advance-guard.

REMARK.—Either subject or object may be a pronoun:—

Sentíase avergonzado de vivir él, tan viejo y tan feo, muriendo su mujer, joven y hermosa.

He felt ashamed that he, so old and ugly, was still alive while his young and beautiful wife had died.

El concedérsele á él semejante privilegio, sería señal para que todos los demás pidiesen otro tanto.

The granting of such a privilege to him, would be a signal for all the rest to ask as much.

El resultado de haber tomado yo tu defensa ha sido nulo.

The effect of my having spoken in your behalf has been nil.

1206. Still, in poetic style, the infinitive occasionally loses its verbal character and is used as a pure noun, which may be connected with another noun by means of a preposition:—

El trabajar (*or* trabajo) suyo (*noun*). / El trabajar ellos (*verbal noun*). } Their labor.

Escuchábamos el pacífico murmurar (*or* murmullo) de las fuentes.

We listened to the bubbling of the springs.

La agria amonestación del señor Vélez fué un doloroso despertar (*or* despertamiento) de sus ilusiones.

The sharp warning of Mr. Velez was a painful awakening from his illusions.

REMARK.—Hence the infinitives of certain verbs have come to be accepted as pure nouns :—

La conocí por su andar gracioso.	I recognized her by her graceful gait.
Es mi parecer sincero.	It is my candid opinion.
Debemos cumplir con nuestro deber.	We must do our duty.

1207. Furthermore the infinitive differs from a pure noun in that it may be qualified by adverbs of manner, which become adjectives if the infinitives be replaced by pure nouns:—

Para administrar bien los intereses de la sociedad, es preciso conocerlos perfectamente.	In order to manage well the interests of society, it is necessary to be perfectly acquainted with them.
Para la buena administración de los intereses sociales, es necesario el conocimiento perfecto de ellos.	A perfect acquaintance with the interests of society is necessary for their proper management.
El obedecer implícitamente es el primer deber del soldado.	To obey implicitly is the first duty of a soldier.
La obediencia implícita es el primer deber del soldado.	Implicit obedience is the first duty of a soldier.

REMARK.—Nevertheless, nouns may occasionally be explained by means of adverbs of time or place :—

Su regreso mañana sorprendería á su familia.	His return to-morrow would surprise his family.
Mi permanencia allí fué muy agradable.	My stay there was very pleasant.

1208. When the infinitive is subject or predicate it usually takes the definite article:—

El leer y el observar son las fuentes de la sabiduría, el escribir aumenta la exactitud, y la fluidez proviene del hablar.	Reading and observing are the sources of knowledge, writing promotes accuracy, and fluency comes from speaking.
¿Ha visto V. qué efecto ha causado á los dos el volverse á ver?	Did you see what effect their seeing each other again had on both of them?
No podría perdonarme nunca el haberle ocasionado un solo día de retraso.	I could never forgive myself for having caused you a single day's delay.
El médico encuentra necesario el cauterizar la herida.	The doctor finds it necessary to cauterize the wound.

1209. The infinitive preceded by **al** is to be rendered into English by a finite verb introduced by *when*, *as*, or by a participle preceded by *on* or *in*:—

Al asomar el día, la tempestad se desencadenaba todavía con extraordinario furor.	When day appeared, the storm was still raging with extraordinary violence.
Al pasar por el tambo de Ginés, y al reparar en el desorden en que había quedado el famoso establecimiento, no supo qué pensar.	On passing the Gines Tavern, and noticing the disorder which reigned in that famous establishment, he knew not what to think.
Al abrir la carta, ví con asombro un giro de cien pesos.	On opening the letter, I was astonished to see a draft for $100.
Al cerrar la noche, cesó la lluvia, y el viento saltó al noroeste.	At nightfall the rain ceased, and the wind swung around to the northwest.

REMARK.—When so used, the infinitive applies to any time, past, present or future, according as determined by the immediate context :—

Al oír las campanas, salí.	On hearing the bells I went out.
Al oír las campanas, saldré.	On hearing the bells, I shall go out.

1210. The infinitive preceded by **á** often takes the place of the protasis in a conditional sentence,—generally of implied negation :—

Á conocer yo (si hubiese conocido) su carácter, no le hubiera ajustado.	If I had known his character I should not have hired him.
Á no estar tan lejos de la población, me convendría la quinta de todos modos.	If it were not so far from the town, the country-house would suit me in every respect.
Á tomar su genio más elevado vuelo, no dejara de alcanzar algún importante destino.	If he had higher aspirations he would not fail to rise to some important position.

1211. When a noun, the object of a verb of seeing or hearing, is the subject of an infinitive, the latter precedes the noun :—

He visto **morir** á mis dos **hermanos** en la terrible lucha civil ; he visto **bajar** á la tumba en la flor de su vida á mi querida **madre** ; y por último he visto **extinguirse** á mi **padre** en el destierro sin que cerrasen sus ojos las manos de un amigo.	I have seen my two brothers killed (*lit.* die) in the terrible civil strife ; I have seen my beloved mother go down to the grave in the flower of her years ; and finally I have seen my father perish in exile without a friendly hand to close his eyes.
Vió entonces el jefe **entrar** en su tienda á un **mozo** alto y bien parecido.	The chieftain then saw a tall and good-looking youth enter his tent.
Oyéronse á lo lejos **retumbar** los **truenos**.	The thunder was heard rumbling in the distance.

1212. Verbs expressing acts of perception may take the infinitive of an impersonal verb as object:—

Se veía relampaguear.	It was seen to lighten.
¿No oyen Vds. tronar?	Don't you hear it thunder?

1213. The infinitive of a transitive verb, accompanied by its subject or object or both, may stand as the objects of these verbs of perception; when the infinitive has both subject and object its subject becomes the indirect object of the governing verb:—

Ví fusilar á los desertores.	I saw the deserters shot.
Anoche oí cantar un dúo á las señoritas hermanas de V.	Last night I heard your sisters sing a duet.
Les vimos rechazar al enemigo.	We saw them repulse the enemy.
Los vimos rechazar por el enemigo.	We saw them repulsed by the enemy.

REMARK.—Both the subject and the object of the infinitive may be represented by pronouns:—

Los ví fusilar.	I saw them shot.
Se lo oí cantar.	I heard them sing it.
Se los vimos rechazar.	We saw them repulse them.

1214. These verbs expressing the action of the perceptive faculties, may take as objects the infinitive of an intransitive verb together with the latter's subject,—which may be a pronoun:—

Oigo repicar las campanas.	I hear the bells chime.
Las oigo repicar.	I hear them chime.
Vimos arder el bosque.	We saw the forest burn.
Lo vimos arder.	We saw it burn.

1215. Such constructions would be expressed by the reflexive substitute for passive as follows:—

Se vió arder el bosque.	The forest was seen burning.
Se vió arder.	It was seen burning.
Se oyeron repicar las campanas.	The bells were heard chiming.
Se oyeron repicar.	They were heard chiming.
Se le oyeron cantar dos arias.	He was heard to sing two airs.
Se le oyeron cantar.	He was heard to sing them.
Se les oyó cantar un dúo.	They were heard to sing a duet.
Se les oyó cantar.	They were heard to sing it.

REMARK.—Such constructions are not expressed by the true passive (the verb **ser** and a past participle). Hence the following would be inadmissible:—

Las flores *fueron vistas marchitarse.*	The flowers were seen to wither.
El reloj *fué oído dar* las doce.	The clock was heard to strike twelve.

1216. Mandar, *to order,* is construed similarly to the above verbs which express acts of perception. When the dependent infinitive has an object, the English construction is passive; if it has a subject, this becomes the indirect object of **mandar,**— but in this case the subjunctive construction is more usual:—

El general mandó evacuar las plazas.	The general ordered the towns to be evacuated.
El general mandó á los vencidos { evacuar las plazas. / que evacuasen las plazas.	The general ordered the vanquished to evacuate the towns.
Josué mandó { al sol detenerse. / que el sol se detuviese.	Joshua ordered the sun to stand still.

REMARK.—The objective nouns in the above sentences would be reproduced by pronouns, or the sentences expressed by the reflexive substitute for passive, as follows:—

El general las mandó evacuar.	The general ordered them to be evacuated.
El general se las mandó evacuar.	The general ordered them to evacuate them.
Josué le mandó detenerse.	Joshua ordered it to stand still.
Josué se lo mandó.	Joshua ordered it [to do] so.
Las plazas se mandaron evacuar.	The towns were ordered to be evacuated.
Se mandó detenerse al sol.	The sun was ordered to stand still.

1217. We should note the double construction of which this use of the infinitive is susceptible, according as we consider the subject or object of the dependent infinitive:—

Speaking of the executioner, we say:—

Le (*dat.*) mandaron azotar á los malhechores.	They ordered him to scourge the offenders.

Speaking of the criminals, we say:—

Los (*acc.*) mandaron azotar por mano del verdugo.	They ordered them to be scourged by the hand of the executioner.

Speaking of a wolf, we say:—

El pastor le (*dat.*) dejó devorar al cordero.	The shepherd let him devour the lamb.

Speaking of the lamb, we say:—

El pastor lo (*acc.*) dejó devorar por el lobo.	The shepherd let it be devoured by the wolf.

1218. The infinitive (like the gerund) naturally refers to the immediate subject of the sentence; when it has any other subject, that should be repeated, or represented by a pronoun, after the infinitive:—

No logró derribar á su adversario por ser **éste** el más fuerte.	He did not succeed in downing his opponent on account of the latter being the strongest.
El rey despidió al ministro á causa de haber aceptado **éste** un soborno.	The king dismissed the minister for having accepted a bribe.

1219. The infinitive has a passive value after the verb **ser** used impersonally:—

No es de olvidar (*or* de olvidarse).	It is not to be forgotten.
Es de sentir que no tengamos datos más fidedignos.	It is to be regretted that we have no more reliable data.

1220. Infinitives connected by the preposition **de** with a preceding adjective, have a passive value in the active form; or they may be made passive by being made reflexive:—

Bueno de comer—de comerse.	Good to eat.
Digno de notar—de notarse.	Worthy of note.
Fácil de hacer—de hacerse.	Easy to do.

1221. The infinitive may, as in English, follow an interrogative used elliptically after a verb expressing an act of the perception or understanding:—

No sabía qué pensar—cuándo callar—cómo apagar el gas—á quién acudir—por dónde dirigirse.	He did not know what to think—when to keep silent—how to put out the gas—whom to apply to—which way to go.

1222. There is frequently an ellipsis of some such verb as **poder** or **deber** before an infinitive after a relative:—

No tengo vestido que (pueda) ponerme.	I have no clothes to put on.
No conocíamos persona alguna de quien (pudiésemos) valernos.	We did not know anyone that we could make use of.
Hay mucho que (se debe) hacer.	There is a great deal to do.

1223. It is quite customary to omit the antecedent when it expresses a general idea of a person, thing, place, time, cause or manner:—

No tengo (nada) que ponerme.	I have nothing to put on.
No veíamos (persona) de quien fiarnos.	We saw no one that we could trust.

Buscábamos (lugar) donde guarecernos de la lluvia.	We were looking for a place to shelter us from the rain.
Al fin hallaron (camino) por donde escapar.	They finally found a way to escape.
No hay (motivo) porque diferir la partida.	There is no reason for postponing the departure.

REMARK.—These elliptical phrases must not be confounded with those in which the verb **haber** or **tener** is followed by an infinitive preceded by **que** (§§ 858, 867):—

No hay que avergonzarse.	You must not feel ashamed.
Tengo que escribir varias cartas.	I have to write several letters.

1224. So we see that **haber que** or **tener que**, followed by an infinitive, is at times an elliptical phrase and at others it is not, according to the meaning involved:—

Hay que escribir.	{ It is necessary to write. { There is something to be written.
Tengo que comer.	{ I have got to eat. { I have something to eat.

REMARK.—This twofold meaning is only possible when the **que** can be the object of the infinitive.

1225. The infinitive may be used as an imperative in sudden exclamations or short directions, or as an interrogative exclamation of surprise:—

¡ Callar ! ¡ No correr !	Hush ! Don't run !
Dirigirse dentro.	Apply within.
¿ Casarme yo?	I get married ?
¡ Tener !	Hold ! stop !
¿ Abandonarle ? ¡ Nunca !	Abandon him ? Never !

PAST PARTICIPLE.

1226. The past participle represents the action of the verb as completed. It has the properties either of an adjective or a verb, but does not combine the two. In its leading use in forming compound tenses in connection with the auxiliary verb **haber**, it is invariable in form; it then has all the effect of a verb and has no adjective quality:—

El chaparrón que ha caído ha matado el polvo.	The shower that has fallen has laid the dust.
He leído con gran interés todos los artículos que él ha dado á luz respecto de la cuestión de industrias y salarios.	I have read with much interest all the articles that he has published on the question of labor and wages.

1227. In all other applications it is an adjective, agreeing in number and gender with whatever noun it applies to, and has no verbal power. Although an adjective, and thus expressing a quality, that quality is the result of the action of a verb:—

En 1793 dos funcionarios públicos de un nombre muy **conocido** en León, **acusados** de federalismo, fueron **entregados** al furor de una multitud **empeñada** en su pérdida.

In 1793 two public functionaries of well-known reputation in Leon, who were accused of federalism, were turned over to the fury of a mob bent upon their destruction.

La escalera que de la sala baja subía al primer piso, desembocaba en un corredor **compuesto** de tablones mal **unidos** y **alumbrado** por un farolillo de aceite **colgado** del techo.

The stair which led from the lower hall to the second floor opened upon a passage-way formed of boards badly joined and lighted by a little oil-lamp suspended from the ceiling.

1228. In detached clauses the past participle is used without being connected with a verb, a gerund being understood. Such participles may relate to the subject of the sentence, or may be wholly unconnected with it:—

1. The participle relates to the subject of the sentence:—

Puesta á votación la propuesta del señor B., resultó adoptada por unanimidad.

The proposition of Mr. B. having been put to a vote, it was unanimously adopted.

Su mujer, acostumbrada al regalo, no pudo sufrir largo tiempo tantas privaciones.

His wife, having been accustomed to every comfort, could not long suffer so many privations.

2. When the participle does not relate to the subject of the sentence, the clause in which it stands is called an *absolute clause*,[1] and corresponds to the frequent Latin construction known as the "ablative absolute":—

Agotada la orden del día, se levantó la sesión.

The order of the day being exhausted, the meeting was adjourned.

Determinada la ruta que habían de seguir, partieron los expedicionarios al rayar el alba.

The route which they were to follow having been decided upon, the members of the expedition set out at daybreak.

Idas ellas, el lugar ya no tenía atractivos para mí.

After they had gone, the place no longer had any attractions for me.

---

[1] It will be seen that in an absolute clause, the participle usually precedes its subject, especially when the absolute clause is at the beginning of the sentence.

REMARK.—Adjectives may be used in absolute clauses in the same way as participles:—

El 8 de agosto del mismo año, libre ya la capital de franceses, volvió á publicarse el Diario.	On the 8th of August of the same year [1808], the capital being now free of the French, the publication of the Daily was resumed.

1229. These absolute clauses are susceptible of three renderings: when a participle of a transitive verb is used, *having been* (or *being*) is to be supplied in the English translation; with a participle of an intransitive verb, *having*; with an adjective, *being*:—

Zanjado este asunto.	This affair *having been* settled.
Visto esto por los soldados, no pensaron ya sino en ponerse en cobro.	This *being* seen by the soldiers, they no longer thought of anything but getting under cover.
Llegada la trama á noticias de D. Alvaro.	The plot *having* reached the ears of Don Alvaro.
Impotente el rey para apaciguar la tempestad que amenazaba al trono.	The king *being* powerless to calm the tempest that threatened the throne.

REMARK.—The subject of an absolute clause may be an entire phrase introduced by **que**:—

El rey, visto que no podía tomar por fuerza la villa, mandóla escalar una noche con gran silencio.	It being evident that he could not take the city by assault, the king one night ordered an escalade to be made with great silence.

1230. The subject of an absolute clause is occasionally omitted, to avoid repetition, when it has been previously expressed at a short distance:—

Se decidió amueblar el palacio, y amueblado, se trasladaron á él los tribunales.	It was decided to furnish the palace, and when it was furnished, the courts were removed thither.
Mandó que se dividiese el botín en veinte partes iguales, y hecho, que se repartiese entre la tripulación.	He ordered the booty to be divided into twenty equal parts, and this done, that it be distributed among the crew.

1231. A past participle in an absolute clause cannot receive enclitic personal pronouns (although they would be applicable to the gerund were *it* expressed). When there is no gerund, the prepositional form of the pronouns must be employed:—

Comunicado á ellos (*not* comunicádoles) el suceso, partimos.	Having informed them of the occurrence, we departed.

Admitidos los diputados y asignados á ellos (*not* asignádosles) los asientos que debían ocupar, invocó el obispo la bendición divina sobre la asamblea.	The deputies having been admitted, and the seats which they were to occupy assigned to them, the bishop invoked the divine blessing upon the assembly.

1232. The past participle of an absolute clause may be followed by **que** and an auxiliary (**haber, tener, ser** or **estar**). When **haber** is thus employed, the participle is invariable:—

Leído que hubo la carta, se retiraron los circunstantes.	When he had read the letter, the bystanders withdrew.
Compuesto que hubo los versos, los ofreció el poeta á la duquesa.	When he had composed the verses, the poet offered them to the duchess.
Concluida que tuvieron la obra.	When they had finished the work.
Examinados que tuviese los autos.	When he should have examined the decrees.
Prestados que fueron los oportunos juramentos.	When the proper oaths were taken.
Leído que fué el diario de los procedimientos del día anterior.	When the journal of the proceedings of the previous day had been read.
Encarcelados que estén los reos.	When the criminals have been jailed.
Asentados que estuvieron por fin los visigodos en la península.	When the Visigoths were finally established in the peninsula.

1233. These detached participial clauses may be preceded by **antes de, después de,** and occasionally **luego de,** to express relation of time:—

Antes de dada la seña.	Before the signal was given.
Luego de terminada la ceremonia.	As soon as the ceremony was over.
Después de muerto yo.	After I am dead.
Después de tantas veces contada, la historia llegó á ser muy fastidiosa.	After being told so many times, the story became very tiresome.
Después de discutido el punto, se puso á votación, y resultó desechada la enmienda por un voto de quince contra doce.	After this point had been discussed, it was put to a vote, and the amendment was defeated by a vote of fifteen to twelve.
Recogióse, pues, gran cantidad de estas algas, y después de secas fueron quemadas en hoyos al aire libre.	A large quantity of these algæ were collected, and after they were dried, they were burned in pits in the open air.

1234. The following phrases in Spanish and English respectively are equivalents:—

No es para negado.	It is not to be denied.
No es para tolerado.	It is not to be tolerated.

No es para imitado.	It is inimitable.
No es para creído.	It is incredible.

These phrases are applicable to things that *ought not* as well as to things that *cannot* be done :—

Oferta tan generosa no es para rechazada.	So generous an offer is not to be rejected.
Los principios pequeños no son para despreciados.	Small beginnings are not to be despised.
La cuestión que aquí se presenta no es para decidida sin un estudio cuidadoso.	The question here presented is not to be decided without careful consideration.
Este punto no es para descuidado.	This point is not to be overlooked.

REMARK.—This usage is applicable only to the past participles of transitive verbs which do not require a preposition to connect them with their objects.

EXERCISE LIII.

How sorry I am,[1] Miss Josie, that the customs of this country do not permit us to take a walk along (*por*) the river bank in (*son*) this magnificent weather. Up north,[2] in my country, there is nothing more *natural* than for young people of both sexes, in couples, to take walks in (*por*) the country without anybody objecting to it.—I know it, Mr. Brown; but here it would not be permissible. But the case is not so hopeless as you think. Luckily I see your friend Mr. Vincent coming at this moment, and if you can persuade him to ask my cousin Helen who is now in the library, I will tell our old servant Jane to go with us, and so we can take a stroll without the[3] customs being[4] violated.—Such an *idea* is not to be disregarded,[5] and shows the fertile ingenuity[6] of the fair sex. And I do not think that I will have need of an *extraordinary* degree of *eloquence* to get Mr. Vincent to agree to[7] such an attractive program.—We can go up the river[8] as far as the ridge, and we will get to the top just in (*á*) time to (*de*) see the sun set.[9] And as (*como que*) Jane is quite stout, she will get so tired going up the hill[10] that she will have to sit down and rest[11] on (*en*) the stone bench that is (*hay*) there, and then we four can continue our meanderings following the crest of the hill, from (*desde*) which one obtains[12] a splendid view.—Well devised![13] And we might even cross the ravine by the[14] rope bridge and go and sit[15] on (*sobre*) that high, flat rock which overlooks the river, and watch the reflection of[16] the rays of the setting sun on the peaks of the *cordillera*.—Yes, perhaps, for a few minutes; but you must not forget that the twilight is very short here, and we shall have to be back[17] before it gets real (*muy*) dark.

---

[1] See § 1181. [2] **allá en el norte.** [3] See § 671. [4] **se vean.** [5] See § 1234. [6] **la fertilidad de ingenio.** [7] to get . . . to agree to, **para que D. Vicente se conforme con.** [8] up the river, **río arriba.** [9] **ver ponerse el sol.** [10] **con subir la cuesta.** [11] sit down and rest, **descansar sentándose.** [12] one obtains, **se goza de.** [13] ¡**Feliz idea**! [14] by the, **por medio del.** [15] go and sit, **irnos á sentar.** [16] and watch . . . **para mirar reflejarse en las cumbres**, etc. [17] **be back, estar de vuelta.**

CHAPTER XXIV.

WORD-MAKING BY DERIVATIVES.

1235. We have seen in Lesson XVIII that the method of forming new terms by combining two or more known words into one is unusual in Spanish. The richness of that language lies in its power of developing new terms by adding syllables not generally recognizable as separate words. The extent to which this method of word-making obtains in Spanish renders it one of the most conspicuous features of the language, and one of the most difficult to master in all its details.

A syllable attached to the beginning of a word is called a *prefix*; one at the end, a *suffix*. It will be convenient to consider suffixes first.

SUFFIXES.

1236. Derivatives formed by adding terminal syllables may be divided into two classes according to their effect:—

1. Those which merely modify the meaning of the word to which they are applied, which remains the same part of speech and applies to the same object.

2. Those which change the word to which they are attached, either in meaning, or from one part of speech to another, or both.

Those of the first class have always an adjectival or adverbial effect, and are attached to nouns, adjectives and participles, and occasionally to adverbs. As they usually indicate size or importance greater or less than normal, they are called respectively *augmentatives* and *diminutives*. However, the force of those called augmentatives is often extended to express ugliness, grotesqueness, coarseness, etc., while diminutives frequently become terms of endearment, or imply insignificance or contemptibility. These secondary values sometimes supplant the original meanings; but as the forms are the same, it will be convenient to treat all mere modifying terminations as augmentatives and diminutives.

MODIFICATIVE SUFFIXES.

1237. Augmentatives and diminutives are seldom admissible in the graver styles of writing, but are employed profusely in familiar conversation and in light literature. They abound in greater variety in Spanish than in either Portuguese or Italian, although in these languages they are frequent, while in French and English they are comparatively rare.

1238. Augmentatives and diminutives are formed upon ascertainable principles, so that the learner may become able to form and apply the majority of them at pleasure. They all vary in number, and have a feminine form obtained either by adding **a** to the final consonant of the termination, or by changing the final vowel (**o** or **e**) to **a**:—

-ón, -ona;	-ito, -ita;	-uelo, -uela;
-acho, acha;	-illo, -illa;	-ín, -ina;
-ote, -ota; etc.	-ejo, -eja; etc.	-ete, -eta; etc.

1239. Augmentative and diminutive terminations are added to the full form of words ending in a consonant or accented vowel:—

Mujer, mujer-ota, mujer-ona. Animal, animal-ejo, animal-ucho.
Papá, papa-íto.

1240. A final unaccented vowel is removed before the termination is added:—

Pequeño, pequeñ-uelo, pequeñ-ito. Libro, libr-illo, libr-ote.
Isla, isl-illa, isl-ote. Hombre, hombr-ón, hombr-ecillo.

REMARK.—If, in removing the final vowel of a diphthong, the remaining vowel is identical with the initial vowel of the termination, one of them is elided:—

Rubio, rub-ito. Rosario, rosar-ito. Historia, histor-illa.

1241. The diphthongs **ie** and **ue**, in the accented syllable of certain words, change to **e** and **o** respectively when the accent is removed by reason of the addition of a termination. But in the case of augmentatives and diminutives modern usage generally retains the diphthong except when the primary word contains more than two syllables:—

Encuentro, encontrón. Valiente, valentón.
Caliente, calentito. Cuébano, cobanillo.

1242. With regard to words of one or two syllables containing such diphthongs, the following revert to the primitive vowel; in others the usage varies, but the learner will be safe in retaining the diphthong:—

Bueno, bonazo, bonachón.
Luengo, longazo.
Pueblo, poblachón.
Cueva, covacha.
Ciego, ceguezuelo.
Buey, boyazo.
Cuerpo, corpanchón.
Puerta, portezuela.
Tierno, ternezuelo.
Viejo, vejezuelo, vejete.

1243. When terminations beginning with **e** or **i** are attached to a word-stem ending in **c**, **g**, **gu**, **z**, these change to **qu**, **gu**, **gü**, **c**, respectively, in order to preserve the sound:—

Chico, chiquillo, chiquito.
Frac, fraquecito.
Pedazo, pedacito.
Mozo, mocete, mocico.
Lengua, lengüecita.
Nuez, nuececita.

DIMINUTIVES.

1244. Certain diminutive terminations vary in form to suit the word to which they are to be attached. The changes being uniform in each case, they will be denoted by letters:—

A.	B.	C.	D.
-ito,	-cito,	-ecito,	-ececito.
-ico,	-cico,	-ecico,	-ececico.
-illo,	-cillo,	-ecillo,	-ececillo.
-uelo,	-zuelo,	-ezuelo,	-ecezuelo.
-ete,	-cete,	-ecete.	

1245. Terminations of column *D* are taken only by monosyllables ending in a vowel (excluding **y**):—

Pie, pi-ececito, pi-ececico, pi-ecezuelo, pi-ececillo.

1246. Terminations of column *C* are taken by:—

1. Monosyllables ending in a consonant or **y**:—

Red, red-ecilla.
Flor, flor-ecita.
Pan, pan-ezuelo.
Voz, voz-ecita.
Rey, rey-ezuelo.
Buey, buey-ecito.

EXCEPTION: ruin-cillo.

2. Words of two syllables whose first syllable contains one of the diphthongs **ei**, **ie**, **ue**, and whose last syllable ends in **a** or **o**:—

Ciego, ciegu-ecito.
Cuerda, cuerd-ecilla.
Cuero, cuer-ezuelo.
Cuerpo, cuerp-ecito.
Cuesta, cuest-ecilla.
Flueco, fluequ-ecillo.
Grieta, griet-ecilla.
Hueso, hues-ecillo.
Huevo, huev-ezuelo.
Lienzo, lienc-ecito.
Nieto, niet-ecico.
Nuevo, nuev-ecito.
Piedra, piedr-ecita.
Pueblo, puebl-ezuelo.
Rueca, ruequ-ecilla.
Tiempo, tiemp-ecillo.
Viejo, viej-ecito.
Yerba, yerb-ecilla.

EXCEPTIONS :—

Cuesco, cuesqu-illo.
Juego, juegu-ito.

REMARK.—**Guerra**, **guerr-illa**, and **bueno**, **bon-ito**, can hardly be called exceptions, since the **u** of the former is merely orthographic, and the latter changes its stem.

3. Words of two syllables whose last syllable ends in any of the diphthongs **ia**, **io**, **ua**:—

Bestia, besti-ecita.
Fragua, fragü-ecilla.
Genio, geni-ecillo.
Gracia, graci-ecita.
Lengua, lengü-ecita.
Gloria, glori-ecilla.

EXCEPTIONS :—

Agua, agü-ita.
Pascua, pascu-ita.
Rubio, rub-ita.
Agrio, agr-illo.

4. All polysyllabic words ending in **e**:—

Conde, cond-ecito.
Pobre, pobr-ecillo.
Duende, duend-ecico.
Madre, madr-ecita.
Viaje, viaj-ecillo.
Aire, air-ecillo.

1247. Terminations of column *B* are taken by polysyllabic words ending in **n** or **r**:—

Autor, autor-cillo.
Doctor, doctor-zuelo.
Salón, salon-cito.
Joven, joven-cete.
Ladrón, ladron-zuelo.
Gabán, gaban-zuelo.

EXCEPTIONS :—

Jardín, jardin-cito, *or* -ito.
Altar, altar-illo, *or* -cillo.
Pilar, pilar-illo, *or* -cillo.
Jazmín, jazmin-illo, *or* -cillo.
Sartén, sarten-illo, *or* -cillo.
Señor, señor-ito.
Almacén, almacen-illo.
Alfiler, alfiler-ito.
Vasar, vasar-illo.
Serafín, serafin-ito.

1248. Terminations in column *A* are applied to all other words:—

Silla, sill-ita.	Pollo, poll-uelo.
Almohada, almohad-illa.	Cuchara, cuchar-ita.
Farol, farol-illo.	Pájaro, pajar-ico.
Abuelo, abuel-ito.	Cuaderno, cuadern-illo.
Raíz, raic-illa.	Baúl, baul-ito.

EXCEPTIONS :—

Mano, man-ita, *or* -ecita.	Piel, piel-ecita.
Prado, prad-ecito *and* prad-illo.	Llano, llan-ecillo *and* llan-ito.

The leading diminutive terminations and their uses are as follows:—

-ito, -cito, -ecito.

1249. These diminutives greatly exceed in frequency all the others put together. They form pet names and phrases, and are especially frequent in the intercourse of women and children. They convey the idea of *pretty, sweet, dear, nice*, etc., as well as *little*; indeed size is often left out of account. They are therefore not to be applied to anything of an offensive or displeasing nature; but they are sometimes used ironically:—

Molino de viento ; molinito de viento.	Windmill ; toy windwheel.
Un viejecito ; una mujercita.	Nice little old man ; pleasant little woman.
Unas tajaditas de jamón frío	Some nice thin slices of cold ham.
Ya entiendo su guasita.	Now I understand his little game.
Me siento un poquito mejor.	I feel a little bit better.
¿Me hace V. el favor de un vasito de agua fresca?	Will you give me a glass of cool water? (*Modest request.*)
De vuelta te daré una gratificacioncita.	When you come back I will give you a gratuity.

1250. This series of terminations applies to all baptismal names to indicate affection (whether or not connected with smallness), and corresponds to the English ending **-ie** or **-y**:—

Carlitos ; Juanito ; Dieguito.	Charley : Johnnie ; Jimmie.
Anita ; Juanita ; Pepita.	Annie ; Jennie ; Josie.
Inesita ; Paquita ; Mariquita.	Aggie ; Fannie ; Mamie.

1251. These terminations are not confined to nouns, but may be added to adjectives, participles, adverbs, and indeed almost any kind of words, usually with a favorably intensive effect translatable by *quite, nice and*, etc.:—

Ahorita ; lueguito ; prontito.	Right now ; right away ; quite soon.
Cerquita ; lejitos ; juntito.	Quite near ; some distance off ; real close.
Ahora mismito.	This very minute.
¡ Adiosito ! (*South American.*)	Bye-bye !
¡ Caracoles calentitos !	Snails, nice and hot ! (*A street vender's cry.*)
Es una joven tan graciosita.	She is such a charming girl.
¡ Qué simpatiquita es la prima de Vd. !	How pleasant your cousin is !
¡ Belita !—Sí papá, enseguidita.	Belle.—Yes, papa, in a minute.
La joven entró callandito.	The girl came in very softly.
Lo mismito me sucede á mí.	The very same thing happens to me.
Poquito á poco ; pasito á paso.	Little by little ; step by step.
Hablemos bajito para que no se enteren esos señores.	Let us speak quite low so that those gentlemen may not overhear us.
Siga V. el corredor, tuerza á la derecha, suba otra escalerilla, y allí **enfrentito** tiene V. su despacho.	Keep on down the corridor, turn to the right, go up a short flight of steps and you will find his office right before you.

-ico, -cico, -ecico.

1252. This series of forms was originally an Aragonese equivalent for the foregoing. They are little used, and then rather sarcastically or ironically; otherwise they have the same value as those preceding:—

Un angelico.	An angel, oh yes !
Inocentico.	Innocent, over the left.
Allí escuchará Vd. con éxtasi los gorrioncicos, que no le dejan á uno meter baza con su piada sempiterna.	You will listen with rapture to the sweet little sparrows, which won't let a person get in a word edgewise for their interminable chirping.

-illo, -cillo, -ecillo.

1253. Forms in **-illo** in general belittle everything they touch, without implying affection or malice. Things indifferent in quality are merely made smaller; evils are mitigated as of little importance, and virtues depreciated. They indicate a light, careless feeling about persons and things, good or bad, sometimes mingling a little of pity. They apply to nouns, adjectives and participles, but rarely to other parts of speech:—

Cigarro ; cigarrillo.	Cigar ; cigarette.
Boveda, bovedilla.	Vault ; small vault.

Agudo ; agudillo.	Sharp ; slightly sharp
Campana ; campanilla.	Bell ; hand bell.
Nube ; nubecilla.	Cloud ; cloudlet.
Guerra ; guerrilla.	War ; partisan strife.
Vara ; varilla.	Rod ; small rod.
Deme V. una muestrecilla de ese raso.	Give me a small sample of that satin.
Su hermana de V. es una coquetilla.	Your sister is a little coquette.
En cierto lugarcillo de la provincia de Granada.	In a certain small village of the province of Granada.
El picarillo se escapó riendo.	The young rascal ran off laughing.
Estando apuradillo, tuve que solicitar un préstamo.	Being slightly embarrassed, I had to solicit a loan.
No vimos más que unos cuantos chiquillos de escuela.	We saw only a few school-boys.

-uelo, -zuelo, -ezuelo.

1254. Forms in **-uelo** express contempt, either jestingly or in downright earnest, with or without the idea of smallness. They are but little used and apply almost exclusively to nouns:—

Una coquetuela.	A vain coquette.
La plazuela de San Miguel.	St. Michael's square.
Arroyuelo ; riachuelo.	Brooklet ; rivulet.
Puerta ; portezuela.	Door ; carriage door.
Plancha ; planchuela.	Smoothing-iron ; fluting-iron.
Pintorzuelo.	Wretchedly bad artist.
Sentía posarse sobre mí sus ojos pequeñuelos y malignos.	I felt his small, malicious eyes fixed upon me.
Gastaba una mantilla de tafetán con lentejuelas.	She wore a dotted silk veil.
Sus ojuelos, siempre vivos, parecían bailar ahora arrebatadamente.	His small eyes, always bright, seemed now to dance unrestrainedly.

REMARK.—When applied to words of more than one syllable which end in two vowels, the letter **h** or **g** is inserted after removing the final one ; when, however, the words ends in **nio**, the **i** of the diphthong is absorbed by changing the **n** to **ñ** :—

Aldea, a hamlet.	**Judío**, a Jew.
Aldehuela, **Aldegüela**, } a wretched hamlet.	**Judihuelo**, **Judigüelo**, } a despicable Jew.
Correa, a strap.	**Fea**, **Fehuela**, } ugly.
Corre-huela, **Corre-güela**, } a small strap.	**Antonio**, **Antoñuelo**.
	Demonio, **demoñuelo**.

-ete, -cete, -ecete.

1255. These forms are applied to a few nouns in a diminutive, and sometimes depreciative, sense:—

Burleta, a little trick.
Luneta, a lunette.
Lugarete, a small village.
Caballerete, a dude, dandy.
Placeta, small [public] square.
Clavete, a little nail, tack.
Historieta, short story.
Manteleta, a small cape.
Pichelete, a small pitcher.

Gloria gozaba en hacer jugarretas á todo el mundo.

Gloria enjoyed playing practical jokes on everybody.

-ejo.

1256. This form is usually applied to nouns ending in **l** or **n**, and denotes decided contempt, sometimes indicating smallness also:—

Caballejo, nag.
Papelejo, scrap of paper.
Camellejo, small camel.
Regalejo, mean gift.

El oficialejo, el alguacilejo.

This officer, this constable (in contempt).

-in, -ino and **-iño.**

1257. These diminutive endings are local or dialectic, **-in** being Asturian, **-ino** common to Estremadura, and **-iño** a native of Galicia corresponding to the Portuguese *-inho,* which is pronounced the same. They are used in a limited degree in Castilian to denote smallness, and very generally modify the meaning of the primitive word:—

Chico; chiquitín.
Espada; espadín.
Calabaza; calabacín.
Espuela; espolín.
Langosta; langostino.
Paloma; palomino.
Cuerpo; corpiño.
Little one; baby.
Sword; a short sword.
Pumpkin; small pumpkin.
Spur; small spur.
Lobster; shrimp.
Dove; pigeon.
Body; bodice.

1258. The termination **ino** applies principally to young plants:—

Cebolla ; cebollino,	Onion ; young onion.
Col ; colino.	Cabbage ; young cabbage.
Lechuga ; lechuguino.	Lettuce ; young lettuce.
Puerro ; porrino.	Leek ; young leek.

AUGMENTATIVES.

The principal augmentatives and their applications are the following:—

-ón, fem. -ona.

1259. Denotes large size, or an increased degree of a quality, and sometimes adds the idea of clumsiness or grotesqueness. Feminine nouns generally assume the masculine termination unless *sex* is to be indicated:—

Silla ; sillón.	Chair ; easy-chair.
Cuchara ; cucharón.	Spoon ; ladle.
Zagal ; zagalón.	Lad ; strapping young fellow.
Hombre ; hombrón.	Man ; big man.
Salchicha ; salchichón.	Sausage ; pudding.
Soltero ; solterón.	Single man ; old bachelor.
Soltera ; solterona.	Unmarried woman ; old maid.
Embustero ; embusterón.	Liar ; great liar, "Ananias."
Zapatos ; zapatones.	Shoes ; big shoes, "gunboats."
No fué posible dormir, porque una plaga de moscas, moscones y mosquitos formaban á nuestros oídos un alegre terceto.	It was impossible to sleep, for a scourge of flies, blue-bottles and mosquitoes formed a pleasant trio to our ears.

REMARK.—In a few words, **-ón** has a diminutive value:—

Ala ; alón.	Wing ; wing deprived of feathers.
Carreta ; carretón.	Cart ; small cart.
Calle ; callejón.	Street ; narrow passage.
Pluma ; plumón.	Feather ; down.
Torre ; torreón, torrejón.	Tower ; turret.
Cerro ; cerrejón.	Hill ; hillock.
Cascara ; cascarón.	Husk ; rind, egg-shell.
Planta ; plantón.	Plant ; scion, shoot.
Rata ; ratón.	Rat ; mouse.
Volantón.	Fledgling, young bird just able to fly.

-azo, -aza.

1260. Has a value similar to **-ón**, but is less frequent. The gender of the termination corresponds to that of the primitive:—

Buey ; boyazo.	Ox ; large ox.
Hombre ; hombrazo.	Man ; large man.

Libro ; librazo.	Book ; big book.
Luengo ; longazo.	Long ; "awfully" long.
Pícaro ; picarazo.	Rogue ; great rogue.
Perro ; perrazo.	Dog ; big dog.

-ote, fem. -ota.

1261. Ote is at times merely augmentative, but usually depreciative:—

Calabaza ; calabazota.	Pumpkin ; large pumpkin.
Palabra ; palabrota.	Word ; "cuss word."
Franco ; francote.	Frank ; plain, ingenuous.
Manga ; mangote.	Sleeve ; large sleeve.
Feo ; feote.	Ugly ; "perfect fright."
Libro ; librote.	Book ; ponderous old tome.
Pícaro ; picarote.	Rascal ; notorious rascal.
Discurso ; discursote.	Speech ; long-winded speech.

REMARK.—In a few words **-ote** has a diminutive value:—

Isla ; islote.	Island ; islet.
Cámara ; camarote.	Chamber ; [ship's] cabin.
Ancla ; anclote.	Anchor ; kedge-anchor.
Palo ; palote.	Stick, timber ; drumstick.
Pipa ; pipote.	Cask ; firkin.

-ajo.

1262. A termination of contempt, indicating meanness or extravagance in the quality of the primitive noun:—

Bebistrajo, extravagant mixture of drinks.
Colgajo. tatters.
Comistrajo, extravagant mixture of viands.
Escobajo, stump of a broom.
Espantajo, scarecrow.
Latinajo, dog-Latin.
Terminajo, low expression.
Pintarrajo, "daub."
Trapajo, dirty rag.

-acho and -ucho.

1263. These are purely depreciative, expressing poor quality of what is represented by the noun, or contempt or disdain felt for it:—

Cuarto ; cuartucho.	Room ; miserable, close room.
Vino ; vinacho.	Wine ; poor wine, slops.
Pico ; picacho.	Peak ; sharp point.
Rico ; ricacho.	Rich ; very rich.
Caldo ; calducho.	Broth ; weak broth.
Casa ; casucha.	House ; shanty.
Sierra ; serrucha.	Saw ; dull, worthless saw.

Blanco ; blancucho.	White ; dirty white.
Animal ; animalucho.	Animal ; ugly animal.
Flaco ; flacucho.	Thin ; flabby.
Papel ; papelucho.	Paper ; a contemptible paper *or* writing.
Término ; terminacho.	Term ; low term.
Vulgo ; vulgacho.	Populace ; dregs of the people.
El populacho ; un mamarracho.	The masses ; a botch.
Cogucho ; meladucha.	Inferior sugar; a poor variety of apple.

-uco, -uca.

1264. This termination is also purely depreciative; it is applied to a few nouns only:—

Carro ; carruco.	Cart ; a kind of small cart.
Casa ; casuca.	House ; hovel.
Fraile ; frailuco.	Friar ; despicable friar.
Beata ; beatuca.	Woman who wears a religious habit ; vile hypocrite.
Hermano ; hermanuco.	Brother ; contemptuous term for a member of a religious order.

1265. The following endings are irregularly applied, or of so rare occurrence that they need not be classified:—

Voz ; vozarrón.	Voice ; stentorian voice.
Viento ; ventarrón.	Wind ; violent wind.
Nube ; nubarrón.	Cloud ; threatening cloud (nimbus).
Santo ; santurrón.	Saint ; bogus saint, hypocrite.
Bobo ; bobarrón.	Dunce ; booby.
Bobalías ; bobalicón.	Dolt ; great blockhead.
Viejo ; vejancón.	Old ; decrepit.
Cuerpo ; corpanchón.	Body ; carcass.
Lámpara ; lampión.	Lamp ; Japanese lantern.
Nariz ; narigón.	Nose ; big nose.
Raíz ; raigón.	Root ; snag.
Vivo ; vivaracho.	Live ; sprightly, frisky.
Ave ; avechucho.	Bird ; sparrow-hawk.
Gente ; gentuza ; gentualla.	People ; low people, rabble.
Carne ; carnuza.	Meat ; bad meat.
Libro ; libraco.	Book ; bad book.
Pájaro ; pajarraco.	Bird ; ungainly bird.
Dinero ; dineral.	Money ; large sum of money.
Hoyo ; hoyanco.	Pit ; large pit.
Hueso ; huesarrón.	Bone ; large bone.

Paja ; pajuzo ; pajuz.	Straw ; rotted straw ; straw manure.
Aldea ; aldeorro, aldeorrio.	Village ; insignificant, rambling hamlet.
Boda ; bodorrio.	Marriage ; bad match.
Cepa ; ceporro.	Grapevine ; runt, vine stump.
Venta ; ventorro.	Inn ; poor tavern.
Villa ; villorrio.	Town ; "one-horse" town.
Cueva ; covacha.	Cave ; grotto, small cave.
Hilo ; hilacha.	Thread ; ravelling.

1266. Combinations of augmentative and diminutive terminations are not uncommon, the value being cumulative:—

-ito with -ito.

Chico ; chiquitito.	Little ; teeny-weeny.
Poco ; poquitito.	A little ; a tiny bit.

-illo with -ón.

Grande ; grandillón.	Big ; quite biggish.
Pícaro ; picarillón,	Rascal ; large man who is somewhat of a rascal.

-ón with -illo.

Pícaro ; picaroncillo.	Rascal ; small person who is a great rascal.

-ete with -ón.

Guapo ; guapetón.	Good-looking ; very good-looking.
Mozo ; mocetón.	Lad ; corpulent, overgrown boy.
Pobre ; pobretón.	Poor ; poor old duffer.

-ejo with -ón.

Calle ; callejón.	Street ; passage between walls.
Piedra ; pedrejón.	Stone ; large, loose stone.

-acho with -ón.

Fresco ; frescachón.	Fresh ; florid, healthy (applied to person).
Bueno ; bonachón.	Good ; good-humored, easy-going.
Fuerte ; fortachón.	Strong ; powerful.
Pueblo ; poblachón.	Village ; large village.

-ón with -azo.

Borracho ; borrachonazo.	Drunkard ; inveterate drunkard.
Hombre ; hombronazo.	Man ; big, hulking, lubberly man.
Bergante ; bergantonazo.	Scoundrel · villain of the deepest dye.

REMARK.—As a concluding example, the following may be made from **chico**, the various gradations of smallness being untranslatable in English:—

Chiquito.	Chicuelo.	Chiquirritín.
Chiquitillo.	Chiquillito.	Chiquirritito.
Chiquitito.	Chiquilluelo.	Chiquirritillo.
Chiquitín.	Chiquituelo.	Chiquirrituelo.
Chiquillo.	Chiquitilluelo.	

1267. The diminutive forms of baptismal names, such as are applied to children, near relations and intimate friends, are very irregular. Most noticeable are a number of shortened or abbreviated forms, some of which bear but little resemblance to the original:—

Catalina (Catharine).	Catana, Catanla, Catuja.
Cristóbal (Christopher).	Tobal.
Francisco (Francis).	Frazco, Paco, Pacho, Pacorro, Pancho, Curro, Farruco.
Isabel (Isabel, Elizabeth).	Belisa.
José (Joseph).	Pepe, Chepe.
María (Mary).	Maruca, Maruja.
María de la Concepción.	Concepción, Concha, Chona, Cata.
María de los Dolores.	Dolores, Lola.
María de Jesús.	Jesusa, Chucha.
Pedro (Peter).	Perucho, Perico.

1268. Both the full forms and these shortened forms may receive the ordinary diminutive terminations **-ito**, **-ico**, **-illo** and **-uelo**, according to the sentiment to be conveyed. In the following cases they deviate, in the manner of their application, from the principles laid down in §§ 1244–8:—

José, Josefito.	María, Mariquita.
Antonio, Antoñito.	Juan, Juanito.
Diego, Dieguito.	Emilio, Emillito.

REMARK.—It may be observed that if the original name ends in **s**, that letter is added to the diminutive form :—

Carlos, Carlitos.	Dolores, Dolorcitas.

1269. The names of the young of animals are sometimes formed by the addition of a diminutive termination, but are more usually expressed by a different word, from which a diminutive of secondary growth is often formed by the addition of **-illo** or **-ito**. The principal terms are given below:—

Caballo, horse.	**Potro, potrillo**, colt.
Yegua, mare.	**Potranca**, filly.
Buey, ox.	**Ternero**, calf.
Toro, bull.	**Novillo**, bullock.
	Utrero, two-year-old steer.
Vaca, cow.	**Ternera, novilla**, heifer.
	Utrera, two-year-old heifer.
Oveja, sheep.	**Cordero, corderillo**, lamb, lambkin.
	Borrego, two-year-old lamb.
Cabro, goat.	**Cabrito, chibato, chibatillo**, kid.
Cerdo, pig, hog.	**Lechón, lechoncillo**, young pig.
Jabalí, wild boar.	**Jabato**, wild pig.
Corzo, deer.	**Corcino**, fawn.
Liebre, hare.	**Liebrastón, lebrato, lebratillo**, leveret.
Gato, gata, cat.	**Gatito, gatita**, kitten.
León, lion, **Tigre**, tiger, **Perro**, dog, **Lobo**, wolf, *and other carnivora.*	**Cachorro, cachorrillo**, puppy, cub.
Ballena, whale.	**Ballenato**, young whale.
Ave, fowl.	**Pollo, polluelo**, chicken, pullet.
Pavo, turkey.	**Pavipollo**, turkey chick.
Ánade, pato, duck.	**Anadino, anadón**, duckling.
Ánsar, ganso, goose.	**Ansarino**, gosling.
Paloma, pigeon, dove.	**Palomino**, young pigeon.
Paloma casera, domestic pigeon.	**Pichón**, squab.
Perdiz, partridge.	**Perdigón**, young partridge.
Águila, eagle.	**Aguilucho**, eaglet.
Cigüeña, stork.	**Cigoñino**, young stork.
Rana, frog.	**Ranacuajo, renacuajo**, young frog.
Víbora, viper.	**Viborezno**, young viper.

1270. Some diminutive and augmentative terms, by being habitually applied to particular objects, have become accepted as their especial designations and are to be considered as independent words:—

Palo, stick.	**Palillo**, rolling-pin.
Manzana, apple.	**Manzanilla**, camomile.
Mármol, marble.	**Marmolejo**, marble column.
Papel, paper.	**Papelitos**, curl-papers.
Paja, straw.	**Pajuela**, lucifer match.
Cera, wax.	**Cerilla**, wax match, vesta.
Laguna, marsh.	**Lagunajo**, pool of water after a rain.

Remarks.—*a.* There are many words whose endings have the appearance of augmentative or diminutive terminations, but nevertheless are not suffixes:—

Abrazo, embrace.
Espejo, mirror.
Jigote, hash.
Pabellón, pavilion.
Garlito, snare, trap.
Colmillo, tusk.
Botica, apothecary's shop.
Pachón, pointer dog.

b. The only true augmentatives and diminutives are those formed by the addition of a termination to a word now in use in the language. Words which were augmentatives or diminutives in Latin, and those whose augmentative or diminutive formation is a matter of antiquarian research, are to be considered as independent words. The following will serve as examples of what is meant :—

Abanico, fan. (Latin, *vannus.*)
Corazón, heart (Latin, *cor.*)
Glóbulo, globule. (Latin, *globulus.*)
Mejilla, cheek. (Latin, *maxilla.*)
Castillo, castle. (Latin, *castellum.*)

Exercise LIV.

Where, oh where, has my little dog gone? The baby (*f.*) had a little worsted ball in her little hand. Why do you sweep with that old stump of a broom? Because I have no better one. What contemptible old book is that which you are reading? It is no contemptible old book, it is Pliny's History. You look tired. You would be tired yourself,[1] if you had spent the night listening to the howlings of the big dog of the old man who lives in that miserable old house on the (*al*) other side of the street. They say that Mrs. B. is very unhappy; her husband is a drunken brute who will not[2] work, her oldest boy is a young scoundrel who does nothing but frequent bar-rooms and horse-races, and her youngest boy is a poor little cripple who cannot even[3] dress himself without assistance. Who is that stout man with[4] the big mustachios? He is the husband of my little cousin Jennie. Mary had a little lamb. Annie is in the garden playing with the chickens. Finding her quite alone, I fell upon my knees[5] and took her little hand in mine.[6] Mollie, give the kitten a little bit of meat. I have already given her a big piece. Do you remember Don A., who dressed so *elegantly* and who we thought was rich? Well, I have learned that he is a walking model for Tijeretazo, the tailor.[7] I hope this wretched old horse will not drop dead before we reach the end of our journey.[8] That old fellow has worn the very same old overcoat for twenty years. Do not put any faith in what that urchin tells you; he is a first-class liar. Waiter, take this coffee away; I will not drink coffee unless it is quite hot. It seems to me that you would do well to put on a shawl; it is rather cool this evening and your dress is quite thin.

---

[1] See § 327. [2] will not, **no quiere**. [3] see § 746. [4] § 485. [5] **caí de rodillas.** [6] in mine, **entre las mías.** [7] **del sastre Tijeretazo.** [8] the end of our journey, **nuestro destino.**

TRANSFORMATIVE SUFFIXES.

1271. We have now to treat of suffixes which serve to form new words, changing the word to which they are attached, either in meaning or from one part of speech to another, or both; somewhat as in English we make from *hand*, *handle*, *handy*, *handiness*, *handsome*. The class is so large and irregular that the author can undertake to present only a general illustration of its uses which will enable the learner to understand most derivatives when he meets with them, and to gain an insight into this principal source of richness of the Spanish language.

1272. The expansion of the vowels **e**, **o**, into the diphthongs **ie**, **ue**, under the accent, which has already been alluded to (§§ 14, 589), plays a noticeable part in the formation of these derivatives, as well as in the forms taken in Spanish by words directly inherited from the Latin:—

LATIN.	WITH ACCENT.	WITHOUT ACCENT.
Bonum.	**Bueno**, good.	**Bondad**, goodness.
Corpus.	**Cuerpo**, body.	**Corpudo**, thick-set, stout.
Dentem.	**Diente**, tooth.	**Dentedura**, set of teeth.
Ferrum.	**Hierro**, iron.	**Herrumbre**, iron-rust.
Herbam.	**Yerba**, grass.	**Herbajar**, to graze.
Mortem.	**Muerte**, death.	**Mortandad**, massacre.
Novum.	**Nuevo**, new.	**Novedad**, newness, novelty.
Os.	**Hueso**, bone.	**Osamenta**, skeleton.
Pontem.	**Puente**, bridge.	**Pontaje**, toll.
Sortem.	**Suerte**, luck, lot.	**Sorteo**, drawing by lot.
Tempus.	**Tiempo**, time.	**Temprano**, timely, early.
Ventum.	**Viento**, wind.	**Ventana**, window.

REMARK.—These mutations are not universal, and their practical application can be learned only as words are learned. So much may be stated, however, that the change is almost wholly restricted to those words derived directly from the Latin, and that with regard to the formation of derivatives from simple words, where the principle applies to one derivative, it also applies to all others from the same word.

☞ Those terminations derived from Latin which are also found in English with little or no change of form, have already been given in Lesson IX and need not be repeated except where some peculiarity of usage is to be noted.

1273. We will now consider the principal suffixes in their alphabetical order:—

-ada.

a. Forms derivatives denoting the capacity or duration of what is expressed by the primitive noun:—

Carreta, wagon.	**Carretada**, wagonload.
Cesta, basket.	**Cestada**, basketful.
Cuchara, spoon.	**Cucharada**, spoonful.
Horno, oven.	**Hornada**, ovenful, batch [of bread].
Mano, hand.	**Manada**, handful.
Mes, month.	**Mesada**, month's pay.
Pala, shovel.	**Palada**, shovelful.
Pluma, pen.	**Plumada de tinta**, penful of ink.
Tiempo, time.	**Temporada**, space of time, season.
Tonel, cask, tun.	**Tonelada**, tun *or* ton (*originally the same*).

b. Expresses a collection of a number of individuals or things of the same class:—

Arma, arm, weapon.	**Armada**, navy, fleet.
Buey, ox.	**Boyada**, drove of oxen.
Caballo, horse.	**Cabalgada**, raid, cavalcade.
Caña, cane.	**Cañada**, canebrake.
Estaca, stake.	**Estacada**, stockade, picket fence.
Perro, dog.	**Perrada**, pack of dogs.
Toro, bull.	**Torada**, drove of bulls.
Vaca, cow.	**Vacada**, drove of cows.

c. Denotes a stroke or thrust, usually with a cutting or pointed instrument:—

Andana, tier of guns.	**Andanada**, broadside.
Boca, mouth.	**Dar las últimas boqueadas**, to give one's last gasp.
Cuchillo, knife.	**Cuchillada**, gash with a knife.
Lanza, lance.	**Lanzada**, lance-thrust.
Martillo, hammer.	**Martillada**, blow with a hammer.
Pierna, leg.	**Pernada**, fling of the leg in dancing.
Pluma, pen.	**Plumada**, stroke of a pen, dash.
Puñal, dagger.	**Puñalada**, stab.

-ada, -ida.

A feminine form of the past participial ending, forms nouns expressing the completed action of the verbs from which they are derived,—usually verbs of motion:—

Entrar, to enter.	**Entrada**, entrance, entry.
Ir, to go.	**Ida**, going.

Llegar, to arrive.	**Llegada**, arrival.
Morar, to dwell, abide.	**Morada**, dwelling, abode, stay.
Partir, to depart.	**Partida**, departure.
Retirar, to withdraw, retreat.	**Retirada**, retreat, retirement.
Venir, to come.	**Venida**, coming.

-ado.

An extension of the use of the participial termination. Applied to nouns, forms adjectives expressing resemblance to what is designated by the primitive:—

Concha, shell.	**Conchado**, conchoidal, shell-like.
Corazón, heart.	**Acorazonado**, cordate, heart-shaped.
Lagarto, lizard.	**Alagartado**, variegated like a lizard.
Lechuga, lettuce.	**Lechugado**, having leaves like the lettuce.
Luna, moon.	**Lunado**, shaped like the half-moon.
Naranja, orange.	**Naranjado**, orange-colored.
Sierra, saw.	**Serrado**, saw-toothed.

-ado, -ato.

Form derivative nouns expressing offices and dignities, and the district or jurisdiction of the same:—

Arzobispo, archbishop.	**Arzobispado**, archbishopric.
Cardenal, cardinal.	**Cardenalato**, cardinalate.
Conde, count.	**Condado**, county.
Deán, dean.	**Deanato**, deanery.
Decano, senior member.	**Decanato**, dignity of senior.
Elector, elector.	**Electorado**, electorate.
General, general.	**Generalato**, generalate, generalship.
Juez, judge.	**Juzgado**, judicature.
Papa, pope.	**Papado**, papacy.
Superior, manager, superior.	**Superiorato**, office of manager or superior.

-ador, -edor, -idor.

Applied to the stems of verbs, form nouns denoting a person who performs the action of the verb, or adjectives expressing custom:—

Abrazar, to grasp.	**Abrazador**, thief-taker.
Alborotar, to disturb the peace.	**Alborotador**, rioter; riotous.
Amenazar, to threaten.	**Amenazador**, one who threatens; threatening.
Beber, to drink.	**Bebedor**, toper.

Curtir, to tan, dress hides.	**Curtidor**, tanner.
Dar, to give.	**Dador**, giver.
Hablar, to talk.	**Hablador**, chatterer ; **talkative.**
Trabajar, to work.	**Trabajador**, assiduous.
Tragar, to swallow.	**Tragador**, gluttonous.

-aje.

a. Forms derivative nouns expressing a fee or payment connected with the primitive noun:—

Almacén, warehouse.	**Almacenaje**, warehouse-rent.
Cárcel, prison.	**Carcelaje**, jailer's fees.
Carreta, wagon, cart.	**Carretaje**, cartage.
Fogón, hearth.	**Fogaje**, hearth-money.
Horno, oven.	**Hornaje**, money paid to bakers for private baking.
[**Hostel** (*obs.*), inn.]	**Hostelaje**, hotel bill.
Muelle, quay, wharf.	**Muellaje**, quayage, wharfage.
Piloto, pilot.	**Pilotaje**, pilotage.
Puente, bridge.	**Pontaje**, bridge-toll.

b. Is used with a value approaching that of the English *-age* in forming derivative nouns,—usually collective:—

Almena, turret.	**Almenaje**, series of turrets.
Ancla, anchor.	**Anclaje**, anchorage.
Blindar, to armor-plate.	**Blindaje**, armor-plating.
Bosque, wood.	**Boscaje**, boscage.
Correa, strap.	**Correaje**, lot of straps.
Fardo, bundle.	**Fardaje**, luggage, number of bundles.
Hierro, iron.	**Herraje**, iron-work.
Huésped, guest, boarder.	**Hospedaje**, board and lodging.
Lengua, language.	**Lenguaje**, manner of speech.
Marear, to navigate a ship.	**Mareaje**, art of navigating.
Marino, mariner.	**Marinaje**, seamanship.
Ventana, window.	**Ventanaje**, series of windows.
Yerba, grass.	**Herbaje**, herbage.

-al.

Forms derivatives denoting a collection of what is expressed by the primitive noun, or the place where it is found in abundance:—

Arena, sand.	**Arenal**, sandy ground.
Ceniza, ashes.	**Cenizal**, ash-heap.
Chaparro, scrub oak.	**Chaparral**, brush, thicket.
Ciprés, cypress.	**Cipresal**, cypress grove.

Guijarro, pebble, gravel.	**Guijarral**, heap of gravel; place abounding in pebbles.
Junco, rush.	**Juncal**, place overgrown with rushes.
Mezquite, mesquite.	**Mezquital**, mesquite forest.
Naranjo, orange tree.	**Naranjal**, orange grove.
Pimiento, pepper.	**Pimental**, pepper plantation.
Plátano, banana tree.	**Platanal**, banana grove.
Romero, rosemary.	**Romeral**, bed of rosemary.
Salitre, saltpetre.	**Salitral**, nitrate bed.
Zarza, bramble.	**Zarzal**, bramble thicket.

-anza.

Added to the stems of verbs, forms abstract verbal nouns:—

Holgar, to cease work.	**Holganza**, repose, recreation.
Labrar, to till.	**Labranza**, tillage, husbandry.
Matar, to kill.	**Matanza**, slaughter.
Mezclar, to mix.	**Mezclanza**, mixture.
Mudar, to change.	**Mudanza**, change.
Tardar, to delay.	**Tardanza**, delay.
Templar, to temper, moderate.	**Templanza**, mildness, moderation.
Vengar, to avenge.	**Venganza**, vengeance.

-ar.

Forms derivatives denoting a collection of what is expressed by the primitive noun, or the place where it is found in abundance:—

Cebolla, onion.	**Cebollar**, bed of onions.
Colmena, bee-hive.	**Colmenar**, collection of bee-hives
Lino, flax.	**Linar**, field of flax.
Manzano, apple-tree.	**Manzanar**, apple orchard.
Melón, melon.	**Melonar**, melon-patch.
Olivo, olive tree.	**Olivar**, olive orchard.
Paja, straw.	**Pajar**, straw loft.
Palma, palm tree.	**Palmar**, palm grove.
Paloma, dove, pigeon.	**Palomar**, dovecote, pigeon-house.
Pino, pine tree.	**Pinar**, pine grove.
Sal, salt.	**Salar**, salt pan.
Teja, tile.	**Tejar**, tile works.

-ario.

a. Applied to nouns, forms derivatives denoting the place where a quantity of what is expressed by the primitive is kept:—

Campana, bell.	**Campanario**, belfry, steeple.
Hueso (Lat. *os*), bone.	**Osario**, bone-yard, charnel-house.

Reliquia, relic.	**Relicario**, reliquary.
[**Sacro**, sacred.]	**Sagrario**, church receptacle for sacred utensils.
Yerba (Lat. *herba*), herb, plant.	**Herbario**, herbarium.

Antífona, anthem.	**Antifonario**,	Books containing collections of what is denoted by the primitive noun.
Devoción, prayer.	**Devocionario**,	
Dicción, word, expression.	**Diccionario**,	
Ejemplo, copy, pattern.	**Ejemplario**,	
Epístola, epistle, letter.	**Epistolario**,	

b. Applied to nouns and to the stems of verbs, forms derivatives expressing the person interested in some transaction:—

Arrendar, to let for rent.	**Arrendatario**, lessee.
Beneficiar, to benefit.	**Beneficiario**, beneficiary.
Censo, instrument granting an annuity.	**Censatario**, one who pays an annuity.
Cesión, cession, transfer.	**Cesionario**, assignee, transferee.
Concesión, grant.	**Concesionario**, grantee.
Consignar, to consign, intrust.	**Consignatario**, consignee, trustee.
Legar, to bequeath.	**Legatario**, legatee.
Mandar, to order.	**Mandatario**, agent, attorney.
Renunciar, to give up, turn over to.	**Renunciatario**, one to whom anything is resigned.
Uso, use.	**Usuario**, who has the sole use of anything.

-astro.

a. Which appears in a few English words as *-aster*, expresses inferiority or pretence:—

Cama, bed.	**Camastro**, poor truckle-bed.
Crítico, critic.	**Criticastro**, pretended critic.
Filósofo, philosopher.	**Filosofastro**, philosophaster.
Poeta, poet.	**Poetastro**, poetaster.
Político, politician.	**Politicastro**, petty wire-puller.

b. It also applies to certain degrees of relationship between persons who do not usually display much affection for each other:—

Hermanastro, step-brother.	**Hermanastra**, step-sister.
Hijastro, step-son.	**Hijastra**, step-daughter.
Padrastro, step-father.	**Madrastra**, step-mother.

-azgo.

Forms derivatives expressing the office, functions or jurisdiction of the person designated by the primitive noun:—

Albacea, executor.	**Albaceazgo**, executorship.
Alguacil, constable.	**Alguacilazgo**, constableship.
Almirante, admiral.	**Almirantazgo**, admiralty.
Compadre, godfather.	**Compadrazgo**, gossipred.
Hermano, brother.	**Hermanazgo**, brotherhood, fraternity.
Mayor, senior.	**Mayorazgo**, right of primogeniture.
Padrino, godfather.	**Padrinazgo**, compaternity.
Patrón, patron.	**Patronazgo**, patronship.
Primo, cousin.	**Primazgo**, cousinship.
Villa, town.	**Villazgo**, charter of a town.

-azo.

Forms derivatives denoting a stroke or wound with the object designated by the primitive noun:—

Bala, ball, bullet.	**Balazo**, shot-wound.
Bomba, bomb, shell.	**Bombazo**, explosion of a shell.
Codo, elbow.	**Codazo**, dig with the elbow.
Flecha, arrow.	**Flechazo**, arrow-wound.
Garrote, cudgel, club.	**Garrotazo**, cudgelling, blow with club.
Hacha, axe.	**Hachazo**, blow, stroke with an axe.
Látigo, whip.	**Latigazo**, lash with a whip.
Puño, fist.	**Puñetazo**, blow with the fist.
Sable, saber.	**Sablazo**, saber-cut.
Vara, rod.	**Varazo**, stroke with a rod.
Ventana, window.	**Ventanazo**, slap of a window.
Zapato, shoe.	**Zapatazo**, blow with a shoe.

-dero.

a. Applied to the stems of verbs, expresses locality for performing the action expressed by the primitive:—

Derrumbar, to precipitate.	**Derrumbadero**, precipice.
Desembarcar, to land.	**Desembarcadero**, landing-place.
Fondear, to cast anchor.	**Fondeadero**, anchoring-ground.
Lavar, to wash.	**Lavadero**, washing-place.
Matar, to kill.	**Matadero**, slaughter-house.
Picar, to spur.	**Picadero**, riding-school, *menage*.
Rebosar, to overflow.	**Rebosadero**, place of overflow.

b. Added to stems of verbs, forms adjectives expressing fitness to perform or to undergo the action of the verb:—

Casar, to marry.	**Casadero**, marriageable.
Cobrar, to collect [a debt].	**Cobradero**, collectible.
Cocer, to boil.	**Cocedero**, easily boiled.
Comer, to eat.	**Comedero**, eatable.
Contar, to count.	**Contadero**, numerable.

Crecer, to grow.	**Crecedero**, capable of growing.
Dividir, to divide.	**Dividero**, divisible.
Durar, to last.	**Duradero**, lasting, durable.
Hacer, to do.	**Hacedero**, practicable, feasible
Pagar, to pay.	**Pagadero**, payable.
Perecer, to perish.	**Perecedero**, perishable.

-dizo.

Added to the stem of verbs, forms adjectives indicating susceptibility to the action expressed by the primitive:—

Beber, to drink.	**Bebedizo**, fit to drink.
Brincar, to jump, leap.	**Brincadizo**, which may be jumped over (e.g., a ditch).
Caer, to fall.	**Caedizo**, ready to fall ; deciduous.
Cerrar, to close, lock.	**Cerradizo**, which may be locked or fastened.
Comprar, to buy.	**Compradizo**, purchasable, venal.
Helar, to freeze.	**Heladizo**, which may be frozen.
Regar, to water, irrigate.	**Regadizo**, susceptible of irrigation.
Serrar, to saw.	**Serradizo**, fit to be sawed (*appl. to timber*).

-dumbre.

Forms abstract nouns from adjectives:—

Cierto, certain.	**Certidumbre**, certitude.
Dulce, sweet.	**Dulcedumbre**, sweetness.
Grave, grave.	**Gravedumbre**, gravity.
Manso, meek.	**Mansedumbre**, meekness.
Mucho, much.	**Muchedumbre**, crowd.
Pesado, wearisome, sad.	**Pesadumbre**, weariness, sadness.
Podre, pus, matter.	**Podredumbre**, putridity, corruption.
Sal, salt.	**Salsedumbre**, saltiness.
Siervo, slave, servant.	**Servidumbre**, state of servitude ; corps of servants.

-dura.

a. Added to nouns, forms derivatives denoting a set of whatever is expressed by the primitive:—

Botón, button.	**Botonadura**, set of buttons.
Broche, hook.	**Brochadura**, set of hooks and eyes.
Diente, tooth.	**Dentadura**, set of teeth.

b. Added to verbs, forms nouns expressing the result of the action of the primitive:—

Acepillar, to plane.	**Acepilladura**, act of planing. **Cepilladuras**, shavings.
Aserrar, to saw.	**Aserradura**, sawing, saw-cut. **Aserraduras**, saw-dust.
Barrer, to sweep.	**Barreduras**, sweepings.
Cortar, to cut.	**Cortadura**, cut, gash.
Picar, to puncture, prick.	**Picadura**, puncture, bite [of insect].
Quemar, to burn.	**Quemadura**, burn.
Rascar, to scratch.	**Rascadura**, scratch.

-ear.

Applied to nouns or to the stems of verbs, forms derivative verbs with generally a frequentative value:—

Baladrón, braggart, bully.	**Baladronear**, to act the bully.
Bodegón, low saloon.	**Bodegonear**, to frequent low saloons.
Borracho, drunkard.	**Borrachear**, to be often drunk.
Borrón, blot.	**Borronear**, to waste paper.
Garrapato, pot-hook.	**Garrapatear**, to scrawl, scribble.
Haragán, idler, loafer.	**Haraganear**, to idle, loaf.
Hoja, leaf.	**Hojear**, to turn the leaves of a book.
Hurón, ferret.	**Huronear**, to ferret, pry into.
Husmo, scent.	**Husmear**, to scent, snuff.
Tecla, piano-key.	**Teclear**, to finger the keys.
Ventana, window.	**Ventanear**, to be always at the window.

-eda, -edo.

Form nouns denoting the place where a thing grows:—

Acebo, holly.	**Acebedo**, grove of holly trees.
Álamo, poplar.	**Alameda**, grove of poplars, avenue.
Aliso, alder.	**Aliseda**, alder thicket.
Árbol, tree.	**Arboleda**, grove.
Castaño, chestnut tree.	**Castañedo**, grove of chestnut trees.
Fresno, ash tree.	**Fresneda**, grove of ash trees.
Olmo, elm.	**Olmeda**, grove of elm trees.
Peral, pear tree.	**Peraleda**, pear orchard.
Sauce (Lat. *salicem*), willow.	**Salceda**, grove of willows.
Viña, vineyard.	**Viñedo**, vine-raising district.

-eño.

Forms adjectives expressing resemblance:—

Agraz, verjuice.	**Agraceño**, acrid, sour.
Águila, eagle.	**Aguileño**, aquiline.
Guijarro, gravel.	**Guijarreño**, gravelly.
Guijo, pebble.	**Guijeño**, pebbly.

Halagar, to attract, allure.	**Halagüeño**, attractive.
Pedir, to beg.	**Pedigüeño**, importunate.
Ribera, bank, shore.	**Ribereño**, riparian, pertaining to or dwelling upon the banks of a river or the seashore.
Risa, laughter.	**Risueño**, laughing, smiling.
Roca, rock.	**Roqueño**, rocky.
Trigo, wheat.	**Trigueño**, swarthy (color of wheat).

-eo.

Forms nouns from the verbs in **-ear**:—

Cabecear, to nod the head.	**Cabeceo**, nod of the head.
Cañonear, to cannonade.	**Cañoneo**, cannonade.
Cuchichear, to whisper.	**Cuchicheo**, whisper.
Gimotear, to cry frequently without cause.	**Gimoteo**, frequent, causeless crying.
Pestañear, to wink.	**Pestañeo**, winking.
Pisotear, to trample.	**Pisoteo**, trampling, stamping.
Rodear, to go around.	**Rodeo**. detour, evasion.

-era.

Forms derivatives expressing an article for containing what is expressed by the primitive noun:—

Carta, letter.	**Cartera**, portfolio.
Ensalada, salad.	**Ensaladera**, salad-dish.
Leche, milk.	**Lechera**, milk-pitcher.
Mostaza, mustard.	**Mostacera**, mustard-pot.
Papel, paper.	**Papelera**, letter-pad.
Ponche, punch.	**Ponchera**, punch-bowl.
Sombrero, hat.	**Sombrerera**, hat-box.
Sopa, soup.	**Sopera**, soup-tureen.
Tabaco, tobacco.	**Tabaquera**, tobacco-pouch.
Vinagre, vinegar.	**Vinagrera**, vinegar-cruet.

-ero.

a. Added to nouns, forms derivatives denoting the place for containing what is expressed by the primitive:—

Azúcar, sugar.	**Azucarero**, sugar-bowl.
Chibato, kid.	**Chibetero**, kid-fold.
Grano, grain.	**Granero**, granary.
Lápiz, pencil.	**Lapicero**, pencil-case.
Pimienta, pepper.	**Pimentero**, pepper-box.
Sal, salt.	**Salero**, salt-cellar.
Tinta, ink.	**Tintero**, inkstand.

b. Applied to nouns, forms derivatives indicating the proprietor or person in charge of what is expressed by the primitive:—

Cabra, goat.	**Cabrero**, goatherd.
Cárcel, jail.	**Carcelero**, jailer.
Coche, coach.	**Cochero**, coachman.
Dehesa, pasture-ground.	**Dehesero**, keeper of a pasture-ground.
Escudo, shield.	**Escudero**, shield-bearer, squire.
Ganado, herd, cattle.	**Ganadero**, drover, cattle-owner.
Molino, mill.	**Molinero**, miller.
Rancho, ranch.	**Ranchero**, owner of a ranch.
Vaca, cow.	**Vaquero**, cowherd, cowboy.
Venta, tavern.	**Ventero**, tavern-keeper.
Yegua, mare.	**Yegüero**, keeper of brood-mares.

c. Forms derivative adjectives from nouns:—

Cerro, hill.	**Cerrero**, running wild (*appl. to animals*).
Chanza, joke, jest.	**Chancero**, jocose, sportful.
Guerra, war.	**Guerrero**, warlike.
Mar, sea.	**Viento marero**, sea-breeze.
Pasaje, passage.	**Pasajero**, transitory, fleeting. **Ave pasajera**, bird of passage.
Pendencia, law-suit.	**Pendenciero**, litigious.
Rastro, track, trail.	**Planta rastrera**, creeping plant.
Ventura, chance, casualty.	**Venturero**, fortuitous, casual.

d. Applied to articles of commerce, forms nouns denoting the dealers in those articles, or manufacturers of them:—

Alfar, pottery.	**Alfarero**, potter.
Cerveza, beer.	**Cervecero**, brewer.
Cuchillo, knife.	**Cuchillero**, cutler.
Guante, glove.	**Guantero**, glover.
Hojalata, tin plate.	**Hojalatero**, tinner, tinsmith.
Joya, jewel.	**Joyero**, jeweller.
Libro, book.	**Librero**, bookseller.
Pastel, pie.	**Pastelero**, pastry-cook.
Plomo, lead.	**Plomero**, plumber.
Quincalla, hardware.	**Quincallero**, hardware dealer.
Reloj, watch, clock.	**Relojero**, watchmaker, clock-maker.
Vidrio, glass.	**Vidriero**, glazier, glass-maker.
Zapato, shoe.	**Zapatero**, shoemaker.

REMARK.—By adding **-ía** to the above derivatives, we obtain a secondary set denoting (1) the shop or place of business, and (2) the trade or business, of the person in question :—

Alfarero :	**Alfarería**, potter's shop ; pottery trade.
Cervecero :	**Cervecería**, brewery.
Cuchillero :	**Cuchillería**, cutlery store.
Guantero :	**Guantería**, glove store ; glove trade.
Librero :	**Librería**, book store ; book trade.
Plomero :	**Plomería**, plumber's shop ; plumbing trade.
Quincallero :	**Quincallería**, hardware store ; hardware trade.
Relojero :	**Relojería**, clock-maker shop ; clock trade.
Vidriero :	**Vidrería**, glazier's shop, glass foundry.
Zapatero :	**Zapatería**, shoemaker's shop, shoe store ; shoe trade.

-ez.

Forms abstract nouns from adjectives:—

Altivo, haughty.	**Altivez**, haughtiness.
Árido, arid.	**Aridez**, aridity.
Brillante, bright.	**Brillantez**, brightness.
Doble, double.	**Doblez**, duplicity.
Flúido, fluid ; fluent.	**Fluidez**, fluidity ; fluency.
Honrado, honest.	**Honradez**, honesty.
Impávido, intrepid.	**Impavidez**, intrepidity.
Lóbrego, murky, dark.	**Lobreguez**, murkiness, obscurity.
Maduro, ripe.	**Madurez**, ripeness, maturity.
Mudo, dumb, mute.	**Mudez**, dumbness.
Nítido, lustrous.	**Nitidez**, luster.
Pequeño, small, little.	**Pequeñez**, smallness, littleness.
Sencillo, simple.	**Sencillez**, simplicity.

-eza.

Forms abstract nouns from adjectives:—

Alto, high.	**Alteza**, highness.
Cierto, certain.	**Certeza**, certainty.
Grande, great.	**Grandeza**, greatness.
Ligero, light.	**Ligereza**, lightness.
Limpio, clean, cleanly.	**Limpieza**, cleanness, cleanliness.
Puro, pure.	**Pureza**, purity.
Triste, sad.	**Tristeza**, sorrow.

-iento.

Forms adjectives expressing resemblance:—

Avaro, covetous.	**Avariento**, miserly.
Calentura, fever.	**Calenturiento**, feverish, fevered.
Ceniza, ashes.	**Ceniciento**, ash-colored.
Hambre, hunger.	**Hambriento**, famished, hungry.
Polvo, dust.	**Polvoriento**, dusty.
Sed, thirst.	**Sediento**, thirsty.
Sudor, sweat.	**Sudoriento**, sweaty.

-ino.

Added to nouns, forms adjectives expressing resemblance:—

Alabastro, alabaster.	**Alabastrino** (*poet.*), like alabastar.
Ámbar, amber.	**Ambarino**, like amber.
Azul, blue.	**Azulino**, sky blue.
Blanco, white.	**Blanquecino**, whitish.
Ciervo, deer.	**Cervino**, resembling a deer.
Ciprés, cypress.	**Cipresino**, resembling cypress.
Cuervo, crow.	**Corvino**, crow-like.
Elefante, elephant.	**Elefantino**, elephantine.
Fiera, wild beast.	**Ferino**, wild, savage.
Púrpura, purple.	**Purpurino**, purplish.

-izo.

Forms adjectives expressing a tendency towards the quality or action expressed by the primitive word:—

Bermejo, red.	**Bermejizo**, reddish.
Cobre, copper.	**Cobrizo**, coppery.
Enfermo, sick.	**Enfermizo**, sickly.
Llover, to rain.	**Llovedizo**, pertaining to rain.
Mover, to move.	**Movedizo**, movable, shifting.
Olvidar, to forget.	**Olvidadizo**, forgetful.
Plomo, lead.	**Plomizo**, leaden.
Rojo, red.	**Rojizo**, reddish.

-mento, -miento.

Serve to form verbal nouns expressing the action of a verb:—

Abatir, to discourage.	**Abatimiento**, discouragement, depression.
Casar, to marry.	**Casamiento**, marriage.
Cesar, to cease.	**Cesamiento**, cessation.
Crecer, to increase.	**Crecimiento**, increase.
Hundir, to sink.	**Hundimiento**, sinking, submersion.
Mantener, to maintain.	**Mantenimiento**, maintenance.
Nacer, to be born.	**Nacimiento**, birth.
Rendir, to surrender.	**Rendimiento**, rendition.
Salvar, to save.	**Salvamento**, safety, salvation, salvage.

-ón.

a. Added to stems of verbs, forms derivative nouns expressing the result of the action of the primitive:—

Aguijar, to prick, goad.	**Aguijón**, prick, goad, spur, sting.
Apretar, to press.	**Apretón**, pressure.

Arañar, to scratch.	**Arañón**, scratch.
Empujar, to push.	**Empujón**, push.
Estrujar, to squeeze.	**Estrujón**, squeezing; pressing [of grapes].
Forcejar, to struggle.	**Forcejón**, struggle.
Resbalar, to slip, slide.	**Resbalón**, slip, slide.
Reventar, to burst.	**Reventón**, bursting.
Salpicar, to bespatter.	**Salpicón**, bespattering.
Trasquilar, to shear.	**Trasquilón**, clipping of wool.

b. Forms adjectives from nouns and verbs, and has a frequentative value closely allied to the augmentatives in **-ón**:—

Burlar, to jest.	**Burlón**, waggish.
Juguete, toy, plaything.	**Juguetón**, playful, frolicsome.
Preguntar, to inquire.	**Preguntón**, inquisitive.
Regañar, to scold.	**Regañón**, grumbling, faultfinding.
Responder, to answer.	**Respondón**, always ready to answer.
Tragar, to swallow.	**Tragón**, voracious.

-oso.

Added to nouns or the stems of verbs, forms adjectives expressing the possession of the characteristic of the primitive:—

Borrasco, squall, gust.	**Borrascoso**, squally, gusty.
Cariño, affection.	**Cariñoso**, affectionate.
Enfadar, to vex.	**Enfadoso**, vexatious.
Engañar, to deceive.	**Engañoso**, deceitful.
Espantar, to frighten.	**Espantoso**, frightful.
Fatigar, to tire.	**Fatigoso**, tiresome.
Leche, milk.	**Lechoso**, milky.
Lodo, mud.	**Lodoso**, muddy.
Moho, mould.	**Mohoso**, mouldy.
Nieve, snow.	**Nevoso**, snowy.
Orgullo, pride.	**Orgulloso**, proud.
Pluma, feather.	**Plumoso**, feathery.
Sustancia, substance.	**Sustancioso**, substantial, nutritious.
Vello, down (*as of a peach*).	**Velloso**, downy.

-udo.

Forms adjectives expressing, generally in an exaggerated sense, the characteristic quality of the primitive noun:—

Barba, beard.	**Barbudo**, having a heavy beard.
Barriga, abdomen.	**Barrigudo**, corpulent.
Cabello, hair.	**Cabelludo**, hairy.
Capricho, whim, caprice.	**Caprichudo**, stubborn.

Carne, flesh.	**Carnudo**, fleshy.
Casco, hoof.	**Cascudo**, hoofed.
Ceja, eyebrow.	**Cejudo**, heavy-browed.
Ceño, frown.	**Ceñudo**, frowning, grim.
Colmillo, tusk, eye-tooth.	**Colmilludo**, with tusks; (*fig.*) who has cut his eye-teeth.
Diente, tooth.	**Dentudo**, with large, uneven teeth.
Hombro, shoulder.	**Hombrudo**, broad-shouldered.
Hueso, bone.	**Huesudo**, raw-boned.
Papo, fleshy part of the chin.	**Papudo**, double-chinned.
Zanca, shank.	**Zancudo**, long-shanked.

-uno.

Forms adjectives denoting species, usually applied to animals:—

Buey, ox.	**Boyuno**, bovine.
Caballo, horse.	**Caballuno**, equine.
Cabra, goat.	**Cabruno**, caprine.
Carnero, sheep.	**Carneruno**, ovine.
[**Chotar**, (*obs.*) to suck.]	**Chotuno**, sucking.
Ciervo, deer.	**Cervuno**, cervine.
Hombre, man.	**Hombruno**, manful.
Liebre, hare.	**Lebruno**, leprine.
Oveja, ewe.	**Ovejuno**, pertaining to ewes.
Puerco, pig.	**Porcuno**, porcine.
Vaca, cow.	**Vacuno**, pertaining to cows.

-ura.

Forms abstract nouns from adjectives:—

Alto, high.	**Altura**, height.
Amargo, bitter.	**Amargura**, bitterness.
Bravo, brave.	**Bravura**, bravery.
Dulce, sweet.	**Dulzura**, sweetness.
Grueso, coarse.	**Grosura**, coarseness.
Largo, long.	**Largura**, length.
Liso, smooth, even.	**Lisura**, smoothness, evenness.

-zón.

Applied to nouns and stems of verbs, forms derivative nouns of allied meaning:—

Armar, to set up.	**Armazón**, framework, skeleton.
Arrumar, to stow, pack.	**Arrumazón**, stowing; cloud-rack.
Barbechar, to plow in the fall.	**Barbechazón**, time for fall plowing.
Cargar, to load.	**Cargazón**, cargo.

Clavar, to nail.	**Clavazón**, nailing ; lot of nails.
Ligar, to bind.	**Ligazón**, bond, ligament.
Palo, mast.	**Palazón**, masting, masts of a ship.
Pollo, chicken.	**Pollazón**, hatching, brood.
Segar, to reap.	**Segazón**, reaping, harvest-time.
Trabar, to join.	**Trabazón**, connection, coherence.
Tragar, to swallow.	**Tragazón**, gluttony, voracity.

1274. From names of arts and sciences ending in **-ia** corresponding derivatives may be formed by changing that termination into **-o**:—

Agronomía, science of agriculture.	**Agrónomo**, writer on agriculture.
Arqueología, archeology.	**Arqueólogo**, archeologist.
Astronomía, astronomy.	**Astrónomo**, astronomer.
Filosofía, philosophy.	**Filósofo**, philosopher.
Fotografía, photography.	**Fotógrafo**, photographer.
Geografía, geography.	**Geógrafo**, geographer.
Geología, geology.	**Geólogo**, geologist.
Geometría, geometry.	**Geómetro**, geometrician.
Litografía, lithography.	**Litógrafo**, lithographer.
Teología, theology.	**Teólogo**, theologian.

1275. From feminine nouns in **-ica**, denoting arts and sciences, titles for those who are experts therein may be formed by changing the final **a** into **o**:—

Aritmética, arithmetic.	**Aritmético**, arithmetician.
Botánica, botany.	**Botánico**, botanist.
Física, physics.	**Físico**, physicist.
Gramática, grammar.	**Gramático**, grammarian
Lógica, logic.	**Lógico**, logician.
Mecánica, mechanics.	**Mecánico**, mechanician.
Música, music.	**Músico**, musician.
Óptica, optics.	**Óptico**, optician.
Política, politics.	**Político**, politician.
Química, chemistry.	**Químico**, chemist.
Retórica, rhetoric.	**Retórico**, rhetorician.

1276. The names of many fruit trees, ending in **-o**, become names of the fruits when the termination is changed to **-a**:—

Almendro, almond tree.	**Almendra**, almond.
Castaño, chestnut tree.	**Castaña**, chestnut.
Cerezo, cherry tree.	**Cereza**, cherry.
Ciruelo, plum tree.	**Ciruela**, plum.
Manzano, apple tree.	**Manzana**, apple.
Naranjo, orange tree.	**Naranja**, orange.

NOTE.—Many of the preceding derivative terminations have other values (usually an extension of some principal value), the examples of which are not sufficiently numerous and regular to deserve classification in this work.

1277. The development of words by means of suffixes will be appreciated best by seeing the luxuriant growth arising from a single common word (which, however, is exceptionally prolific):—

TIERRA, EARTH, LAND.

Terráceo, made of earth.
Terrácueo, terraqueous (applied to the globe).
Terrada, cement of ochre and glue.
Terradillo, a small terrace.
Terrado, a terrace, platform.
Terraje, rent of land.
Terrajero, a tenant.
Terral, from the land (applied to wind blowing from the land and lightning going upwards from the earth).
Terrasa, a terrace.
Terraza, a glazed earthen jar.
Terrazgo, arable land; land-tax or rent.
Terrazguero, a tenant.
Terrazo, ground (of a painting).
Terrazuela, a little earthen jar.
Terrear, to show the ground (said of thin crops).
Terregoso, full of clods.
Terrenal, terrene (pertaining to the earth in contradistinction to the heavens).
Terrenidad, quality of the soil.
Terreno, earthly.
Terreno, ground, field.
Térreo, earthy.
Terrera, a sloping piece of ground.
Terrero, terrace, mound.
Terrero, touching or approaching the ground (applied to creeping plants, low-flying birds, trailing boughs, etc.); *metaph.*, humble.
Terrestre, terrestrial.
Terrestridad, earthiness.
Terrezuelo, a poor bit of ground.
Terrín, a peasant.
Terrino, earthy.
Territorial, territorial.
Territorio, territory.
Terrizo, earthen.
Terrón, a clod, lump of earth.
Terronazo, a large clod; blow with a clod.
Terroncillo, a small clod.
Terrontera, a break in a mountain.
Terrosidad, earthiness.
Terroso, earthy (mixed with earth).
Terruño, piece of ground.

By employing prefixes, the following are produced:—

Aterraje, (*naut.*) drifting ashore.
Aterramiento, ruin, destruction.
Aterrar, to throw to the ground; *naut.*, to stand inshore.
Aterronar, to clod, gather into clods.
Conterráneo, belonging to the same district.
Desenterrador, a body-snatcher.
Desenterramiento, disinterment.
Desenterrar, to disinter.
Desterradero, a retired part of the town; isolated residence.
Desterrado, exile, outcast.
Desterrado, exiled, banished.

Desterrar, to exile, banish.
Desterronar, to break clods.
Destierro, exile, banishment.
Enterrador, grave-digger.
Enterramiento, interment.
Enterrar, to inter, bury.
Entierro, burial, funeral.
Soterrable, that which may be put under ground.
Soterrador, one who puts under ground.
Soterráneo, subterranean.
Soterrar, to put under ground.

PREFIXES.

1278. The prefixes used in the formation of derivatives in Spanish are the Latin prefixes which are also found in English. As they will be recognized at sight, space need not be occupied by giving a list of them here. The application of certain prefixes in the formation of verbs from nouns and adjectives, is, however, a subject deserving of some attention.

FORMATION OF VERBS FROM NOUNS.

1279. All derivative verbs of this nature are of the first conjugation, made by adding **-ar** to the primitive after removing the final vowel. In some cases a prefix is required.

1280. The general principles under which prefixes are applied are as follows:—

1. When an implement is to be used on anything, or something is to be applied so as not to adhere or remain attached, **a-** or **ad-** is prefixed to the derivative verb.

2. The prefix **en-** is added when the thing represented by the noun is to be made to adhere or remain attached; or is to be put into or stored in some receptacle.

3. When the thing named is to be removed or taken away, the prefix **des-** is added.

But, as language is never wholly consistent, these are only prevailing usages and not absolute rules. The majority of verbs of the first class, and a large number of verbs of a miscellaneous character, do not take any prefix.

1281. To apply or use an implement:—

Bozal, muzzle.
Clavo, nail.
Cepillo, plane.
Lima, file.
Abozalar, to muzzle.
Clavar, to nail.
Acepillar, to plane.
Limar, to file.

Martillo, hammer.	**Martillar**, to hammer.
Patín, skate.	**Patinar**, to skate.
Peine, comb.	**Peinar**, to comb.
Puntal, prop.	**Apuntalar**, to prop.
Rastrillo, rake.	**Rastrillar**, to rake.
Señal, signal.	**Señalar**, to signal.
Sierra, saw.	**Serrar**, to saw.
Taladro, auger.	**Taladrar**, to bore, pierce.
Tamiz, sieve.	**Tamizar**, to sift.
Taruga, plug.	**Atarugar**, to plug.
Tornillo, screw.	**Atornillar**, to screw.

1282. To affix or lay on something:—

Alfombra, carpet.	**Alfombrar**, to carpet.
Arena, sand.	**Enarenar**, to sand.
Baldosa, flooring tile.	**Baldosar**, to tile [floors].
Barniza, varnish.	**Barnizar**, to varnish.
Brida, bridle.	**Embridar**, to bridle.
Cebo, bait.	**Cebar**, to bait.
Césped, sod.	**Encespedar**, to sod.
Chapa, veneer.	**Enchapar**, to veneer.
Goma, gum.	**Engomar**, to gum.
Jabón, soap.	**Enjabonar**, to soap.
Jaeces, harness.	**Enjaezar**, to harness.
Pizarra, slate.	**Empizarrar**, to slate.
Sal, salt.	**Salar**, to salt.
Silla, saddle.	**Ensillar**, to saddle.
Techo, roof.	**Techar**, to roof.
Teja, roofing tile.	**Tejar**, to tile [roofs].

1283. To put into something,—with the prefix **en**:—

Alforja, saddle-bag.	**Enalforjar**, to put into saddle-bags.
Bala, bale.	**Embalar**, to bale.
Barril, barrel.	**Embarrilar**, to barrel.
Bolsa, purse.	**Embolsar**, to put into a purse.
Botella, bottle.	**Embotellar**, to bottle.
Cajón, box.	**Encajonar**, to box.
Canasta, **canasto**, basket, hamper.	**Encanastar**, to put into baskets.
Cántaro, pitcher.	**Encantarar**, to pour into a pitcher.
Cubo, bucket.	**Encubar**, to put into buckets.
Fardo, bundle.	**Enfardar**, to make into a bundle.
Papel, paper.	**Empapelar**, to wrap up in paper.
Paquete, package.	**Empaquetar**, to make a package of.
Saco, sack, bag.	**Ensacar**, to put into sacks *or* bags.
Tierra, ground.	**Enterrar**, to put into the ground, to bury.

1284. To strip off or take away,—with the prefix **des**:—

Cabeza, head.	**Descabezar**, to behead.
Canto, stone.	**Descantar**, to remove the stones from [a field].
Cáscara, husk.	**Descascarar**, to husk.
Corteza, bark.	**Descortezar**, to bark.
Golleta, neck [of bottle].	**Desgolletar**, to knock off the neck.
Hilo, thread.	**Deshilarse**, to ravel.
Hoja, leaf.	**Deshojar**, to strip off the leaves.
Hollín, soot.	**Deshollinar**, to clean [chimneys].
Hueso, bone.	**Desosar, deshuesar**, to bone.
Nata, cream.	**Desnatar**, to skim [milk].
Paja, straw, chaff.	**Despajar**, to winnow.
Pellejo, skin.	**Despellejar**, to skin.
Pluma, feather.	**Desplumar**, to pluck [fowls].
Techo, roof.	**Destechar**, to unroof.

1285. **Des**, added to verbs, forms derivatives of negative or opposite meaning:—

Agradar, to please.	**Desagradar**, to displease.
Aguar, to water.	**Desaguar**, to drain.
Ayunar, to fast.	**Desayunar**, to breakfast.
Cansar, to tire.	**Descansar**, to rest.
Colgar, to hang up.	**Descolgar**, to take down.
Coser, to sew.	**Descoser**, to rip.
Emborrachar, to intoxicate.	**Desemborrachar**, to sober.
Empeñar, to pawn.	**Desempeñar**, to redeem [a pledge].
Encadenar, to chain.	**Desencadenar**, to unchain.
Enredar, to tangle.	**Desenredar**, to untangle.
Esperar, to hope.	**Desesperar**, to despair.
Hacer, to do.	**Deshacer**, to undo.
Helar, to freeze.	**Deshelar**, to thaw.
Mandar, to order.	**Desmandar**, to revoke [an order].
Pegar, to glue.	**Despegar**, to unglue, separate.
Pintar, to paint.	**Despintar**, to paint out.
Poblar, to people.	**Despoblar**, to depopulate.
Prender, to fasten.	**Desprender**, to unfasten.
Tapar, to cork.	**Destapar**, to uncork.
Tetar, to suckle.	**Destetar**, to wean.
Torcer, to twist, plait.	**Destorcer**, to untwist, unplait.

1286. Derivative verbs of miscellaneous meaning:—

Apodo, nickname.	**Apodar**, to nickname.
Arruga, wrinkle.	**Arrugar**, to wrinkle.
Atrás, backwards.	**Atrasar**, to retrograde.

Beneficio, benefit.	**Beneficiar**, to benefit.
Bloqueo, blockade.	**Bloquear**, to blockade.
Botón, button.	**Abotonar**, to button.
Boya, buoy.	**Boyar**, to buoy.
Carbón, charcoal.	**Carbonar**, to char.
Cimiento, foundation.	**Cimentar**, to found, lay the foundation.
Columpio, swing.	**Columpiar**, to swing.
Cruz, cross.	**Cruzar**, to cross.
Cuajo, curd.	**Cuajar**, to curdle.
Dictamen, report.	**Dictaminar**, to report.
Menaza, threat.	**Amenazar**, to threaten.
Número, number.	**Numerar**, to number.
Oriente, east.	**Orientar**, to turn towards the east.
Página, page.	**Paginar**, to paginate.
Represa, dam.	**Represar**, to dam.
Sobre, over.	**Sobrar**, to remain over.

FORMATION OF VERBS FROM ADJECTIVES.

1287. Derivative verbs meaning to impart the characteristic expressed by a primitive adjective, are formed in two principal ways,—leaving out of account certain miscellaneous examples.

1. By adding the infinitive termination **-ecer** in place of the final vowel, with or without prefixing **en-**. These are called inceptive verbs and have been treated of in Chapter XIII.

2. By adding the infinitive termination **-ar**, with or without prefixing **a-** or **en-**.

EXAMPLES.

Agrio, sour.	**Agriar**, to sour.
Blando, soft.	**Ablandar**, to soften.
Chico, small, little.	**Achicar**, to lessen, diminish.
Ciego, blind.	**Cegar**, to blind.
Dulce, sweet.	**Endulzar**, to sweeten.
Duro, hard.	**Endurar**, to harden.
Espeso, thick.	**Espesar**, to thicken.
Flojo, weak, loose.	**Aflojar**, to loosen, slacken.
Frío, cold.	**Enfriar**, to cool.
Gordo, fat.	**Engordar**, to fatten.
Largo, long.	**Alargar**, to lengthen, protract.
Ligero, light.	**Aligerar**, to lighten.
Limpio, clean.	**Limpiar**, to clean.
Raso, smooth, level.	**Arrasar**, to smooth, level.
Seco, dry.	**Secar**, to dry.

Seguro, secure, safe. **Asegurar**, to secure, assure.
Sucio, dirty. **Ensuciar**, to soil.
Tieso, stiff. **Atiesar**, to stiffen.

Exercise LV.

I had no *idea* that (*de que*) Spanish was such a rich language, nor that it had the power of *forming* so many words from native material.[1]—You are not the only one who holds that *opinion*. *Experience* has taught me that the prevailing *notion* about (*respecto del*) Spanish is that it is a weak language, with a very *limited vocabulary*; a language that is very easy to (*de*) learn, but little adapted to expressing anything more than the merest commonplaces.[2] If people gave the *attention* to Spanish that is lavished upon French and German, they would find that it can equal French in clearness and German in *profundity*, and that it surpasses both in *sonority* and *rhythmical harmony*. It sounds even better than Italian, for (*puesto que*) this language is really monotonous on account of the very large *proportion* of words which end in [a] vowel and of the absence of the rich sound of the Spanish J. But the prevailing *ignorance* in regard to[3] the Spanish language is not more *extraordinary* than that concerning the *nations* who speak it. It is indeed surprising that the majority of the inhabitants of North America are not aware[4] that to the south of them, on the same hemisphere, live 15 independent *nations* speaking one[5] tongue, enjoying *civilization* equal in many places to our own, bound together by the common ties of *religion* and language, enjoying *intercommunication* by rail and telegraph; 15 *nations* of enlightened people (*hombres*) who are able to read the daily papers in the evenings[6] by (*á*) the *electric* light and can go to their places of business in *electric* street-cars. Of course[7] the Spanish Americans are not everywhere so far advanced as this, nor does the nature of the ground in all cases permit such a state of affairs[8]; but it is much nearer[9] the truth than the *idea* which prevails here to the effect that[10] the South Americans are a race[11] of half-breed savages.—I assure you I am much edified by what you have said,[12] and I must confess that much of it was entirely new to me.

---

[1] Materia propia. [2] las cosas más triviales. [3] respecto de. [4] ignoren. [5] un mismo. [6] See § 384. [7] es verdad que . . . [8] estado de cosas. [9] más aproximado á . . . [10] *to the effect that*, de que . . . [11] son unas tribus . . . [12] lo que V. acaba de referir me ha sido sumamente instructivo . .

CHAPTER XXV.

PECULIARITIES OF NOUNS.

GENDER.

1288. In nouns denoting persons or well-known animals, the distinction of gender is usually a natural one. The feminine form is obtained in various ways, corresponding for the most part to the formation of the feminine of adjectives.

a. Nouns in **a** remain unchanged, and take the article **el** or **la** as the case may require:—

El artista, the artist.	**La artista**, the artist.
El cebra, the zebra.	**La cebra**, the zebra.
El compatriota, the compatriot.	**La compatriota**, the compatriot.
El hacanea, the hack.	**La hacanea**, the hack.
El indígena, the native.	**La indígena**, the native.
El jaca, the pony.	**La jaca**, the pony.

b. A few nouns of other endings than **a** have a common form for both genders:—

El cómplice, the accomplice.	**La cómplice**, the accomplice.
El hereje, the heretic.	**La hereje**, the heretic.
El joven, the youth, young man.	**La joven**, the young girl.
El mártir, the martyr.	**La mártir**, the martyr.
El reo, the culprit, criminal.	**La reo**, the culprit, criminal.
El testigo, the witness.	**La testigo**, the witness.
El tigre, the tiger.	**La tigre**, the tigress.

c. The majority of nouns in **o** change it to **a** to form the feminine:—

El brujo, the wizard.	**La bruja**, the witch.
El gato, the tomcat.	**La gata**, the she-cat.
El mozo, the young fellow, lad.	**La moza**, the young girl, lass.
El tendero, the shop-keeper.	**La tendera**, the shop-keeper.
El pasajero, the passenger.	**La pasajera**, the passenger.

d. The majority of nouns in **e** change that ending to **a**:—

El elefante, the elephant.	**La elefanta**, the elephant.
El farsante, the humbug.	**La farsanta**, the humbug.

El gigante, the giant.	**La giganta**, the giantess.
El monje, the monk.	**La monja**, the nun.
El pariente, the relative.	**La parienta**, the relative.
El sastre, the tailor.	**La sastra**, the tailoress.

REMARK.—By strict analogy, the terminations **-ante**, **-ente**, **-iente**, **-yente** formed from the Latin present participle, should be invariable, and are often so written by purists. However, **la infanta**, *the princess royal*, is never *la infante*.

e. Most of those in **d**, **l**, **n**, **r**, **s** and **z** add **a**:—

El huésped, the guest, boarder.	**La huéspeda**, the guest, boarder.
El colegial, the collegian.	**La colegiala**, the collegian.
El leŏn, the lion.	**La leona**, the lioness.
El autor, the author.	**La autora**, the authoress.
El doctor, the doctor.	**La doctora**, the doctress.
El marqués, the marquis.	**La marquesa**, the marchioness.

f. The following add **-esa** to the stem of the masculine, after removing a terminal vowel:—

El abad, the abbot.	**La abadesa**, the abbess.
El alcaide, the warden.	**La alcaidesa**, the warden's wife.
El alcalde, the mayor.	**La alcaldesa**, the mayor's wife.
El barón, the baron.	**La baronesa**, the baroness.
El conde, the earl.	**La condesa**, the countess.
El duque, the duke.	**La duquesa**, the duchess.

g. The following add **-isa** to the masculine stem:—

El diácono, the deacon.	**La diaconisa**, the deaconess.
El poeta, the poet.	**La poetisa**, the poetess.
El profeta, the prophet.	**La profetisa**, the prophetess.
El sacerdote, the priest.	**La sacerdotisa**, the priestess.

h. The following are too irregular for classification:—

Don (§ 232).	**Doña**
El actor, the actor.	**La actriz**, the actress.
El emperador, the emperor.	**La emperatriz**, the empress.
El gallo, the cock.	**La gallina**, the hen.
El héroe, the hero.	**La heroína**, the heroine.
El jabalí, the wild boar.	**La jabalina**, the wild sow.
El príncipe, the prince.	**La princesa**, the princess.
El rey, the king.	**La reina**, the queen.

i. The following have a distinct form for the feminine:—

El caballero, the gentleman.	**La dama**, the lady.
El caballo, the horse.	**La yegua** (Lat. *equa*), the mare.

El hombre, the man.	**La mujer** (Lat. *mulier*), the woman.
El macho, male (of animals).	**La hembra**, the female (animals).
El marido, the husband.	**La esposa**, the wife.
El padre, the father.	**La madre**, the mother.
El toro, el buey, the bull, the ox.	**La vaca**, the cow.
El varón, male (of persons).	**La hembra**, the female (persons).
El yerno, the son-in-law.	**La nuera**, the daughter-in-law.

1289. There are certain nouns which, without change of termination or of gender, may apply equally to males or females. Such nouns are called *epicene*[1]:—

Su Majestad el rey. Su Majestad la Reina.	His Majesty the King. Her Majesty the Queen.
Su hermano es una persona discreta.	His brother is a discreet person.
Su hija de V. es un ángel.	Your daughter is an angel.

1290. The names of the less important animals are of this nature. Thus we say **la zorra**, *the fox*, **la ardilla**, *the squirrel*, and **el coyote**, *the coyote*, **el gavilán**, *the hawk*, whether applied to males or females. When necessary to distinguish sex, we add **macho**, *male*, or **hembra**, *female*, as the case may require:—

La comadreja macho.	The male weasel.
El adive hembra.	The she-jackal.

REMARK.—We may also say **el macho de la comadreja, la hembra del adive**, which construction, although less usual, is more correct since it avoids the incongruity of a masculine article before a feminine noun and *vice versa*. This objection, however, is not valid when **macho** or **hembra** stands in the predicate :—

Esta cotorra es macho.	This parrot is a male.
Esos canarios deben ser hembras.	Those canaries must be females.

1291. Some feminine nouns in **a**, denoting things, may be applied to persons, in which case they take either **el** or **la** according to sex:—

---

[1] In such cases, adjectives and participles often revert to the natural gender of the person represented :—

Contento su Majestad, no hay quien sea contra nosotros.	If His Majesty is satisfied, there is no one who can oppose us.
Las tales personas están como atados de pies y manos.	Such persons are as if tied hand and foot.
¿Hay nacida su par en el mundo? (CALISTO Y MELIBEA, Act VI, *speaking of Melibea*).	Has her equal ever been born ?

La atalaya, the watch-tower.	**El atalaya**, the look-out *or* watchman.
La ayuda, the aid.	**El ayuda**, the assistant *or* aide.
La calavera, the skull.	**El calavera**, the madcap, harum-scarum fellow.
La espada, the sword.	**El espada**, the swordsman.
La guarda-ropa, the wardrobe.	**El guarda-ropa**, the master of the king's wardrobe.
La guardia, the guard (*corps*).	**El guardia**, the guard, guardsman.
La guía, the guide (*inanimate thing*).	**El** *or* **la guía**, the guide.
La máscara, mask.	**El** *or* **la máscara**, the masker.
La recluta, recruiting.	**El recluta**, the recruit.
La trompeta, the trumpet.	**El trompeta**, the trumpeter.
La vigía, the look-out.	**El vigía**, the look-out.
Una ordenanza, the ordinance.	**Un ordenanza**, an orderly.

REMARK :—**La espía**, *the spy*, and **la escolta**, *the escort*, retain the feminine article even when applied to males. This is generally true of **la centinela**, *the sentry, sentinel*, but **el centinela** will occasionally be found.

1292. Where a noun that has both a masculine and a feminine form is placed in the predicate after another noun, or is in opposition to it, it should agree with the first noun in gender:—

El alba es **la precursora** del día.	The dawn is the harbinger of day.
Mi primo será **nuestro guía**.	My cousin will be our guide.
La naturaleza ha sido **nuestra guía**.	Nature has been our guide.
El sueño, **hermano menor** de la muerte.	Sleep, the half-sister of death.

1293. A few nouns are used in either gender by standard authors; the following is a list of these, the preferable gender being placed first:—

El, la color.*	The color.
El, la cutis.*	The skin.
La, el dote.	The dowry, marriage-portion.
Las dotes intelectuales.	Intellectual endowments.
El, la fin.*	The end.
El, la mar (*fem. in elevated style*).	The sea.
La, el margen.	The margin, edge, brink.
El, la origen.*	The origin, source.
El, la pro.*	The benefit, advantage.
El, la puente.*	The bridge.
La, el tilde.	The ˜, any small thing.

* NOTE.—Those designated by an asterisk are now rarely feminine.

1294. Arte is always feminine in the plural, and generally so in the singular. It is commonly masculine in:—

El arte diabólico.	The black art.
El arte dramático.	The drama.
	but
Las bellas artes.	The fine arts.

1295. Orden varies in gender according as its meaning varies. It is masculine when it means arrangement, style, and feminine when signifying a precept, command or organization:—

Los órdenes arquitectónicos.	The orders of architecture.
El orden corintio, dórico.	The Corinthian, Doric order.
Fulano es amante del orden.	So-and-so is a lover of order.
Ha tomado las sagradas órdenes.	He has taken holy orders.
El rey ha expedido una orden.	The king has issued an order.
La Orden de Alcántara, de Isabel.	The Order of Alcantara, of Isabel the Catholic.

Some of the nouns in **-ma** derived from Greek neuters, have occasionally been used by certain authors as feminines, because they end in **a**; but such usage is incorrect.

1296. Certain nouns, denoting things, have different meanings according as they vary in gender:—

El canal, the canal, gutter, trench.	**La canal**, the channel (*straits*).
El cometa, the comet.	**La cometa**, the [toy] kite.
El crisma, the holy oil.	**La crisma**, the head[1] (*vulgar*).
El cólera, the cholera.	**La cólera**, the anger.
El corte, the cut, edge.	**La corte**, the court, metropolis.
El capital, capital (*money*).	**La capital**, the capital (*city*).
El frente, front, head.	**La frente**, the forehead.
El moral, mulberry-tree.	**La moral**, morals, the moral.
El parte, dispatch, message (*telegram, etc.*).	**La parte**, the part, portion.
El pendiente, ear-ring.	**La pendiente**, slope, declivity.
El pez, fish[2] (*in the water*).	**La pez**, pitch.

1297. Many nouns have two terminations, **o** and **a**, with corresponding change of gender, which are employed interchangeably without affecting the meaning:—

Aguatocho, aguatocha, fire-engine.	**Cribo, criba**, sieve.
Barreno, barrena, auger.	**Embrollo, embrolla**, fraud, snare.

[1] Because it is the part christened. The people say: **te rompo la crisma** (*or* **el bautismo**), *I'll break your head.*

[2] *Fish*, in the market and kitchen, is **pescado.**

Bolso, bolsa, purse.
Caldero, caldera, cauldron.
Capacho, capacha, hamper.
Carrasco, carrasca, live-oak.
Cayado, cayada, shepherd's crook.
Cencerro, cencerra, mule-bell.
Chocolatero, chocolatera, chocolate-pot.
Conventículo, conventícula, conventicle.
Escardillo, escardilla, weeding-hook.
Estampido, estampida, crack, report.
Jaco, jaca, pony.
Lejío, lejía, lye.
Mirlo, mirla, black-bird.
Pardillo, pardilla, linnet.
Saco, saca, sack.
Tajuelo, tajuela, low stool.

REMARK.—In general, however, the individuals of such pairs differ in meaning. Thus **leña** is *timber* in general, **leño** a *piece of timber*; **madera** is *wood*, **madero**, a *board*; **fruto** is *fruit* on the tree, or, in a figurative sense, **fruta** is *fruit* after it is gathered; **rama** is a *bough* or *branch* on the tree, **ramo**, when broken off, and also in a figurative sense; **grita** is a *shouting* or *outcry*, **grito** a single *shout* or *cry*; etc.

1298. The names of the letters of the alphabet are feminine, to agree with **la letra** understood. The vowels when used as words (prepositions and conjunctions) retain this gender.

La e es la segunda de las vocales. — *E* is the second of the vowels.
Se necesita **una á** delante del acusativo. — An *á* is needed before the accusative.
La ó se convierte en **ú** delante del sonido de **o**. — *Ó* is changed to *ú* before the sound of *o*.

1298. All other indeclinable words are regarded as masculine, irrespective of termination and of the fact that nearly all descriptive terms which could apply to the word are feminine (such as **palabra, dicción, voz, preposición, interjección, conjunción, partícula,** etc.):—

El ya da aquí la idea de sorpresa. — The *ya* here expresses surprise.
El además tiene en este caso la fuerza de adverbio. — *Además* has in this case the value of an adverb.
Esos peros y cuandos me dan rabia. — Those *buts* and *ifs* of yours set me wild.

REMARK.—Still, if such feminine descriptive word occur near the indeclinable word in question, it may be treated as feminine:—

Para esto empleamos en unas locuciones la preposición **á**, y en otras **la para**. — For this we employ in some constructions the prèposition *á* and in others *para*.
La oh es una de las interjecciones que denotan dolor. — *Oh* is one of the interjections that denote pain.

NUMBER.

1299. The only deviations from the principles given in Lesson IV with regard to the plurals of nouns concern those of foreign origin and compound nouns:—

Lord, as a title of English nobility, becomes **lores**:—

La cámara de los lores.	The House of Lords.

Foreign family names are invariable in the plural, unless they have a termination common to Spanish and are pronounced as Spanish words:—

Los Brówning; los dos Húmboldt.	The Brownings; the two Humboldts.
Los Racines; las Brontes.	The Racines; the Brontë sisters.

Hidalgo, a *gentleman of the nobility*, makes **hijosdalgo**, from a popular impression that it is a shortened form of **hijo de algo.**

Ricohombre, a *state councillor*, makes **ricoshombres.** The **rico** is here the Gothic *rik, kingdom*, and should not be made plural. The term is analogous to the German *Reichsmann.*

Gentilhombre, a *court gentleman*, becomes very properly **gentileshombres**, since **gentil** is an adjective.

1300. In speaking of a thing which is found singly in a number of individuals, it is placed in the singular in Spanish—contrary to the English usage:—

Ambos máscaras se quitaron la careta.	Both maskers took off their dominos.
Se tiñeron la cara y las manos.	They dyed their faces and hands.
Todos los animales tienen cabeza.	All animals have heads.
Todos los animales tienen pies.	All animals have feet.

REMARK.—To say **todos los animales tienen cabezas** would convey the idea that each one has several heads. However, when there is no chance for equivocation, the plural is used:—

Salieron con las cabezas rotas.	They got away with their heads broken.
Quitaron las sillas á los caballos.	They took the saddles off the horses.

1301. Some nouns have a secondary acceptation when used in the plural. Therefore the plurals of these nouns have two values: 1st, as true plurals of the primitive meaning; 2nd, as expressing a new idea. Such nouns are:—

Alfiler, pin.	**Alfileres**, pin-money.
Baqueta, ramrod.	**Baquetas**, drum-sticks.
Conveniencia, convenience.	**Conveniencias**, perquisites.
Corcho, cork.	**Corchos**, clogs.
Corte, court.	**Cortes**, Spanish parliament.

Día, day.
Letra, letter, handwriting.
Mano, hand.
Salud, health.

Días, saint's-day. (§ 407.)
Letras, literary attainments.
Manos, manual labor.
Saludes, compliments, greetings.

1302. It is hardly correct to say that certain nouns are used exclusively in the singular, or in the plural; nevertheless there are many nouns which are rarely, if ever, found in any but one number:—

1. The following are seldom used in the singular:—

Aborígenes, aborigines.
Alrededores, environs.
Anales, annals.
Andurriales, by-ways.
Añicos, flinders, bits.
Antepasados, ancestors.
Caídos, arrears of taxes.
Calofríos, shivering, shudders.
Dádivas, gifts.
Despabiladeras, snuffers.
Enaguas, petticoat, skirt.
Modales, manners, deportment.
Riquezas, riches.
Tenazas, tongs.
Tijeras, scissors.
Tinieblas, darkness.
Treguas, truce, cessation.
Víveres, provisions.

2. Those nouns which are rarely used in the plural either denote objects of which but one example exists, or are abstract nouns expressing qualities, sciences, trades, etc. The following may serve as specimens:—

La envidia, envy.
La fisiología, physiology.
El infierno, hell.
La previsión, foresight.
La prontitud, promptness.
La vejez, old age.

DISTINCTIONS BETWEEN SUBJECT AND OBJECT.

1303. In English the distinction between a noun as subject and as object is shown by its location; in Latin the distinction was made by means of case-endings, irrespective of location. In Spanish, however, case-endings are wanting as in English, while location has about as little effect upon the meaning as in Latin. The Spaniards, therefore, are put to considerable inconvenience to distinguish between subject and object, and do not always succeed as clearly as might be desired.

a. The only device in Spanish for distinguishing a noun as direct object (accusative) is by placing the preposition **á** before it. But as this preposition is the regular sign of the indirect object (dative), its application to a direct object vacillates between an endeavor on the one hand to prevent the

noun from being mistaken for subject, if the preposition were omitted, and on the other, to prevent its being mistaken for indirect object, if the preposition were employed. The effects of these restricting influences will be presented in detail.

b. The preposition **á** as the sign of the direct object, has no force as a preposition and conveys no meaning, but is a mere grammatical device for the sake of distinctness ; in its other uses,—namely, to designate the recipient of an action (indirect object), and to denote time, place or direction,—it has a true prepositional value and is to be translated by *on*, *at* or *to*. For the purposes of the present lesson the former use will be termed "*the distinctive* **á**," and the latter "*the prepositional* **á**."

1304. The distinctive **á** applies primarily to nouns representing determinate, known persons:—

Oía detrás de él **á** sus perseguidores.	He heard his pursuers behind him.
El general B . . ., después de haber derrotado **á** los rebeldes en muchos encuentros, entró en la capital el 8 de mayo.	General B . . ., after having routed the rebels in many encounters, entered the capital on the 8th of May.
El asesino corrió tras el vehículo y cuando tuvo á tiro seguro **á** su víctima, disparó el revólver.	The assassin ran after the carriage and, when he got his victim in sure range, fired the revolver.
Se ha arrestado ya por sospechas de connivencia **á** trece individuos.	They have already arrested thirteen persons upon suspicion of being accomplices.
Quería ver por última vez **á** su esposa y **á** sus hijos.	He wished to see his wife and children for the last time.

1305. It is therefore required before all proper names of persons under such circumstances:—

Enviaré **á** Diego en su lugar.	I will send James in his place.
Pablo y Juan aparecieron entonces á la derecha del camino, llevando **á** Benito como un cuerpo inerte.	Paul and John then appeared to the right of the road, carrying Benedict like an inanimate body.
Estoy leyendo **á** Quintana.	I am reading Quintana.
Admiro mucho **á** Wáshington.	I admire Washington very much.

1306. The distinctive **á** is further required before demonstrative, interrogative, relative or adjective pronouns denoting persons:—

No hallaron allí **á** ninguno de los obreros.	They did not find any of the workmen there.
Vimos **á** unos sumamente afanados, desidiosos **á** otros.	We saw some extremely diligent, others indolent.

¿Á quién recomienda el juez? — Whom does the judge recommend?
Saludé á cada una de las señoras. — I saluted each of the ladies.

1307. Also before personal pronouns in the redundant construction or in contrast:—

Me dejó á mí triste por alegrar á ella. — He left me sad so as to cheer her.
Me olvida á mí cuando le ve á él. — She forgets me when she sees him.

1308. Before words explaining an objective personal pronoun:—

Nos acogieron muy bien á mi hermana y á mí. — They received my sister and me very kindly.
Los miraban de reojo á la joven y á él. — They looked sidewise at the young lady and him.

1309. When the direct object of a verb is a geographical proper name, it takes the distinctive **á**—unless it be one which is regularly preceded by the definite article, in which case the preposition is not considered necessary:—

He visitado á Medellín. — I have visited Medellín.
Deseamos ver á París. — We wish to see Paris.
Subió el Amazonas desde su embocadura hasta sus fuentes. — He ascended the Amazon from its mouth to its source.
Los Estados Unidos quisieran anexarse el Canadá, y tal vez á Méjico también. — The United States would like to annex Canada, and perhaps Mexico also.
Cambiáronse los más afectuosos discursos con motivo de la amistad que une á Chile y la República Argentina. — The most friendly speeches were spoken on both sides about the friendship which unites Chile and the Argentine Republic.

1310. The distinctive **á** is not used before nouns denoting persons when preceded by a numeral, or which are in any way used indeterminately (i.e. not applying to known individuals):—

Derrotó trescientos enemigos con cuarenta escaramuzadores. — He routed three hundred of the enemy with forty skirmishers.
De poco sirve tener dependientes que no trabajan. — It is of little use to have clerks who do no work.

1311. When the accusative noun denotes an inanimate object or an insignificant animal, it does not take the distinctive **á**:—

El perro husmeaba la carne. — The dog scented the meat.
Esclarece cada una de sus ideas. — He explains each of his ideas.

La cocinera mata la gallina.	The cook kills the fowl.
Guisa el pollo.	She cooks the chicken.
Ahuyenta los gatos que le molestan con sus maullidos.	He frightens away the cats that bother him with their miaulings.

1312. When the accusative noun represents an animal regarded as intelligent or rational, it takes the distinctive **á**:—

Arma una trampa para coger **á** la zorra.	He sets a trap to catch the fox.
La bala hirió **al** tigre en la cadera.	The ball struck the tiger in the flank.
El niño estaba acariciando **al** gato, el cual contestaba con susurros de contento.	The boy was fondling the cat, which answered with purrs of contentment.

1313. When the verb has a direct and an indirect object, the direct object does not take the distinctive **á**, even though it refer to a person. This is to avoid ambiguity and the cacophony of two **á**'*s*; the indirect object has the greatest right to the preposition and therefore retains it:—

Abandonemos **á** ese hombre.	Let us abandon this man.
Abandonemos ese hombre **á** sus remordimientos.	Let us abandon this man to his remorse.
Mandaron atrás **al** muchacho.	They sent the boy back.
Mandaron el muchacho **á** casa.	They sent the boy home.
Envió su criado **al** correo.	He sent his servant to the post office.
Recomendó **al** gobernador su hijo, Don José.	He recommended his son Joseph to the governor.

1314. When the distinctive **á** would come before a word beginning with **a** and after a word ending with a vowel, it is omitted for the sake of euphony:—

Vió aquella ninfa.	He saw that nymph.
Logró ver **á** aquella ninfa.	He succeeded in seeing that nymph.

REMARK.—But if the object be a proper name, the **á** cannot be omitted:—

Encontré **á** Alfredo.	I met Alfred.
Ha ido **á** Argel.	He has gone to Algiers.

1315. When both subject and direct object denote things, the object takes the distinctive **á** when ambiguity would otherwise result on account of the freedom allowed in Spanish in the order of words:—

El bullicio siguió **al** silencio. **Al** silencio siguió el bullicio.	Tumult succeeded the silence.

El silencio siguió **al** bullicio. **Al** bullicio siguió el silencio.	Silence succeeded the tumult.
Alcanzó **al** vapor el yate.	The yacht overtook the steamer.
Alcanzó el vapor **al** yate.	The steamer overtook the yacht.

But if one of the terms be a person, which is usually the case, there is no danger of ambiguity, because when the person is object it is necessarily distinguished by **á**:—

Por fin venció el joven su pasión al juego.	The young man finally overcame his passion for gambling.
Por fin venció **al** joven su pasión al juego.	The passion for gambling at length overcame the young man.

REMARK.—It may not be amiss to repeat that, in such cases, if the meaning of the words be such as not to admit of double meaning, there is no need of the distinctive **á**:—

El río en este lugar había minado la ribera.	At this place the river had undermined the bank.
Animaba su rostro una sonrisa de inefable bondad.	A smile of ineffable kindness illumined her face.

1316. The employment of the distinctive **á** before a direct object denoting a person, depends largely upon the individuality attached to the object by the speaker:—

Aguardo un criado.	I am waiting for a servant (*unknown*).
Aguardo **á** un criado.	I am waiting for a servant (*known*).
Fueron á buscar un médico experimentado que conociera bien las enfermedades del país.	They went to look for an experienced physician who would be acquainted with the diseases of the country.
Fueron á buscar **á** un médico extranjero, que gozaba de una gran reputación.	They went for a foreign physician who enjoyed a great reputation.
Allí hallará amigos que le acojan bien.	He will find friends there who will receive him well.
Halló **á** amigos que le acogieron bien.	He found friends who received him well.

1317. For this reason the distinctive **á** is not required before plural nouns not preceded by an article or possessive pronoun,—or preceded by a definite article which denotes a general class and not particular individuals:—

Es preciso que un ejército tenga oficiales inteligentes.	An army must have intelligent officers.
El general llamó **á** los oficiales.	The general summoned the officers.

La anciana amaba los niños.	The old lady loved children.
La anciana amaba á sus hijos.	The old lady loved her children.

1318. Verbs of *naming, calling, considering,* etc., may take two direct objects—the true object and the predicate or thing asserted. The true object takes the distinctive **á**:—

Llamaba música á los rebuznos que emitía.	He called the brays which he uttered, music.
Consideramos pura pérdida de tiempo á la lectura de semejantes obras.	We consider the reading of such works pure waste of time.
Tantas lisonjas habían hecho vanidosa á la joven.	So much flattery had made the young girl vain.

1319. When a noun is compared by means of **como** with the direct object of a verb, it may receive or discard the distinctive **á** according to taste:—

Le festejaron como á un príncipe.	They regaled him like a prince.
La acogieron como á una hermana.	They received her like a sister.
Le miran como padre, y él los trata como hijos.	They look upon him as a father, and he treats them as if they were his children.

1320. Certain verbs usually applying only to things, have a double meaning when applied to persons, according as the object is preceded by the distinctive **á** or not:—

Los romanos robaron las sabinas.	The Romans carried off the Sabine women.
Las gitanas roban los niños.	The gipsy women steal children.
Las gitanas roban á los niños.	The gipsy women rob the children.
Esta mujer ha perdido su hijo.	This woman has lost her son.
Esta mujer perderá á su hijo.	This woman will spoil her son.
Por su negligencia perdió á su hijo.	By his negligence he caused his son's ruin.
Mi hija quiere un cochero.	My daughter wants a coachman.
Mi hija quiere á un cochero.	My daughter loves a coachman.

1321. Tener takes the distinctive **á** wnen it means *to hold,* but not when meaning *to have, possess*:—

Dos asistentes tuvieron al enfermo mientras que el cirujano hizo la operación.	Two assistants held the patient while the surgeon performed the operation.
Tengo un cocinero experimentado.	I have an experienced cook.
Tenemos un hermano en el extranjero.	We have a brother abroad.

REMARK.—Idiomatically, the object of **tener** may take the distinctive **á** when denoting a particular individual, if **tener** is merely equivalent to the verb *to be* :—

Tengo **á** mi chiquillo muy enfermo.	My little boy is very ill.
Tenemos **á** nuestro hermano en el extranjero.	Our brother is abroad.

1322. When the direct object of a verb is personified, it takes the distinctive **á**:—

Es un soldado que honra **á** su nación.	He is a soldier who honors his nation.
Las aves saludan **á** la Aurora.	The birds salute the dawn.
Llamó en vano **á** la muerte.	He invoked death in vain.

Conversely, when a noun denoting a person is considered impersonally or indeterminately, the distinctive **á** is omitted:—

El presidente aguardará la vuelta del ministro de guerra antes de nombrar los oficiales para el ejército.	The President will await the return of the Secretary of War before nominating the officers of the army.
La escuela de la guerra es la que forma los grandes generales.	The school of practical warfare is what forms great generals.
Toca al pueblo eligir sus diputados al congreso.	It devolves upon the people to elect their representatives to Congress.

1323. When an objective noun, or pronoun, which does not refer to an animate being, is liable by its position to be mistaken for subject, it is followed by an accusative personal pronoun of the third person, which repeats the noun and shows that it is object:—

La **atmósfera la** componía una densa niebla que se extendía y alzaba en la altura, interceptando la vista del cielo.	The air was composed of a dense fog which spread and rose upwards, intercepting the view of the sky.
En 1849 volvió á Bundelkund, donde se casó con una noble india, cuyo **corazón lo** había herido como el suyo la desgracia de su patria.	In 1849 he returned to Bundelkund, where he married an Indian noblewoman whose heart had been wounded like his own by the misfortunes of their native land.
Las tribus de estas comarcas habían permanecido en estado salvaje, refractarias á toda idea de civilización é impacientes por sacudir el yugo europeo. **Esto lo** sabía	The tribes of these regions had remained in a savage state, refractory to all idea of civilization and impatient to shake off the European yoke. This, Nana Sahib knew per-

perfectamente Nana Sahib, y allí había buscado asilo para librarse de las pesquisas de la policía inglesa y esperar la hora de suscitar el movimiento insurreccional.	fectly, and he had sought a refuge there to escape the pursuit of the English police and to await the hour for instigating the insurrectionary movement.

REMARK.—The subjects in these sentences are respectively **niebla**, **desgracia**, and **Nana Sahib**.

1324. **Á**, as the mere sign of the accusative, is omitted when it would conflict with another **á** having a true prepositional value:—

Prefiero **el** discreto al valiente.	I prefer the discreet to the brave.
Antepongo **el** Ariosto al Tasso.	I consider Ariosto superior to Tasso.
Convidó **todos** sus amigos á la boda.	He invited all his friends to the wedding.
Llamó **los** oficiales á una conferencia.	He called the officers to a conference.

REMARK.—A proper name *not preceded by an article* cannot, when direct object, dispense with the distinctive **á**, and is to be avoided under these circumstances, unless some qualifying word and an article can be placed before it. Thus it would be inadmissible to say: **presentaron Zenobia al vencedor**, *they presented Zenobia to the victor*; but this could be made passable by changing it thus:—

Presentaron la cautiva Zenobia, *or* la reina Zenobia al vencedor.	They presented the captive Zenobia, *or* Queen Zenobia, to the victor.

When the repetition of **á** is inevitable, the accusative precedes:—

El traidor Judas vendió á Jesús á los sacerdotes y fariseos.	The betrayer Judas sold Jesus to the priests and Pharisees.
Convidó á Juan á una partida de caza.	He invited John to a hunting-party.

But if both terms were proper names of persons, without articles, some other mode of expression would have to be adopted, for neither of the following constructions would be admissible:—

Recomendaron Pedro á Juan.
Recomendaron á Pedro á Juan. } They recommended Peter to John.

EXERCISE LVI.

A period of peace and *commercial activity* followed a decade of waste and *civil* strife. The picture *represented* Spain as *Niobe* (3) weeping over the loss [1] of her *American* children. The poisonous shafts of envy finally conquered this great *general* whom the open attacks of *armed* foes had never made to retreat. It is our duty to aid the unfortunate. They found the old man dead in his arm-chair. The hunter tried to kill the hare and

shot the dog. It is a well-known fact among farmers that young trees *exterminate* thistles. In this case the verb governs the infinitive.

Never was a common means of *intellectual communication* more needed than at the present day. *Different communities*, in spite of *differences* of race and government, tend to fraternize under the *influence* of similar *institutions*, similar pursuits and similar tastes. The spirit of the age [2] impels *nations* to *form political* and *commercial* alliances on all points of the globe, and to blend themselves into one great *community*. Scientific associations successively attract to the great *centers* of *activity* the *noblest* intellects of the *civilized* world. Isolated labor is everywhere giving way to the spirit of *association*; and instead of wrapping their discoveries in the veil of mystery, men of all countries diffuse them as a means of *universal* advancement. The reciprocal knowledge of living languages cannot fail to [3] extend our *social relations* and to render *international* intercourse more *frequent* and more useful; it would second the work of *civilization* by promoting the progress of the arts and sciences, doing away with *national* prejudices, and drawing closer the bonds which ought to unite all the members of the great *human* family.

CHAPTER XXVI.

EMPLOYMENT AND OMISSION OF THE ARTICLES. THE NEUTER GENDER.

1325. The leading distinctions in the use of the articles in Spanish have been given in Lesson XV. But there are some general principles to be deduced and many minor peculiarities to be noted which require fuller treatment than was given in the early part of this work.

☞ The learner will find that in Spanish the definite article is of more frequent occurrence and the indefinite article of less frequent occurrence than in English.

1326. The definite article is merely a demonstrative pronoun abbreviated [4]; and being of shortened form and of frequent use, it is in value weaker than the demonstrative pronouns. While the demonstrative character of the latter is direct, that of the

---

[1] Llorando la pérdida . . . [2] del siglo. [3] See § 1033.

[4] An early form of the definite article in Spanish was *el, ela, elo, elos, elas*; the initial *e* was subsequently discarded from the last four. But *ela*, before words beginning with *a*, lost the final *a* instead of the initial *e*, a usage which still holds good before nouns beginning with *accented* **a**.

article is logical or mental. Their nature is the same, as will be seen by a comparison of the following sentences:—

Esta demostración que voy á exponer.	This demonstration which I am about to present.
La demostración que voy á exponer.	The demonstration which I am about to present.
Aquellas colinas que protegen la rada contra los vientos del este.	Those hills which protect the roadstead against the easterly winds.
Las colinas que protegen la rada contra los vientos del este.	The hills which protect the roadstead against the easterly winds.

Latin and Russian, two very important languages, have no definite article, but the demonstratives *ille* in the former and **ТОТЪ** in the latter are frequently used with that value. The article, in all the Romance languages, is some modification of the Latin *ille*.

1327. The definite article is applied, in both Spanish and English, as follows:—

a. To some particular person, thing or idea which is known to, or understood by, the person addressed (§ 211):—

El contrato susodicho.	The aforementioned agreement.
La ciudad está triste ahora.	The city is dull now.
¿Á qué hora estará abierto **el** mercado?	At what time will the market be open?
Allí está un sereno en la esquina.	There is a policeman on the corner.
Allí está **el** sereno en la esquina.	There is the policeman on the corner.

b. To any of the elements or features of nature, of which only one can be supposed to be under consideration:—

El cielo; la tierra; el horizonte.	The sky; the earth; the horizon.
El sol; el alba; la vía láctea.	The sun; the dawn; the milky way.
El arco iris; el fuego fatuo.	The rainbow; the Will-o'-the-wisp.
Pasar el meridiano; estar en el cenit.	To pass the meridian; to be in the zenith.

c. To single animals, plants and gems, as representatives of their respective species:—

La zorra es celebrada por su astucia.	The fox is celebrated for his cunning.
La cigüeña es un ave de paso.	The stork is a bird of passage.
El nenúfar es una de las más graciosas plantas acuáticas.	The water-lily is one of the most graceful aquatic plants.
El topacio es una piedra trasparente de un hermoso color amarillo.	The topaz is a transparent stone of a beautiful yellow color.

d. To an individual taken as a representative of any of the divisions of the human race or of society:—

El chino ; el negro ; el indio.	The Chinaman ; the negro; the Indian.
El sereno ; el fabriquero ; el lechuguino.	The policeman ; the manufacturer ; the dude.
Los intereses del obrero.	The interests of the working-man.

e. To any of the members or faculties of man, taken in a general sense:—

El hígado ; el corazón.	The liver ; the heart.
La memoria ; el alma.	The memory ; the soul.
El estómago es un órgano de que mucho se abusa.	The stomach is a much-abused organ.

f. To nouns restricted in the extent of their application by any defining words:—

La flor del cacto.	The flower of the cactus.
El huevo del colibrí es más pequeño que un garbanzo.	The egg of the humming-bird is smaller than a pea.
El interés con que se mira esta cuestión.	The interest with which this question is regarded.
Los locales donde se encuentra dicha formación mineral.	The localities where this mineral formation is found.

g. To epithets or nicknames immediately following a proper name of a person:—

Pedro el cruel.	Peter the cruel.
Isabel la Católica.	Isabella the Catholic.
Alejandro el grande.	Alexander the great.

h. To names of oceans, seas and rivers:—

El Pacífico ; el Adriático ; el Mediterráneo.	The Pacific ; the Adriatic ; the Mediterranean.
El Plata ; el Río Bravo del Norte.	The La Plata ; the Rio Grande.

1328. The leading difference between the Spanish and the English use of the definite article is that it is employed in Spanish before any noun used in a general sense as the representative of the entire class or species to which it belongs:—

La ciencia moderna ha sometido al tiempo y al espacio.	Modern science has conquered time and space.
Los estragos del tiempo.	The ravages of time.
El dedo del destino nos señala una carrera larga, próspera y brillante.	The finger of destiny points out to us a long, prosperous and brilliant career.
Los Aztecas conocían el oro la	The Aztecs were acquainted with

plata, el cobre y el estaño, pero no sabían labrar el hierro.	gold, silver, copper and tin, but they did not know how to work iron.
El porfirio es más duro que el granito.	Porphyry is harder than granite.

1329. When the noun is used partitively, that is, when only a portion of a substance or class is under consideration, the article is omitted in both languages:—

En la sierra costanera hay extensas canteras de mármol y alabastro.	In the coast chain there are extensive quarries of marble and alabaster.
Los densos bosques rinden cinchona, zarzaparilla, copaiba, caucho, resina, cedro, caoba y palos de tinte.	The dense forests produce cinchona, sarsaparilla, copaiba, rubber, resin, cedar, mahogany and dye-woods.
Valparaíso es notable por su riqueza, dando cebada, frijoles, trébol, frutas, trigo y cáñamo.	Valparaiso is notable for its fertility, producing barley, beans, clover, fruits, wheat and hemp.

1330. The definite article is required in Spanish before adjectives employed as nouns and representing an entire class:—

El bueno no siempre se escapa de la calumnia.	The good man does not always escape calumny.
Los ricos deben ser caritativos con los pobres.	The rich should be charitable to the poor.
Los sabios son modestos, y los valientes, misericordiosos.	The wise are modest, and the brave, merciful.

1331. The definite article is further required in Spanish before the four cardinal points, the seasons of the year, and the names of the week and month (except in dating letters):—

El Sur, *or* el mediodía.	South.
El Oeste, el poniente *or* occidente.	West.
En la primavera renace la vida.	In the Spring, life awakens anew.
Llegué aquí el sábado.	I got here Saturday.
Todos los domingos.	Every Sunday.
Saldrá el 24 de Junio.	He will start the 24th of June.

1332. The definite article is required in Spanish before many nouns, when they are governed by a preposition, which discard it in English:—

Á la ciudad ; á la iglesia.	To town ; to church.
Á la escuela ; al despacho.	To school ; to office.
Al mercado ; al Congreso.	To market ; to Congress.
En la ciudad ; en la iglesia.	In town : at church.

En el colegio ; en la escuela.	At college ; at school.
Á la noche ; al cuidado de.	At night ; in care of.

1333. The article may be separated from its noun by adjectives, adjective phrases, or qualifying phrases having the value of adjectives:—

Subiendo por el pendiente y mal trazado sendero.	Ascending by the steep and irregular path.
La sin par corrección de dibujo.	The unequaled correctness of drawing.
Los en verdad atrevidos pensamientos de D. Cosmos.	The truly daring thoughts of Don Cosmos.
Se adelantó á recibir las llaves de la poco há orgullosa y ahora rendida ciudad morisca.	He advanced to receive the keys of the lately haughty but now surrendered city of the Moors.

1334. The definite article is occasionally used before an entire clause preceded by the conjunction **que**:—

Mucho me alegra **el que** venga V.	I am glad that you are coming.
El que los enemigos estuviesen á dos días de marcha, y **el que** se les hubiese entregado sin resistencia la fortaleza, ha sido desmentido por avisos auténticos.	It has been denied by reliable reports that the enemy were two days distant, and that the fortress had been surrendered to them without resistance.

1335. The contraction **al, del,** does not take place when the article is part of a title considered as quoted:—

¿Ha visto V. la extraordinaria de **El Globo**?	Have you seen the extra edition of *The Globe*?
Rodrigo Díaz de Vivar es generalmente conocido bajo el sobrenombre de **el Cid**.	Rodrigo Diaz de Vivar is generally known by the surname of *the Cid*.
Pocas comedias de Calderón aventajan á "**El** postrero duelo de España."	Few of Calderon's comedies surpass "The Last Sorrow of Spain."

1336. In general, the proper names of nations or countries may be used optionally with or without the definite article, while those of cities, towns and villages do not admit it. But to this there are numerous exceptions. Some names, such as **Venezuela, Méjico, Chile,** etc., never take the article; while, on the contrary, there are certain names of countries, and even of cities and towns, which are regularly preceded by the definite

article. Of these the following are the most frequently met with:—

El Brasil, Brazil.
El Cairo, Cairo.
El Callao, Callao.
El Canadá, Canada.
La Coruña, Corunna.
El Ecuador, Ecuador.
El Ferrol, Ferrol.
La Florida, Florida.
La Guaira, La Guayra.
La Habana, Havana.
El Havre, Havre.
El Japón, Japan.
La Mancha (*a Spanish province*).
El Paraguay, Paraguay.
El Perú, Peru.
La Rioja (*a Spanish province*).
El Uruguay, Uruguay.

1337. With regard to those names of countries which may or may not take the article, the leading principle is that when one of such is the grammatical subject, the employment of the article is optional; and that otherwise it should be omitted:—

Tenía además el monarca de España en su poder el reino de Napoles, al que **la** Francia abrigaba pretensiones.
The king of Spain had moreover in his power the kingdom of Naples, to which France harbored pretensions.

Así concluyeron por entonces las célebres guerras, en que España había humillado dos veces á las principales naciones coaligadas.
Thus ended for the time being the celebrated wars, in which Spain had twice humbled the principal allied nations.

REMARK.—But whether used as subject or not, the name of a country preferably takes the article when stress is laid upon its extent, power or dignity. Thus the article would be superfluous in the following sentence, since it speaks of an ordinary occurrence:—

El embajador de *la* Francia presentó sus credenciales al presidente.
The ambassador of France presented his credentials to the President.

But it would be very properly used, and add emphasis, in the following connection:—

El embajador se quejó de no haber sido tratado con las distinciones debidas á un representante de la Francia.
The ambassador complained of not having been treated with the distinction due to a representative of France.

1338. The definite article is required if the name of the country is qualified by an adjective:—

La España meridional.
Southern Spain.

El Asia rusa.
Russian Asia.

La Guayana holandesa.
Dutch Guiana.

Also where the name of the country is not a proper name, but a descriptive title:—

Los Países Bajos.	The Netherlands.
Los Estados Unidos.	The United States.
La República Argentina.	The Argentine Republic.

1339. Proper names of persons and animals, not preceded by an adjective, do not take the definite article; when qualified by an adjective the article is employed:—

Juan, Pedro y José salieron á la pesca.	John, Peter and Joseph went out fishing.
Don Quijote ensilló á Rocinante.	Don Quixote saddled Rozinante
La pequeña Lolita.	Little Dolores.
El viejo Tomás.	Old Thomas.

REMARK.—The adjective **Santo** is an exception in the names of saints, in which it is considered part of the name :—

El día de San Juan.	St. John's day (midsummer).

1340. When a proper name is preceded by an adjective, the preposition **de** is sometimes interpolated:—

La tonta de Juana.	That silly Jane.
El pobre de Benito no sabía qué parte tomar.	Poor Benedict did not know what course to adopt.

1341. Proper names of women sometimes take the definite article in very familiar conversation; and in reports of legal proceedings, the article is sometimes used before a proper name with the value of the English *the said*:—

He visto á la Mariquita en la ópera.	I saw Mollie at the opera.
Cuando vea V. á la Pérez, dígale que quiero verla.	When you see that Perez girl tell her I want to see her.
Y declaró el Menéndez que había visto al Pepe Blanco en la noche del viernes, etc.	And this Menendez testified that he had seen the said Joe White on Friday night, etc.

1342. The proper names of the following classic Italian poets take the definite article in imitation of the Italian usage[1]:—

El Petrarca, el Ariosto, el Tasso, el Dante.	Petrarch, Ariosto, Tasso, Dante.

REMARK.—The names of modern Italians do not take the article.

---

[1] In Italian, *il Petrarca, l'Ariosto, il Tasso* and *l'Alighieri* (never *il Dante*, since *Dante* is not a family name).

1343. Proper names take the definite article when they are used as common nouns to express the character of the individual; or to denote his statue, his book, his writings, etc.:—

Bolívar es el Wáshington de Colombia.	Bolivar is the Washington of Colombia.
El Señor Quintana es el Solon de la república Argentina.	Mr. Quintana is the Solon of the Argentine Republic.
La Venus de Médici, el Apolo del Belvidere.	The Venus of Medici, the Apollo Belvidere.
Tráigame V. el Salvá.	Bring me Salvá.
Quiero pedir prestado el Plinio de su señor padre.	I want to borrow your father's Pliny.
¿Ha leído V. el Quijote ó el Gil Blas?	Have you read Don Quixote or Gil Blas?

REMARK.—The definite article is not used before the titles of **Don, Doña fray**, *brother* (of a religious order), **frey**, *brother* (of a military order), **sor**, *sister* (of nuns), and **San** or **Santo, Santa**, *Saint*; and the foreign titles of **monsieur, monseñor, mister, madama, miss, sir, lord** or **milord, ladi** or **miladi.** Before all other titles the definite article is required when the individual is spoken of; but not when he is addressed (*cf.* § 227):—

La señora y las señoritas de Medina.	Mrs. Medina and the Misses Medina
El coronel Vaquero.	Colonel Vaquero.
La hermana San Sulpicio.	Sister St. Sulpicio.
El senador Valera.	Senator Valera.

1344. The indefinite article is not used in Spanish before nouns in the predicate when they are employed in a general sense as adjectives:—

Su marido es título.	Her husband is a nobleman.
Don Joaquín es francmasón.	Joachim is a mason (freemason).
Es ama de llaves en casa del Sr. B.	She is housekeeper at Mr. B.'s.
Derribar la puerta, fué obra de algunos segundos.	To break down the door was the work of a few seconds.
Su padre era miembro de la Sociedad Real Geográfica.	His father was a member of the Royal Geographical Society.

REMARK.—The article is employed, however, before the predicate noun when the latter is specified by an adjective or qualifying phrase:—

Es un gran embustero.	He is a great liar.
Ella es una pobre costurera	She is a poor seamstress.
Era un artista muy célebre.	He was a very celebrated artist.

Moreover, the predicate noun takes an article when it is emphatic and its quality is considered as a leading characteristic. Thus to say of a person,

es cobarde, merely charges him with cowardice; but to say, **es un cobarde**, conveys the idea that cowardice is a dominant fault:—

Son unos mentecatos si piensan así.	They are downright fools if they think so.
Su hermano es un holgazán.	His brother is a regular do-nothing.

1345. The article is omitted before a few nouns preceded by a verb of motion or of rest:—

Voy á casa, á misa, á palacio.	I am going home, to mass, to the palace.
Estar en casa; salir de casa.	To be at home; to leave home.
Al volver de caza.	On returning from hunting.

1346. It is omitted before many nouns used in an indeterminate sense, with a verb, and expressing a concrete idea:—

No tengo tiempo para mirarlo.	I haven't *the* time to look at it.
Tenía gran inclinación de pegarle un tiro.	I had *a* great mind to fire at him.
Tengo intención de ir allí.	I intend to go there.
Dar filo á un útil.	To put *an* edge on a tool.
Quiere ver mundo.	He wants to see *the* world.
Es tiempo de que Juan piense en tomar mujer.	It is time for John to think of taking *a* wife.
Pedro ha abierto escuela.	Peter has opened *a* school.
José ha puesto tienda.	Joseph has set up *a* store.
¿Sabe V. si la hija lleva dote?	Do you know if the daughter has *a* dowry?

1347. The article is elegantly omitted in enumerations:—

Viejos y niños escuchaban con atención sus palabras.	Old and young listened attentively to his words.
Padre é hijo fueron á cual más temerosos de Dios.	Father and son were equally pious.

1348. The definite article is frequently omitted in proverbs, of which a terse style is a leading characteristic:—

Dádivas quebrantan peñas.	Gifts move mountains.
Á menudo pagan justos por pecadores.	The innocent often pay for the guilty.
Pobreza no es vileza.	Poverty is no crime.
Huéspeda hermosa, mal para la bolsa.	A handsome landlady is bad for the purse.

1349. It is usual to omit both definite and indefinite article

before a noun in apposition (i.e., when it is explanatory of a preceding noun):—

En la primavera de 1877, D. F. P. Moreno, explorador argentino de considerable reputación, visitó los lagos que forman las cabeceras del río Santa Cruz.	In the spring of 1877, Don F. P. Moreno, *an* Argentine explorer of considerable note, visited the lakes which form the head-waters of the River Santa Cruz.
Valparaíso, puerto principal de Chile, es uno de los más grandes emporios del comercio de Sud América.	Valparaiso, *the* principal port of Chile, is one of the greatest commercial emporiums of South America.
Del curuguati, planta parásita, se hacen sogas y cables.	From the curuguaty, *a* parasitic plant, are made ropes and cables.
Quito, capital del Ecuador, posee un clima delicioso.	Quito, *the* capital of Ecuador, has a delightful climate.

REMARK.—The definite article, however, is used before the noun in apposition when it merely serves to identify a person who is well known both to speaker and hearers:—

Mi hermano el ingeniero.	My brother the engineer.
Stanley el explorador africano.	Stanley the African explorer.
El señor Édison, el célebre inventor Norte-Americano.	Mr. Edison, the celebrated American inventor.

1350. When the noun in apposition is preceded by a superlative adjective, the definite article is required, unless the adjective be one of those which have a separate form for the superlative or which embody a superlative meaning[1]:—

Antioquia, provincia la más rica de Colombia.	Antioquia, the richest province of Colombia.
Santa María, la colonia más antigua del continente sud-americano, fué fundada en el Golfo de Darién, en el año 1510.	Santa Maria, the oldest colony of the South-American continent, was founded in the Gulf of Darien in 1510.
El Brasil, último país de Sud América en declarar la independencia, . . .	Brazil, the last country of South America to declare independence, . . .
El Cayambe, único volcán situado inmediatamente debajo del ecuador, es una de las cimas principales de la Cordillera Oriental.	Cayambe, the only volcano situated directly under the equator, is one of the principal peaks of the Eastern Chain.

[1] See, also, § 576.

1351. Neither definite nor indefinite article is employed at the head of printed titles of books and articles:—

Nuevo Método Práctico para Aprender el Alemán.	A New Practical Method for Learning German.
Tratado Elemental de Mecánica.	An Elementary Treatise on Mechanics.
Historia de la Conquista de Méjico.	The History of the Conquest of Mexico.

1352. The article is omitted before a noun in many phrases of an adverbial or prepositional character:—

Con motivo de su mala salud.	On account of his ill health.
Á esquina de la Calle Ancha.	On *the* corner of Broad street.
En nombre de Dios.	In *the* name of God.
Á orillas del Guadiana.	On *the* banks of the Guadiana.
En gran manera.	In *a* high degree.
Á tiro de piedra de la casa.	At *a* stone's throw from the house.
Salí con objeto de buscarle.	I went out with *the* intention of looking for him.

THE NEUTER GENDER.

1353. It has been seen that nouns have but two genders—masculine and feminine. The neuter gender applies to the definite article, the personal pronoun of the third person, adjectives, past participles, the adjective pronouns, and occasionally to adverbs. It is, moreover, limited to the singular number.

1354. The only separate neuter forms are those of the three demonstrative pronouns, **esto, eso, aquello**; the definite article, **lo**; and the personal pronoun of the third person singular, **ello**, *acc.* **lo**:—

Esto me agrada más.	This pleases me more.
Eso no me parece practicable.	That does not seem feasible to me.
Aquello ya no sucede en el día de hoy.	That no longer happens nowadays.
Lo hermoso debe combinarse con lo útil.	The beautiful must be combined with the useful.
No hicieron caso de ello.	They took no notice of it.
En cuanto á mí, no lo creo.	As for me I do not believe it.

1355. Some other adjective pronouns, although lacking a separate form for the neuter, employ the masculine with a neuter value:—

Todo, everything.	**Mucho**, much.
Tanto, so much.	**Poco**, little.
Demasiado, too much.	**Harto**, quite enough.

When so used, these words are referred to by neuter pronouns:—

Aunque tengo poco, estoy contento con **eso**.	Although I have little, I am content with that.
Debe haber algo de misterioso en su conducta, mas yo no acierto á descubrirl**o**.	There must be something mysterious in his conduct, but I do not succeed in discovering it.
Aprendió mucho en el colegio, pero en saliendo de él **lo** olvidó.	He learned a great deal at college, but he forgot it on leaving.

1356. The neuters of the remaining adjective pronouns, and of adjectives and past participles, are formed by prefixing the neuter article **lo**:—

Lo mío, **lo** suyo.	What is mine, his.
Lo ameno, **lo** distinguido.	What is agreeable, distinguished.

The effect of placing **lo** before such words is to form a substantive phrase expressing the quality in question considered abstractly:—

Como no parecía dudable **lo referido** por el indio.	As what was told by the Indian did not seem questionable.
La lana de la llama nunca está grasienta ni sucia como la del carnero, y la parte tomada de los lomos rivaliza con ella en **lo sedoso y suave**.	The wool of the llama is never greasy or dirty like that of the sheep, and the part taken from the flanks rivals the latter in softness and silkiness.
Todo esto me parece pecaminoso olvido de **lo eterno** por **lo temporal**.	All this seems to me a sinful forgetfulness of what is eternal for what is temporal.

REMARK.—**Lo** may be similarly (though rarely) applied to a noun to show that its quality is taken abstractly:—

Si el poeta se ciñe á la verdad ¿de qué le sirve **lo** poeta?	If the poet limits himself to the truth, of what use is his being a poet?
En Isabel la católica no era menos grande **lo** mujer que **lo** reina.	In Isabella the Catholic her character as a woman was no less great than her character as a queen.
Estos institutos militares religiosos, en que se confundían **lo** monje y **lo** caballero, . . .	These military-religious institutes, in which monasticism and knighthood were combined, . . .

1357. The substantive nature of the adjective or participle preceded by **lo** is especially manifest when followed by **de** and a noun. Such constructions generally require the employment of a noun in rendering them into English:—

V. sabe lo firme de mi resolución.	You know the firmness of my resolve.
La marea estaba en lo más bajo del reflujo.	The tide was at the lowest ebb.
Traté de demostrarle lo necio y lo inútil del proyecto.	I tried to prove to him the folly and uselessness of the project.
Continuaba leyendo el estudiante sin considerar lo avanzado de la hora.	The student kept on reading without considering the lateness of the hour.

1358. A curious modification of the neuter applied to adjectives is met with when they are followed by the relative **que** and the verb *to be*, or one of its substitutes. In that case the adjective does not agree with the neuter **lo**, but with the noun subject of the relative clause; or more strictly, **lo** does not agree with the adjective. The construction can be better exemplified than defined. It cannot be translated literally:—

Lo melancólica que está la ciudad.	The sadness that pervades the city.
Lo convenientes que fueron en otros tiempos, y lo útiles que pueden ser todavía.	Their suitableness in other days, and their possible utility still.
Lo quiméricos que nos parecían todos sus proyectos.	The visionary character which seemed to us inherent in all his plans.
Lo divertida que se pasó la noche.	The entertaining manner in which they passed the night.
Lo enfermas que se sienten.	The severity of their illness.
Lo indiferentes que se mostraban.	The degree of indifference which they exhibited.
Lo desprovista que se halla de municiones la fortaleza.	The limited supply of munitions in the fortress.

REMARK.—The same construction is likewise applicable to adverbs:—

Lo bien que habla.	The able manner in which he speaks.
Lo aprisa que corrían.	The rapidity with which they ran.
Lo diestramente que desvió el golpe.	The dextrous manner in which he parried the stroke.

1359. The construction in question has sometimes a trace of the exclamatory value of **cuán**, *how*:—

Ahora que fué preciso separarme de Doña Isabelita, comprendí de repente lo muy querida que se había hecho para mí en menos de dos semanas.	Now that it was necessary to part from Bessie, I suddenly realized how very dear she had become to me in less than two weeks.
No puede V. figurarse lo hermosa que se ha puesta mi hija desde que V. la vió.	You cannot imagine how beautiful my daughter has grown since you saw her.

REMARK.—By transposing the order, it will be seen that the construction is similar to the absolute use of **lo** explained in § 452 :—

¡ Lo que es hermosa aquella actriz !	How beautiful that actress is !
No me conoció por lo que yo venia disfrazado.	He did not recognize me because I was so [thoroughly] disguised.

1360. The neuter forms of the pronouns (**esto, eso, aquello,** and **ello,** *acc.* **lo**) do not refer to single words, but reproduce entire previous clauses or propositions:—

Si se hubiera sabido en Chárleston que el hijo de Juan Gárdner se había puesto al servicio del ejército nordista, seguramente hubiera tenido **esto** fatales consecuencias para el dueño de la plantación de Bella Vista.	If it had been known in Charleston that the son of John Gardner had entered the Northern army, this [knowledge] would certainly have had fatal consequences for the master of Bellview plantation.
Eso parece estar en contradicción consigo mismo.	That appears to be in contradiction with itself.
Todo **ello** indicaba, como es fácil comprender, que las autoridades no estaban dispuestas á hacer nada.	It all indicated, as is easily understood, that the authorities were not disposed to do anything.
Se habla de una gran derrota sufrida por las armas de los aliados; pero no se da crédito á ello.	There is talk of a great defeat suffered by the armies of the allies ; but no credit is given to it.
Me dijeron que la tropa acababa de fusilar á los dos contrabandistas, y que el pueblo había querido impedirlo.	They told me that the soldiers had just shot the two smugglers, and that the populace had wanted to prevent it.

1361. By extension, **ello** may represent an idea that has not been expressed, but is only in the mind of the speaker:—

Ello es que debemos mirarnos como muy afortunados.	The fact is, we ought to consider ourselves very lucky.
Ello es que siempre su conducta ha sido para mí un misterio.	The fact is, his conduct has always been a mystery to me.
Ello era que la sangre corría de ambos campeones.	The fact was that blood was flowing from both combatants.

REMARK.—**Ello** occasionally stands isolated at the beginning of a sentence, with the value of *in fact* .—

Ello, es preciso indágar qué vida lleva.	Fact is, it is necessary to find out what kind of life he leads.

1362. It is customary, after a second verb, to repeat a predicate noun, adjective, participle or adverb by means of the neuter **lo**:—

La noche fué tan tranquila como lo había sido el día.
The night was as calm as the day had been.

Esta constelación no está situada tan cerca del polo antárctico como la estrella polar lo está del polo norte.
This constellation is not situated so near to the Antarctic pole as the pole star is to the north pole.

Se comprende que una costa tan expuesta á los golpes del huracán, y batida de frente, lo fuera con una fuerza de que ninguna descripción puede dar idea.
It is plain that a coast so exposed to the fury of the hurricane, and beaten upon directly, would be so with a violence that no description can give an idea of.

Mi hermano se precia de ser poeta; mas ni lo es ni lo será nunca.
My brother flatters himself that he is a poet; but he neither is nor ever will be one.

REMARK.—When the noun is not predicate, the demonstrative agrees with it:—

Si gozo de buena salud, la debo al ejercicio y á la temperancia.
If I enjoy good health, I owe it to exercise and temperance.

Si estoy bueno, lo debo al ejercicio y á la temperancia.
If I am well, I owe it to exercise and temperance.

1363. Although the infinitive, when used as a verbal noun, is preceded by the masculine article, it is nevertheless logically a neuter, and is therefore reproduced by a neuter pronoun:—

Estábamos determinados á partir, pero hubo dificultades en ello, y tuvimos que diferirlo.
We were prepared to start, but there were obstacles to our doing so, and we had to postpone it.

El estar tan ignorante y embrutecida una parte del pueblo es muy deplorable, y no podemos atribuirlo á otra cosa que á la distribución desigual del dinero.
The fact of a part of the people being so ignorant and degraded is very deplorable, and we cannot attribute it to aught else than the unequal distribution of money.

REMARK.—If we were to substitute true nouns for the above infinitives, the pronouns would be masculine or feminine accordingly, as required:—

Estábamos determinados á la partida, pero tuvimos que diferirla.
We were prepared for the departure, but had to postpone it.

La ignorancia y el embrutecimiento de una parte del pueblo son muy deplorables, y no podemos atribuirlos á otra cosa, etc.
The ignorance and degradation of a part of the people is very deplorable, and we cannot attribute them to aught else, etc.

1364. The neuter **ello** is the only one of the personal pronouns that lacks a terminal form in the accusative; hence although we may say in the masculine:—

Yo le conozco á él.
I know him.

We cannot say in the neuter:—

Yo lo entiendo *á ello.*	I understand it.

But in the dative it has two forms:—

Como no pareciese suficiente lo declarado por los testigos, se creyó necesario agregarle (*or* agregar á ello) el reconocimiento de los peritos.	Lest the testimony of the witnesses might not seem sufficient, it was thought necessary to add to it the opinion of the experts.
Á lo dado no se le debe mirar ni el pelo, ni el tamaño. (*Refrán.*)	We must not look a gift-horse in the mouth. (*Proverb.*)

Exercise LVII.

Associated with[1] *Atzcapotzalco* there are many *curious* legends, the most *notable* of which is a *version* of the *Malinche* (*f.*) myth that in one form or another[2] crops out all over Mexico.[3] If the traveler continues eastward along the highway at the back of the monastery, he will come, at a distance of about a mile,[4] to *Zancopinca*, where there is a pond of fresh water beside which is[5] a ruined aqueduct. In[6] the pond, as in a *palace* of *crystal*, the *Malinche* lives for half[7] of each day,—the other half being spent in the spring of *Chapultepec*. But whereas at (*en*) *Chapultepec* she is a benign spirit, here she appears to be a spirit of much *malignity*. With a song of *infinite* sweetness she lures to the pond unwary passers-by, and when they reach the brink her *extraordinary* beauty completes the *fatal* conquest that her wickedly sweet voice has begun. It is most dangerous to pass near this place in the very early morning[8] or at nightfall, for (*pues*) at these times (*horas*) it is that her siren song is heard. Whoever hears this song, unless he wish to disappear forever from among the living, must close his ears and with all *possible* speed hasten far away. If he does not take these *heroic* measures for his *preservation*, he will feel a soft languor creeping over him,[9] dulling his senses yet filling him with an *ineffable* delight; slowly but *irresistibly* he will be drawn toward the pond, and when he reaches it and there sees beckoning to him the fair *Malinche*, he will surely cast himself into its clear depths and never more be known among men. The old Indian who will tell this story *possibly* will add, telling it close to the ear[10] of his listener in a very *confidential* tone, that in the depths[11] of this pond lie hidden the treasures of *Guatemotzín*, the hiding-place of which, even under the *cruel* torture to which *Cortés* subjected him, he refused to reveal.

---

[1] En conexión con . . . [2] bajo diversas formas . . . [3] por todo Méjico. [4] á cosa de una milla de distancia. [5] á cuyo lado se halla . . . [6] dentro de . . . [7] durante la mitad . . . [8] por la mañana muy temprano. [9] sentirá que le cautiva una languidez agradable. [10] junto al oído. [11] en el fondo.

CHAPTER XXVII.

FURTHER REMARKS ON THE OBJECTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

I. ENCLITIC USE.

1365. The objective forms of the personal pronouns are applicable only in connection with a verb or a verbal derivative. When they precede the verb, they stand separately; when they follow, they are appended to the verb. This latter use is called *enclitic*. Some forms of the verb require the enclitic use; with others it is inadmissible; while in a large class of cases it is optional. Yet when optional, the use of enclitics is rhetorical and distinctive of a literary, as opposed to a colloquial, style. Moreover they are not applicable, under all circumstances, even to the same verbal form. Hence their employment is rather rare.

We will treat the various verbal forms in detail.

Indicative:—

1366. With the indicative mood, the enclitic use of the pronouns is optional, although most frequently found in connection with the imperfect and aorist tenses. The choice depends upon the location of the verb, the general principle requiring it to stand at the beginning of the sentence:—

Dígolo porque creo en la justicia de su pretensión.	I say it because I believe in the justice of his claim.
Preparábaseles una recepción regia.	They were preparing a regal reception for them.
Mandóles que se detuviesen.	He ordered them to stop.
Recibióseles con extraordinarias demostraciones de júbilo.	He was received with unusual expressions of joy.

1367. When the verb, at the beginning of an independent clause, is preceded by one of the conjunctions **y, ó, mas** or **pero,** the enclitic use is quite permissible:—

Apoyóse la joven en el respaldo del sillón, y **púsose** á mirar con una curiosidad infantil los papeles que arreglaba el anciano.	The young girl leaned upon the back of the easy-chair, and began to look with childish curiosity at the papers which the old man was arranging.

Desterraban á los demás, ó **encerrábanlos** en los calabozos.
They banished the rest, or incarcerated them in dungeons.

Al principio estas palabras le hicieron temer una nueva emboscada; pero **desvanecióse** esta idea cuando oyó la voz de, *etc.*
At first these words made him fear a fresh ambuscade, but this idea was dispelled when he heard the voice of, *etc.*

1368. When the verb is preceded merely by an adverbial expression of time, it may receive an enclitic pronoun:—

Veinte años antes **habíase** casado con una joven de Cáceres.
Twenty years before, he had married a young woman of Cáceres.

Largo rato después **hallábase** en el mismo sitio cuando acertó á pasar Teodoro Golfín.
A long while afterwards, he was still in the same place, when Theodore Golfin happened to come along.

1369. On the other hand, the enclitic use is inadmissible after **no** or an adverb, or when the subject precedes:—

No se le hizo la recepción que él esperaba.
They did not give him the reception that he expected.

Cuando le vió la joven, se sintió muy conmovida.
When the young girl saw him, she felt much moved.

Si se descubre su escondite, están perdidos.
If their hiding-place is discovered, they are lost.

El conde les mandó que se detuviesen.
The count ordered them to stop.

REMARK.—Such at least has been the general usage of the language, and is still maintained by grammarians; but the most progressive writers in Spain at the present day allow themselves greater freedom:—

Odiaba á sus ministros, y entre dientes **llamábales** mil veces presidiarios. CASTELAR.
He hated his ministers, and between his teeth called them a thousand times convicts.

La negra silueta del pueblo **dibujábase** á lo lejos, y una torrecilla **alzábase** sobre él, destacando su espadaña con precisión del fondo oscuro de la noche. A. PALACIO VALDÉS.
The dark outline of the village was visible in the distance, and a steeple loomed up above it with its spire sharply outlined against the dark background of the night.

1370. Furthermore, an enclitic pronoun may follow a verb at the beginning of the second clause of a sentence, when the preceding clause expresses a subordinate idea and is complete in itself:—

Á pesar de todo este progreso legislativo y literario, **hallábase** España
In spite of all this legislative and literary progress, Spain found her-

en los últimos tiempos del reinado de Enrique IV en uno de aquellos períodos de abatimiento que inspiran melancólicos presagios sobre la suerte futura de una nación.

self towards the end of the reign of Henry IV. in one of those periods of depression which inspire melancholy forebodings with regard to the future fate of a nation.

1371. If the sentence begins with an absolute clause, an indicative verb immediately following may receive an enclitic pronoun:—

Envuelto en su capa negra, y calado su sombrero hasta los ojos, **veíasele** horas enteras recargado contra el palo mayor.

Admirándose de tan extraño género de locura, **fuéronselo** á mirar desde lejos.

Muffled up in his black cloak, and with his hat thrust down over his eyes, he was seen for whole hours leaning against the mainmast.

Wondering at such a strange kind of madness, they went to look at it from a distance.

1372. In narrative style, where a number of complete clauses occur in succession, without connecting conjunctions, an enclitic may follow a verb at the beginning of any one of them:—

Sintió pasos, **detúvose**, y escuchó atentamente.

Dórale un brillante sol sus mieses, **riéganle** claros manantiales sus huertas, y á su rededor se levantan los montes que como inmensos biombos la separan del resto del mundo.

He heard footsteps, stopped, and listened attentively.

A bright sun gilds its harvests, clear streams water its orchards, and around it rise the mountains which like immense screens separate it from the rest of the world.

1373. But where the preceding clause is incomplete and intimately connected with the second, the enclitic is inadmissible:—

Algunos minutos antes de la media noche, con arreglo á sus instrucciones, se dirigió á la torre.

En otra composición de Moreto se echa de ver que quiso luchar cuerpo á cuerpo con el mejor dramático de su tiempo.

Some minutes before midnight, in accordance with his instructions, he proceeded to the tower.

In another composition of Moreto it is evident that he wished to contend hand to hand with the best dramatist of his age.

Subjunctive:—

1374. The enclitic use of the objective pronouns is inapplicable to the subjunctive mood (with the exception of the present tense when used imperatively):—

Es importante que se quede al alcance de la voz.	It is important that he remain within call.
Las damas le suplicaron que las dejase partir aquella misma noche.	The ladies begged him to let them set out that very night.

Imperative, and its substitutes :—

1375. The simple imperative always requires the enclitic use:—

Démelo presto.	Give it to me quick.
Háblanos con franqueza, ¿á cuál de los dos quieres más?	Tell us candidly, which of the two do you like best?
Idos en seguida.	Depart at once.

1376. The future indicative used as an imperative may be either preceded or followed by the objective pronoun, according to the restrictions of location applicable to the indicative:—

Dirásle (*or* le dirás) que rechazo su petición.	You will tell him that I reject his petition.
Cuando venga, le dirás que aguarde.	When he comes, you will tell him to wait.

1377. The subjunctive mood when used as an imperative requires the enclitic pronouns when it is employed affirmatively and is the first word in the sentence:—

Déjela Vd.	Let her alone.
Díganme Vds. lo que les parece.	Tell me what you think.
Busquémoslo por este lado.	Let us look for it on this side.
Díganselo, si quieren.	Let them tell him so, if they want to.

REMARK.—But when the subjunctive is not the first word, and when it is used negatively, as in forbidding, the objective pronoun precedes :—

Que me lo traigan vivo ó muerto.	Let them bring him to me dead or alive.
¡ Propicia se te muestre la fortuna !	May fortune be kind to you !
No se vayan Vds. todavía.	Don't go away yet.

Infinitive and Gerund :—

1378. The simple infinitive and gerund require the enclitic use:—

No había medio de **orientarse**.	There was no way of getting their bearings.
No querían **dejarse** ver.	They did not wish to let themselves be seen.

Curioso sería explicar aquí como acerté á complacer á todos, sin **proponérmelo**, sin **saberlo**, y por casualidad.	It would be curious to explain here how I managed to please them all, unintentionally, unwittingly, and by chance.
Creyéndole muerto el moro, pasó adelante.	The Moor, thinking him dead, passed on.
Esto es para tí, primita, decía, poniéndoselo en la boca.	This is for you, cousin, he said, putting it in her mouth.

1379. Many verbs in the indicative, when governing an infinitive or gerund, may be preceded by an objective pronoun, or it may be appended either to the governing verb or to the dependent, thus making three possible modes of arrangement:—

Se lo debo entregar inmediatamente. Déboselo entregar inmediatamente. Debo entregárselo inmediatamente.	I must deliver it to him at once.
Se estaba armando para la pelea. Estábase armando para la pelea. Estaba armándose para la pelea.	He was arming himself for the combat.
Le salieron á encontrar. Saliéronle á encontrar. Salieron á encontrarle.	They went out to meet him.

REMARK.—When the location of the governing verb precludes its taking an enclitic, there remain of course but two locations for the pronoun:—

¿Qué me va V. á dar? ¿Qué va V. á darme?	What are you going to give me?
No lo alcanzo á comprender. No alcanzo á comprenderlo.	I am unable to understand it.

1380. This construction is extended from a governing verb in the indicative to a governing verb in the infinitive or gerund:—

Espero volverle á ver pronto. Espero volver á verle pronto.	I hope to see him again soon.
Mañana tendré el gusto de venirla á buscar á V. Mañana tendré el gusto de venir á buscarla á V.	To-morrow I shall have the pleasure of coming for you.
Quisiera poderlos encontrar. Quisiera poder encontrarlos.	I should like to be able to find them.
Estándome divirtiendo de este modo. Estando divirtiéndome de este modo.	While I was engaged in amusing myself in this way.

1381. In the case of the compound tenses formed by **haber** and a past participle, the objective pronoun accompanies the

auxiliary,—preceding it or being appended to it, according as the circumstances permit:—

Heme equivocado sin duda. } I am doubtless mistaken.
Me he equivocado sin duda. }
(*But not* he equivocádo*me*.)

Largo tiempo le habíamos aguardado. } We had waited for him a long time.
Habíamosle aguardado largo tiempo. }
(*But not* habíamos aguardádo*le*.)

Los habían de haber aprendido. } They were to have learned them.
Habíanlos de haber aprendido. }
Habían de haberlos aprendido. }
(*But not* haber aprendído*los*.)

1382. The only allowable deviation from the above is when, to avoid repetition, the auxiliary is understood after having been previously expressed:—

Era un propietario rico de Cáceres, donde había nacido y **criádose**.
He was a rich land-owner of Cáceres, where he was born and brought up.

Habiéndose levantado el príncipe, y **armádose** para el torneo, llamó á su escudero, joven listo y despejado, *etc.*
The prince, having arisen and armed himself for the tournament, called his squire, a bright and clever young man, *etc.*

Habían encontrado á los rebeldes en cuatro escaramuzas, y **vencídolos** en cada punto.
They had met the rebels in four skirmishes and defeated them at every point.

Así que hubo llamado á los guardias y **entregádoles** su prisionero, compuso lo mejor que pudo su ropa desgarrada y se dirigió rápidamente al castillo.
When he had called the guards and turned his prisoner over to them, he arranged as best he could his torn clothing and hastened to the castle.

Remark.—This deviation does not apply to a past participle used adjectively with **ser** or **estar**:—

Los competidores afortunados fueron admitidos, y presentados á ellos (*not* presentádos*les*) los premios.
The successful competitors were admitted and the prizes presented to them.

Están ya elegidas las organizaciones cívicas y militares que han de tomar parte de la ceremonia, y asignados á ellos (*not* asignádos*les*) los puestos que deben ocupar en la procesión.
The civic and military organizations which are to take part in the ceremony are already decided upon, and their places in the procession assigned to them.

But when the past participle is used adjectively with **tener** (as a substitute for **haber**), the enclitic use is admissible:—

La comisión tiene ya preparado su informe y **presentádolo** al congreso.	The committee has already prepared its report and presented it to the congress.
Los abogados tienen cotejada la evidencia y **puéstala** por escrito.	The lawyers have collated the evidence and committed it to writing.

REDUNDANT USE OF THE OBJECTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1383. We have seen (§ 310) that both the simple and the compound objective form of a personal pronoun may be used at the same time representing a single object. This is required either for the clearness of the sentence, to give vivacity to a contrast, or to call the attention more markedly to a particular object:—

Sigue tu gusto é inclinación, y déjame á mí seguir el mío.	Follow your own pleasure and inclination and let me follow mine.
Este acontecimiento no nos parecía á nosotros tan lamentable como á él.	This occurrence did not seem to us so lamentable as it did to him.
Mudanzas que no harían mella en hombres de una sensibilidad menos delicada, le abatirían á él por completo.	Reverses which would not affect men of less delicate sensibilities, would overcome him completely.
Él se quedaba inmóvil como una estatua, mientras á mí me temblaban las piernas de miedo.	He remained motionless as a statue, while my knees trembled with fear.

1384. The same double construction is extended to a noun when direct or indirect object, the objective form of the appropriate personal pronoun being expressed in addition to the noun:—

Me parece, caballero, que esta conversación no debemos continuarla aquí.	I think, Sir, that we should not continue this conversation here.
Al sobrestante no le amedrentaba aquella gritería.	This clamor did not daunt the overseer.

1385. With regard to its application to nouns, the redundant pronoun should follow the noun, whether accusative or dative; although in the dative relation the pronoun is sometimes put foremost:—

Á los desertores los han indultado de la pena de muerte.	They have reprieved the deserters from the sentence of death.

Hay quien dice que á la niña la han metido entre los dos medio á rastras en el convento.
There are some who say that between them, they half dragged the girl into the convent.

Esta victoria tan grande el Emperador la atribuyó á Dios, como cosa dada por su mano.
This great victory the Emperor attributed to God, as a direct gift from his hand.

Á la paciente debió de hacerle un gran bien, á juzgar por la expresión feliz con que me escuchaba.
It must have done the sufferer a great deal of good, to judge from the happy expression with which she listened to me.

Sobre todo á las jóvenes les llamaba mucho la atención el que acompañase á unas monjas.
Above all it attracted the attention of the young ladies that I should be going with a lot of nuns.

REMARK.—**Usted**, although logically a noun, is in this construction treated as a personal pronoun :—

Á V. no le conviene hacer eso.
It is not proper for you to do that.

Siempre le ha tratado á V. con urbanidad.
He has always treated you with civility.

1386. But an accusative pronoun may precede when it is the real object of the verb, and the noun is introduced afterwards by way of explanation :—

Los demolieron hasta sus cimientos aquellos edificios, obras maestras de la arquitectura.
They demolished to their foundations those buildings, masterpieces of architecture.

Los plantaron allá en el corazón del continente, la fe y los lirios de la Francia, exigiendo para ellos el homenaje de las antiguas razas indígenas.
They planted them there in the heart of the American continent, the faith and the lilies of France, and demanded for them the homage of the ancient native races.

1387. The redundant pronoun should be avoided after a relative which is direct object of a following verb, unless the governing verb is separated from the relative by words which would tend to break the connection :—

En este castillo se guarda la espada del héroe nacional Wallace, arma que en esta edad afeminada hay pocos brazos que la pudieran manejar.
In this castle is kept the sword of the national hero Wallace, a weapon which in this effeminate age there are few arms able to wield.

¿Quién eres tú que lo preguntas, y en un idioma que, por estas partes, hay muy pocos que lo entienden?
Who art thou who askest it, and in a language which few in these parts understand?

1388. By means of this repetition, ambiguity may often be

avoided and the object of the verb in relative clauses distinguished:—

Llegaron á un patio cuadrado, cercado de celdas pequeñas, que cada una de ellas **la** ocupaba uno de los presidiarios.

They came to a quadrangular court, surrounded by small cells, each of which was occupied by one of the convicts.

Y María, como á quien más **le** importaba, advirtió á su marido en secreto que no se fuese.

And Mary, like one to whom it mattered most, warned her husband secretly not to go.

La derrota del enemigo fué decidida y terminada por un ataque sobre la retaguardia de su ala derecha, maniobra que mucho **la** favorecía la desigualdad del terreno.

The rout of the enemy was decided and completed by an attack on the rear of his right flank, which manœuvre was much aided by the unevenness of the ground.

Fué entonces necesario desbandar á la mayor parte del ejército á causa del continuo frío, que **lo** hizo aquel invierno excesivo.

It was then necessary to disband the greater part of the army on account of the continued cold, which was excessive that winter.

Se ha querido notar una analogía inadmisible entre el delito político y el de deserción, que Weiss **la** rechaza con tanta verdad como elocuencia.

Attempt has been made to establish an untenable analogy between treason and desertion, which [analogy] Weiss rejects with as much truth as eloquence.

1389. In many other cases this is necessary to show whether a noun is subject or object, when the location does not make it self-evident:—

Manuscritos antiguos y medio borrados, que durante siglos enteros habían yacido desapercibidos en algún monasterio ó en una de las grandes bibliotecas públicas, **los** buscaba y leía con avidez extraordinaria.

Old half-obliterated manuscripts which had lain for centuries unnoticed in some monastery or in some of the great public libraries, he sought out and read with extraordinary avidity.

Los iberos se esparcieron probablemente en un tiempo por toda la península, y esto **lo** prueba el nombre de muchas ciudades, montañas y ríos.

The Iberians probably at one time spread over the entire peninsula, and this is proved by the names of many cities, mountains and rivers.

Al tiempo que querían dar los remos al agua, porque velas no **las** tenían, llegó á la orilla del mar un bergantín.

At the moment when they were about to dip their oars in the water, for sails they had none, a two-masted vessel came up to the shore.

REMARK.—The first impression conveyed by **porque velas no tenían** would be that **velas** is the subject of **tenían**, which mistake is at once prevented by the objective **las**.

1390. Occasionally the objective noun may be considered as parenthetical, with an ellipsis of some such expression as **en cuanto á . . .**, *as for*:—

Mi buena pronunciación **la** debo á mi madre, quien era madrileña.	My good pronunciation I owe to my mother, who was from Madrid.
En aquellos tiempos se copiaba todo á mano, porque imprenta no **la** había.	In those times everything was copied by hand, for as for printing, there was no such thing.
Se alimentaban con vegetales; pues otra especie de alimentos el país no **la** producía.	They lived upon vegetables; for no other kind of food was produced by the country.
Pues, pan y carne, no había que pensar en **ellos**.	For as for bread and meat, they were not to be thought of.

☞ In general, this duplication of the object should be avoided as pleonastic, unless justified by some of the motives previously mentioned; namely: clearness, emphasis, contrast, ellipsis; and, we may add, in the case of **usted**, politeness, since the frequent use of such expressions as **aseguro á V.**, or **le aseguro**, instead of **le aseguro á V.**, would impart a certain tone of discourtesy or of extreme familiarity.

ALTERNATIVE OBJECTIVE FORMS OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1391. The vacillation in the use of the objective forms of the personal pronouns of the third person is a grave defect in Spanish. While in some instances there are only single forms about which there is no dispute, in others there are double or alternative forms, with regard to whose use there is the utmost diversity of opinion. The admissible forms of the objective personal pronouns of the third person are as follows:—

		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Singular.	Dative.	**le**	**le** *or* **la**	**le**
	Accusative.	**le** *and* **lo**	**la**	**lo**
Plural.	Dative.	**les**	**les** *or* **las**	[none].
	Accusative.	**los** *or* **les**	**las**	[none].

a. In regard to these alternative forms, some authorities insist on the exclusive use of the one, in each pair, and others maintain the equally

exclusive right of the other. The usage of the majority of careful writers of to-day is that set forth in detail below.

b. The greatest disagreement is about the two forms, **le** and **lo**, of the accusative masculine.[1] Some writers disapprove of **le**, others will not tolerate **lo**, and many who have pronounced themselves in favor of one or other, deviate in practice from their self-imposed rules.

1392. A safe medium, which is generally followed by careful writers, is to apply **le** to persons and **lo** to things:—

Compré un solar y luego **lo** vendí por dos veces la suma que me había costado.
I bought a building-lot and then sold it for twice the sum it had cost me.

Al cumplir mi hijo veinte años **le** mandé á viajar por Europa.
When my son reached the age of twenty, I sent him to travel in Europe.

1393. In addition to persons, **le** is applicable to the more important animals when considered as intelligent beings:—

Soltó al perro y **le** condujo á la pista del fugitivo.
He loosed the dog and led him to the fugitive's trail.

Sin embargo el perro continuaba ladrando, sin que pudieran hacerle callar ni las caricias ni las amenazas.
Nevertheless the dog continued barking, and neither caresses nor threats could make him keep quiet.

1394. But insignificant animals are represented by **lo**, and even the larger animals when they are not considered as taking any voluntary part in the action:—

El conejo, sin pensar en dar gracias á su libertador, se echó á correr con tanta prisa que pronto **lo** perdió de vista el sacerdote.
The rabbit, without a thought of gratitude to his deliverer, ran off with such speed that the priest soon lost sight of him.

El dragón se apeó de su caballo y **lo** ató entre los matorrales.
The dragoon dismounted from his horse and tied him in the thicket.

1395. So a human being, when acted upon as an inanimate object, is represented by **lo**:—

Levantaron al borracho y **lo** llevaron á casa.
They raised the drunken man and carried him home.

Dirigió un sablazo á su adversario que **lo** partió por medio.
He aimed a stroke at his opponent which cut him in two.

---

[1] This disagreement is so extensive as to have given rise to the terms **leístas**, to denote the advocates of **le**, and **loístas**, applied to those who favor **lo**.

Los lacayos arrojaron al ladrón por encima del almenaje y **lo** hicieron añicos.	The lackeys threw the thief over the battlements and dashed him to pieces.

REMARK.—Thus, in speaking of a deceased young man we could say **lo perdieron sus padres**, *his parents lost him*; while of a young man who has gone to the bad we might say **el descuido y indulgencia de sus padres le perdieron**, *the remissness and indulgence of his parents ruined him.*

1396. On the other hand, an inanimate thing, when personified, may be represented by **le**:—

El objeto del arte es la creación de la belleza, y **le** humilla quien **le** somete á otro fin.	The purpose of Art is the creation of beauty, and he humiliates it who subjects it to any other use.

1397. The usual form of the masculine plural of the personal pronoun is **los**, but the form **les** occurs as an accusative in so many writers of repute that it must be accepted. When employed, it should be restricted to persons, or things personified:—

Era la noche fría de tal modo, que **les** obligó á buscar reparos para el hielo. CERVANTES.	The night was so cold that it obliged them to seek shelter against the frost.
Les forzaba á partir la poca seguridad de la playa. *Idem.*	The insufficient safety of the beach forced them to depart.
Necesitan una guía que **les** conduzca por el inmenso campo de nuestra literatura. GIL Y ZÁRATE.	They need a guide to lead them through the vast field of our literature.

1398. The form **les** is required as the accusative when it is the object of the reflexive substitute for passive (§ 828):—

Eran tan pocos que apenas se **les** hubiera creído capaces de atacar un castillo medianamente fortificado.	They were so few in number that one would hardly have thought them able to assault a castle only tolerably fortified.

1399. The dative of the feminine personal pronoun of the third person is properly **le** in the singular and **les** in the plural. But the forms **la** and **las** are in use as applied to persons:—

En vano intentaba persuadirla de semejante desatino, porque Berta se irritaba y **la** imponía silencio.	In vain did she attempt to persuade her against such an imprudence, for Bertha became angry and imposed silence upon her.

No hacía mucho tiempo que estaba allí cuando vió á sus dos hermanas que con dificultad trataban de abrirse un camino por el tropel de hombres y carruajes, y las hizo un señal para que le aguardasen.

Zoraida . . . miró al cautivo, como si le preguntara la dijese lo que decían y lo que ella haría.

CERVANTES.

He had not been there long when he saw his two sisters trying with difficulty to force their way through the throng of men and vehicles, and made a sign to them to wait for him.

Zoraida . . . looked at the captive as if to ask him to tell her what they were saying and what she should do.

REMARK.—D. Andrés Bello suggests that, since le and les are common to the masculine dative, the employment of la and las as feminine forms would be convenient for the sake of distinction. But this necessity is already provided for by the redundant construction (§ 310):—

Encontré á D. Pedro con su esposa y la dí (le dí á ella) un ramillete.

Cuando por fin conseguí verla, estaba presente su primo, de modo que no quise decirla (decirle á ella) nada de lo que tenía pensado.

I met Don Pedro and his wife and gave her a bouquet.

When at last I succeeded in seeing her, her cousin was present, so that I would not tell her anything of what I had intended.

EXERCISE LVIII.

Peru is perhaps the best[1] known of all South American countries on account of having been the seat of the ancient *civilization* of the *Incas* (*m.*). It is[2] divided longitudinally, by mountain chains, into three *regions*—the coast, the *sierra* or *central* plateau, and the *montaña* or *region* of tropical forests near the head[3] of the Amazon. The coast of Peru *presents* an almost unbroken front of *arid* ridges of sand or bleak ranges of rock[4]; yet behind those ridges and between those bare mountains are[5] valleys of unparalleled *fertility*, through which wind streams of water fed by the eternal snows of the *Central Andes* (*m.*). These streams decrease as they reach the expanses of sand[6] that line the coast and in which they are *finally* lost; so that few rivers of the multitude that descend[7] the western slope of the *Cordillera* (*f.*) find their way[8] to the ocean. The *sierra* is the agricultural *region* of the country, and consists of (*en*) three chains running nearly parallel[9] with the coast. The valleys between them[10] *form* a *region* known by the name of *puna*, containing[11] *alpine* lakes,—the sources of the coast rivers. The great *variety* of *elevation* within (*en*) the *sierra* produces *vegetation* belonging to every climate. These three chains are called [the] Maritime *Cordillera*, [the] *Central Cordillera*, and [the] *Andes* (*m. pl.*). The

---

[1] See § 581. [2] *se halla.* [3] *en las cercanías del nacimiento . . .* [4] *ó de cerros roqueños y desnudos.* [5] *se hallan.* [6] *al llegar á los desiertos arenosos.* [7] *de entre la multitud de los que descienden por . . .* [8] find their way, *llegan.* [9] *que corren casi paralelas* (see § 1411). [10] *que se hallan entre éstas.* [11] *que contiene.*

latter range has in southern Peru a high plateau to the west, and to the east the vast Amazon valley. It is here that the majestic beauty of the Andean scenery is fully *realized*: masses of dark mountains[1] rise [for] thousands of feet, [with] their lower slopes traversed[2] by foaming torrents and covered with a *dense vegetation*, [and] their summits *terminating*[3] in sharp peaks or serrated ridges (*sierras*) far beyond the limit of perpetual snow. The Amazon *provinces* are thinly inhabited, and to a great extent unexplored. They are covered with dense (*espesa*) tropical *vegetation*, and are traversed in all *directions* by water-courses; the climate is mild and the soil *extremely fertile*. In this country lies[4] the head of navigation of the Amazon, beyond which the ways open to *traffic* are few, consisting of[5] mule-paths which become almost impassable during the rainy season.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

ADVERBS. CONJUNCTIONS. INTERJECTIONS.

1400. Adverbs are all words that cannot properly be included in any other class. They therefore form a residuary class whose limits are not easily defined.[6] In general, they express time, place, manner, degree, doubt, affirmation and negation; but these subdivisions melt insensibly into each other.

☞ It would be impracticable to present a complete list of all the adverbs of the language in a work of this compass; only enough, therefore, will be given to illustrate the several classes.

1401. In point of form it will be convenient to distinguish them as:—

a. Those that may be regarded as simple and original:—

Así, thus, so.
Aun (§ 39), yet, still.
Hoy, to-day.
Luego, soon.

---

[1] *las masas oscuras de montañas.* [2] *atravesadas sus vertientes* (see § 1229). [3] *terminándose sus cumbres . . .* [4] *hállase en esta comarca . . .* [5] *y consisten en.*

[6] It is well to apprise the student that grammarians are not agreed as to what words belong under the several heads of adverbs, conjunctions and prepositions. But at the same time it should be borne in mind that the segregation into classes of these indeclinable words is a purely speculative question which affects neither meaning, style nor grammatical correctness. A given one may have several acceptations, some of which may properly come under one class, while others will more nearly approach another class; and in general their uses are so much allied that no boundary line can be maintained between them.

Bien, well.
Casi, almost.
Muy, very.
Nunca, never.

b. Other words used adverbially without change:—

Alto, aloud.
Claro, clearly.
Mañana, to-morrow.
Quedo, softly, gently.
Recio, vehemently.
Temprano, early.

c. Adverbs derived from pronouns: —

Algo, rather, somewhat.
Nada, not at all.

d. Adverbs formed from adjectives by adding **-mente**:—

Ciertamente, certainly.
Lentamente, slowly.
Recientemente, recently.
Últimamente, lately.

REMARK.—It is obvious that adverbs formed by the addition of **-mente** may be almost as numerous as adjectives of quality. The class has been treated of in Lesson XIII.

e. Those formed from other words by the help of prepositions. This class may be subdivided as follows:—

PREPOSITION **á** JOINED TO A FOLLOWING WORD.

Abajo, down.
Acaso, perhaps.
Adelante, forwards.
Afuera, abroad.
Ahora, now.
Anoche, last night.
Apenas, scarcely, hardly.
Apriesa, **aprisa**, quickly.
Arriba, up, aloft.
Atrás, backwards.

WITH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

Á la ligera, expeditiously.
Á la moda, in style.
Á la verdad, in truth.
Á la vista, in sight.
Al contado, in cash.
Al momento, instantly.
Al raso, in the open air.
En el acto, instantly.
En lo sucesivo, henceforth.
Por lo pronto, for the time being.
Por lo regular, ordinarily.
Por lo tanto, consequently.

WITHOUT THE ARTICLE, SINGULAR.

Á porfía, persistently.
Con ligereza, superficially.
Con todo, notwithstanding.
De balde, gratis.
De lado, incidentally.
De mala gana, unwillingly.
De nuevo, anew.
De raíz, radically.
De relance, fortuitously.
De sopetón, suddenly.
En resumen, in short.
En revancha, in return.
En seguida, at once.
Por consiguiente, consequently.
Por supuesto, of course.
Por último, finally.

WITHOUT THE ARTICLE, PLURAL.

Á cargas, abundantly.
Á ciegas, blindly.
Á dentelladas, snappishly.
Á escondidas, secretly.
Á gatas, on all fours.
Á medias, by halves.
Á solas, alone, privately.
De burlas, in jest.
De espaldas, on one's back.
De oídas, by hearsay.
De rodillas, on one's knees.
En ayunas, agog, uninformed.
En cueros, naked.
Por adarmes, very sparingly.

f. Adverbial phrases:—

Á largo andar, in the course of time.
Á manos llenas, liberally.
Á más no poder, with all one's might.
Á más tardar, at the latest.
Á ojos vistos, openly.
Á sus anchas, at one's ease.
Cuanto antes, as soon as possible.
De par en par, wide open (*doors*).
De vez en cuando, from time to time.
Gota á gota, drop by drop.
Luego á luego, little by little (*time*).
Mal de su grado, unwillingly.
Poco á poco, little by little (*degree*).

Many of these adverbial phrases are restricted to certain verbs:—

Le miró **de hito en hito**.
Le disparó el revólver **á quemarropa**.
Saber una cosa **de buena tinta**.
Gritar **á gaznate tendido**.
He looked him through and through.
He fired the revolver at him point blank.
To know a thing definitely, reliably.
To shout at the top of one's lungs.

REMARK.—Many of these adverbial expressions may be further extended by the addition of other adverbs:—

Muy de golpe.
Demasiado á la ligera.
Bastante de raíz.
Very suddenly.
Too superficially.
Radically enough.

1402. In point of meaning adverbs may be classed as:—

a. Adverbs of time:—

Ahora, now.
Á menudo, often.
De noche, at night.
Después, afterwards.
Éntonces, then.
Jamás, never.
Luego, soon.
Raras veces, seldom.
Siempre, always.
Últimamente, lately.

b. Adverbs of place:—

Acá, hither.
Á izquierda, on the left.
Al rededor, around.
Dentro, within.
Detrás, behind.
Enfrente, opposite.
En otra parte, elsewhere.
En todas partes, everywhere.
Lejos, far.
Por aquí, near here.

c. Adverbs of manner:—

The adverbs of manner are much more numerous than all the others. The greater part of them are adverbial phrases, or adverbs formed from adjectives by the addition of **-mente**:—

Al por mayor, by wholesale.
Á sabiendas, wittingly.
Así, so, thus.
Á tientas, tentatively, groping.
Bien, well.
De antemano, beforehand.
De improviso, unexpectedly.
De propósito, on purpose.
Despacio, slowly.
Pasito á paso, gently.

d. Adverbs of degree:—

Algo, somewhat, rather.
Apenas, scarcely.
Bastante, enough, tolerably.
Casi, almost.
Demasiado, too, too much.
Harto, enough.
Más bien, rather.
Menos, less.
Muy, very.
Sobradamente, excessively.

e. Adverbs of dubitation:—

Acaso, perhaps, forsooth.
Apenas, hardly, scarcely.
Difícilmente, hardly, improbably.
Por ventura, peradventure.
Quizás, quizá, } perhaps.
Tal vez, }

Remark.—**Acaso** and the antiquated **por ventura** are often mere interrogative signs, expressing surprise or indignation and expecting a negative answer:—

¿ Acaso no sé lo que he visto por mis propios ojos?
Don't I know what I have seen with my own eyes?

¿ Me tomáis por ventura por esclavo, que me tratáis de ese modo?
Do you take me for a slave, that you address me in that style?

f. Adverbs of affirmation and negation:—

Claro, justo, of course, just so.
Eso no, not that.
Eso sí, that indeed.
Jamás, nunca, never.
Nada, not at all.
Ni—ni, neither—nor.
Por cierto, certainly.
Por supuesto, of course.
Sin duda, undoubtedly.
Tampoco, just as little.

1403. Adverbs do not in themselves admit of inflection or require it in other words; but a few have an appearance of inflection, being either old comparatives of Latin origin or formed upon superlatives of that character:—

Fidelísimamente, most faithfully.
Máxime, máximamente, especially.
Mejor, better.
Óptimamente, in the best manner.
Peor, worse.
Pésimamente, very badly.

Remark.—Adverbs, however, admit of comparison in the same manner as adjectives, by means of **más** and **menos** (Chap. VIII).

1404. Adverbs expressing time or the direction of a movement, may be placed after nouns, thus forming adverbial phrases of time or place:—

Años ántes, years before.	**Mar afuera**, out to sea, seaward.
Camino adelante, onward.	**Meses después**, months afterwards.
Ciudad abajo, down town.	**Río abajo**, down stream.
Cuesta arriba, up hill.	**Siglos atrás**, centuries ago.
Escalera abajo, down stairs.	**Tierra adentro**, inland.
Laguna adentro, out towards the middle of the lake.	

1405. Recientemente, *recently*, is shortened to **recién** before past participles used adjectively:—

Falleció recientemente.	He died recently.
El recién llegado.	The new-comer.
Canastillos para recién nacidos.	Baskets for new-born babies.
Los recién casados.	The newly-married pair.

1406. Adjectives derived from names of countries, districts and cities, may be used adverbially when preceded by **á la.** Or they may be regarded as still being adjectives, agreeing with some such noun as **moda** or **usanza**, *style, fashion*:—

Á la inglesa, francesa.	In the English, French fashion.
Á la malagueña, gaditana.	In the Malaga, Cadiz style.

REMARK.—The same idea may be expressed more fully and literally:—

Al estilo mejicano.	In the Mexican style.
Al estilo de Italia.	In the Italian style.
Á la usanza de mi país.	According to the usage of my country.

1407. Other adjectives may be used in the feminine form, preceded by **á la**, as above, when they express *manner*; but add **-mente** when denoting *time*:—

Á la moderna ; á la antigua.	New-fashioned ; old-fashioned.
Modernamente ; antiguamente.	In modern times ; in ancient times.

1408. The affirmative adverb **sí** is much used as an expletive to emphasize an assertion. It is sometimes connected by **que** with what follows, and is generally equivalent to the English emphatic auxiliary *do*, or to the expletive *indeed*:—

No creo que V. le haya visto.—**Sí que** le ví.	I don't believe you saw him.—I did see him.
¿Comprende V. ya?—**Sí que** comprendo.	Do you understand now?—Indeed I do.

Acaso preferiría V. ir en persona.—Eso **sí que** no.	Perhaps you would prefer to go in person.—Not that by any means.
Le rogaron que partiese en seguida, y él repuso que **sí** partiría.	They begged him to set out at once, and he answered that he certainly would.
Cuando mi obra se publique, que **sí** se publicará, le mandaré á V. un ejemplar.	When my work is published, for it *will* be published, I will send you a copy.

1409. **Sí** and **no** are much used for emphasis in contrasted clauses; the nicety of the meaning is such that it is nearly impossible to render it into English:—

No disimuló lo que le contrariaba el no encontrar en casa á Juanita, y **sí** á mí.	He did not conceal how it disappointed him to find me at home and not Jennie.
Arrancándome por fuerza la careta se encontraron más miradas todavía viendo que no me conocían, y yo **sí** á ellas.	Tearing off my domino by force they were more astonished than ever to see that they did not know me and that I *did* know them.
Observé entonces que el coronel estaba, no más triste, pero **sí** más pensativo que de costumbre.	I then noticed that the Colonel was not exactly sadder, but certainly more thoughtful than usual.
Lo expresaba en frases corteses, **sí**, pero firmes y severas.	He expressed it in terms, courteous indeed, but firm and severe.
Lo que á mí **no**, se le ocurrió á ella.	There occurred to her what did not occur to me.

1410. The neuter **lo** enters into the construction of many phrases of an adverbial character. Among these may be mentioned the following:—

Lo más, at the utmost.	**Lo menos**, at the least.
Todo lo más, at the very most.	**Todo lo menos**, at the very least.
Lo de arriba abajo, upside down.	**Lo de delante atrás**, wrong end foremost.

EXAMPLES.

Había estado dos horas **lo menos** arrimada á la reja hablando conmigo.	She had been two hours, at least, at the window talking to me.
La canoa siguió la costa á la distancia de dos cables **todo lo más**.	The boat skirted the shore at a distance of two cable-lengths, at the utmost.
Llevo **lo menos** cinco años de experiencia en asuntos de esta clase.	I have had at least five years' experience in matters of that kind.
Este verbo sólo está en uso en los pretéritos, y **á lo más** en el futuro de indicativo.	This verb is used only in the past tenses, or, at the farthest, in the future indicative.

Á lo más no lograrán coger sino dos ó tres.	At most they will only succeed in catching two or three.

1411. The use of an adjective as an adverb is rare in Spanish, and is generally restricted in its application to a few verbs:—

Vivían felices, infelices.	They lived happily, unhappily.
Lo ataron firme á un poste.	They tied him firmly to a post.
La cordillera corre paralela con la costa.	The mountain chain runs parallel to the coast.
Diáfano y brillante está el cielo, por donde la luna vaga silenciosa.	The sky is clear and bright, across which the moon moves silently.
Uno que otro pájaro atraviesa el firmamento, volando perezoso.	Occasionally a bird crosses the sky, flying lazily.

CONJUNCTIONS.

1412. A conjunction is a word that conjoins or connects. In general it connects two propositions, each complete in itself. The usual division into copulative, disjunctive, causal, etc., is without practical value. Pure and original conjunctions are few, while conjunctive phrases formed of prepositions or adverbs followed by **que**, *that*, are very numerous. In a few instances the **que** has dropped out of use, as *that* often has in English.

1413. The original conjunctions are:—

Ó (*before* **o** *or* **ho**, **ú**), or.	**Ni**, nor, neither.
Y (*before* **i** *or* **hi**, **é**), and.	**Que**, that.
Pero, mas, sino, but.	**Si**, if, whether.

REMARK.—The uses and distinctions of these words have been shown in previous lessons, and may be found by consulting the index.

1414. Of the conjunctive phrases it is often more difficult than important to decide whether to call them conjunctions or relative adverbs. The following are the most usual:—

Á condición que, on condition that.	**En caso que**, in case that.
Á fin de que, in order that.	**En tanto que**, while, in case that.
Á medida que, according as.	**En vez de que**, instead of.
Á menos que, / **Á no ser que**, } unless.	**Entre tanto que**, while.
	Excepto que, excepting.
Ahora que, now that.	**Hasta que**, until.
Antes que, before.	**Luego que**, as soon as.
Así que, so that, so.	**Mientras que**, while.
Aunque, / **Bien que**, } although.	**No obstante que**, notwithstanding.
	Para que, in order that.

Como quiera que, however.
Con que, so, therefore, so then.
Con motivo que, so that.
Con tal que, so that.
Cuanto más que, the more since.
Dado que, in case that.
Dado caso que, supposing that.
De manera que, **De modo que**, **De suerte que**, } so that.
Desde que, since.
Después que, after.
Por . . . que, however (§ 899).
Porque, because, in order that.
Pues que, **Puesto que**, } since.
Sea que, whether, while.
Según que, according as.
Siempre que, whenever.
Sin que, without.
Supuesto que, granting that, since.
Tanto que, so that.
Ya que, since.

1415. Some conjunctions consist of pairs of words, separated by other and intervening words. These pairs are called correlatives:—

Apenas—cuando.	Scarcely—when.
Así—como.	Both—and.
Así como—así también.	Just as—so too.
Aunque— { sin embargo [de eso]. / no obstante [eso]. / con todo [eso].	Although—nevertheless.
Ni—ni.	Neither—nor.
No bien—cuando.	Scarcely—when.
No sólo—sino. / No solamente—sino. / No tan sólo—sino que.	Not only—but.
Ó—ó.	Either—or.
Ora—ora.	Now—now.
Sea—sea.	Whether—or.
Ya—ya.	Whether—or, sometimes—sometimes.

USE OF QUE.

1416. When a verb, participle, adjective or noun, which necessarily takes a preposition to connect it with what follows, governs a finite verb, the conjunction **que** is required between this verb and the preposition (§ 912):—

Se opuso Da. Juana á **que** su marido se aventurase en semejante empresa.	Doña Juana opposed her husband's embarking in such an undertaking.
Consintió en **que** hiciesen la prueba.	He consented to their making the test.
Le persuadieron á **que** se conformase con el proyecto.	They persuaded him to agree to the project.
Quedó furioso de **que** se hubiesen burlado de su vigilancia.	He was enraged that they had eluded his vigilance.

El viento no está propicio para **que** nos hagamos á la mar.
The wind is not favorable to our putting to sea.

Estaba determinado á **que** se le restituyesen sus bienes.
He was determined that his property should be returned to him.

Aun tengo una ligera idea de **que** se menciona en eso el nombre de Vd.
I even have half an idea that your name is mentioned in it.

1417. **Que no**, after a negative, when introducing a subjunctive phrase, is equivalent to *without*:—

Nadie oía el relato **que no** virtiese lágrimas.
No one heard the story without shedding tears.

Nunca dió una promesa **que no** la cumpliese.
He never made a promise without fulfilling it.

Á ninguna parte se volvían los ojos **que no** se presentasen objetos de horror.
One could not turn his eyes in any direction without meeting objects of horror.

REMARK.—The same result may be obtained by **sin** with an infinitive, or **sin que** with a subjunctive (when there is a change of subject, *vid.* § 993):—

Nadie oía el relato sin verter lágrimas.
No one heard the story without shedding tears.

Nunca dió una promesa sin cumplirla.
He never made a promise without fulfilling it.

Á ninguna parte se volvían los ojos sin que se presentasen objetos de horror.
One could not turn his eyes in any direction without meeting objects of horror.

1418. Indirect questions introduced by the verb **decir** require to be preceded by the conjunction **que**; after **preguntar**, **que** is usual unless immediately followed by an interrogative pronoun beginning with **qu**. These are the only cases in which **que** is so used:—

Le dije **que** cuál era su opinión.
I asked him what was his opinion.

Me dijo **que** para cuándo necesitaba mi ama el traje.
She asked me by what time my mistress wanted the gown.

Me dijeron **que** por dónde había sabido la noticia.
They asked me whence I had learned the news.

Ella me preguntó **que** si aguardaba á alguien.
She asked me if I was waiting for anyone.

El pobre Villa había preguntado **que** cuáles eran esos obstáculos.
Poor Villa had asked what those obstacles were.

Preguntábase por todas partes **que** de dónde vendría aquel correo.
It was asked on every side where that courier could have come from.

Nos preguntaron qué queríamos,
They asked us what we wanted.

1419. Que is interposed before **sí** and **no**, after verbs of perceiving or declaring, and those expressing an emotion. The construction cannot be literally translated:—

Dijo que sí.	He said he would, he had, etc.
Dijo que no.	He said he wouldn't, hadn't, etc.
Creo que sí.	I think so, I think he will, etc.
Creo que no.	I think not, I think he won't, etc.
Me parece que sí,—que no.	I think so,—I think not.
Esperemos que sí,—que no.	We hope so,—we hope not.
Es de esperarse que no.	It is to be hoped not.

1420. Que is apparently redundant after a number of asseverative adverbial expressions, and is the result of an ellipsis, —some such expression as **parece, sigue, puede decirse,** being understood before **que**:—

Ahora sí que tiene Vd. razon.	Now you are indeed right.
Entonces sí que nos veríamos en un buen enredo.	Then we surely would find ourselves in a nice fix.
Por cierto que no son muy raros.	They are certainly not very rare.
Ciertamente que se ha mostrado muy amable para con nosotros.	He has certainly shown himself very kind toward us.
Sin duda que lo sabremos mañana.	No doubt we shall know to-morrow.
¡ Pardiez que es muy atrevido tu proyecto !	By Jove, your plan is a bold one !
¡ Á fe que eso sería arriesgar mucho !	Faith, that would be risking a good deal !

REMARK.—The last two are equivalent to **juro, afirmo que.**

1421. Que is often used elliptically at the beginning of a sentence or clause. In these cases **que** may have a considerable variety of meaning. It may be merely emphatic or intensive; it may assign a reason, or express surprise, indignation, etc.:—

Que llaman á la puerta.	Someone is knocking at the door.
¡ Que vienen ! ¡ Que me matan !	They are coming ! Murder !
Que no tengo ánimo para más.	Well, I have no heart for anything more.
Iré á paseo ; que no estaré todo el día metido en casa.	I'm going for a walk ; I declare I won't stay in the house all day.
Estoy rendido, que he marchado cuatro leguas.	I'm done out ; for I have walked ten miles.
Nos contentaremos con papas, que más valen papas que nada.	We will content ourselves with potatoes, for potatoes are better than nothing.
¿Que Vd. es el célebre artista Estebáñez ?	So you are the celebrated artist Estebañez ?

¿Que te faltan las alforjas? Sancho.	So you have lost the saddle-bags? Sancho.
¡Que viva aquí un hombre tan rico!	Can it be that so rich a man lives here!
¡Que sea tan corta la memoria de Vd.!	Is it possible that your memory is so short!

USE OF SI.

1422. **Si**, *if*, in addition to expressing a single doubt, may, before an infinitive, express an uncertainty between alternatives, being thus equivalent to *whether*:—

No sabe si retirarse ó no.	He does not know whether to withdraw or not.
No sé si aceptar su oferta ó no.	I do not know whether to accept his offer or not.
Disputaban sobre si conviniese volver ó no.	They were disputing about whether it was proper to return or not.

1423. **Si** is often employed at the commencement of a phrase, with the value of the English *why*, expressive of surprise or expostulation:—

Si debe ser loco.	Why, he must be crazy.
Si acaba de salir.	Why, he has just gone out.
Si lo escribí yo mismo.	Why, I wrote it myself.
Si no era más que ayer que él mismo me lo dijo.	Why, it was only yesterday that he told me so himself.

1424. Occasionally **si** is merely an expletive:—

Por la noche me vino á pedir que permitiera poner en mi cuarto otra cama.—Pero, hombre de Diós, **si** apenas puedo revolverme yo.	In the evening he came to ask me to allow another bed to be put in my room.—But, man alive, I can hardly turn round now.

INTERJECTIONS.

1425. True interjections are words, otherwise without meaning, used as exclamations denoting any strong emotion. They are:—

¡Oh! ¡ah!	Oh! ah!
¡Ay!	Oh! alas! ah!
¡Ha! (*exultation.*)	Ha! eh!
¡Hé! (*shock, start.*)	Eh!
¡Ea! (*encouragement.*)	Come!
¡Ea, ea! (*impatience.*)	Come, come!
¡Huy! (*pain, shock.*)	Ouch! Phew!
¡Ola! *or* ¡hola! (*recognition or discovery.*)	Ah! oh! hello!

¡ **Ole** ! (*approval.*)	Bully ! Bravo !
¡ **Puf** ! (*aversion.*)	Ugh !
¡ **Uf** ! (*weariness.*)	Oh !
¡ **Ca** ! *and* ¡ **quía** ! (*indignant denial or doubt.*)	
¡ **Bah** ! (*incredulity or contempt.*)	Pshaw !

REMARK.—Of these **ay** is the most common. It is peculiarly Spanish, as distinguished from the rest of Europe, and indicates joy or delight, as well as surprise or pain.

1426. Spanish abounds in exclamatory words, which are used as evasions of more profane terms:—

¡ **Caramba** ! ¡ **Carái** ! ¡ **Caracoles** ! ¡ **Canasto** ! ¡ **Canario** !	And others beginning with **ca-**, expressing surprise.	These correspond to such English exclamations as *gracious! the dickens! great Scot! by jingo!* etc.
¡ **Cáspita** ! ¡ **Córcholis** ! ¡ **Fuego** ! ¡ **Zapatazos** !	And many other idle terms.	
¡ **Diantre** ! (to avoid **diablo, demonio**).		The deuce !

1427. The names **Dios, Jesús, María,** etc., in exclamations, are not held to be profane or improper in Spanish. The priesthood called them "the instinctive elevation of the soul to its maker." Be that as it may, they are employed profusely and upon the slightest provocation, and are to be rendered in English by some euphemism like *dear me!* (which is really *Dio mio*):—

¡ **Dios** ! Gracious !	¡ **Cielos** ! Heavens !
¡ **Por Dios** ! For goodness' sake !	¡ **Jesús** ! Oh heavens !
¡ **Dios mío** ! Dear me !	¡ **Válgame Dios** ! Bless me !
¡ **Ay Dios mío** ! Oh dear me !	¡ **Virgen santa** ! Oh mercy !

REMARK.—The exclamations ¡ **Jesús** ! ¡ **Ave María** ! or ¡ **Ave María purísima** ! are often uttered on seeing or hearing anything heretical, startling or incredible. ¡ **Jesús** ! alone, or ¡ **Jesús, María, José** ! uttered when another sneezes or yawns, is a relic of an old form of exorcism for preventing evil spirits from entering at the opened mouth of the individual.

1428. Some interjections are restricted, in their application to certain animals:—

¡ **Arre** ! ¡ **Alza** ! ¡ **Anda** ! ¡ **Vamos** !	(To draft-animals.)	Get up ! come up !

¡ So ! ¡ jo ! ¡ cho ! (To draft-animals.)	Whoa !
¡ Miz miz ! ¡ Zape ! (To cats.)	Puss, puss ! Kitty, kitty ! / Scat !
¡ Tus tus ! ¡ Toma ! (To dogs.)	Here, sir ! here, here !

REMARK.—Some of the above have the effect of imperatives.

1429. Imperatives of verbs are sometimes regarded as interjections:—

¡ Anda ! (*incredulity.*) / (*importunity.*)	Pshaw ! go away ! / Come ! do !
¡ Calla ! ¡ calle ! (*command.*) / (*incredulity.*)	Shut up ! keep still ! / Nonsense !
¡ Diga !	Say ! do tell !
¡ Oye ! ¡ oiga !	Hullo ! hear, hear !
¡ Miren !	Look !
¡ Quita ! ¡ Quítese V. !	Let me alone ! go away ! get out !
¡ Toma !	Indeed ! really !
¡ Vamos !	Come ! well !
¡ Vaya !	Indeed ! well ! really ! of course !

1430. Some nouns and adjectives are used as interjections:—

¡ Al asesino !	Murder !
¡ Al ladrón !	Stop thief !
¡ Bravo ! (*to a woman,* ¡ brava !)	Bravo ! good ! bully !
¡ Caballero !	Sir ! (*in indignation.*)
¡ Cuidado !	Look out ! take care !
¡ Fuego !	Fire !
¡ Socorro !	Help !
¡ Alerta !	Watch out ! be ready !
¡ Firme !	Steady, there !
¡ Alto !	Halt !

1431. When adjectives are used as interjections before personal pronouns **de** is interposed:—

¡ Triste de mí !	Woe is me !
¡ Pobre de mí !	Poor me !
¡ Desgraciado de tí !	Unfortunate that thou art !
¡ Necios de nosotros !	Fools that we are (*or* were) !

1432. The same holds good of the interjection **¡ay!** before nouns or pronouns:—

¡ Ay de mí !—de tí !	Alas for me !—for thee !
¡ Ay de mi Alhama ! (*Not* "Ay de mí, Alhama !" *as Byron has it.*)	Alas for my Alhama !
¡ Ay de los vencidos !	Woe to the vanquished !

1433. In conversation the words **hombre.** *man,* and **mujer,**

woman, are often introduced by way of emphasis or remonstrance:—

Pero hombre, si eso es demasiado.	Why, man alive, that is too much.
¿Empiezo yo?—Sí, hombre, ande V.	Shall I begin?—Yes indeed, go ahead.
Pues mujer, he hecho lo posible.	Well, I assure you I did what I could.

1434. Usted is often added to short sentences to show that they appeal to a particular person, or it may stand for a question by itself:—

¿Verdad, usted?	It is true, don't you think so?
¿Cómo lo pasa V.?—Bien; ¿y usted?	How goes it with you?—First rate; and how are you getting on?

EXERCISE LIX.

I am passionately fond of the ludicrous. If I were rich and had [the] time, there is nothing I would enjoy more[1] than to make a *collection* of all the *comic* pictures and humorous anecdotes that I could find.

If that is so, I will[2] tell you a funny story that I heard the other day, and which no doubt will amuse you. There was a young man, rich and talented,[3] but in other respects unlucky—so unlucky that he had failed in everything he had ever attempted,[4] and had been, through life,[5] the victim of a series of the most extraordinary mishaps and misunderstandings. Finally, the girl to whom he had given (*ofrecido*) his heart refused to give him more than her friendship in return, and he resolved to put an end to his unhappy *existence*. But, having already experienced so many failures he took (*empleó*) unusual *precautions* to make this, his *final* endeavor, a success.[6] He therefore provided himself with a bottle of poison, a rope, a loaded *revolver* (*m.* 2), a can of kerosene and a box of matches.—*Precautions* enough, I should imagine.[7]—So it would seem; but do not interrupt me. I omitted to say[8] that he was at a seaside resort when the[9] young lady gave him the mitten (*las calabazas*). Taking the articles which I have just[10] mentioned, he hired a boat and rowed to a remote spot where some old piles supported the end (*la fachada*) of a ruined pier, the remainder of which had long before rotted away,[11] leaving thus a kind of isolated platform. He climbed up on this, and set the boat adrift.[12] Then he made a slip-noose in one end[13] of the rope, which he placed around his neck, and fastened the other end securely[14] to a beam. Then he saturated his clothing with kerosene, swallowed the poison, set fire to himself, cocked and aimed his revolver, and jumped off the pier,[15] pulling the trigger as he sprang.[16] But his

[1] There is nothing I would enjoy more, *en nada gozaría más.* [2] *voy á . . .* [3] talented, *de habilidad insigne.* [4] he had failed, etc., *todo cuanto había emprendido siempre le había salido mal.* [5] through life, *durante su vida entera.* [6] to make this, . . . a success, *con el fin de que ésta, . . ., tuviese buen éxito.* [7] I should imagine, *creo yo.* [8] *se me olvidó decir . . .* [9] See § 671. [10] See § 855. [11] *se había carcomido y destrozado.* [12] *dejó la lancha entregada á la corriente.* [13] *en uno de los extremos.* [14] *firme* (see § 1411). [15] *se arrojó del muelle.* [16] as he sprang, *al saltar.*

leap diverted his aim, and the ball, instead of *penetrating* his brain, cut the rope so that it broke; and as he fell into the water, the flames were extinguished. The rising tide then washed him ashore, and the salt water which he imbibed in spite of himself, made him throw up the poison.

CHAPTER XXIX.

REMARKS ON THE USE OF CERTAIN PREPOSITIONS.

1435. The simplest use of prepositions is to express the relations of things to each other in respect to time or place: *before, after, in, upon, under.* They extend, however, to many other relations, and especially to the relations between adjectives or verbs and the nouns or pronouns to which they apply.

NOTE.—When the pronoun following a preposition admits of case inflection it assumes what is called the prepositional case (§ 299).

1436. The simple prepositions are:—

Á, at, to.
Ante, before.
Bajo, under.
Con, with.
Contra, against.
De, of, from.
Desde, from, since.
Durante, during.
En, in, into, at, on.
Entre, among, between.
Excepto, except.
Hacia, towards.
Hasta, until, to, up to.
Mediante, by means of.
Para (§§ 504–513), for.
Por (§§ 490–503), for, by.
Salvo, except, save.
Según, according to.
Sin, without.
So, under.
Sobre, on, about.
Tras, after.

REMARK.—Of these, **bajo** is an adjective serving as a preposition, and **durante**, **excepto**, **mediante** and **salvo** are parts of verbs.

1437. Compound prepositions, or prepositional phrases, are formed in several ways:—

a. A word, most frequently an adjective, used adverbially and followed by **á**:—

Adversamente á, adversely to.
Conforme á, according to.
Congruamente á, consistent with.
Contrario á, contrary to.
Correspondiente á, corresponding to.
Frente á, opposite to.
Junto á, close to.
Relativamente á, in relation to.
Respecto á, with respect to.
Tocante á, in (*or* with) regard to.
Concerniente á, concerning.

b. Simple adverbs followed by **de**:—

Acerca de, about, concerning.
Además de, besides, in addition to.
Alrededor de, around.
Antes de, before (*time, order*).
Cerca de, near, about.
Debajo de, under.
Delante de, before (*place*).
Dentro de, within.
Después de, after (*time, order*).
Detrás de, behind, after (*time, order*).
Encima de, over, on top of
Fuera de, outside of.
Lejos de, far from.

REMARK.—**Con** may be used after an adverb in the same manner as **á** and **de**; but its use is limited by its small range of signification:—

Juntamente con los otros estudiantes. Jointly with the other students.

c. Either of the above classes preceded by another preposition:—

En cuanto á, as for.
Á causa de, on account of.
Á excepción de, with the exception of.
Á fuerza de, by dint of.
Al través de, across.
Á pesar de, in spite of.
En frente de, in front of.
En vez de, instead of.
En virtud de, by virtue of.
Por causa de, on account of.
Por razón de, by reason of.
Sin embargo de, notwithstanding.

☞ The prepositions being few, may share among them a much larger number of meanings than any other class of words; for, if ten words have to express a hundred relations, each must have an average of ten different applications. The usages of many of the prepositions given above have been explained in the earlier portions of this work, and may be found by consulting the Index; of others the meaning is so limited as not to require space here. There are, however, some of widely diversified application which merit treatment in detail.

Á.

1438. **Á** is the most overworked of all the Spanish prepositions. This arises from the fact that it represents the Latin dative case, the Latin prepositions *ad, to*, followed by the accusative, and *a, ab, from*, followed by the ablative, and the locative case (represented in Latin by the ablative), besides many meanings of more recent origin.

a. **Á** primarily indicates the point, whether of time, place or degree, which anything reaches, or to which it tends:—

Era ya de noche cuando volvieron á la embarcación. It was already night when they returned to the vessel.
Fué de Nueva York á Puerto Rico. He went from New York to Porto Rico.
Estaré en casa de las seis á las siete. I shall be at home from six to seven.

Es un hombre de cuarenta y cinco á cincuenta años.	He is a man of from forty-five to fifty years.
La súbita transición del calor á un frío excesivo produjo consecuencias funestas entre la tripulación.	The sudden change from heat to extreme cold produced sad consequences among the crew.
El agua les llegó á la cintura.	The water reached to their waists.

b. It is as indicating the destination of an action that **á** is placed before the object of a transitive verb when the same represents a specific person or when the object requires to be distinguished from the subject (§§ 1303–24):—

Aprovechó Cortés estos sucesos para acusar al emperador de perfidia.	Cortes took advantage of these occurrences to accuse the emperor of bad faith.
Los neo-caledonios tenían la costumbre de quemar vivos á sus prisioneros de guerra.	The natives of New Caledonia had the custom of burning alive their prisoners of war.
No era grande la distancia que separaba á la quinta del monasterio.	The distance separating the cottage from the monastery was not great.
Las mil ruedas dentadas sin cesar se mordían las unas á las otras.	The thousand cog-wheels ceaselessly bit into one another.

c. As indicating the objective point of movement or action, **á** is placed between some verbs and a dependent infinitive:—

Iremos á verlos.	We will go to see them.
Echó á correr.	He started to run.
Las sospechas llegan á hacerse unánimes.	The suspicions eventually became unanimous.
Muerto yo, ¿qué vendrán á ser mis hijos?	When I am dead, what will become of my children?
Los naturales empezaron á entonar su canción de guerra.	The natives began to chant their war song.

d. Following the idea of movement or tendency to any point, is that of rest therein:—

Sentarse á la mesa.	To sit at table.
Á la derecha la montaña, á la izquierda la llanura, delante el mar.	To the right the mountain, to the left the plain, in front the sea.
Los acordes de un piano resonaban á lo lejos.	The tones of a piano sounded in the distance.
Casi al extremo meridional de esta costa se descubrió una ensenada.	Almost at the southern extremity of this coast an inlet was discovered.
El 1° de Agosto los dos buques	On the 1st of August the two ships

estaban á los 25° 1′ de latitud sur y 134° 6′ de longitud oeste.

were in latitude 25° 1′ south and longitude 134° 6′ west.

REMARK.—**En**, not **á**, is used before the proper name of a city or country, in expressing location:—

Vivía en Lérida; estaba en Gibraltar.

He lived in Lerida; he was at Gibraltar.

Vive en Chile, en el Canadá.

He lives in Chile; in Canada.

e. Closely connected with the above usage is its application to time, corresponding to a portion of the use of the Latin ablative:—

Á mediodía. Al anochecer.

At midday. At nightfall.

Á últimos de setiembre.

In the latter part of September.

Á las dos de la madrugada.

At two o'clock in the morning.

Á su llegada.

On his arrival.

Á poco llegó su marido.

In a short time her husband arrived.

Á la mañana siguiente Cook abandonó aquel paraje poco hospitalario.

On the following morning Cook abandoned that inhospitable region.

f. Denotes manner or means, corresponding to another usage of the Latin ablative:—

Andar á gatas.

To go on all-fours.

Le mataron á sangre fría.

They killed him in cold blood.

Pereció á manos de un indígena.

He perished at the hands of a native.

Se dirigió á marchas forzadas sobre la capital.

He advanced upon the capital by forced marches.

Gritar á gaznate tendido.

To shout at the top of one's voice.

Guisar á lumbre mansa.

To cook by a slow fire.

Á carrera abierta; á raja cincha.

At full speed; at full gallop.

Á ojos vistos; á regaña dientes; á porfía.

Visibly; reluctantly; obstinately.

g. Expresses price or rate:—

¿Á cuánto se vende?

How much does it sell at?

Á peso el metro.

At a dollar a yard.

La ajusté á doce reales diarios.

I hired her at sixty cents a day.

Á quince nudos por hora.

At 15 knots an hour.

Á todo vapor.

At full steam.

Á seis por ciento, interés compuesto.

At 6% compound interest.

h. Expresses resemblance:—

Cortó el nudo á lo Alejandro.

He cut the knot like an Alexander.

Obrar á lo caballero.

To act like a gentleman.

Vestirse á la francesa.

To dress in the French style.

Á lo marinero.

In a seamanlike manner.

i. Placed between a noun and the same noun repeated it has in some cases a distributive value, *by*, and in others expresses juxtaposition, *to*:—

Uno á uno ; dos á dos.	One by one ; two by two.
Paso á paso ; poco á poco ; gota á gota.	Step by step ; little by little ; drop by drop.
Mano á mano ; cara á cara.	Hand to hand ; face to face.

k. Corresponds to the Latin dative after verbs of giving, telling, showing, or otherwise imparting:—

Entregó al abogado un paquete.	He handed the lawyer a package.
Después de la cena solía contar cuentos á sus nietecitos.	After supper he used to tell stories to his little grandchildren.
Ofrecieron á los ingleses ñames, caña de azúcar, y plátanos.	They offered the Englishmen yams, sugar-cane and bananas.

l. After verbs of depriving or taking away, it has the value of the Latin preposition *ab*:—

Quitaron al viajero su maleta.	They took the traveller's valise from him.
Robó á la anciana todo su dinero y ropa.	She stole all the old woman's money and clothes.
Este suplicio no arrancó al desgraciado una sola queja.	This torture did not draw a single complaint from the unfortunate man.
Cada uno se apresuró á sustraerse al furor de los demagogos, legitimado ya en la apariencia por las resoluciones que acababan de arrancarse á la reina.	Each one hastened to escape from the fury of the popular leaders, apparently legalized now by the resolutions that had been extorted from the queen.
Los indios cortaron las orejas á su prisionero.	The Indians cut off their prisoner's ears.

m. **Á** is often employed, in a figurative sense, where the English use *in*:—

No ha estado nunca á mi servicio.	He has never been in my service.
¡ Tierra á la vista !	Land in sight.
Estaban á vista de tierra.	They were in sight of land.
Á consecuencia de un resfriado ligero.	In consequence of a slight cold.
Trataron de apoderarse de todo lo que estaba á su alcance.	They tried to seize everything that was in their reach.
No llegaremos á tiempo.	We shall not arrive in time.
Al cuidado de los Sres. Baring Hermanos.	In care of Messrs. Baring Bros.

Los hombres hechos á imagen de Dios.	Men made in the image of God.

n. **Á** is likewise often used where the English idiom demands *on*:—

Á bordo del buque.	On board the ship.
Á la muerte de su padre ; al recibo de la carta ; á la llegada de la comitiva.	On the death of his father ; on the receipt of the latter ; on the arrival of the party.
Al contrario.	On the contrary.
Á causa de ; á condición de que.	On account of ; on condition that.
Á precios moderados.	On moderate terms.
Al entrar ; al llegar al yate.	On entering ; on arriving at the yacht.
Al otro lado del Atlántico.	On the other side of the Atlantic.

REMARK.—The examples accompanying the last two statements are not intended to be exhaustive, but merely to call attention to the fact that the secondary or figurative uses of any preposition do not necessarily coincide in two different languages.

1439. **CON.**

a. **Con** primarily expresses accompaniment:—

La sultana iba al baño con sus doncellas.	The sultana was going to the bath with her maids.
El Mayor Pike, rodeado en breve de un destacamento de soldados mejicanos, fué hecho prisionero con toda su comitiva y conducido á Querétaro.	Major Pike, surrounded quickly by a detachment of Mexican soldiers, was taken prisoner with his entire party and conducted to Queretaro.
La expedición volvió con una multitud de pormenores interesantes sobre las costumbres, usos, historia y lengua de los indígenas.	The expedition returned with a multitude of interesting details about the customs, habits, history and language of the natives.
Pasó la noche con nosotros.	He spent the evening with us.
Convidó al médico á comer con él.	He invited the doctor to dine with him.
Votó con el partido anti-esclavista.	He voted with the anti-slavery party.

b. By extension of the above value it expresses relations, dealings or associations of any kind with another:—

Las primeras relaciones con los naturales fueron excelentes ; pero modificáronse repentinamente.	Their first relations with the natives were excellent ; but they suddenly altered.
Llegó á la noticia del rey que el conde de Valois trataba secretamente con el rey de Aragón.	It reached the ears of the king that the Earl of Valois was negotiating secretly with the king of Arragon.
Ya no correspondía con su hermano desde hacía diez años.	He had not corresponded with his brother for ten years.

Quien la moleste tendrá que habérselas conmigo.	Whoever molests her will have to deal with me.
Los indios ribereños sostienen un tráfico extensivo con las tribus del interior.	The coast Indians keep up an extensive trade with the inland tribes.

c. Expresses instrumentality:—

Con su anteojo interrogaba todos los puntos del horizonte, pero no descubrió el menor indicio de la tierra.	He scanned with his spyglass all parts of the horizon, but he did not discover the slightest indication of land.
¡ Ánimo, ánimo ! repetía el marinero, quien sostenía á Jorge con un brazo y nadaba con el otro.	"Courage, courage," repeated the sailor, who supported George with one arm and swam with the other.
El guía señaló con el dedo una masa oscura que se destacaba sobre el horizonte.	The guide pointed out with his finger a dark mass which was outlined on the horizon.

d. Serves to form adverbial expressions of manner:—

El arca se abrió con dificultad.	The chest was opened with difficulty.
Cumplió con empeño su deber.	He did his duty conscientiously.
El alud se deslizó con la rapidez de un tren expreso.	The avalanche slid down with the rapidity of an express train.
Los días se sucedían con una monotonía que desesperaba.	The days followed one another with a monotony that was maddening.
Con un disfraz semejante salió al mismo tiempo para Francia el conde de Toreno.	With a similar disguise the Count of Toreno set out at the same time for France.
Se sentían obligados á recibirlo con la risa en los labios.	They felt obliged to receive him with smiles on their lips.
Pálida, y con los ojos enrojecidos.	Pale and with reddened eyes.

e. Occasionally **con** has the value of *notwithstanding*:—

Con todo eso.	For (notwithstanding) all that.
La vida del hombre, con ser tan corta, nos suministra abundantes pruebas de esta verdad.	The life of man, notwithstanding its being so short, furnishes us abundant proof of this truth.
Con todos sus preparativos no tuvo su experimento éxito alguno.	Notwithstanding all his preparation his experiment was fruitless.

1440. **DE.**

a. The primary meaning of **de** is that of origination, derivation or proceeding from, with which value it is applicable to place, time or condition:—

El 6 de mayo salieron de la bahía con rumbo al Este.	On the 6th of May they set sail from the bay in an easterly course.

La palabra azúcar nos viene del árabe.	The word sugar comes to us from the Arabic.
El ginete se apeó de su caballo.	The rider dismounted from his horse.
El caballo de Berbería es veloz y hermoso.	The Barbary horse is swift and handsome.
Uno de los insectos más dañinos de África es la langosta.	One of the most destructive insects of Africa is the locust.
Don Quijote de la Mancha.	Don Quixote of La Mancha.
El ramal de Júcaro á Morón.	The branch (R. R.) from Jucaro to Moron.
Caminaron de las seis á las doce.	They traveled from six to twelve.
De sol á sol.	From sunrise to sunset.
De vez en cuando.	From time to time.

b. By extension of the value of origin or derivation, it gets to express the material of which a thing is made:—

Un capote de piel.	A fur cape.
Una plancha de latón pulido.	A plate of polished brass.
Una vela de cera, de sebo.	A wax candle, tallow candle.
Una silla de mimbres.	A wicker chair.
Un palanganero de caoba.	A mahogany washstand.
Fumaba una pipa de barro.	He was smoking a clay pipe.

c. It is equivalent to *of* in expressing ownership, and corresponds to the English possessive:—

Los amigos del padre de Teodoro.	The friends of Theodore's father.
Doña Beatriz era hija de D. Pedro de la Cueva, almirante de Santo Domingo y hermano del Duque.	Doña Beatrice was the daughter of Don Pedro de la Cueva, Admiral of San Domingo and the Duke's brother.
La naturaleza del terreno.	The nature of the soil.
El dictamen de la mayoría.	The decision of the majority.
Las obras de García.	The works of García.

d. By extension of the above, it expresses the relation of a part to the whole to which it pertains:—

Las astas de un toro.	The horns of a bull.
La cabeza de un perno.	The head of a bolt.
Bayas de yedra.	Ivy berries.
Semilla de trébol.	Clover seed.
El badajo de una campana.	The clapper of a bell.
El asiento, el respaldo de una silla.	The seat, the back of a chair.
La albardilla de un muro.	The coping of a wall.

e. It expresses the use for which a thing is intended:—

Una máquina de acepillar.	A planing-machine.
Un caballo de caza.	A hunter (hunting-horse).
Una caña de pescar.	A fishing-rod.

Un carro de ganado, de equipaje.	A cattle-car, baggage-car.
Una sierra de podar.	A pruning-saw.
Un molinillo de café.	A coffee-mill.

f. Precedes a noun denoting a distinctive characteristic:—

El hombre de la barba.	The man with the beard.
Don Pedro del lunar.	Don Pedro of the birth-mark.
La estación de calenturas.	The fever season.
Un hombre de talento, de inteligencia.	A man of talent, of intelligence.
El año de la Héjira, del terremoto de Lisboa, de la erupción del Cosigüina.	The year of the Hegira, of the Lisbon earthquake, of the eruption of Coseguina.
Era niña de doce años, de pelo rubio y de natural vivo.	She was a girl of twelve, light-haired, and of a lively nature.

g. By extension it is used to restrict a general term to a special application, or to show which one of a class is intended:—

Una colección de minerales, de órquides, de sellos de correo.	A collection of minerals, of orchids, of postage-stamps.
Cloruro de sodio, de potasio, de magnesio.	Sodium chloride, potassium chloride, magnesium chloride.
Taladro de mano, de ballesta, de engranaje cónico, de extensión.	Hand drill, bow drill, bevel-wheel drill, expanding drill.
Sierra de mano, de vaivén, de través, de ingletes.	Handsaw, jig-saw, cross-cut saw, tenon-saw.
Un puente de caballete, de contrapeso, de armadura de hierro, de riostras y pendolones.	A trestle bridge, counterpoise bridge, iron girder bridge, strut-and-truss bridge.

h. Is used before a noun restricting or specifying the extent and meaning of a preceding verb or adjective:—

Cojea del pie derecho.	He limps with the right foot.
Trabaja de carpintero.	He works as a carpenter.
Es sordo de la oreja izquierda.	He is deaf in his left ear
Alto de estatura, enjuto de carnes, ancho de espaldas, resuelto de ademanes, firme de andadura, basto de facciones.	Tall of stature, spare of flesh, broad-shouldered, resolute of mien, firm of step, coarse-featured.

i. Expresses cause, with the value of *by, for, on account of*:—

Loco de alegría; ciego de cólera; medio muerto de hambre, de susto.	Wild with joy; blind with rage; half dead with hunger, with fright.
Falleció de tifo.	He died of typhus fever.
Estábamos ahogados del calor.	We were suffocated with the heat.

k. Denotes the agent of a verb in the passive, or a past participle, especially when expressing a mental action:—

Partió el general acompañado de cuatro de sus ayudantes.	The general set out accompanied by four of his aids.
El rey se veía odiado de sus súbditos y perseguido de los extraños.	The king found himself hated by his subjects and harassed by foreigners.

REMARK.—If the verb or participle expresses a *direct* physical action, the preposition to be used is **por**:—

El Perú fué conquistado por los españoles.	Peru was conquered by the Spaniards.
Destruido por las injurias del tiempo.	Destroyed by the action of the weather.

l. Precedes a noun specifying the particular manner of an action represented by a past participle:—

Forrado de pieles; cubierto de arena; adornado de joyas; amueblado de caoba; alfombrado de tapetes turcos; incrustado de nácar; embutido de marfil.	Lined with furs; covered with sand; adorned with jewels; furnished in mahogany; carpeted with Turkish rugs; overlaid with mother-of-pearl; inlaid with ivory.
Los picos encapotados de niebla; las cumbres coronadas de nieve eterna.	The peaks veiled in mist; the summits crowned with eternal snow.

m. It is used to express manner of action or being, thus forming many adverbial expressions:—

Estaba de gala, de luto, de etiqueta.	He was in holiday attire, in mourning, in full dress.
Cayó de rodillas, de espaldas.	He fell on his knees, on his back.
Vistióse de marinero.	He dressed up as a sailor.
Fungía de presidente.	He was acting as president.
Fué de capitán Don Rodrigo Meneses.	Don Rodrigo Meneses went as captain.
Les sirvió de guía.	He served them as guide.
Fué enviado de Embajador á la Puerta.	He was sent as Ambassador to the Porte.
De falso; de golpe; de oídas; de buena fe; de mala gana.	Falsely; suddenly; by hearsay; in good faith; unwillingly.

n. As a substitute for **que** in comparisons:—

Encontróse el terreno menos accidentado de lo que se había supuesto.	The ground was found to be less uneven than had been supposed.
Más de cuatro horas se invirtieron en aquella operación penosa.	More than four hours were spent in that tedious operation.

o. Like the Latin *de,* it indicates the matter spoken or treated of:—

Capítulo II. Del verbo auxiliar **haber** ó **tener.**	Chapter II. On the auxiliary *haber* or *tener.*
Nada sé de aquel asunto.	I know nothing about that matter.
No hablemos de los peligros que hemos arrostrado.	Let us not speak of the dangers we have faced.
No pudo resistir á la tentación de informar á su mujer de todo lo sucedido.	He could not resist the temptation of informing his wife of all that had occurred.

p. **De** is placed between the common appellatives and the proper names of countries, provinces, towns, islands, and geographical divisions:—

La República de Colombia.	The Republic of Colombia.
La provincia de Aragón.	The province of Arragon.
La ciudad del Cuzco.	The city of Cuzco.
La isla de Cuba.	The island of Cuba.
El pico de Tenerife.	The peak of Teneriffe.
El estrecho de Magallanes.	The straits of Magellan.

q. **De** is idiomatically used between a noun and a qualifying noun or adjective preceding:—

El ladrón de Andresillo.	That thief Andrew.
El bribón del abogado.	The scoundrel of a lawyer.
El charlatán del médico.	The quack doctor.
El pobre de Tomás.	Poor Tom.
La desgraciada de Florinda.	The unfortunate Florinda.
¡ Ay de sus proyectos !	Alas for his plans !
¡ Desventurados de ellos !	Unlucky are they !

1441. **EN.**

a. **En** has primarily the values of *in,* expressing rest, and *into,* expressing motion:—

Penetró en el interior hasta el lago Urre Lauquen, que nombró Lago de Salinas.	He penetrated into the interior as far as the lake Urre Lauquen, which he named Salt Lake.
Todos se metieron precipitadamente en sus casas.	All rushed precipitately into their houses.
Se decidió pasar la noche en aquella choza.	It was decided to pass the night in that hut.
En aquel paraje se establecieron relaciones amistosas con los naturales.	In this region friendly relations were established with the natives.

b. The above values are extended to many secondary or

figurative applications, generally corresponding to the English:—

En mangas de camisa; en paños menores.	In one's shirt-sleeves; in dishabille.
La fonda ha caído en mala fama.	The hotel has fallen into ill-repute.
Las aceras están en mal estado.	The sidewalks are in bad order.
Poner una cosa en voga.	To bring a thing into vogue.
Se lo daré á V. en cambio del suyo.	I will give it to you in exchange for yours.
En efecto; en debida forma; en vano; en desuso; en gran manera.	In fact; in due form; in vain; in disuse; in a high degree.
Déjesele en paz.	Let him be left in peace.
Roto en mil pedazos.	Broken in a thousand pieces.

c. **En** occasionally has the value of *on, upon*:—

Ella tenía una sortija de matrimonio en el dedo.	She had a wedding-ring on her finger.
Se sentó en la cama.	He sat down on the bed.
La comida ya está en la mesa.	The dinner is already on the table.
Apoyó su mano en mi hombro.	He rested his hand on my shoulder.
Cuando sus ojos descansaron en la pintura, . . .	When her eyes rested on the painting, . . .
Selkirk, durante su residencia en la isla de Juan Fernández, había visto pasar muchos buques.	Selkirk, during his stay on the island of Juan Fernandez, had seen many ships pass.
Después de dos días de marcha la expedición se encontró en los confines de Tarapacá.	After two days' journey the expedition found itself on the confines of Tarapaca.

d. Applies to time in practically the same manner as the English *in*:—

Lo hizo en cuatro horas.	He did it in four hours.
En aquel momento una mala noticia vino á llevar á su colmo el desaliento de la tripulación.	At that moment bad news came to put the climax to the dejectedness of the crew.
En breve volvieron á la carga.	In a short time they returned to the charge.
Prometió traérmelos en dos días.	He promised to bring them to me in two days.
En un año había llegado á ser una notabilidad.	In a year he had become a notable character.

1442. COMBINATIONS OF PREPOSITIONS.

a. **De á** are combined to express rate or denomination:—

Tabacos de á diez centavos, de á tres por veinticinco.	Ten-cent cigars, three-for-a-quarter cigars.

Una pieza de á doce, de á diez y ocho.	A twelve-pounder, an eighteen-pounder (gun).
Diez sellos de á quince céntimos y cuatro de á veinte y cinco.	Ten three-cent stamps and four fives.
Clavos de á ochavo.	Tenpenny nails.
Un guardia civil de á caballo.	A mounted policeman.
Los de á pie.	The infantry.
El portero de al lado.	The porter of the next house.
Billetes de á cinco pesos.	Five-dollar bills.
Bonos nacionales de á tres por ciento.	Three per cent. government bonds.

b. Prepositional compounds may be formed by placing **de** or **por** before other prepositions, each member retaining its own value:—

El fuente salía de entre dos cerros elevados y roqueños.	The spring issued from between two high, rocky hills.
Las luciérnagas revoloteaban por entre las ramas.	The fireflies were dancing among the boughs.
Al pasar por delante del teatro . . .	On passing in front of the theater . . .
Un arroyuelo serpenteaba por entre las malezas.	A brook wound through among the underbrush.
Saltó una liebre de entre las matas.	A hare jumped out from among the bushes.
La bala pasó por encima de su cabeza.	The ball passed over his head.
Saltó por encima de la zanja, por encima del seto.	He jumped across the ditch, over the hedge.

c. **Para con** signifies moral direction toward:—

Su conducta para con sus hijos.	His behavior towards his children.
Ha sido muy amable para conmigo.	He has been very kind toward me.
Noté que él era muy respetuoso para con su madre.	I noticed that he was very respectful towards his mother.
Este hombre es muy duro para con sus criados.	This man is very severe towards his servants.
Es afable y caritativo para con todos.	He is affable and charitable to all.
Me parece que su padre es injusto para con él.	It seems to me that his father is unjust towards him.
Es ingrato para con sus padres.	He is ungrateful towards his parents.
Se mostró cruel para con los prisioneros.	He showed himself cruel to the prisoners.
Es liberal para con sus empleados.	He is liberal towards his employés.

PREPOSITIONS REQUIRED BY VERBS, ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS.

1443. Some prepositions, especially **á, con, de, en, para** and **por,** are much used (as are their equivalents in English) to

supplement certain nouns, adjectives and verbs. This subject, which is called in some grammars "regimen," is very extensive, and space cannot be here afforded for a list of all these combinations. A tolerably complete list, covering 57 pages, may be found in the "Gramática de la Lengua Castellana," of Vicente Salvá. Unfortunately the subject, though of the utmost importance, has been practically ignored by the writers of dictionaries.

1444. The following examples will show the general character of the matter in question:—

VERBS.

Alegrarse de algo.	To rejoice at anything.
El río abunda de peces.	The river abounds with fish.
Sus opiniones no tardaron en influir en las de Josefa.	His opinions were not long in influencing those of Josephine.
Pero no contó con la inexperiencia de sus pilotos.	But he did not count upon the inexperience of his pilots.
La viudez acabó con su juventud.	Widowhood put an end to her youth.
Su propiedad colinda con la mía.	His estate touches mine.
El Perú confina con el Ecuador.	Peru borders on Ecuador.
Este aposento huele á tabaco.	This room smells of tobacco.
Sustituyó los billetes con un lío de papel de desecho.	He substituted a package of waste paper for the bills.
Desimpresionarse de una idea.	To disabuse one's self of an idea.
Se enamoricó de la niña.	He was smitten with the girl.
Pensaba en ella de día y soñaba con ella de noche.	He thought of her by day and dreamt of her by night.

ADJECTIVES AND PAST PARTICIPLES.

Extraño de la materia en cuestión.	Foreign to the matter in question.
Humano con los vencidos.	Humane towards the vanquished.
Odioso al público.	Distasteful to the public.
Soy muy aficionado á la ópera.	I am very fond of the opera.
Quedó muy alegre con la noticia.	He was very joyful over the news.
Parecía muy arrepentido de sus acciones.	He seemed very sorry for his actions.
Un hombre avanzado en años.	A man advanced in years.
Estábamos todos atónitos del suceso.	We were all astonished at the occurrence.
Convencido de su error.	Convinced of his error.
Ocupado de negocios.	Occupied with business.
Fué el primero, el último, á llegar.	He was the first, the last, to arrive.
Abismado en sus reflexiones.	Absorbed in his reflections.

NOUNS.

Su afición á la música.	His fondness for music.
Un remedio contra la gota.	A cure for the gout.

El anhelo por sobresalir.	The desire to excel.
El amor á la patria.	Love for one's country.
Su indignación sobre la conducta de su hermano.	Her indignation over her brother's conduct.
Su generosidad para con sus asistentes.	His generosity towards his assistants.
Habilidad en el manejo de las armas.	Skill in the use of weapons.
Complicidad en un delito.	Complicity in a crime.
Denegó toda responsabilidad en el negocio.	He disclaimed all responsibility in the matter.
Mostraba una capacidad para los más altos puestos.	He showed a capacity for the highest positions.
No puede haber objección alguna á ello.	There can be no objection to it.
No veo inconveniente en su plan.	I see no objection to your plan.
Ha expresado su simpatía con V. en su dolor.	He expressed his sympathy for you in your affliction.

1445. A verb, adjective or noun is not always limited to a single, supplementary preposition; but may take, at different times, various prepositions according to its relations to the following word:—

Bueno de comer.	Good to eat.
Bueno para la salud.	Good for the health.
Ha sido muy bueno con nosotros.	He has been very good to us.
Dar fin á una cosa.	To complete a thing.
Dar fin de una cosa.	To put an end to a thing.
Salió á su padre.	He turned out like his father.
Salió con su padre.	He went out with his father.
Salió de su padre.	He became of age.
Salió por su padre.	He gave bonds for his father.
Deshacerse de alguna cosa.	To get rid of something.
Deshacerse por alguna cosa.	To long for something.
Hacerse á una cosa.	To accustom one's self to a thing.
Hacerse con una cosa.	To obtain a thing.
Hacerse de una cosa.	To provide one's self with a thing.
Hacerse para una cosa.	To prepare one's self for a thing.

1446. The question of the preposition required by a certain verb may be simplified by bearing in mind that verbs of motion may be followed by any preposition according to the direction of the motion; therefore the prepositions following such verbs are independent of the verbs themselves, and need not be considered under the subject of regimen:—

Llegar á Berlín, llegar de Berlín.	To arrive at Berlin, to arrive from Berlin.

Correr al, en el, por el, hacia el, hasta el bosque.	To run to, in, through, towards, as far as the woods.
Saltar al agua, en tierra, de la muralla, sobre la mesa, por encima del foso.	To jump into the water, on to the land, from the wall, on the table, over the ditch.
Se colocó en la barquilla del globo, sobre el alcázar, cerca de la bitácora, delante de la puerta, debajo de la galería.	He placed himself in the car of the balloon, on the quarterdeck, near the binnacle, in front of the door, under the gallery.

1447. Again we should distinguish between a preposition which really supplements the verb, and one forming part of an adverbial expression which merely modifies its meaning[1]:—

Comer con un amigo, con apetito, en casa.	To dine with a friend, with appetite, at home.
Decir en alta voz, con voz humilde, en amistad, entre dientes.	To say aloud, in a humble tone, in friendship, between one's teeth.
Escribir á su tío, con esta fecha, con buenos caracteres, en buen estilo, de propio puño, en prosa, sobre el papel.	To write to one's uncle, under this date, in clear characters, in a good style, with one's own hand, in prose, on the paper.
Morir á cuchillo, á manos de otro, de viejo, en olor de santidad, por su patria.	To die by the knife, at the hands of another, in the odor of sanctity, for one's country.
Trabajar á destajo, con ahinco, de zapatero, en hierro, por otro.	To work by the job, with ardor, as a shoemaker, in iron, for another.

1448. The preposition required to supplement a verb or adjective is usually the same whether the complement[2] be a noun or an infinitive:—

La ocasión es propicia para ejecutar el proyecto,—propicia para la ejecución del proyecto.	The occasion is favorable for carrying out the plan,—for the execution of the plan.
Dedicarse á estudiar el derecho,—al estudio del derecho.	To devote one's self to studying law, —to the study of law.

1449. In English two or more verbs, adjectives or nouns, supplemented by different prepositions, may be made to apply to the same complement. In Spanish this is inadmissible; two or

---

[1] The list in Salvá's Grammar, above referred to, is full of examples which show a failure to make this distinction. The examples here given (§ 1447) are taken from that list.

[2] A verb, adjective or noun, requiring a preposition to connect its meaning with what follows, must necessarily be followed by some word (a noun or infinitive) to which it applies. This word is here called *complement*, i.e. that which *completes* the clause.

more words having different regimens must have separate complements:—

Gran número de buques entran en este puerto y salen de él todos los meses.	A large number of vessels enter and leave this port every month.
Los rebeldes atacaron la ciudad de X., y se apoderaron de ella.	The rebels attacked and took possession of the city of X.
Protesta contra esta medida y oposición á ella.	Protest against and opposition to this measure.
Tomó parte en esta expedición y aprovechó de ella.	He took part in and profited by this expedition.
Su acción no sólo fué diferente de las instrucciones que yo le había dado, sino contraria á ellas.	His action was not only different from, but contrary to, the instructions I had given him.
Es muy aficionado al juego de ajedrez y muy experto en él.	He is very fond of and expert in the game of chess.

REMARK.—Such constructions as **entran en y salen de este puerto, atacaron y se apoderaron de la ciudad**, would be entirely incorrect.

EXERCISE LX.

Professor, I would like you to tell me how long it would take me [1] to learn Spanish thoroughly, and what would be the best way to set about it.[2]

You ask two questions neither of which is easy for me to answer. In regard to [3] the first, much depends upon the extent of the signification given [4] to the word "thoroughly." It is doubtful if anyone ever learned even his native tongue so thoroughly that there remained nothing in it unknown to him. Besides, some persons learn with much more *facility* than others. But I cannot think that four years of *constant* study and practice would be too much to enable [5] even an apt scholar to acquire the readiness and accuracy of an educated native.[6] Half that time will enable one to transact business and take part in *conversation* when the matters treated of [7] are not intricate. Much less knowledge [8] than this may be still (*aún*) useful. It is not true that a little knowledge (*ciencia*) is a dangerous thing; the danger lies in not knowing where our knowledge (*ciencia*) ends and our *ignorance* begins.

In regard to the [9] best method of learning a language, there are two *extreme opinions* and many intermediate ones. One extreme [10] is in favor of committing to memory all the *possible* forms of words, and the rules regulating their use,[11] before beginning to employ any of them. The opposite method is to acquire, by means of *frequent repetition*, the ability

---

[1] *cuánto tiempo necesitaría . . .* [2] *el mejor modo de proceder para lograr mi objeto.* [3] *en cuanto á . . .* [4] *que se da . . .* [5] would be too much to enable, *bastaran para que.* [6] *un educado del país.* [7] *de que se trata.* [8] *un conocimiento mucho menor . . .* [9] *respecto al . . .* [10] *una de las opiniones extremas.* [11] *que rigen su uso.*

to repeat long sentences *rapidly*, without inquiring what part is performed by[1] the several words, or why they assume sometimes one form and sometimes[2] another. My own preference is for learning[3] simultaneously grammatical forms, the meanings of words and their use (*empleo*) in sentences. I would begin with (*por*) words, forms and *sentences* so simple that the learner would have no difficulty[4] in understanding the *idea* to be conveyed,[5] the single words employed, and why one form of a word was preferred to another. It would then remain only to add successive small *increments* until the *structure* of the language were *complete*.

CHAPTER XXX.

THE LAWS OF AGREEMENT.

1450. The fundamental principles of agreement (with which the student is already familiar) are that a verb agrees with its subject in person and number; that an adjective, or a past participle not connected with **haber**, agrees with its noun in gender and number; and that a pronoun, so far as its inflection will permit, agrees with the noun it represents in gender and number.

So long as the verb has but a single subject, and the adjective or pronoun relates to but a single noun about whose gender and number there is no uncertainty, the matter presents no difficulty. The complication arises where the noun is a collective noun, where the apparent gender is not the true gender, or where several nouns or subjects are involved. These cases will be taken up in detail.

COLLECTIVE NOUNS.

1451. A collective noun is one that is singular in form but represents a plurality in fact. The dependent verbs and adjectives of such nouns are sometimes singular and at other times plural. The primary ground of distinction is that if the aggregate acts as a unity it is singular; if the component parts act separately, they are regarded as a plurality:—

La multitud **escuchó** al gobernador. The throng listened to the governor.
La multitud **había** hecho alto de- The throng had stopped before the

[1] what part is performed by, *qué papel hacen*. [2] See § 1415. [3] *yo prefiero que se aprendan*. [4] *no experimentaría dificultad alguna*. [5] to be conveyed, *que se quisiera expresar*.

lante del palacio, pero como no apareció el presidente, se **dispersaron** gradualmente.	palace, but as the president did not appear, they dispersed gradually.

1452. Still, Spanish ideas of congruity do not permit a collective noun, though denoting a plurality, to be accompanied by a plural verb or adjective in the same clause:—

La gente **huyó** (*not* huyeron) á la primera descarga de la tropa.	The people fled at the first volley from the troops.
Entró en la plaza el motín, pero á la primera descarga de la tropa, **huyeron** despavoridos.	The mob entered the square, but at the first volley from the troops, they fled in terror.
El ganado **fué** permitido vagar por los bosques en busca de pasto.	The cattle were permitted to roam in the woods in search of pasture.
El público **quiere** informarse de la verdad de estos rumores.	The public wish to be informed of the truth of these rumors.
La muchedumbre se **agolpó** á su rededor.	The throng crowded around him.
La soldadesca desenfrenada se **apoderó** de la correspondencia de la corte.	The ungoverned soldiery seized the correspondence of the court.
El motín **llenaba** las calles de Estocolmo, é **iban** todos los días á las puertas del palacio para gastar su aliento lanzando gritos inútiles.	The mob filled the streets of Stockholm, and came daily to the doors of the palace to waste their breath in vain shouting.
Llegó la noticia de que el destacamento bajo el mando del coronel Pérez **había** sido arrojado de su posición en las cercanías de Ojos Negros, y que **desprovistos** de bagaje y provisiones, se **veían** en el peligro de morir de frío y hambre.	News was received that the detachment under command of Col. Pérez had been driven from their position near Ojos Negros, and that, deprived of camp equipage and provisions, they were in danger of perishing from cold and hunger.

REMARK.—If the collective expresses a homogeneous aggregate (such as **ejército, rebaño, armada, comisión**, *etc.*) the verb is preferably singular, even though placed at a distance from the subject.

1453. When the action is entirely that of individuals, and it is inexpedient to interpolate any words between the verb and noun, the collective term should be broken up, and the individuals represented:—

El Congreso se reunirá el lunes.	The Congress will meet on Monday.
Los miembros del Congreso regresarán á sus domicilios.	The members of the Congress will return to their homes.
Habiendo llegado la tropa á media-	The troop having arrived at midnight,

noche, no pudieron los hombres encontrar alojamiento ni para sí mismos ni para sus bestias.

they were unable to find lodgings for either themselves or their horses.

1454. When a singular collective noun is connected with a plural noun by de, an accompanying verb or adjective agrees with the noun with which it is most closely connected in meaning:—

Un centenar de mujeres **fueron sepultadas** debajo de los escombros.

A hundred women were buried under the ruins.

La docena de huevos que V. compró en el mercado no **estaba completa.**

The dozen of eggs you bought at market was not a full one

La docena de huevos que V. compró en el mercado **estaban hueros.**

The dozen of eggs you bought at market were addled.

Al fin del libro se **introduce** una serie de ejercicios.

A series of exercises is introduced at the end of the book.

Una multitud de palabras francesas se **introdujeron** en nuestro idioma.

A multitude of French words were introduced into our language.

Hay una clase de autores que se **contentan** con sólo repetir y combinar el trabajo de otros.

There is a class of authors who are content merely to repeat and combine the work of others.

La multiplicidad de jefes **produjo** entre los fenicios una confusión que contribuyó á su derrota.

The multiplicity of leaders produced among the Phœnicians a confusion that contributed to their defeat.

Una bandada de buitres se **cernían** encima de la catarata.

A flock of vultures was sailing over the falls.

REMARK.—When the meaning of the verb is not intimately associated with either noun in expressions of the above nature, the verb may be singular if it precedes :—

Entró una tropa de asesinos en la cámara del rey.
Una tropa de asesinos **entraron** en la cámara del rey.

A troop of assassins entered the king's chamber.

REMARK 2.—When it is difficult to decide which of the nouns the verb is most intimately associated with, the preference is for the plural when the verb follows —

Presenta un sin número de reglas con sus excepciones que **confunden y abaten** el entendimiento.

It presents an endless amount of rules and exceptions that confuse and demoralize the understanding.

1455. Indeed, in such constructions, the singular collective and the plural complement may each have its own agreement, according to the connection and meaning:—

La aleación de acero y niquel, **unidos**

The alloy of steel and nickel, united

por la fusión, **posee** una gran fuerza de resistencia.
by fusion, possesses great power of resistance.

La gran variedad de plantas **prodigadas** por la naturaleza en los Andes **ofrece** al naturalista un atractivo que apenas se ve igualado en otra parte del globo.
The great variety of plants lavished by Nature in the Andes offers an attraction to the naturalist which is hardly equalled in any other part of the globe.

La inmensidad de las aguas que **rodean** al globo **tiene** algo de incomprensible.
The immensity of the waters that surround the earth has in it something incomprehensible.

La cantidad de langostas **era** tan grande que **destruyeron** toda la cosecha.
The number of locusts was so great that they destroyed the whole crops.

1456. Hence **parte, mitad, resto, tercio,** and other similar singular nouns, may be accompanied by plural verbs or adjectives if the meaning requires it:—

Iban en el buque sesenta personas; la mitad **perecieron**.
Seventy persons were on board; half of them perished.

Más de la mitad de la población **son** indios ó mestizos.
More than one half of the population are Indians or half-breeds.

Un tercio se **salvaron** en las lanchas; el resto **fueron** degollados sin piedad por los indígenas.
A third saved themselves in the boats; the rest were massacred without mercy by the natives.

Parte de los soldados **estaban** enfermos en el hospital, parte **estaban** ausentes con licencia, parte **habían** ido á forrajear, y resultó que era muy reducido el número de los que guardaban el campamento.
Part of the soldiers were sick in hospital, a part were absent on furlough, a part had gone foraging, and it happened that the number of those who were guarding the camp was very small.

Gran parte de las exportaciones **consisten** en seda cruda.
A large part of the exports consist of raw silk.

La mayor parte de las proposiciones **han** sido rechazadas.
The greater part of the propositions have been rejected.

but

La mayor parte de la raza humana **participa** de este error.
The greater part of mankind participate in this error.

REMARK.—**Parte,** used adverbially after a noun, does not affect the agreement:—

El terreno era parte sólido, parte arenoso.
The ground was in part solid, and in part sandy.

1457. The expressions **más de un** and **uno y medio** are treated as singular:—

Más de un viajero atrevido se **ha** perdido para siempre en aquellos páramos.
More than one adventurous traveler **have** been lost for ever on those moors.

Un día y medio se **invirtió** en aquellos preparativos.
A day and a half **were** spent in those preparations.

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

1458. When the verb **ser** connects two nouns of different number, the one being subject and the other predicate, the verb properly agrees in number with the subject:—

Y esas mismas variaciones **son** un argumento incontrovertible en contra de la hipótesis de Vd.
And those very variations **are** an incontrovertible argument against your theory.

Sus partidarios **eran** la hez de la población.
His followers **were** the dregs of the town.

Reconoció que aquellos campos de hielo **serían** un obstáculo insuperable.
He recognized that those ice-fields **would be** an insurmountable obstacle.

1459. But the predicate following the verb **ser** exercises at times a kind of attraction upon it (as was common in Latin), especially when it is plural, or when it immediately follows the verb, and the subject is at some distance:—

Periodista sin opinión propia política ni literaria, cuyo único provecho **son** cuatrocientos reales mensuales que le valen sus artículos.
A journalist without an opinion of his own, either political or literary, whose only gain **is** twenty dollars a month, which his articles bring him.

La única recompensa que recibe el reformista á menudo **son** el ridículo y la persecución.
The only reward which the reformer obtains **is** often ridicule and persecution.

El otro hombre que ví **eráis** vos.
The other man that I saw **was** you.

La época más dichosa de la vida de Caldas **fueron** los años en que gozó de la plena y pacífica posesión del Observatorio de Bogotá.
The happiest period in the life of Caldas **was** the years in which he enjoyed the full and undisturbed possession of the Observatory of Bogota.

REMARK.—This latter construction should be sedulously avoided when the verb is followed by the adjective **todo**, qualifying the subject:—

Su urbanidad **es toda** seguridades y promesas sin ejecución.
Their politeness **is all** assurances and promises without fulfilment.

Su biblioteca, que no es pequeña, **es toda** novelas y poesías.
Her library, which **is not a small one**, is all novels and poetry.

El terreno de esta región era todo rocas esparcidas y negruzcas, entre las cuales brotaban con dificultad algunos arbustos desmirriados y enfermizos.

The ground of this region was all blackened and scattered rocks, among which a few stunted and sickly shrubs grew with difficulty.

SEVERAL NOUNS COMBINED.

1460. When a verb has several subjects, or an adjective refers to several nouns, the fundamental principle is that two or more subjects are equivalent to a plural subject, and that two or more nouns of different genders are equivalent to a plural masculine:—

El oro y la plata **arrancados** á los naturales.

The gold and silver **wrung** from the natives.

En ella el cuerpo y el alma **son** como los de la Santísima Virgen María.

In her, body and soul are like **those** of the blessed Virgin Mary.

El calor tropical y la atmósfera húmeda y malsana **fueron fatales** á gran número de los españoles.

The tropical heat and the moist, unhealthy atmosphere were fatal to a large number of the Spaniards.

Descubrióse al comandante que, cogido por la pared, y **fracturados** el pecho y la cabeza, estaba próximo á expirar.

They found the commandant, who, caught by the wall, and with his chest and head **crushed**, was about to breathe his last.

1461. But these general rules are subject to a great many exceptions:—

a. Two or more singular nouns, expressing ideas which coalesce into a single idea, are equivalent to one singular noun:—

La legislación, lejos de temer, debe animar **este** flujo y reflujo del interés, sin **el cual** no puede crecer ni subsistir la agricultura.

Legislation, instead of fearing, should stimulate this ebb and flow of interest, without which agriculture can neither increase nor exist.

El recibo, trasmisión y distribución de los paquetes se **verifica** en este país por sociedades incorporadas.

The receiving, transmitting and delivery of parcels is carried on in this country by incorporated companies.

El abrir y cerrar de esta válvula **permite** que el flúido pase á la parte anterior é impide que vuelva.

The opening and closing of this valve permits the fluid to move forward and prevents its return.

REMARK.—In the following case the nouns are considered separately, each taking the article:—

El flujo y el reflujo del mar **son producidos** por la atracción de la luna y del sol.

The ebb and flow of the sea is produced by the attraction of the sun and moon.

La ascensión y la caída del mercurio **indican** las variaciones de la atmósfera.
The rise and fall of the mercury show the atmospheric changes.

Las importaciones y las exportaciones en este caso **son** casi iguales.
The imports and exports are in this instance nearly equal.

b. Two or more neuter clauses are equivalent to one only:—

Esto y lo que habíamos oído en el restaurante nos **decidió** á dejar la ciudad sin demora.
This and what we had overheard in the restaurant induced us to leave the city without delay.

Lo que había aprendido por su propia experiencia y lo poco que por sí solo habia podido recoger de los libros, **constituía** toda su educación.
What he had learned from his own experience and the little he had been able to glean unaided from books, formed his only education.

Lo castizo de su estilo y lo elevado de sus sentimientos **obtuvo** por las obras de Scott una popularidad de que ningún autor anteriormente había gozado.
The correctness of his style and the elevation of his sentiments obtained for Scott's works a popularity that no previous author had enjoyed.

REMARK.—A neuter phrase and a noun masculine or feminine singular, may be considered either as singular or plural:—

Lo cual y su partida repentina me **hace** (*or* hacen) creer que ha desistido de su empeño.
Which [fact] and his sudden departure make me believe that he has desisted from his efforts.

Lo magnánimo de su conducta, y su modestia en la hora de la victoria, **granjeó** (*or* granjearon) al General Grant la estimación de todo el mundo.
The magnanimity of his conduct and his modesty in the hour of victory won for General Grant the esteem of the whole world.

La pureza de su lenguaje y lo elevado de sus sentimientos **obtuvo** (*or* obtuvieron) por las obras de Scott una popularidad, *etc.*
The purity of his language and the elevation of his sentiments, obtained for Scott's works a popularity, *etc.*

c. Two or more infinitives, being logically neuters, are treated as one singular:—

Á los vasallos **corresponde** únicamente callar y obedecer.
The duty of vassals is simply to keep silence and obey.

Ganar mucho y gastar poco **asegurará** las riquezas.
To earn much and spend little will insure riches.

Acostarse y levantarse temprano, y trabajar con moderación, si no **asegura** la salud, al menos **contribuye** poderosamente á su conservación.
To go to bed early, to rise early and to work moderately, if they do not insure health, at least contribute powerfully to its preservation.

Producir poco y consumir mucho **ocasionará** la ruina de la nación más poderosa.

To produce little and consume much will bring on the downfall of the most powerful nation.

REMARK.—This construction would be better if the definite article were placed before the first infinitive, thus making a single collective idea out of all of them :—

Oí y comprendí cada palabra, y el oír y comprender, á tanta distancia, todo cuanto V. dijo, **parece** muy singular.

I heard and understood every word, and my hearing and understanding at such a distance, all that you said seems very wonderful.

El ganar mucho y gastar poco **asegurará** las riquezas.

To earn much and spend little will insure riches.

Á los vasallos corresponde únicamente el callar y obedecer.

The duty of vassals is simply to keep silence and obey.

El producir poco y consumir mucho ocasionará la ruina de la nación más poderosa.

To produce little and consume much will bring on the downfall of the most powerful nation.

REMARK 2.—A definite article before each infinitive would make a plural of them :—

El madrugar, el hacer ejercicio, y el comer moderadamente, **son** provechosísimos para la salud.

To rise early, to take exercise, and to eat moderately, are conducive to health.

El ganar mucho y el gastar poco **asegurarán** las riquezas.

To earn much and spend little will insure riches.

El producir poco y el consumir mucho **ocasionarán** la ruina de la nación más poderosa.

To produce little and to consume much will bring on the downfall of the most powerful nation.

d. When two or more entire statements are the joint subject of a verb, the latter is singular,—they being considered as neuters :—

El que hubiese habido una sublevación, y el que el partido eclesiástico hubiese llegado al poder, se **descubrió** ser una noticia falsa.

That there had been a revolution, and that the church party had come into power, was found to be a false report.

El que la administración haya taladrado á la profundidad de 1000 pies, y el que se hayan hallado allí petróleo y gas natural, **es** muy cierto.

That the company have bored to a depth of 1000 feet, and have found both oil and natural gas, is quite true.

Quién haya esparcido este rumor, y qué objeto haya tenido en hacerlo, **se ignora** por completo.

Who spread this rumor, and what object he had in doing so, is entirely unknown.

e. Neither of the two preceding exceptions can take effect when two neuters or two clauses are contrasted or opposed to each other:—

Esto y lo que refiere la gaceta se **contradicen.**
This and what the gazette says contradict each other.

Que el hombre sea libre y que tenga que obedecer ciegamente á lo que se le manda, **repugnan.**
That man should be free and that he should have to obey blindly as he is ordered, are inconsistent.

Que un héroe fuese hecho invulnerable **por** una divinidad y que por otra fuese vestido de armadura impenetrable, nos **parecen** ser incompatibles.
That a hero should be made invulnerable by one deity, and that he should be clothed with impenetrable armor by another, appear to us incompatible.

REMARK.—A further limitation is that when a verb which, for the reasons just given, would be singular, is followed by a predicate in the shape of a plural noun, the verb must be plural—and *vice versa*:—

Crecer y propagarse **son propiedades** comunes á plantas y animales; sentir y moverse **son cualidades** características de éstos solos.
Growth and reproduction are properties common to plants and animals; sensation and motion are characteristics of the latter alone.

Quién haya esparcido este rumor, y qué objeto haya tenido en hacerlo, **son cosas** que todavía se ignoran.
Who spread this rumor, and what object he had in doing so, are subjects that are still unknown.

Si el planeta Marte está habitado, y, estándolo, si puede establecerse la comunicación con él, **son cuestiones** puramente especulativas.
Whether the planet Mars is inhabited, and, if so, whether communication with it can be established, are purely speculative questions.

El asentir en un sistema de doctrinas, y el vivir en conformidad con él, no **es lo mismo.**
To assent to a system of doctrines, and to live conformably to them, are not the same thing.

f. When the verb precedes several subjects in the singular number, connected by **y**, it is preferably plural if the agents act conjointly (especially if they be persons), and singular if they act separately:—

Reinaban la confusión y el desorden por todas partes.
Confusion and disorder reigned everywhere.

No **eran** por entonces sólo el hambre y la sed los peligros que les aguardaban en el desierto aquel.
Hunger and thirst were not then the only perils which awaited them in that desert.

Aumentábase cada instante el furor de la tempestad y la oscuridad de **la noche.**
Every moment the violence of the storm and the darkness of the night increased.

Disminuía rápidamente el dinero del joven y el número de sus profesados amigos.

The young man's money was rapidly diminishing, and the number of his professed friends.

REMARK.—But the verb agrees only with the first subject in number if it be understood, but not repeated, with the second :—

No **es** el diente, no las garras del tigre, no el veneno mortal de las serpientes lo que más se teme en el fondo de estas selvas.

It is not the teeth or claws of the tiger nor the deadly venom of the serpents that is most feared in the depth of these forests.

Primeramente **aparece** el botón, luego la flor, y últimamente el fruto.

First appears the bud, then the flower, and last of all the fruit.

En aquellas montañas agrestes y en aquellas playas desiertas, **hallaba** un asilo la libertad y la gloria una tumba.

In those wild mountains and on those desert shores, freedom found a home and glory a grave.

g. When the verb follows several subjects in the singular, connected by the conjunction **y**, it should be plural; the same is the case when **y** is understood:—

La antigüedad de la abadía, el silencio, la soledad y la desolación completa del lugar me **llenaron** de tristeza.

The antiquity of the abbey, the silence, the solitude and the complete desolation of the place filled me with sadness.

La tardanza y el disgusto **agotaron** su paciencia.

Delay and disappointment exhausted his patience.

El aire suave y embalsamado, la fragancia de las magnolias, el susurro del viento entre las copas de los árboles, el arrullo de las palomas silvestres me **invitaban** á dormir.

The soft and balmy air, the fragrance of the magnolias, the sighing of the wind through the tree-tops, the cooing of the wild pigeons, lulled me to sleep.

h. Where, of two subjects, the last is a mere variation of the first, the verb agrees with the second:—

Su valor, su denuedo, **admiraba** á todos.

His bravery, his daring, astonished all.

En todos los períodos de la vida, el amor al trabajo, el gusto del estudio **es** un gran alivio contra la desgracia.

At all periods of life, the love of work and a taste for study are a great solace for misfortune.

i. When of several subjects having a verb in common, the last includes or recapitulates the others, the verb agrees with *it*:—

La agricultura, las bellas artes, el comercio, **todo está** atrasado en aquel país.	Agriculture, the fine arts, commerce, all are backward in that country.
Víveres, agua, medicinas, **todo fué** embarcado con una rapidez que sólo se explica por la impaciencia de volver á la patria.	Provisions, water, medicines, were all put on board with a celerity explicable only by the impatience to return home.
Vecinos, amigos, parientes, **cada cual prefiere** su propio interés al de otro cualquiera.	Neighbors, friends, relations, each prefers his own interest to that of any other person.
Grandes, ricos, pequeños y pobres, **nadie puede** sustraerse á la muerte.	The great, the rich, the little and the poor, none can escape Death.
Ni tierras, ni fincas, ni fondos ni acciones, **nada** le **quedaba**; todo había sido arrastrado á la vorágine de la especulación.	Neither lands, nor estates, nor funds nor stocks, nothing was left; everything had been swept into the vortex of speculation.

k. When a verb has several singular subjects connected by **ó**, the verb is usually singular, since the conjunction expresses an alternative. But the plural is also admissible, especially when the subjects precede the verb:—

Todos creen que V. ó el señor Aguilar **ha** escrito este artículo.	Everyone thinks that either you or Mr. Aguilar wrote this article.
Mi tío ó mi hermano **ha** de ser nombrado para la embajada de Londres.	Either my brother or my uncle is to be appointed to the embassy in London.
Que uno ú otro **venga** conmigo.	Let one or other come with me.
Precisa que ese hombre ó yo **deje** la casa.	Either that man or I must leave the house.
Se regocijaba ó temblaba según que la esperanza ó el temor **ocupaba** el ánimo de su amo.	He rejoiced or trembled according as hope or fear filled the mind of his master.

REMARK.—If one of the subjects is plural, and stands nearest to the verb, the latter becomes plural by "attraction":—

Se puede dudar si **son** más importantes las buenas leyes ó su buena ejecución.	It may be doubted whether just laws or their proper enforcement is most important.
Ó el catedrático ó los alumnos **han** sido muy negligentes.	Either the professor or the students have been very remiss.

NOTE.—Hence the plural and the verb should be brought together.

l. In the case of two singular subjects separated by **ni**, the verb is singular if it could apply to only one of the subjects; if it could apply to both, the verb is plural:—

Ni el uno ni el otro **será** nombrado.	Neither the one nor the other will be appointed.
Ni el uno ni el otro **quisieron** probarlo.	Neither the one nor the other wished to try it.
Ni uno ni otro **es** mi padre.	Neither one nor the other is my father.
Ni la dulzura ni la fuerza **puede** nada con él.	Neither mildness nor force is of any avail with him.
Ni él ni su abogado **estaban** enterados de este hecho.	Neither he nor his lawyer were aware of this fact.

m. If the alternative subjects, with either **ó** or **ni**, require different personal forms, there must be a separate verb for each when the meaning demands a singular; when the verb is plural, it must be of a form to include both persons:—

Ó mi mujer **estará** en casa, ó yo **estaré**.	Either my wife or I will be at home.
Ni Vd. **es** el culpable ni lo **soy** yo.	Neither you nor I am the guilty one.
Ni Vd. ni yo **somos** culpables.	Neither you nor I am guilty.
Ni Vd. ni yo **tenemos** derecho alguno para criticar á esos hombres.	Neither you nor I have any right to criticise those men.

n. When a singular noun is connected with another by **con, como, tanto como, así como**, the agreement is usually singular; it is, however, sometimes plural, especially when **con** is the connecting word. But if the two nouns are at a distance from each other, the agreement is singular:—

Á esta época **llegó** la fragata Fulminante con dos galeones procedentes de la Havana.	At this juncture the frigate Thunderer arrived with two galleons hailing from Havana.
El lado c, con los lados AD y BD, **forman** un triángulo rectángulo.	The side c, with the sides AD and BD, form a right triangle.
La emperatriz misma, con su madre Prisca, **fué** condenada al destierro.	The Empress herself, with her mother Prisca, was condemned to exile.
El alma, como el cuerpo, no se **desarrolla** sino por medio del ejercicio.	The soul, as well as the body, is developed only by exercise.
Tanto el infierno como el cielo **da** pruebas de la existencia de un Dios justo.	Hell as well as heaven offers proof of the existence of a just God.
El avestruz tiene la cabeza, así como el cuello, **guarnecida** de plumón.	The ostrich has the head as well as the neck covered with down.
En Egipto, Grecia y Asia, Baco así	In Egypt, Greece and Asia, Bacchus

como Hércules **eran considerados** como semidioses.
as well as Hercules were considered as demi-gods.

Andrés Calvo **emigró** á América en 1746 con su mujer, su sobrina, y cuatro hijos.
Andrew Calvo emigrated to America in 1746 with his wife, niece, and four children.

Había sido, como muchos en tiempos de trastornos y revoluciones, víctima de circunstancias adversas.
Like many others in times of upheavals and revolutions, he had been the victim of adverse circumstances.

CASES INVOLVING ARTICLES, ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.

1462. When an article, adjective or adjective pronoun qualifies several nouns following, it agrees with the nearest one:—

El valor y sufrimiento de las tropas fueron severamente experimentados.
The courage and endurance of the troops were severely tried.

La cordialidad y agasajo con que los recibió.
The cordiality and deference with which he received them.

En medio de **tantos** peligros é inquietudes.
In the midst of such dangers and alarms.

Era contra **toda** religión y derecho.
It was contrary to all religion and law.

El registro de mercaderías en las aduanas debe hacerse con **la menor** demora, gastos y daños posibles.
The customs examination of merchandise should be conducted with as little delay, expense and damage as possible.

Su distinguido mérito y servicios.
His distinguished merit and services.

Su extremada hermosura y talento.
Her extreme beauty and talent.

Su grande elocuencia y conocimientos.
His great eloquence and acquirements.

REMARK.—If the intention were to restrict the adjective to the first noun, it would be necessary to repeat the pronoun or article before the second noun:—

Su extremada hermosura y **su** talento.
Her extreme beauty and her talent.

Su grande elocuencia y **sus** conocimientos.
His great eloquence and his acquirements.

1463. Plural forms of adjectives with meanings like **los mismos, los dichos, los referidos,** may precede a series of nouns even when the first is singular. In the case of **dicho,** the definite article may be omitted:—

Cuando el sustantivo más próximo es de **los mismos** género y número.
When the nearest noun is of the same gender and number.

Los mismos asado y patatas molidas aparecían cada día en la mesa.	The same roast meat and mashed potatoes appeared on the table every day.
Y **dichos** Gonzalo Rodríguez y Teodoro Osario prometen y convienen además conservar en buen estado **los referidos** casa, jardines, establos y oficinas.	And the said Gonzalo Rodríguez and Theodore Osario further promise and agree to keep the aforesaid house and garden, stables and offices, in good condition.
El preso declaró que había comprado **dichos** reloj y cadena.	The prisoner stated that he had bought the aforesaid watch and chain.

1464. The same construction is applicable to any adjective preceded by the definite article or a possessive or demonstrative pronoun, provided the following nouns are proper names, or denote persons:—

Los doctos padre é hijo.	The learned father and son.
Las mutuamente **recelosas** Francia y Alemania.	The mutually distrustful France and Germany.
Sus lindas y amables hija y sobrina.	His lovely and charming daughter and niece.

1465. In the above construction, if the nouns are of different genders, the adjective should be masculine, and a masculine noun should be placed nearest to it; but if the feminine be a proper name of a person, or foremost in meaning, it may precede without changing the agreement:—

La Palestina recibió muchas de sus artes y tradiciones de **los** más **antiguos** Asiria y Egipto.	Palestine received many of her arts and traditions from the more ancient Assyria and Egypt.
Los ilustres Isabel y Fernando trocaron las coronas de Castilla y Aragón por la diadema de las Españas unidas y el cetro de un imperio allende el océano.	The illustrious Isabel and Ferdinand exchanged the crowns of Castile and Aragon for the diadem of united Spain and the sceptre of an empire beyond the ocean.
El cuento de **los famosos** Píramo y Tisbe, ó el de **los desgraciados** Rómeo y Julieta.	The story of the famous Pyramus and Thisbe, or that of the unfortunate Romeo and Juliet.
Los anteriormente **ricos** y **florecientes** Corinto y Tebas.	The formerly rich and flourishing Corinth and Thebes.
Los artificiosos madre é hijo se habían precavido de este desenlace.	The artful mother and son had guarded against this outcome.
El rey Enrique fué víctima de **sus desleales** esposa é hijos.	King Henry was the victim of his disloyal wife and sons.

1466. The repetition of the article or adjective is advisable before each noun, whenever they express ideas which have no affinity with each other:—

Su experiencia, **sus** riquezas y **sus** amigos hacían de él un rival formidable.	His experience, wealth and friends made him a formidable rival.
Sus virtudes y **sus** faltas eran de una especie que apelaba igualmente á la simpatía popular.	His virtues and his faults were of a kind that appealed equally to popular sympathy.
La madre y **el** niño salvados del naufragio fueron llevados al hospital de Sta. María.	The mother and child saved from the wreck were taken to St. Mary's Hospital.

REMARK.—If the nouns denote the same object, the article is not repeated:—

El expresado convenio y tratado.	The agreement and treaty mentioned.
Un herrero y amolador de cuchillos se ha establecido en una gruta situada en la falda de la montaña, y le tiene el amor de un ermitaño.	A blacksmith and knife-grinder has established himself in a cave situated in the side of the mountain, and has the love of a hermit for it.
El eminente religioso y guerrero, con la espada ceñida sobre la humilde túnica, se adelantó á recibir las llaves de la opulenta Orán.	The eminent priest and warrior, with his sword belted on over his humble robe, advanced to receive the keys of opulent Oran.

1467. When the repetition of a noun is tacitly implied it is necessary to make the article plural or to repeat it:—

El ejército de Inglaterra y Turquía.	The army of England and Turkey.
(*A single army formed by the two countries.*)	
El ejército de Inglaterra y **el** de Turquía.	The army of England and that of Turkey.
(*Two armies, one formed by each.*)	
Los ejércitos de Inglaterra y de Turquía.	The armies of England and Turkey.
(*Several armies, each formed jointly by the two countries.*)	
Los ejércitos de Inglaterra y **los** de Turquía.	The armies of England and of Turkey.
(*Several armies, some belonging to each country.*)	

REMARK.—Where the meaning of the noun is of such a nature that it would be understood to be only one apiece, there is no difference between the second and the third arrangement:—

El embajador inglés y **el** francés. **Los** embajadores inglés y francés.	The English and the French Ambassador.

but

Los representantes diplomáticos de Francia é Inglaterra son mejor pagados que los de los Estados Unidos.	The diplomatic representatives of France and England are better paid than those of the United States.
Los cónsules de Inglaterra y de Francia.	The consuls of England and of France.
Los cónsules de Suecia y Noruega.	The consuls of Sweden and Norway.

1468. When an adjective qualifies several singular nouns of the same gender, preceding it, it should be in the plural and of that gender; but if they be of different genders, it either agrees with the nearest one, or is put in the plural masculine,—the former being the more usual, the latter more logical:—

Poseía talento y habilidad **extremada** (*or* extremados).	He possessed unusual talent and ability.
Su felicidad y su honor deben serle á V. sobre todo **caros**.	Her honor and happiness should be dear to you above everything.
Entre el islote y la costa, **separados** por un canal de media milla de ancho, había una corriente muy rauda.	Between the islet and the shore, separated by a channel half a mile wide, was a very swift current.
Manejaba el caballo con destreza y primor **notables**.	He guided the horse with remarkable skill and grace.
Esparciéronse por toda la Europa cuentos extravagantes del oro y la plata **americanas**.	Europe was filled with extravagant stories of American gold and silver.

1469. When an adjective qualifies several preceding nouns differing both in gender and number, if the last one be plural, the adjective agrees with it; but if the last one be singular, the adjective is plural masculine:—

Milicias y ejército **desorganizados**.	The militia forces and the army [being] unorganized.
Maestra y niños **espantados** por el rayo.	Schoolmistress and children terrified by the lightning.
Él fué quien primero llevó la cruz y el pendón de Castilla á un mundo y poblaciones **remotas** y **desconocidas**.	He it was who first carried the cross and the standard of Castile to a world and populations remote and unknown.
Nunca he tratado de obtener injustamente los honores y la riqueza **ajenos**.	I have never sought to obtain unjustly another man's honors and wealth.

REMARK.—In all such cases it is advisable to place a masculine noun, plural if possible, next to the adjective.

1470. When two nouns have separate attributives, the verb agrees with the subject which it accompanies, and is understood before the other:—

Era penoso y peligroso el trabajo, y los obreros pocos y mal pagados.	The work was arduous and dangerous, and the laborers few and poorly paid.
El viento **estaba** tranquilo, el ambiente balsámico y agradable.	The wind was soft, the air pleasant and balmy.

1471. When a plural noun, representing two distinct entities, is followed by two adjectives of which the first applies to one member of the pair and the second to the other, the adjectives are singular:—

Los siglos décimo tercio y cuarto.	The thirteenth and fourteenth centuries.
Los tiempos presente y futuro.	The present and future tenses.
Entre las cordilleras central y costanera se halla el valle del Cauca.	Between the central and the coast range is the valley of the Cauca.

REMARK.—In most cases the following construction is preferable:—

El equinoccio vernal y el otoñal.	The vernal and autumnal equinoxes.
El océano Índico y el Pacífico.	The Indian and Pacific oceans.

1472. When the plural embraces, not two individuals, but two classes, it is necessary to show whether the adjectives apply to these classes severally or to both collectively:—

Un hondo barranco cubierto en ambas márgenes de álamos blancos y de negros.	A deep gully covered on both sides with white and black poplars.
(Cubierto de álamos blancos y negros *would denote that the poplars were mottled black and white.*)	
Los carneros blancos y los negros eran mantenidos separados.	The black and the white sheep were kept apart.
Los alciones blancos y azules son aquí muy numerosos, y forman sus nidos minando en las orillas escarpadas.	The blue-and-white kingfishers are very numerous here, and form their nests by burrowing in the steep banks.
Los soldados valientes y aguerridos.	The brave and veteran soldiers.
Los soldados aguerridos y los indisciplinados.	The veteran and the undisciplined soldiers.

1473. A peculiar irregularity in Spanish is the use of the masculine forms **un** and **medio** (to the exclusion of the feminine forms) before feminine proper names of cities; an adjective in the predicate, referring to such a combination, is also masculine:—

¿Quién diría que en un Segovia no se encuentra una buena posada?
Who would think that in a city like Segovia there is not a good inn to be found?

Medio Guatemala está construido de madera.
Half of Guatemala is built of wood.

Registraron **medio** Málaga para encontrarle.
They ransacked half Malaga to find him.

1474. The masculine form **mismo** is used after feminine names of places preceded by **en**; but if the name be one which regularly takes the definite article, **mismo** agrees with it:—

Semejantes sucesos se verifican aquí en España **mismo**.
Such occurrences take place right here in Spain.

Una dama interpreta los clásicos en Salamanca **mismo**, y otra regenta la cátedra de retórica en la Universidad de Alcalá.
A lady expounds the classics in Salamanca itself, and another occupies the chair of Rhetoric in the University of Alcalá.

En el mismo Perú; en la misma Havana; en la Guaira misma.
Even in Peru; even in Havana; in La Guayra itself.

CASES INVOLVING RELATIVES AND ANTECEDENTS.

1475. A relative representing several nouns transmits, if possible, the number and gender of them all; if that cannot be done, preference is given to the plural number and the gender of the last noun:—

La animación y el ruido que por todas partes **reinaban**.
The animation and hum that everywhere prevailed.

Los nombres y las palabras que **habían** sido **borradas** del acta.
The names and words that had been expunged from the minutes.

El estrecho y la isla que **fueron descubiertas** por Bering y que **llevan** su nombre.
The straits and the island that were discovered by Bering and bear his name.

Las mercaderías y otros efectos que **hayan** sido **recobrados** de algún buque náufrago ó encallado, deben admitirse sin factura á la entrada en la aduana.
The merchandise and other effects which have been recovered from a wrecked or stranded vessel, should be allowed entry without invoice at the custom house.

1476. Much nicety of meaning depends upon the gender of the demonstrative pronoun used as the antecedent to a relative. Thus, for example:—

La Historia de Clavigero es **la** que derrama más luz sobre estos sucesos,
Clavigero's History is the one that throws most light on these events,

means that, as far as histories are concerned, Clavigero's is the

one that throws most light on the subject. But if we substitute the neuter form for that agreeing with the noun,

La Historia de Clavigero es **lo** que derrama más luz sobre estos sucesos,	Clavigero's History is **what** throws most light on these events,

we convey the idea that Clavigero's work gives more information than anything else whatever.

1477. When the antecedent is the demonstrative pronoun **el**, we should note its agreement with a predicate with which it is not connected in meaning. Thus, instead of saying:—

Lo que á primera vista tomamos por una isla no descubierta, resultó ser, á una inspección más cerca, una bandada densa de aves marinas que se reposaban sobre las olas,	What we at first took for an undiscovered island, turned out to be, on closer inspection, a dense flock of sea-fowl resting on the water,

we may also say **la que á primera vista tomamos por una isla no descubierta**, making the demonstrative agree with **isla**.

a. When reference is had to persons, the latter construction is the only one admissible. Thus we must say:—

Los que tomamos por Apaches enemigos, eran, como lo descubrimos después, una partida de buscadores de oro.	What we took for hostile Apaches, was, as we afterwards discovered, a party of gold-seekers.

b. The neuter form **lo** could be used only if the appearance were produced by an inanimate object:—

Lo que tomamos por Apaches enemigos, era, como lo descubrimos después, un grupo aislado de arbustos.	What we took for hostile Apaches, was, as we afterwards discovered, an isolated clump of bushes.

CONCLUSION.—The question of agreement, like all the delicate points of language, is subject to great diversity of usage. The author has endeavored throughout this work to give the opinion of the majority of the best authorities, and where they have been about equally divided, to give both alternatives. But considerable liberties are taken by modern writers of repute, which would be censured in a tyro; while the classic authors of the XVIth and XVIIth centuries, though admirable for rhetoric and genius, abound in grammatical constructions which to-day would be considered highly incorrect.

There are generally a number of ways of stating the same thing, and where one way would lead to dangerous ground, it is preferable to avoid the difficulty by choosing some other expression; for it is better to be content with a simple style than to incur the charge of inaccuracy.

Exercise LXI.

The population of the *Republic* of *Colombia* is *densest* along the *Atlantic* coast and in the high *regions* of the *interior* (*m.*), where the climate is mild and healthy and the soil suitable for *agriculture*. The highway (*el camino real*) for *communication* with the outer world is the *Magdalena*, which waters seven of the nine departments into which the *republic* is divided, and empties into the *Atlantic* through the two mouths[1] *Ceniza* and *Rio Viejo*. The *Ceniza* is now unnavigable, on account of the sand banks which have *gradually formed*[2] there, cutting off *communication* by water[3] between the old port of *Barranquilla* and the sea, and requiring the *construction* of a railroad to *Puerto Colombia*, a *distance* of 22 kilometers, which is to-day the *principal* seaport of the *republic*. The *Magdalena* is navigable for vessels of medium draught from (*desde*) *Barranquilla* as far as the rapids below (*más abajo de*) *Honda*; this part of the river is called [the] Lower *Magdalena*. In the dry season its waters diminish greatly, rendering navigation difficult and, in some places,[4] even (*hasta*) dangerous. The Upper *Magdalena*, that is to say[5] from *Honda* to its source, is navigable as far as *Neiva*, but there the scarcity of water during a large part[6] of the year is still (*aun*) more noticeable, which renders navigation very *irregular* and dependent upon circumstances. The *Magdalena* being the *principal* highway (*camino*) of *Colombia*, the *tendency* has been to connect this river with the *principal centers* of *production* and consumption. For this reason there is nothing in *Colombia* corresponding to[7] a railroad system; the existing lines, those[8] under *construction*, and those contemplated are all short, isolated and independent. It may therefore be concluded[9] that what *Colombia* most needs to-day[10] is to construct or finish lines connecting[11] *Bogotá*, *Bucaramanga* and *Medellín* with the *Magdalena*. A railroad (*una línea*) which would ascend this river from *Cartagena* to *Bogotá* would obviate all the difficulties of that slow and uncertain navigation. The work (*el trabajo*) would not *present* serious difficulties of engineering, and would *rápidly* open up the *immense* tracts *situated* along the river, which are *exceptionally fertile* and rich in all kinds of woods and vegetable products. As for[12] a railroad to go through *Colombia* toward (*con dirección á*) the southern *republics*, the only *practicable* route would be that of the Lower *Magdalena*, ascending to *Bogotá*, crossing the eastern chain, of easy access at many points, and then (*luego*) descending to the *immense* plains which *form* the basin of the Amazon and its *affluents*. Such a work[13] would be *colossal* in its extent, and would have to be carried through[14] a *region* of unbroken wilderness,[15] although of a *fertility* beyond belief.

---

[1] *las dos bocas.* [2] See § 806. [3] by water, *fluvial.* [4] *en ciertos sitios.* [5] that is to say, *es decir.* [6] *durante gran parte . . ,* [7] *nada que corresponda á . . .* [8] *las que están.* [9] *por consiguiente puede decirse.* [10] to-day, *en el día.* [11] *que conexionen.* [12] *por lo concerniente á . . .* [13] *semejante obra.* [14] *tendría que llevarse á cabo á través de . . .* [15] unbroken wilderness, *vastas é incultas selvas.*

APPENDIX.

SOCIAL AND EPISTOLARY USAGES.

The many polite phrases employed in conversation and correspondence do not come within the province of Grammar, but still are indispensable to the practical use of any language. Especially is this the case in Spanish, a language abounding in courtly expressions and complimentary phrases, which are not to be neglected even in the intercourse of the most intimate acquaintances. A complete exhibition of the language of Spanish courtesy and etiquette is beyond the scope of the present work; still there are many peculiarities, differing from English usage, which the student cannot afford to ignore.

The following are the usual forms of salutation among gentlemen:—

Beso á V. la mano.	I kiss your hand.
Servidor de V., caballero.	Your servant, sir.
Á la orden de V.	At your orders.
Tenga V. muy buenos dias.	Good day to you.
¡Adiós!	How do?

REMARK.—A gentleman, in greeting a lady, usually says **á los pies de V., señora** or **señorita**, literally *at your feet, madam,* or *miss.* The lady's reply is, **beso á V. la mano, caballero,** *I kiss your hand, sir.*

The following expressions are usual in inquiring after another's health:—

¿Cómo lo pasa V.? *or* ¿cómo está V.?	How do you do?
¿Cómo se halla V.?	How are you?
¿Cómo sigue V.?	How are you getting along?
¡Hola! ¿Qué tal?	Hullo! How are you?

The following expressions are employed in replying to the above:—

Medianamente bien.	Middling well. Tolerably well.
Así así. Tal cual.	So so.
Perfectamente bien, para servir á V.	Perfectly well, thank you.
Muy bien, gracias, ¿y V.?	Very well, thank you; how are you?
Así así, *or* tal cual; y Vd., ¿cómo lo pasa?	So so; and how do you do?
Sin novedad.	Always well.

REMARK.—The expression **sin novedad**, literally *without novelty*, is of universal usage, and can be best rendered in English by *as usual*.

The following are the commonest expressions of leave-taking:—

¡ Vaya V. con Dios! (*said to one who is going away.*) ¡ Quede V. con Dios! (*to one who remains behind.*) ¡ Que V. lo pase bien!	Good-bye!

REMARK.—A common, short leave-taking is **agur**, occurring in the forms **ahur**, **abur** and **abul** (said to be from the Latin *bonum augurium*, *good luck.*) It is used principally to shopkeepers upon leaving, and in any case where a more formal expression is unnecessary.

The following will serve as samples of introductions:—

Señor Don A., tengo el honor de presentarle al Señor Don B.	Mr. A., I have the honor of introducing you to Mr. B.
Permítaseme tener el gusto de presentar á V. mi amigo Don X.	Let me have the pleasure of introducing to you my friend Mr. X.
Permita V. que le presente á mi esposa.	Let me introduce you to my wife.

The following are employed in acknowledgment:—

Caballero, celebro la ocasión de conocer á V.	I am glad to make your acquaintance
Me considero muy feliz en hacer su conocimiento, caballero.	I am very happy to make your acquaintance.
Reconózcame V. por un servidor suyo.	Consider me at your service.

In asking or requesting:—

Tenga V. la bondad de decirme . . .	Have the goodness to tell me . .
Hágame V. el favor de darme . . .	Do me the favor to give me . . .
Tenga V. la complacencia de indicarme . . .	Have the kindness to show me . . .
Se lo agradecería mucho si V. me diese	I should be much obliged if you would give me . . .
Sírvase V. tomar un ejemplar.	Please take a copy.

In returning thanks:—

Muchísimas gracias.	Many thanks.
Mil gracias, *or* un millón de gracias.	A thousand thanks.
Se lo agradezco á V. infinito.	I am very much obliged to you.
No hay de qué. (*Lit.* there is no cause why.)	You are welcome, *or* don't mention it.

It is the custom in Spanish, when any one admires something which we possess, to politely make him a present of it—an offer which is not expected to be accepted. The other must decline, not by saying that he does not care to have it, but by intimating that it is better under its present ownership:—

Tiene V. un reloj muy precioso.	You have a very handsome watch.
Está á la disposición de V. Á la disposición de V.	It is at your service.
Un millón de gracias; no podría mejorar de dueño.	A thousand thanks; but it couldn't have a better owner.
Es un alfiler muy bonito el que tiene Vd. puesto.	That is a very pretty pin you have on.
Permítame que se lo ofrezca á Vd. Permítame que lo ponga á la disposición de Vd.	Permit me to offer it to you.
Es V. muy buena, pero á nadie podría sentarle tanto.	You are very kind, but it would become no one else so well.

So, when asked by any one where we live, in alluding to our residence, we should call it *his*, or else tell him he is welcome there—which does not amount to an invitation to call:—

¿ Dónde reside V. ahora?	Where do you live now?
Su casa de V. está número 19, Calle de las Fresnas.	"Your" house is No. 19 Ash Street.
Resido número 19, Calle de las Fresnas, donde tiene V. su casa, *or* donde será V. el bienvenido.	I live at No. 19 Ash Street, where you will be welcome, *or* where you must consider yourself at home.
Aquí tiene V. su casa; ¿no quiere V. entrar y descansar un rato?	Here is my house; won't you come in and rest a while?

a. It is not polite to begin a meal, to take a drink, or even to eat an orange without inviting those who are near by to partake, whether we are acquainted with them or not. They are expected to decline unless pressed more urgently.[1] The shortest invitation is **¿ V. quiere ? ¿ Vds. quieren ?** or

[1] Foreigners must bear in mind that if they do not press their offer, it will be understood to be a mere empty compliment. The author has known cases where Spanish visitors, who were invited to stay to dinner, went away disappointed because the invitation was not repeated. And, *per contra*, instances are known where foreigners unwittingly caused Spaniards much inconvenience by accepting an invitation which they were expected to decline.

¡ á V. le gusta ? ¡ á Vds. les gusta ? The stereotype reply is : **muchas gracias, que aproveche,** *thanks, may it benefit you,* or **buen provecho le haga á V.**

b. On entering the dining-room, before taking our seat, we should salute those who are already at table with **buenos días** or **buenas noches** as may be required. In leaving before the others, we should say : **con permiso de Vds.,** *by your leave,* or **que aproveche á Vds** , as above.

EPISTOLARY USAGES.

The only epistolary forms which can be given here are the complimentary expressions usual in beginning and terminating a letter, and a few miscellaneous phrases of frequent occurrence.

The opening phrase is usually one of the following:—

Muy estimado Señor Calvo :	Dear Mr. Calvo :
Muy Señor mío : Muy Señor nuestro : (*from a firm.*)	Dear Sir :
Muy Señores míos : Muy Señores nuestros : (*from a firm.*)	Gentlemen :
Muy Señora mía :	Madam :

In more familiar style:—

Muy Señor mío y amigo :	Dear Sir and Friend :
Mi querido amigo :	My dear Friend :
Querido González :	Dear González :
Mi General :	General :

a. The letter of one's correspondent is referred to as **la favorecida, apreciable,** or **estimada de V.,** *your favor,* or *your esteemed communication* (**carta** being understood). These are often abbreviated to **la favor^{da}, la ap^{ble}, la est^{da} de V.**

b. Other common abbreviations are **f^{da}** for **fechada,** *dated* ; **pp^{do}** for **próximo pasado,** *ultimo* ; **cor^{te}** for **corriente,** *instant* ; **af^{mo}** for **afectísimo,** *very devoted.*

The following are miscellaneous phrases usual at the commencement of a letter:—

Tengo el honor de acusar á V. el recibo de su ap^{ble} carta f^{da} el 31 del pp^{do}.	I beg to acknowledge the receipt of your letter dated the 31st ultimo.
He tenido el gusto de recibir la apreciable de V. fecha de ayer, y en contestación me apresuro á manifestarle que . . .	I have received your favor dated yesterday, and hasten to say in reply that . . .
En contestación á la ap^{ble} de V., fecha del 8, me apresuro á manifestarle que . . .	In reply to your esteemed letter of the 8th, I hasten to inform you that . . .

Me permito llamar la atención de V. sobre el circular incluso.	I beg to call your attention to the enclosed circular.
Incluyo á V. mi tarifa.	I enclose herewith my price-list.
Hemos recibido la atenta carta que nos ha hecho V. el honor de dirigirnos con fecha del 30 del pp^{do}.	We have received the obliging letter which you did us the honor of addressing to us under date of the 30th ult.
Es en nuestro poder la est^{da} de V. f^{da} el dos del actual, en la que manifiesta V. que . . .	We have your favor of the 2nd inst. in which you state that . . .
Confirmando á V. nuestra última, fecha del 15, tenemos el honor de anunciarle que . . .	Referring to our last letter, dated the 15th inst., we beg to announce that . . .
Me apresuro á acusar á V. competente recibo de la remesa que me ha hecho de $210.	I hasten to acknowledge the receipt in due time, of the remittance of $210 forwarded by you.

a. Immediately before the signature of a letter addressed to a gentleman, the initials **Q.B.S.M.** or **Q.S.M.B.** are usual. These stand for **que sus manos besa**, *who kisses your hand.* If the letter be to a lady, the initials are **Q.B.S.P.** or **Q.S.P.B.**, **que sus pies besa**, *who kisses your feet.*

b. The expression **su seguro servidor**, *your obedient servant*, is invariably abbreviated **S.S.S.**

The following will serve as examples of complimentary terminations:—

Soy de Vd. af^{mo} atento y S.S. JOSÉ BLANCO.	I am Very sincerely yours, JOSEPH WHITE.
Se repite á las órdenes de V. S.S.S. Q.S.M.B. JOSÉ BLANCO.	I am, Sir, Very respectfully, JOSEPH WHITE.
Soy, excelentísimo Señor, con el más profundo respeto, Su más humilde y atento servidor, JOSÉ BLANCO.	I am, Sir, Very respectfully, Your obedient servant, JOSEPH WHITE.
Reciba V., Señora, la profunda expresión de mi afecto respetuoso. B.S.P. JOSÉ BLANCO.	Accept, Madam, the expression of my deep devotion. Very respectfully, JOSEPH WHITE.
Tengo el honor de reiterarle el sincero afecto con que soy de V. atento y S.S. Q.S.M.B. JOSÉ BLANCO.	I have the honor to be, with profound esteem, Yours very respectfully, JOSEPH WHITE.

Se repite de V.
Af^mo atento y S.S.
JOSÉ BLANCO.

I remain
Very truly yours,
JOSEPH WHITE.

Con este motivo tengo el honor de repetirme
de V. atento y S.S.
JOSÉ BLANCO.

I have the honor to subscribe myself
Yours very respectfully,
JOSEPH WHITE.

Quedan de Vds. af^mos seguros servidores,
J. BLANCO Y CÍA.

Very truly yours,
JOS. WHITE & CO.

Permítanos Vd. le ofrezcamos los más sinceros votos por su felicidad, juntamente con la seguridad de nuestro sincero afecto y la consideración más perfecta de sus atentos servidores
Q.B.S.M.
JOSÉ BLANCO Y CÍA.

Allow us to offer you our best wishes for your success, together with the assurances of our highest esteem.
Very respectfully,
Your ob'd't s'v'ts,
JOSEPH WHITE & CO.

Saludan á Vd. sus af^mos seguros servidores,
JOSÉ BLANCO Y CÍA.

Believe us to remain
Very cordially yours,
JOSEPH WHITE & CO.

Entretanto disponga V. de su atento y S.S.
JOSÉ BLANCO.

In the meantime, awaiting your commands, I am
Yours, etc.,
JOSEPH WHITE.

Dándole mis anticipadas gracias por este favor, me repito de Vd.
Af^mo atento y S.S.
JOSÉ BLANCO.

Thanking you in advance for the favor, I remain
Very sincerely yours,
JOSEPH WHITE.

Mande V. con entera libertad (*or* con toda franqueza)
á su af^mo S.S.
Q.S.M.B.
JOSÉ BLANCO.

Do not hesitate to command me.
Yours very truly,
JOSEPH WHITE.

Deseando á V. mucha salud y felicidades durante el año nuevo, me repito,
su af^mo atento y S.S.
JOSÉ BLANCO.

Wishing you health and happiness during the New Year, I remain
Very sincerely yours,
JOSEPH WHITE.

Con motivo de la entrada de año, formamos los votos más sinceros por su prosperidad, y le reiteramos la expresión de nuestro afecto.
Sus muy atentos servidores,
JOSÉ BLANCO Y CÍA.

On the occasion of the New Year we beg to offer you our best wishes for your prosperity, and remain
Very cordially yours,
JOSEPH WHITE & CO.

Letters sent by mail are addressed in the same manner as in English. Local letters sent by a messenger are usually addressed thus:—

TO A GENTLEMAN.	TO A LADY.
B.L.M.	B.L.P.
Al Sr. D. Juan Calvo.	Á la Sra. Da. Juana Calvo.
S.S.S.	S.S.S.
José F. Blanco.	José F. Blanco.

DERIVATIVE GEOGRAPHICAL ADJECTIVES.

The practice of forming adjectives from names of places is so extensive in Spanish, that a list of the principal examples seems desirable. Where the Spanish proper name is so near to the English form that the student will have no difficulty in recognizing it, the English has been omitted:—

Álava.	Alavés, Alaveño.
Alcalá.	Alcalaíno; Complutense (*applied to the University of Alcalá*).
Alcántara.	Alcantarino.
Alcarria.	Alcarreño.
Alcázar.	Alcazareño.
Alcoy.	Alcoyano.
Alemania (Germany).	Alemán.
Algeciras.	Algecireño.
Alicante.	Alicantino.
Alpujarra.	Alpujarreño.
Amazonas.	Amazonio, Amazoniano.
Andalucía.	Andaluz.
Antequera.	Antequerano.
Antioquia.	Antioqueño, Antioquense.
Arabia.	Árabe, Arábigo.
Aragón.	Aragonés.
Argel (Algiers).	Argelino.
Armenia.	Armenio.
Artemisa.	Artemisense.
Arrecibo.	Arrecibeño.
Asiria.	Asirio.
Asturias.	Asturiano.
Atacama.	Atacamense.
Atenas (Athens).	Ateniense.
Austria.	Austriaco.
Ávila.	Abulense.
Badajoz.	Pacense.
Barajas.	Barajeño.
Barcelona.	Barcelonés.
Baviera (Bavaria).	Bávaro.
Bayamo.	Bayamés.
Bélgica (Belgium).	Belga.
Bilbao.	Bilbaíno.

Bogotá.	Bogotano.
Bohemia.	Bohemio, Bohémico.
Bolívar.	Bolivarense.
Bolivia.	Boliviano.
Boloña.	Boloñés.
Borgoña (Burgundy).	Borgoñón.
Borja.	Borjeño.
el Brasil.	Brasileño, Brasilero.
Bretaña (Britain, Brittany).	Bretón.
Buenos Aires.	Bonariense, Porteño.
Bulgaria.	Búlgaro.
Burgos.	Burgalés.
Cádiz.	Gaditano, Cadizeño.
Calabria.	Calabrés.
Calatrava.	Calatraveño.
Campeche.	Campechano.
el Canadá.	Canadense.
Canarias (Canary Islands).	Canario.
Cantabria.	Cántabro.
Caracas.	Caraqueño.
Cárdenas.	Cardense.
Carolina.	Carolino.
Cartagena.	Cartagenero, Cartagenense.
Cártago (Carthage).	Cartaginés.
Castilla.	Castellano.
Cataluña.	Catalán.
Cayo Hueso (Key West).	Cayohuesero.
Cerdeña (Sardinia).	Sardo.
Chicla.	Chiclanero.
Chihuahua.	Chihuahuense.
Chile.	Chileno.
China.	Chino.
Cienfuegos.	Cienfueguero.
Colima.	Colimense.
Colombia.	Colombiano.
Copán.	Copaneco.
Copiapó.	Copiapino.
Córcega (Corsica).	Corso.
Córdoba.	Cordovés.
la Coruña.	Coruñés. [tarriqueño.
Costa Rica.	Costarricense, Costarriquense, Cos-
Cuba.	Cubano.
Cuenca.	Conquense.
Cuernavaca.	Cuernavaqués.
Cundinamarca.	Cundinamarqués.
Dinamarca (Denmark).	Dinamarqués, Danés.
Durango.	Durangueño.
Ecuador.	Ecuatoriano.
Egipto.	Egipcio.
Escocia (Scotland).	Escocés.
España (Spain).	Español.
Europa.	Europeo.
Estremadura.	Estremeño.
Ferrol.	Ferrolano.
Flandes (Flanders).	Flamenco.

Florencia.	Florentino.
Francia.	Francés.
Gales (Wales).	Galés, Galense.
Galicia.	Gallego.
Génova (Genoa).	Genovés.
Gerona.	Gerundense.
Gibraltar.	Gibraltareño, Calpense.
Gijón.	Gijonés.
Granada.	Granadino.
Grecia.	Griego.
Groenlandia (Greenland).	Groenlandés.
Guadalajara.	Guadalajareño.
Guadalupe.	Guadalupense.
Guamacaro.	Guamacareño.
Guanabacoa.	Guanabacoero.
Guanajuato.	Guanajuatense.
Guantánamo.	Guantanamero.
Guatemala.	Guatemalteco.
Guayana (Guiana).	Guayanense.
Guayaquil.	Guayaquileño.
Guipúzcoa.	Guipuzcoano.
la Habana.	Habanero.
Haití.	Haitiano.
Hamburgo.	Hamburgués.
Hidalgo.	Hidalguense.
Holanda.	Holandés.
Holguín.	Holguinero.
Honduras.	Hondureño.
Huelva.	Onubense.
Humacao.	Humacaeño.
Hungría (Hungary).	Húngaro.
Ibiza.	Ibicenco.
Ibros.	Ibreño.
India.	Indio.
Inglaterra (England).	Inglés.
Irlanda (Ireland).	Irlandés.
Isla de Pinos.	Pinero.
Islanda (Iceland).	Islandés, Islándico.
Jalapa.	Jalapeño.
Jalisco.	Jaliscense.
Jamay.	Jamaiquino, Jamaiqueño.
Japón (Japan).	Japonés.
Jarama.	Jarameño.
Jaruco.	Jaruqueño.
Jérez.	Jerezano.
Jibara.	Jibareño.
Júcaro.	Jucareño.
Laponia (Lapland).	Lapón.
Leganiel.	Leganito.
León.	Leonés.
Lérida.	Leridano.
Lima.	Limeño.
Lisboa (Lisbon).	Lisbonense.
Londres (London).	Londinense.
Lorca.	Lorqueño.

Lugo.	Lucense.
Madrid.	Madrileño, Matritense.
Málaga.	Malagueño.
Malta.	Maltés.
Mallorca (Majorca).	Mallorquín.
la Mancha.	Manchego.
Manila.	Manileño.
Manzanillo.	Manzanillero.
Maracaibo.	Maracaibero.
Maruecos (Morocco).	Marroquí.
Matanzas.	Matancero.
Mayagués.	Mayaguesano.
Medellín.	Medellinés.
Méjico.	Mejicano.
Menorca.	Menorquín.
Milano (Milan).	Milanés.
Montevideo.	Montevidense.
Mora.	Morato.
Morelos.	Morelense.
Murcia.	Murciano.
Nápoles (Naples).	Napolitano.
Navarra.	Navarro.
Nicaragua.	Nicaragüense.
Normandia.	Normando.
Noruega (Norway).	Noruego.
Nueva Granada.	Neogranadino.
Nueva Orleans.	Neorlanés, Nuevaorleanés.
Nueva York.	Neoyorkino, Nuevayorkino.
Oajaca.	Oajaqueño.
Oviedo.	Ovetense.
Palencia.	Palentino.
Pamplona.	Pamplonés.
Panamá.	Panameño, Panamense.
el Paraguay.	Paraguayo.
Páramo.	Paramés.
París.	Parisiense.
Pas.	Pasiego.
Patagonia.	Patagón.
la Paz.	Pacense, Paceño.
Persia.	Persa.
el Perú.	Peruano.
Piamonte (Piedmont).	Piamontés.
la Plata.	Platense.
Polonia (Poland).	Polaco.
Ponce.	Ponceño.
Popayán.	Popayanés.
Portugal.	Portugués.
la Puebla.	Poblano.
Puerto Príncipe.	Puertoprincipense, Camagüeyano.
Puerto Rico.	Portorriqueño.
Querétaro.	Queretano.
Quito.	Quiteño.
Regla.	Reglano.
República Argentina.	Argentino.
Rioja.	Riojano.

Rusia.	Ruso.
Saboya (Savoy).	Saboyano, Saboyardo.
Sagua la Grande.	Sagüero.
Sajonia (Saxony).	Sajón.
Salamanca.	Salamanquino, Salmantino; Salmaticense (*applied to the University of Salamanca*).
Salvador.	Salvadoreño, Salvatorense.
Sanabria.	Sanabrés.
Sancti Spíritus.	Espirituano.
San Juan de los Remedios.	Remediano, Cayero.
San Luis Potosí.	Potosino.
Santa Fé.	Santafereño.
Santander.	Santanderino.
Santiago.	Santiagués, Santiaguero, Santiaguense.
Santo Domingo.	Dominicano.
Sigüenza.	Seguntino.
Sinaloa.	Sinaloense.
Suecia (Sweden).	Sueco.
Suiza (Switzerland).	Suizo.
Tabasco.	Tabascense.
Talavera.	Talaverano.
Tamáulipas.	Tamaulipeño.
Tampico.	Tampiqueño.
Tarancón.	Taranconero.
Tarapacá.	Tarapaqueño.
Tarazona.	Tarazonero.
Tarifa.	Tarifeño.
Tartaria.	Tártaro.
Tarragona.	Tarraconense.
Terranova (Newfoundland).	Terranovés.
Tierra del Fuego.	Fueguense.
Tláscala.	Tlascalteco.
Toledo.	Toledano.
Toro.	Toresano.
Tortosa.	Tortosino, Tortosano.
Toscana (Tuscany).	Toscano.
Trinidad.	Trinitario.
Trujillo.	Trujillano.
las Tunas.	Tunero.
Túnez (Tunis).	Tunecino.
Turquía (Turkey).	Turco.
Tuy.	Tudense.
Uruguay.	Uruguayo.
Valdivia.	Valdiviense.
Valencia	Valenciano.
Valladolid.	Valisoletano.
Venecia (Venice).	Veneciano.
Venezuela.	Venezolano.
Vera Cruz.	Veracruzano.
Vizcaya (Biscay).	Vizcaino.
Yucatán.	Yucateco.
Zacatecas.	Zacatecano.
Zaragoza (Saragossa).	Zaragozano.

GENERAL VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

ABBREVIATIONS.

ADJ.	adjective, or word used adjectively.	*m.*	masculine.
		PP.	past participle.
ADV.	adverb.	PREP.	preposition.
CONJ.	conjunction.	S.	substantive or noun.
f.	feminine.	VA.	active or transitive verb.
irr.	irregular.	VN.	neuter or intransitive verb.

(These are employed only when there would otherwise be danger of mistaking the part of speech to which the English word belongs.)

A dash (—) denotes the repetition of the English word; an initial letter, the repetition of a Spanish word.

Fig. implies that a word is used in a figurative sense.

Exceptional renderings are followed by the number (in parenthesis) of the Exercise in which the word occurs.

References to Chapters and sections indicate where the usage of a Spanish word is explained.

abhor, aborrecer.
ability, la habilidad; la capacidad (48).
able, *to be — to*, poder, Chap. XVIII.
about, acerca de; *to talk —*, hablar de.
absence, la carencia.
academy, la academia.
accept, aceptar.
access, acceso.
accident, el contratiempo.
accidentally, por casualidad.
accompany, accompañar.
accomplish, efectuar.
according to, conforme con.
account, el relato; *on — of*, á causa de.
accuracy, el acierto.
accustom, acostumbrar.
acknowledge, admitir.
acquaintance, el conocido.
acquire, adquirir.
across, á través.
act, VN., obrar.
actress, la actriz.
adapted to, á propósito para.
add, añadir; agregar (61).
adieu, el adiós.
advance, VN., avanzar; *fig.* adelantar.
advanced, adelantado.
advancement, el adelanto.
advancing, ADJ., avanzador.
advantage, *to take — of*, aprovechar.
adventure, la aventura.
advise, avisar.

aërial, aéreo.
affair, el asunto; —*s*, los negocios (22).
affirm, asegurar.
afraid, *to be* — [*of*], temer.
after, después de.
afternoon, la tarde.
afterwards, después.
against, contra.
age, la edad; [*old*] —, la vejez (43).
agent, el agente.
aggrieved, agraviado.
agricultural, agrícola.
aground, ADJ., encallado.
aid, VA., ayudar.
aim, VA., apuntar.
aim, S., la puntería.
air, el aire.
Alexander, Alejandro.
all, todo, Chap. IX; — *day*, t. el día; — *right*, corriente.
alliance, la alianza.
allow, permitir.
alloy, la aleación.
almost, casi.
alone, solo; á solas (36).
along, PREP., á lo largo de.
alpine, alpino.
already, ya.
also, también.
although, aunque.
always, siempre.
Amazon, el Amazonas.
ambuscade, la emboscada.
among, PREP., entre.
amount, la cantidad.
amuse, divertir.
amusing, divertido.
ancient, antiguo.
Andean, andino.
anecdote, la anécdota.
angry, encolerizado.
annoy, molestar; enojar (35); *to be* —*ed at*, enojarse de (52).
another, otro, § 634.
answer, VA., contestar á.
answer, S., la respuesta.
apartment, el aposento.
appear, parecer.
appetite, el apetito.
apple, la manzana.
apply, VA., aplicar; *to* — *for*, solicitar (30).
approach, VA., acercarse á.
apt, listo.
aqueduct, el acueducto.
archbishop, el arzobispo.
arduous, fatigoso.
arid, árido.
arise, suscitarse (44).
arm, el brazo.
arm-chair, la butaca.
arms (*weapons*), las armas.
army, el ejército.
around, alrededor de.
arrive, llegar.
arsenic, el arsénico.
art, el arte (*f.*).
article, el artículo.
as, como.
ascend, ascender.
ascertain, averiguar.
ask, preguntar; pedir (47); invitar (53); — *for*, pedir (23); — *a question*, hacer una pregunta.
assert, asegurar.
assíduously, asiduamente.
assistance, la ayuda.
association, la sociedad.
assume, tomar (60).
assure, asegurar.
astonished, *to be* —, extrañarse (47); quedar admirado de (48).
astronomer, el astrónomo.
Athens, Atenas.
at home, en casa.
attack, S., el ataque; —*ing party*, la partida de a.
attention, *to pay* — *to*, hacer caso de.
attract, atraer.
attractive, halagüeño.
attribute, VA., atribuir.

aunt, la tía.
author, el autor.
autumn, el otoño ; — *leaves*, las hojas de o.
avenge, vengar.
average, ADJ., medio.
avoid, evitar.
await, esperar.
away, *to do — with*, borrar.
axle, el eje.
baby, el chiquillo.
back, *at the — of*, á espaldas de.
bacon, el tocino.
bad, malo.
badly, mal ; — *-joined*, m. unido.
bait, VA., cebar.
balcony, el balcón.
bale, la paca.
ball, la pelota ; (*bullet*) la bala ; (*dancing*) el baile.
bank, (*commercial*) el banco ; (*sand*) el banco ; (*river*) la margen.
banker, el banquero.
bare, desnudo ; despoblado (58).
bargain, el negocio.
bark, VN., ladrar.
barrel, el barril.
bar-room, el bodegón.
basin, (*river*) la cuenca.
basket, el canasto ; la cesta (32).
bat, el murciélago.
battle, la batalla ; — *-ship*, el buque de guerra.
be afraid, temer ; tener miedo.
beam, la viga.
bear, VA., llevar.
bear, S., el oso.
beard, la barba.
beast, la bestia ; *wild* —, b. salvaje ; — *of burden*, b. de carga ; — *of prey*, el animal carnicero *or* carnívoro.
beautiful, hermoso, lindo.
beauty, la belleza.
because, porque.
beckon, VN., hacer señas.
bee, la abeja.
beer, la cerveza.
beetle, el escarabajo.
before, (*time*) antes, antes de ; (*place*) delante de, § 148.
beg, rogar ; encargar (50).
begin, empezar [á] ; comenzar (57).
beginner, el principiante.
beginning, el principio.
behind, detrás de.
behoove, *it —s*, conviene.
believe, creer.
bell, la campana.
belonging to, perteneciente á.
below, debajo de ; más abajo de (61).
bench, el banco.
bend, S., el recodo.
benign, benigno.
bent, PP., encorvado.
berry, la baya.
besides, además.
Bessie, Isabelita.
better, mejor.
between, entre.
beyond, PREP., más allá de ; — *belief*, increíble.
bill, la cuenta.
bird, el pájaro.
bit, el pedazo.
black, negro.
blacksmith, el herrero.
blame, VA., criticar (22) ; condenar (40).
blame, S., la culpa ; *to throw the — on*, echar la c. á.
blast-furnace, el alto horno.
bleak, árido.
blend, VN., combinarse.
blind, VA., cegar.
blind, ADJ., ciego.
block, el cubo.
blood, la sangre.
blossom, S., la flor.
blow, VN., soplar.
blow, S., el golpe.

blowpipe, el soplete.
blusterer, el matasiete.
board, s., la tabla.
board, va., abordar.
boat, la lancha ; — *-race*, la regata de lanchas.
body, el cuerpo ; [*dead*] —, el cadáver.
boil, vn., hervir.
bold, osado.
bond, el lazo ; (*commercial*) el bono.
bone, el hueso.
bony, huesudo.
book, el libro ; —*case*, el armario ; — *-keeper*, el tenedor de libros ; *in — form*, en forma de l.
boom, el mugido (49).
boot, la bota.
border on, confinar con.
both, ambos.
bottle, la botella ; el frasco (60).
bound together, unido.
box, la caja.
boy, el muchacho ; el niño.
brain, el cérebro.
branch, la rama.
brave, adj., valiente.
bravery, el valor.
bread, el pan.
break, va., romper (pp., roto) ; —, vn., romperse.
breakers, los rompientes.
breakfast, vn., almorzar.
brick, el ladrillo.
bride, la novia.
bridge, el puente.
bright, brillante.
brilliant, brillante.
bring, traer.
brink, la margen.
broad, ancho ; — *-shouldered*, a. de espaldas.
broom, la escoba.
brother, el hermano.
brother-in-law, el cuñado.
build, edificar.
bullet, la bala.
burden, la carga.
burn, va., quemar ; —, vn., arder.
burning-glass, el lente ustorio.
burst, estallar.
bury, va., hundir (41).
business, los negocios (60).
bushel, la fanega.
busy, ocupado.
but, conj., pero, mas, sino. § 74.
butler, el repostero.
buy, comprar.
calculation, el cálculo.
calf, el becerro.
call, va., llamar ; *is —ed*, se llama ; *— together*, reunir (21).
calm, adj., tranquilo.
calmness, la calma.
camel, el camello.
can, s., la lata.
candy, los dulces.
cannibal, el caníbal.
cannon, el cañón.
captain, el capitán.
capture, va., prender (pp. preso).
car, el coche.
care, *to take* —, tener cuidado.
careful, cuidadoso ; *to be* —, cuidarse de (44).
carefully, cuidadosamente.
cargo, el cargamento.
carol, el trino.
carpet, va., tapizar.
carry, llevar ; — *off*, llevarse (23) ; — *out*, cumplir (47).
cart, el carro.
case, el caso ; *in* —, dado c. que.
cast, va., arrojar.
Castilian, castellano.
castle, el castillo.
cat, el gato.
catch, va., coger.
cattle, el ganado.
cause, s., la causa.
cause, va., causar.
caution, s., la cautela.

cave, la caverna.
cease, VN., cesar.
cellar, el sótano.
celebrated, célebre.
cent, el centavo.
centigrade, ADJ., centígrado.
Central America, Centro-América.
century, el siglo. [de que].
certain, *to be* — [*that*], estar seguro
certainly, ciertamente.
chain, la cadena ; la cordillera (61).
chair, la silla.
change, S., el cambio.
change, VA., cambiar.
channel, el canal.
Charles, Carlos.
chastise, castigar.
cheek, la mejilla.
chicken, el pollo.
child, el niño ; el hijo (27).
children, los hijos (56).
Chilean, chileno.
chilly, frío.
chimney-sweep, el limpiachimeneas.
choir, el coro.
choose, elegir. [lón.
Christopher Columbus, Cristóbal Co-
church, la iglesia.
cigar, el cigarro ; — *-case,* la petaca.
circumstance, la circunstancia.
citizen, el ciudadano.
city, la ciudad ; — *government,* el ayuntamiento.
clay, la arcilla.
clearness, la claridad.
cliff, el peñasco.
climate, el clima.
climb up on, encaramarse sobre.
cloak, la capa.
close, VA., cerrar ; tapar (57)
closely, de cerca.
cloth, el paño.
clothing, la ropa.
cloud, la nube ; [*storm*] —, el nubarrón (42).
coachman, el cochero.
coal-tar, el alquitrán de hulla.
coast, la costa ; — *river,* el río costeño (58).
cock, VA., amartillar.
cocoa, el cacao.
coffee, el café.
cold, frío.
colic, el cólico.
collapse, VN., fracasar.
collection, la colección.
colonel, el coronel.
Columbus, Colón.
column, la columna.
combatant, el combatiente.
combine, VA., reunir.
come, venir ; — *out,* salir ; — *to an end,* tener fin (24).
comet, el cometa.
comfortable, cómodo.
command [*troops*], mandar.
commander, el comandante.
commence to, empezar á.
commit to memory, aprender de memoria.
committee, la comisión.
common, ADJ., común.
commonly, generalmente.
compatriot, el compatriota.
complete, VA., terminar.
completely, por completo.
compose, formar.
concern, VA., concerner.
concerning, respecto de ; concerniente á (55).
conduct, S., la conducta.
confess, confesar.
confidently, con confianza.
congress, el congreso.
comic, cómico.
conjecture, la conjetura.
connect, conexionar.
conquer, vencer.
conquest, la conquista.
conscience, la conciencia.
consent, S., el consentimiento.
consequently, por consiguiente.

consist [*of*], consistir [en].
consistent with, conforme con.
consolation, el consuelo.
conspiracy, la conjuración.
constant, ADJ., constante.
construct, construir.
consumption, el consumo.
contain, contener (*conjug. like* tener).
contemplated, proyectado.
contest, S., la contienda.
continually, continuamente.
continue, continuar ; extender (53).
contracting, ADJ., contratante.
contribute [*a certain sum*], contribuir con [cierta suma de dinero].
convention, la asamblea.
cool, fresco.
copy, S., la copia ; — [*of a book*], el ejemplar.
copy, VA., copiar ; —*ing-press*, la prensa de c.
corner, (*inner*) el rincón ; (*outer*) la esquina.
corpse, el cadáver.
correct, VA., corregir.
cost, VA., costar.
cotton, el algodón.
cough, VN., toser.
counsel, el consejo.
count, VA., contar.
country, el país, el campo, la patria, § 125 ; — *house*, — *place*, la quinta.
couple, *in* —*s*, por parejas.
course, el curso, el modo de obrar.
court, el tribunal.
courteously, con cortesía.
cousin, el primo, la prima.
cover, cubrir (PP. cubierto) ; —*ed with*, cubierto de ; revestido de (58).
coward, el cobarde.
crackle, chisporrotear.
cravat, la corbata.
credulous, crédulo.
crest, la cima (52) ; el espinazo (53).
crew, la tripulación.
cripple, S., el cojo.
crop, S., la cosecha.
crop out, VN., aparecer (57).
cross, VA., atravesar ; pasar (40, 41).
crow, el cuervo.
crowd, el gentío (30) ; la turba (32).
cruelly, con crueldad.
cruiser, el crucero.
cry, el grito.
cuckoo, el cuco.
cunning, S., la astucia.
cup, la taza ; (*racing*) el premio (37).
cure, S., la curación.
current, S., la corriente.
curse, S., la maldición.
curtain, la cortina.
custom, la costumbre.
custom-house, la aduana.
cut, VA., cortar ; — *off*, interceptar (62).
cyclone, el ciclón.
daily paper, el diario.
damp, ADJ., húmedo.
dance, VN., bailar.
dandelion, el amargón.
danger, el peligro ; *out of* —, fuera de p.
dangerous, peligroso.
dark, oscuro ; *to get* —, ponerse o. (53).
darkness, la oscuridad ; *total* —, o. completa.
dash, VA., estrellar.
date, VA., fechar.
daughter, la hija.
dawn, VN., amanecer.
day, el día ; *the* — *before*, el d. anterior.
daybreak, *at* —, al amanecer.
dead, muerto.
death, la muerte.
debt, la deuda.
decade, la decada.
deceased, ADJ., difunto.
deceive, engañar.

decide, VA., decidir; —, VN., decidirse.
decidedly, decididamente.
declare, afirmar.
decrease, VN., disminuir.
deep, profundo; hondo (20); (*fig.*) profundo.
defend, defender.
degree, el grado.
delay, S., la demora.
delayed, ADJ., atrasado.
delicate, delgado.
delight, S., el gozo.
deliver up, entregar.
demand, reclamar (29); requerer (36); exigir (44).
dense, denso.
deny, negar.
department, el departamento.
departure, la partida.
depend upon, depender de.
dependent upon, dependiente de.
depose, deponer.
deposit, VA., poner.
deprive [*one of anything*], quitar [algo á alguien].
depth, la hondura.
descend, bajar (26); descender (61).
descendant, el descendiente.
desert, S., el desierto.
deserter, el désertor.
deserve, merecer.
desire, S., el deseo.
desire, VA., desear; querer (38).
desirous, deseoso.
desk, el escritorio.
desolate, desolado.
despatch, VA., despachar.
details, los pormenores.
development, el desarrollo.
devoid of, exento de.
devote, VA., dedicar.
dextrous, diestro.
dictionary, el diccionario.
die, VN., morir.
difficult, difícil; penoso (51).
difficulty, la dificultad.
diffuse, propagar.
dignified, formal.
dilapidated, medio demolido.
diminish, VN., disminuir.
dine, comer.
dining-room, el comedor.
dinner-time, la hora de la comida.
disagreeable, desagradable.
disappear, desaparecer.
disappointment, el disgusto.
disaster, el desastre.
disband, VA., disolver.
discharge, despedir; (*fire-arm*), disparar.
discharged, ADJ., licenciado.
discouraging, desalentador.
discover, descubrir (PP. descubierto).
discovery, el descubrimiento.
discreet, discreto.
discuss, discutir.
disdain, S., el desdén.
disease, la enfermedad.
disgraceful, vergonzoso.
disguise, VA., disfrazar.
dispute, S., la contienda.
disregard, despreciar.
distance, *in the* —, á lo lejos
distant, lejano.
distinct, distinto.
distinguish, distinguir.
distinguished, distinguido.
distort, alterar.
disturb, molestar.
diversified, accidentado.
divert, desviar.
divide, dividir.
do, hacer; — *away with*, borrar (56).
doctor, el médico.
dog, el perro.
dollar, el peso (*Span. Amer.*); el duro (*Spain*).
door, la puerta.
double, VA., doblar.
doubt, S., la duda; *no* —, sin d.
doubt, VN., dudar.

doubtful, dudoso.
Dr., el doctor.
draught, el calado; *light* —, c. pequeño.
draw, (*design*) dibujar; (*attract*) atraer; — *closer*, estrechar (56).
drawer, el cajón; (*small*) la gaveta.
drawing-pen, la pluma de dibujar.
drawn, ADJ., encogido (30).
dreadful, horroroso.
dress, S., el traje.
dress, VA., vestir; —, VN., vestirse; *to — in mourning*, vestir de luto (50).
dress-coat, el frac.
drink, S., el trago.
drink, beber; —*ing-cup*, el vaso.
driver, el conductor.
drizzle, VN., lloviznar.
drop, S., la gota.
drop, VN., caer.
drown, VA., ahogar.
drunk, **drunken**, borracho.
drunkard, el borracho
dry, seco.
duke, el duque.
dull, ADJ., sordo.
dull, VA., amortiguar.
durable, duradero.
during, durante.
duty, el deber; (*customs*) el derecho.
dye, el tinte.
dying, ADJ., moribundo (32).
each, cada.
ear, la oreja; (*hearing*) el oído (48).
earl, el conde.
early, temprano.
earn, ganar.
earth, la tierra.
easily, fácilmente.
east, S., el este.
eastern, oriental.
eastward, hacia el este.
easy, fácil.
eat, comer.
editor, el redactor.
effort, el esfuerzo.
egg, el huevo.
elapse, trascurrir.
eloquence, la elocuencia.
elude, evadir.
embezzlement, la malversación de fondos.
emperor, el emperador.
employ, emplear.
employment, el empleo.
empty, VN., desembocar.
enable to, poner en estado de (60).
encounter, encontrar.
end, el fin; *to put an — to*, poner término á.
end, VN., terminar.
endanger, comprometer.
endeavor, S., la tentativa.
endeavor to, tratar de.
endure, sufrir.
enemy, el enemigo; los enemigos (45).
energetic, enérgico.
engineer, el ingeniero.
engineering, la ingeniería.
England, Inglaterra.
English, inglés.
English Channel, el Canal de la Mancha.
Englishman, el inglés.
engraft, ingertar.
enjoy, gozar de.
enlightened, ilustrado.
ennui, el fastidio.
enormous, enorme.
enough, suficiente.
enter, entrar en.
enterprise, la empresa.
enterprising, emprendedor.
entire, entero.
entirely, enteramente.
entitled, entitulado.
entrance, la entrada.
envy, S., la envidia.
epidemic, la epidemia.
equal, ADJ., *to be — to*, igualar á.

equal, VA., igualar á.
equally, igualmente.
err, errar.
error, la falta.
essay, el ensayo.
estate, el caudal.
eternal, eterno.
Europe, Europa (*f.*).
even, aun.
evening, la tarde, la noche, § 384; *in the* —, por la t., por la n.
everywhere, en todas partes.
evil, malo.
examination, el examen.
exceed, sobrepujar á.
except, excepto.
exceptionally, excepcionalmente.
excitement, la excitación.
excuse, S., la excusa.
execute, ejecutar.
exercise, S., la tema.
exhaust, agotar.
exist, existir.
existing, existente.
expect, esperar.
expense, la costa; —*s*, los gastos (36).
experience, VA., experimentar.
experiment, VA., hacer experimentos.
explain, explicar.
explanation, la explicación.
explorer, el explorador.
expose, exponer (PP. expuesto).
exposed, ADJ., descubierto (40).
exposure, el desamparo.
express, expresar.
expressly, expresamente.
extend, VA., ensanchar.
extensive, extenso.
extent, la extensión; *to a great* —, en sumo grado.
extinguish, apagar.
extract, extraer.
extraordinary, singular. [vagante.
extravagantly, de un modo extra-
extreme, ADJ., extremado.
extremely, extremadamente.
eye, el ojo.
fable, la fábula.
face, S., la cara.
face, VA., arrostrar.
fact, el hecho; *in* —, en efecto.
factory, la fábrica.
fade, VN., marchitarse.
fail, VN., naufragar; (*commercial*) quebrar.
failure, el fracaso.
fair, lindo; *the — sex*, el bello sexo.
faith, *to put — in*, poner fe (*f.*) en.
fall, caer; caerse.
false, (*untrue*) falso; (*artificial*) postizo; — *hair*, cabellos postizos.
familiar with, enterado de.
family, la familia.
fanciful, caprichoso.
far, lejos; *as — as*, hasta; — *away*, muy l.; — *beyond*, mucho más allá de; — *from*, l. de.
farmer, el agricultor.
fasten, atar.
father, el padre.
fathom, S., la braza.
fault, la culpa.
faultless, sin errores.
favor, *to be in — of*, favorecer.
fear, S., el temor.
fear, VA., temer.
feather, la pluma.
feed, VA., alimentar.
feel, VA., sentir; —, VN., sentirse (49); — *one's pulse*, tomar el pulso á alguien.
feeling, el sentimiento.
fell, VA., derribar.
fellow, el sujeto.
fence, S., la empalizada.
fern, el helecho.
fertile, fértil.
fever, la calentura.
field, el campo.
fifty, cincuenta.
fill [*with*], llenar [de].
finally, por fin; finalmente (58).

find, encontrar ; hallar ; — *out*, averiguar.
fine, fino ; (*fig.*) hermoso.
finger, el dedo ; — *-nail*, la uña.
finish, VA., acabar (21, 31) ; concluir (20, 42) ; terminar (14, 61); despachar (48).
fire, S., el fuego ; la lumbre (43).
fire, VA., disparar ; — *at*, d. sobre.
firm, ADJ., firme.
first, primero ; — *-class*, de primer orden.
fish, S., el pescado.
fisher, el pescador.
fistful, el puñado.
five, cinco.
fix, VA., fijar.
fixed, ADJ., fijo.
flame, la llama.
flannel, la franela.
flat, chato.
flavoring extract, la esencia.
flea, la pulga.
flee, huir.
fleet, la escuadra.
float, VA., flotar.
floating, ADJ., flotante.
floor, el suelo; *to take the* —, tomar [la palabra.
flour, la harina.
flow, S., el derrame.
flow, VN., correr.
flower, la flor.
fluently, corrientemente.
fly away, volar.
foaming, espumoso.
foe, el enemigo.
follow, seguir.
following, ADJ., siguiente.
fond of, apasionado por.
food, el alimento.
fool, el tonto.
foolishly, de un modo insensato.
foot, el pie.
force, la fuerza.
ford, VA., vadear.
forefinger, el dedo índice.
forehead, la frente.
foreign, extranjero.
foreigner, el extranjero.
forepaw, la pata delantera.
foresee, prever.
forest, el bosque ; la selva (58).
forever, para siempre.
forge, la fragua.
forget, olvidar.
forgive, perdonar.
form, S , la forma.
former, anterior.
fortress, la fortaleza.
founded, fundado.
four, cuatro.
fraternize, VN., fraternizarse.
freedom of speech, la libertad de la palabra.
freeze, VA., helar.
French, francés.
Frenchman, el francés.
frequent, VA., frecuentar.
frequently, con frecuencia.
fresh, fresco ; — *water*, agua dulce.
friend, el amigo.
friendship, la amistad.
frigate, la fragata.
frightful, espantoso.
front, el frente ; *in* — *of*, enfrente de; — *window*, la ventana del f.
frontier, la frontera.
frost, la helada.
fry, freír.
fulfilment, el cumplimiento.
full, lleno ; completo (20).
fully, completamente.
funny, chistoso.
furnace, el horno.
further, más.
fury, el furor.
gain, VA., ganar ; — *ground*, g. te- [rreno.
Gallician, gallego.
game, el juego.
garden, el jardín.
gate-post, el pilar.
gather, recoger.
gaze, S., la mirada.
gaze at, mirar.

gazette, la gaceta.
gentleman, el caballero.
genuine, verdadero
George, Jorge.
German, alemán.
ghost, el aparecido.
gifted with, dotado de.
gipsy, el gitano, la gitana. [(59).
girl, la niña; la muchacha; la joven
give, dar ; regalar (41) ; — *way to*, ceder á.
glad, *to be — of*, alegrarse de.
glance, s., la mirada.
glass, el vaso ; (*material*) el vidrio.
globe, el globo.
glove, el guante.
go, ir ; — *down*, bajar ; — *out*, salir ; — *over*, repasar ; — *through*, atravesar ; — *up*, subir ; — *with*, acompañar.
God, Dios.
gold, el oro.
good, bueno.
goods, los géneros.
govern, regir.
governess, el aya (*f.*).
government, el gobierno.
governor, el gobernador.
grain, el grano.
grammar, la gramática.
grammatical, gramatical.
grandfather, el abuelo.
grape, la uva.
grapple, agarrar.
grateful, agradecido.
gravity, la gravedad.
gray, gris.
greatly, mucho.
green, verde.
grievously, rigurosamente.
groan, s., el gemido.
gross, la gruesa.
ground, el suelo ; el terreno (44, 55).
grow, VN., crecer.
guardian, el tutor.
guest, el convidado.
guitar, la guitarra.
gun, la escopeta ; (*musket*) el fusil ; (*cannon*) el cañón.
gypsy, el gitano.
habit, la costumbre.
Hadrian, Adriano. [tizos.
hair, el pelo ; *false* —, cabellos pos-
half, la mitad ; medio, § 368 ; — *-breed savage*, el salvaje de media raza.
halt, *to make a* —, hacer alto.
hand, la mano.
handkerchief, el pañuelo.
handle, VA., manosear.
hang, VA., colgar.
hangings, las colgaduras.
Hannibal, Aníbal.
happen, suceder.
happy, feliz.
harass, acosar.
harbor, el puerto.
hardtack, la galleta.
hare, la liebre.
harm, s., el daño.
hasten, huir (57).
hastily, apresuradamente.
hat, el sombrero.
hay, el heno.
head, la cabeza ; — *of navigation*, el cabo de navegación.
healthy, sano.
heap, VA., amontonar.
hear, oír.
heart, el corazón.
heaven, el cielo.
heavy, poblado (30).
Hebrew, hebreo.
height, la altura.
help, VA., ayudar.
Helen, Elena.
hemisphere, el hemisferio.
here, aquí.
hidden, oculto ; escondido (37).
hide, s., el cuero.
hide, VA., ocultar.
hiding-place, el escondite.

high, alto ; elevado (53, 58, 61).
highly, sumamente.
highway, la calzada.
hill, la colina ; la loma (52).
hire, VA., alquilar.
historian, el historiador.
history, la historia.
hold, tener ; abrigar (55).
home, *to go* —, ir á casa ; *at* —, en casa.
honest, honrado.
honey, la miel ; *to make* —, hacer su panal (21).
hook, el anzuelo.
hope, S., la esperanza.
hope, VN., esperar.
hopeless, desesperanzado.
horse, el caballo ; — *-fly*, el tábano ; — *-race*, la carrera de caballos.
hostile, ADJ., enemigo.
hot, caluroso ; caliente (54).
hotel, la fonda.
hour, la hora.
house, la casa.
how much, cuánto.
howling, S., el aullido.
human, humano.
humming-bird, el colibrí
humorous, chistoso.
hunter, el cazador.
husband, el marido.
hut, la choza.
idleness, la ociosidad.
if, si.
ill, enfermo.
imbibe, tragar.
immediately, inmediatamente, en seguida.
immense, inmenso.
impassable, impracticable.
impel, impeler.
important, *to be* —, importar.
impose, imponer.
impress, VA., impresionar.
improve, VN , mejorarse.
impudence, el descaro.
incense, el incienso.
income, la renta.
increase, VN., aumentar.
indeed, en efecto ; (*emphatic*) de veras.
independent, independiente.
Indian, el indio.
indication, el indicio.
indistinctly, de una manera indistinta.
individual, el individuo.
industry, la industria.
infinite, infinito.
infinitive, el infinitivo.
influence, VA., excitar.
inform [*any one of something*], participar [algo á alguien].
information, el informe.
inhabit, habitar ; *—ed*, habitado ; poblado (58).
inhabitant, el habitante.
injustice, la injusticia.
ink, la tinta.
inmate, el inquilino.
inquire, preguntar.
inquisitive, preguntón.
insanity, la demencia.
insect, el insecto.
insist [*upon*], insistir [en].
instant, *the 4th* —, el 4 del actual.
instead of, en vez de; en lugar de (37).
intellect, el entendimiento ; la inteligencia (56).
intercede with, interceder con.
interest, S., el interés.
interesting, interesante.
interfere, VN., entremeterse.
intermediate, ADJ., intermedio.
interrupt, interrumpir.
interval, el intervalo.
intricate, complicado.
introduction, la presentación.
intruder, el intruso.
island, la isla.
invading, ADJ., invasor.
invite, convidar.
isolated, aislado.

issue, s., el resultado.
issue, va., emitir.
ivory, el marfil; — *-hilted*, con puño de m.
James, Diego.
Jane, Juana.
Jewish, judío.
job, el negocio.
John, Juan.
Joseph, José.
Josie, Pepita.
journey, el viaje.
joyous, alegre.
judge, s., el juez.
judge, vn., — *from*, juzgar por.
judgment, la opinión.
juice, el jugo.
June, junio.
junior, adj., menos antiguo.
justice, la justicia.
kerosene, el petróleo.
key, la llave; (*of piano*) la tecla.
kill, matar.
kilometer, el kilómetro.
kind, s., la clase; la especie (19, 60); *all —s of*, toda clase de.
kindly, afectuoso.
kindness, la bondad.
king, el rey.
kite, la cometa.
kitten, el gatito.
knife, el cuchillo.
know, conocer; saber (41). § 1178.
knowledge, el conocimiento.
labor, s., el trabajo.
labor, vn., trabajar.
ladder, la escalera.
lady, la señora.
lake, el lago.
lamb, el cordero.
lamentation, el lamento.
land, la tierra.
language, el idioma.
large, grande.
last, vn., durar.
last, adj., último; — *night*, anoche; — *spring*, la primavera pasada; — *winter*, el invierno pasado; *at* —, por fin.
later, más tarde.
latter, *the* —, este, éste. §§ 439, 459.
laughter, la risa.
laugh, vn., reír; — *at*, reírse de.
launching, la botada.
lavish upon, prodigar á.
lawyer, el abogado.
lay down *one's arms*, rendir las armas.
lb., la libra.
lead, vn., conducir.
leader, el caudillo; el conductor (51).
leaf, la hoja.
league, la legua.
leak, la vía de agua.
leap, s., el salto.
learn [*to*], aprender [á].
learned, sabio.
learner, el alumno.
learning, la ciencia (60).
least, *at* —, al menos.
leave, va., dejar; — *behind*, d. atrás.
lecture, s., la conferencia.
left, adj., izquierdo.
leg, la pierna.
legend, la leyenda.
leisure, el ocio.
lend, prestar.
leopard, el leopardo.
lesson, la lección.
let, permitir.
letter, la carta; (*of alphabet*) la letra (41).
liar, el embustero.
library, la biblioteca.
lie, yacer.
lieutenant, el teniente.
life, la vida.
lifetime, la vida.
light, la luz; *floating* —, el faro flotante.
light, claro; (*in weight*) ligero (37); — *literature*, literatura frívola.

lightness, la ligereza.
like to, querer (29).
likely, probable.
limb, el miembro.
lime, el cal.
limit, el límite.
line, S., la línea.
line, VA., ribetear.
lion, el león.
listen, **listen to**, escuchar.
listener, el escuchador.
literally, al pie de la letra.
little, pequeño.
live, ADJ., vivo.
live, VN., vivir.
living, ADJ., vivo.
loaded, cargado.
loan, el empréstito.
locate, VN., establecerse.
lock, VA., cerrar.
log, el leño.
long, largo ; — *before*, l. tiempo antes ; — *distances*, grandes distancias.
longer, *no* —, ya no.
longitudinally, en su longitud.
look, S., la mirada.
look, VN., mirar ; (*seem*) parecer ; — *at*, m. ; — *for*, — *out for*, buscar ; — *like*, parecer ser ; — *towards*, dar á ; mirar hacia (29).
lose, perder.
loss, la pérdida.
lot, *by* —, por suerte.
lottery, la lotería.
loud, *to talk* —, hablar alto.
low, ADJ., bajo.
lower, ADJ., inferior ; *the* — *Magdalena*, el Bajo Magdalena.
luck, la dicha.
luckily, afortunadamente.
ludicrous, ridículo.
lure, VA., atraer.
Madam, señora.
madman, el loco.
magnificent, magnífico.
mail-carrier, el cartero.
majestic, majestuoso.
majority, la mayor parte.
make, hacer (PP. hecho).
man, el hombre.
manifest, VA., manifestar.
manners, los modales.
manœuvre, S., la maniobra.
manufacturer, el manufacturero.
march, S., la marcha.
march, VN., marchar.
maritime, marítimo.
market, el mercado ; — *-place*, la plaza.
marriage, el casamiento.
Mars, Marte.
masterly, maestro.
material, la materia.
matter, la materia ; las materias (60) ; el asunto (15, 22) ; el negocio (51).
matter, VN., importar.
match, el fósforo.
mayor, el alcalde.
M. D., doctor en medicina.
meadow, el prado.
mean, VN., significar.
meandering, la peregrinación.
meaning, el significado.
means, el medio ; *by* — *of*, por m. de.
measure, la medida.
meat, la carne.
medium, ADJ., medio.
meet, **meet with**, encontrar.
melt, VA., derretir.
member, el socio (37) ; el miembro (56).
memory, la memoria.
mention, VA., indicar.
merchandise, las mercancías.
meteor, el aerolito.
method, el método ; el modo (35).
methodist, ADJ., metodista.
Mexican, mejicano.
migrate, emigrar.
mild, benigno.
mile, la milla.

miller, el molinero.
mimic, VA., remedar.
minute, s., el minuto.
mirror, el espejo.
misfortune, la desgracia.
mishap, la desgracia.
Miss, señorita.
mistaken, *to be — in*, estar equivocado en.
mistress, el ama (*f.*).
misunderstanding, la equivocación.
model, s., el modelo.
monarch, el monarca.
monastery, el monasterio.
money, el dinero.
monkey, el mono.
monotonous, monótono.
mosquito, el mosquito.
month, el mes.
moon, la luna.
Moroccan, marroquí.
most of the time, la mayor parte del tiempo.
mother, la madre.
motive, el motivo.
mountain, la montaña ; — *-chain*, la cordillera.
mountainous, montañoso.
mourning, el luto.
mouth, la boca ; (*of river*) la embocadura ; (*of cave*) la entrada.
mule-path, la vereda de herradura.
murder, VA., asesinar.
murderer, el asesino.
muscles (*collectively*), la musculatura.
music, la música.
mustache, el bigote.
mustachios, los bigotazos.
mutter, VA., murmurar.
mystery, el misterio.
myth, el mito.
naked, desnudo.
name, el nombre.
narrative, la narración.
narrow, estrecho.
native, s., el indígena; el natural (29).
native tongue, el idioma natal.
nature, la naturaleza.
navigable, navegable.
navigation, la navegación.
navy, la marina.
near, cerca de ; aproximado á (55).
necessary, preciso.
neck, el cuello ; el pescuezo (30).
necklace, el collar.
necktie, la corbata.
need, s., la necesidad ; *have — of*, tener n. de.
need, necesitar.
needle, la aguja.
neighbor, el vecino.
nephew, el sobrino.
Neptune, Neptuno.
nest, el nido.
never more, nunca más.
nevertheless, sinembargo.
new, nuevo.
New York, Nueva York.
newspaper, el periódico ; — *reporter*, el corresponsal de p.
next, *the — time*, la próxima vez ; — *summer*, el verano próximo.
niece, la sobrina.
night, la noche ; *at —fall*, al anochecer.
nitrate, el nitrato.
nocturnal, nocturno.
noise, el ruido ; *to make a —*, meter r.
North, el norte ; — *America*, N. América ; — *-American*, n. -americano ; — *wind*, el viento del n.
nose, la nariz.
notice, VA., notar.
noticeable, notable.
notorious, notorio.
notwithstanding, no importa.
novel, s., la novela.
now, ahora ; *now . . .*, *now*, ora . . ., ora (49).
number, el número.
object to, oponerse á.
objection, el inconveniente.
obstinate, tenaz.

obtain, obtener (*irr. like* tener).
obviate, salvar.
occasion, el motivo.
ocean, el océano.
October, octubre.
offer, VA., ofrecer.
office, el despacho ; la oficina (27).
officer, el oficial.
often, á menudo.
old, viejo ; antiguo (27, 39, 61) ; — *man*, el anciano.
older, oldest, mayor.
omit, omitir.
only, únicamente.
open [*to*], ADJ., abierto [á].
open, open up, VA., abrir.
opening, la entrada.
opera-glasses, los gemelos.
opponent, el adversario.
opportunity, la ocasión.
opposing, ADJ., enemigo.
opposite, ADJ., opuesto ; PREP., enfrente de.
oppress, oprimir
oratory, el arte oratoria.
order, S., la orden.
order, mandar; ordenar (45) ; (*goods*), pedir (44).
organ, el órgano.
other, otro ; *on the — side of*, al o. lado de.
out, ADV., fuera.
out-of-the-way, ADJ., retirado.
outer, ADJ., exterior.
outing, la correría ; *to take an —*, veranear.
outside of, fuera de.
outwardly, exteriormente.
oven, el horno.
overcoat, el sobretodo (38) ; el abrigo (43) ; el gabán (54).
overlook, dominar.
over-modest, demasiado modesto.
overtake, sorprender.
owl, el buho.
own, VA., poseer.
owner, el dueño.
oxyhydrogen blow-pipe, el soplete de hidrógeno oxigenado.
package, el paquete.
page, la página.
paint, VA., pintar.
painter, el pintor.
pair, el par.
paltry, ADJ., mezquino.
paper, el papel; (*newspaper*) el periódico.
parcel, el paquete.
parents, los padres.
Paris, París.
parlor, el salón.
parrot, el papagayo.
part, S., la parte ; *take — in*, formar p. de (49) ; tomar p. de (60).
particular, S., el detalle.
party, la partida ; *attacking —*, la p. de ataque ; *contracting —*, la parte contratante.
pass, S., el paso.
pass, VA., pasar.
passage, el paso.
passer-by, el transeúnte.
passionately fond of, apasionado por.
pasturage, los pastos (31) ; el pasto (51).
patience, la paciencia.
patient, S., el enfermo.
pave, VA., adoquinar.
pay, VA., pagar ; — *attention to*, hacer caso de.
peace, la paz.
peak, el pico ; la cumbre (18, 53).
peck, el cuartal.
pedantic, pedantesco.
penetrating, penetrante.
people, el pueblo ; *young —*, los jóvenes.
per, por.
perfumery, perfumerías (*f.*).
perhaps, tal vez ; quizá (17) ; quizás (42).
period, el período.
permissible, lícito.

permission, el permiso.
permit, VA., permitir.
perpetual, perpetuo.
person, la persona.
persuade to, persuadir á.
Peru, el Perú.
Peter, Pedro.
phenomenon, el fenómeno.
photograph, VA., la fotografía.
pick up, levantar.
picture, el cuadro ; (*painting*) la pintura ; (*engraving*) el grabado (59).
piece, el pedazo.
pier, el desembarcadero.
pig, el cerdo.
pigeon, la paloma.
pilo, S., el pilote.
pipe, S., la pipa.
pity, la piedad ; *it is a* —, es lástima.
place, S., el sitio ; el lugar (49) ; — *of business*, el l. de negocios ; *in* — *of*, en l. de.
place, VA., colocar.
plain, la llanura ; el llano (25).
plan, el proyecto.
plant, S., la planta.
planter, el colono.
plateau, la mesa.
platform, la plataforma.
play, (*a game*) jugar ; (*music, instrument*) tocar.
pleasant, ameno ; agradable (17) ; gracioso (34).
pleasure, el gusto.
Pliny, Plinio.
plug, VA., tapar.
plunge, VA., hundir.
pocket, el bolsillo ; — *-book*, la cartera.
poem, el poema.
point, S., el punto.
poison, S., el veneno.
poisonous, ponzoñoso.
polite, cortés.
politely, con cortesía.
pond, la laguna.
poor, pobre.
population, la población.
populous, poblado.
port, el puerto.
porter, el portero.
portrait, el retrato.
position, el puesto.
possess, poseer.
postage-stamp, el sello de correo.
post-office, la oficina del correo.
postpone, diferir.
potato, la papa *or* patata ; **sweet** —, la batata.
pound, la libra.
pour, VA., echar.
powder, VA., polvorear.
power, el poder.
practice, S., la práctica.
practice, VA., practicar.
praise, VA., alabar.
preacher, el predicador.
prefer, preferir ; dar preferencia á (61).
preferable, preferible.
prejudice, la prevención.
premature, prematuro, inesperado.
preparation, el preparativo.
present, ADJ., *at the* — *day*, en el día de hoy ; *to be* — *at*, presenciar.
preserve, VA., conservar.
presume, presumir.
pretty, bonito.
prevail, prevalecer.
prevailing, dominante ; predominante.
prevent, impedir.
previous, anterior.
prey, la presa.
price, el precio.
priest, el cura.
prison, el presidio.
prisoner, el prisionero.
private, ADJ., privado.
prize, S., el premio.
probability of life, el término medio de la vida.

problem, el problema.
process, el procedimiento.
produce, VA., producir.
profit, el provecho.
profound, profundo.
program, el programa.
progress, S., el progreso.
progress, VN., adelantar.
project, el proyecto.
prolix, prolijo.
promise, VA., VN., prometer.
promote, alentar.
promptly, con prontitud.
property, la propiedad.
propose, proponer.
protected, (*war-ship*) blindado.
protective, proteccionista.
prove, probar.
provide, proveer; — *one's self with*, proveerse de.
province, la provincia.
psalm, el salmo.
publish, publicar.
pull the trigger, disparar el gatillo.
pulse, el pulso.
punctuality, la puntualidad.
pure, puro.
purse, la bolsa.
pursue, perseguir (32); continuar (50).
pursuer, el perseguidor.
pursuit, la faena.
put, poner (PP. puesto); meter (27); — *an end to*, p. término á; — *in*, m. en; — *on*, ponerse; — *out*, apagar.
quantity, la cantidad.
queen, la reina.
question, S., la cuestión.
quick, vivo.
quickly, pronto.
quite, ADV., muy.
quote, citar.
rabbit, el conejo.
race, la raza.
raft, la balsa.
range, la cordillera.
rail, *by* —, por ferrocarril.
railroad, railway, el ferrocarril; — *system*, el sistema ferrocarrilero.
rain, S., la lluvia.
rainy season, la estación de lluvias.
rapids, S., los rápidos.
rapidity, la rapidez.
rapidly, rápidamente.
rat, la rata.
rather, más bien, § 539 *footnote*; (*somewhat*) algo.
ravine, la cañada.
ray, el rayo.
Raymond, Ramón.
reach, VA., llegar á: alcanzar (39).
read, leer.
readily, fácilmente.
readiness, la facilidad.
ready to, pronto á (36); dispuesto á (44).
rear, S., la retaguardia.
reason, S., la razón.
recede, retirarse.
receive, recibir; [*a person*] acoger
reciprocal, recíproco.
reckless, atolondrado.
recollection, el recuerdo.
recover from, restablecerse de.
red, colorado.
redouble, redoblar.
reef, el arrecife.
reflect, VA., reflejar; VN., (*consider*) reflexionar.
reflection, el reflejo.
refuge, *to take* —, refugiarse.
refuse [*to*], negarse [á].
regard as, VA., mirar como.
regiment, el regimiento.
regret, S., el sentimiento.
reinforcement, el refuerzo.
reject, rechazar.
relief, el alivio.
remain, permanecer; quedar (60).
remainder, el resto.
remains, los restos.
remark, S., la observación.

remedy, s., el remedio.
remember, acordarse de.
remittance, la remesa.
remnant, el resto.
remote, apartado.
render, hacer.
repeat, repetir.
replete with, lleno de.
reply, VN., contestar.
report, s., la noticia.
report, VA., anunciar.
reporter, el corresponsal.
representative, s., el representante.
reprimand, VA., reprender.
reproach, s., la reconvención.
require, exigir ; requerir (62).
resemble, parecer.
reservoir, el arca (*f.*) de agua.
resistance, la resistencia.
resource, el recurso.
respecting, respecto de.
respects, *in other* —, por otra parte.
restore, VA., restituir.
resolve to, decidirse á.
result, s., el resultado.
retreat, VN., retroceder.
return, s., la vuelta ; *in* —, en cambio.
return, VN., volver ; regresar (20) ; VA., devolver (24).
reveal, divulgar.
revive, VA., restablecer.
revolt, s., la sublevación.
revolt, VN., sublevarse.
reward, la recompensa ; el premio (47).
rich, rico.
riches, las riquezas.
richly, ricamente.
riddle, VA., acribillar.
ridge, la loma.
right, ADJ., derecho.
rise, VN., subir ; levantarse (52) ; elevarse (58).
rising, ADJ., creciente.
risk, VA., arriesgar.
risk, s., *run the — of*, correr riesgo de.
ring, el aro (25) ; (*for finger*) la sortija.
ring, VN., (*bells*) tocar.
river, el río.
road, el camino.
roar, s., el bramido.
rob [*any one of something*], robar [algo á alguien].
robber, el ladrón ; el bandolero (51).
robust, robusto.
rock, la roca ; la peña (41) ; el peñasco (53).
rocky, roqueño ; pedregoso (31) ; *the — Mountains*, las Montañas Rocallosas.
rolling-mill, el laminador.
Rome, Roma.
rogue, el bribón.
roof, el techo.
room, la habitación.
root up, desenterrar.
rope, la cuerda ; — *bridge*, el puente de maroma.
rose, la rosa.
rouge, VA., pintar.
round, ADJ., redondo.
route, la ruta.
row, VN., remar.
ruin, s., la ruina.
ruined, arruinado.
rule, s., la regla.
run, correr ; — *after*, c. tras ; — *over*, recorrer ; — *the risk of*, c. riesgo de.
running vines, plantas trepadoras.
safe, seguro.
safety, la seguridad.
sail, VN., zarpar.
sailor, el marinero.
salary, el sueldo.
salt, la sal.
salt-water, el agua salada.
salute, VA., saludar.
sample, la muestra.
sand, la arena.

San Domingo, Santo Domingo
satin, el raso.
saturate with, rocer de.
Saturn, Saturno.
save, VA., salvar; —, VN., hacer economías (44).
say, decir (*irr.*).
scar, la cicatriz.
scarcely, apenas.
scarcity, la escasez.
scenery, el paisaje.
scheme, el proyecto.
scholar, el escolar.
school, la escuela.
schooner, la goleta.
science, la ciencia.
scientific, científico.
scoundrel, el bribón.
sea, el mar; —*port*, el puerto de m.
search, VN., buscar; —, VA., registrar (41, 46); — *for*, buscar; — *-warrant*, la orden de registro.
seaside resort, el lugar de baños de mar.
season, la estación.
seat, VA., sentar.
seat, el asiento; el centro (58).
sea-weed, el alga (*f.*).
second, VA., ayudar (56).
second, S. and ADJ., segundo.
section, la región.
security, el bono.
see, ver (PP. visto).
seek, buscar.
seem, parecer.
seize, asir.
select, VA., escoger.
sell, vender.
send, enviar, mandar; — *back*, devolver.
sense, el sentido.
sentence, la frase.
sentry, el centinela.
serenade, la serenata.
sergeant, el sargento.
series, la serie.
serious, serio.
serrated, dentellado.
servant, el criado; la criada; — *-girl*, la criada.
serve as, servir de; servir como (51).
set out, salir.
set fire to one's self, pegarse fuego.
setting sun, el sol poniente.
several, varios; diversos (60); — *times*, varias veces.
severely, severamente.
sex, el sexo.
shaft, la saeta.
shake one's head, mover la cabeza.
share in, participar de.
sharp, afilado (32); agudo (58).
shawl, el chal.
sheep, la oveja.
sheet, la sábana; *a — of flame*, una s. de llamas.
shelter, el albergue.
shelter, VA., guarecer.
shell, la concha; (*projectile*) la granada.
ship, el buque; *battle-* —, el b. de guerra.
shipment, el cargamento.
shoe, el zapato.
shoot, VA., pegar un tiro á.
shop, el taller.
shore, el litoral.
short, corto.
shortcoming, la falta.
shoulder, el hombro; *broad- —ed*, ancho de espaldas.
shout, VN., gritar.
shout, S., el alarido (32); el grito (52).
show, VA., mostrar (40, 41); enseñar (22, 47); demostrar (48, 53).
shrub, el arbusto.
sick, malo, enfermo.
side, el lado; la falda (18); *on this — of*, más acá de.
siege, el sitio.
sigh, el quejido.

sight, el espectáculo ; *in* —, á la vista.
sign, la muestra.
signification, el significado.
silence, el silencio.
silent, *to be* —, callar.
silly, necio.
similar, semejante.
simple, sencillo.
simultaneously, simultáneamente.
since, PREP., desde ; ADV., después.
sing, cantar ; (*of birds*) gorjear.
single, solo (51) ; suelto (60).
sir, señor.
sister, la hermana.
situated, situado.
situation, la colocación.
skull, la calavera.
sleep, VN., dormir.
sleep, S., el sueño.
sleet, el granizo.
sling, el cabestrillo.
slip-noose, el nudo corredizo.
slipper, la chinela.
slope, la vertiente.
slow, lento.
slowly, lentamente.
small, pequeño.
small-pox, las viruelas.
smoke, VA., fumar.
smoke, S., el humo ; la humareda (40).
smoker, el fumador.
snow, S., la nieve ; — *-capped*, coronado de n. ; — *-storm*, la tormenta de n.
snow, V. IMP., nevar.
soda, la sosa.
soil, el suelo ; el terreno (41, 61).
solace, el consuelo.
soldier, el soldado.
sometimes, algunas veces.
son, el hijo.
song, la canción.
soon, pronto ; luego (33) ; *as — as*, en cuanto.
sooner, más pronto ; *no — . . . than*, no bien . . . cuando.
sorrow, el dolor.
sorry, *to be — that*, sentir que.
so that, de modo que.
soul, el alma (*f.*).
sound, S., el sonido.
sound, VN., sonar ; — *like*, tener el timbre de (37).
sour, agrio.
source, el manantial ; el nacimiento (61).
south, el sur ; —*east*, el sudeste.
South America, Sud América, la América del Sur.
South-American, sud-americano.
southern, meridional ; del sur (61).
Spain, España (*f.*).
Spanish, español ; [*language*] el castellano ; — *-American*, hispanoamericano.
sparkling, centelleante.
speak, hablar.
speaker, el orador.
spear, el venablo.
speech, el discurso.
speed, la celeridad.
specimen, la muestra.
spend [*money*], gastar ; [*time*], pasar.
spirit, el espíritu.
spite, *in — of*, á pesar de ; *in — of himself*, á pesar suyo.
splendid, precioso.
spot, el punto ; el lugar (59).
spring, la fuente ; (*season*) la primavera.
spy, el espía.
square, S., (*public*) la plaza ; (*math.*) el cuadrado.
square, ADJ., cuadrado ; *ten feet —*, diez pies en cuadro.
stage, el escenario.
stalk, el tallo.
star, la estrella.
start, partir ; salir (42).
state, el estado.

stay, s., la permanencia.
stay, VN., quedarse.
steadily, constantemente.
steamboat, steamer, el vapor.
steel, el acero.
step, el paso.
stiff, altanero.
still, todavía ; — *more*, aun más (61).
stock, la acción.
stone, la piedra.
stop, detener (*irr. like* tener).
store, la tienda.
storm, la tempestad ; el temporal (28).
story, el cuento ; *tell a* —, contar un c. ; hacer un relato (36).
stout, regordete.
strain, la tensión.
straits, el estrecho.
strange, extraño.
stranger, el desconocido.
straw, la paja.
stray, extraviado.
stream, stream of water, la corriente.
street, la calle ; — *car*, el tranvía.
strength, la fuerza.
stretch, VA., tender.
strife, la guerra.
strike, s., la huelga.
strike, VA., (*of a clock*) dar. § 391.
stroll, *take a* —, dar una vuelta.
strong, fuerte.
student-lamp, el quinqué.
study, s., el estudio.
study, VA., estudiar.
stupidity, la estupidez.
style, el estilo.
subject, s., el asunto.
subject, VA., someter.
submit, VA., someter.
subside, VN., calmarse.
suburb, el arrabal.
successive, sucesivo.
successively, sucesivamente.
such a, semejante.
sufferer, el paciente.
suffice, bastar.
sufficient. *to be* —, bastar.
suffocate, ahogar.
sugar, el azúcar.
suggest, sugerir.
suitable for, propio para.
sum, la suma.
summer, el verano.
summit, la cumbre.
sun, el sol ; —*set*, la puesta del s. — *-spot*, la mancha solar.
supper, la cena ; *to eat* —, cenar.
supply, la provisión.
support, s., el apoyo.
support, VA., sostener.
suppose, suponer.
suppress, sofocar.
sure, seguro.
surely, seguramente.
surface, la superficie.
surmounted by, coronado de.
surpass, exceder á.
surprising, sorprendente.
surround, rodear.
survey, s., el trazo.
suspect [*any one*], sospechar [en alguno].
suspend, suspender.
sustain one's self on, mantenerse con.
swallow, VA., tragar.
swampy, pantanoso.
swear, jurar.
sweep, barrer.
sweet, dulce ; — *potato*, la batata.
sweetmeats, los dulces.
sweetness, la dulzura.
Swiss, suizo.
sword, la espada.
syren, la sirena.
system, el sistema.
table, la mesa.
taciturn, callado.
tailor, el sastre.
take, tomar ; llevar (24) ; — *away*, llevarse (54) ; — *care*, tener cuidado ; — *from*, robar (21) ; — *off one's hat*, quitarse el sombrero ; — *part in*, formar parte de (49), tomar parte de (60) ; — *refuge*, re-

fugiarse; — *notice of*, apercibirse de.
talent, el talento.
talk, hablar; — *about*, h. de.
talkative, hablador.
tall, alto.
tariff, el arancel.
taste, el gusto.
tax, la contribución.
tea, el té.
teach, enseñar.
teacher, el maestro.
tear, VA., romper (PP. roto) (21); rasgar; — *off*, arrancar.
tear, s., la lágrima.
telegram, el parte.
telegraph, el telégrafo.
tell, decir; contar (57); — *a story*, c. un cuento.
tenant, la inquilina (28); el arrendatario (49).
tend to, tender á.
terminate in, terminarse en.
terms, las condiciones.
territory, el territorio.
testify, declarar.
Thebes, Tebas.
theft, el robo.
then, entonces; luego (40).
theodolite, el teodolito.
there, allí.
there is, there are, hay (§ 863).
therefore, pues.
thick, espeso; *the —est of the forest*, lo más profundo del bosque.
thicket, la maleza.
thimble, el dedal.
thin, delgado; flaco (30); *grow —*, enflaquecer.
thing, la cosa; *the same —*, lo mismo.
think, creer.
thinly, parcamente.
thirst, la sed.
thistle, el cardo.
thoroughly, á fondo.
thought, el pensamiento.
thousand, el millar.
three, tres; — *-masted*, de t. palos.
throat, la garganta.
through, por.
throw, throw away, arrojar: — *open*, abrir; — *out*, echar; — *up*, arrojar; — *the blame on*, echar la culpa á.
thumb, el pulgar.
thunder, V. IMP., tronar.
thus, así; — *far*, hasta aquí.
ticket, el billete.
tide, la marea.
tie, el lazo.
tillage, la labranza.
time, el tiempo, la vez, el plazo (§ 396); *in —*, á t.; *from — to —*, de vez en cuando.
tip, la propina, la gratificación.
tire, VA., cansar.
tired, cansado; *to get —*, cansarse.
toast, la tostada.
tobacco, el tabaco.
to-day, hoy.
to-morrow, mañana.
tone, el tono.
tongue, el idioma.
to-night, esta noche.
too (*also*), también.
top, la cima; *on — of*, encima de.
torch, la tea.
tormenting, atormentador.
torpedo-boat, el torpedero.
torrent, el torrente.
tortoise, la tortuga.
torture, el tormento.
toss, agitar.
toward, towards, hacia.
town, la ciudad; la población (37).
track, la huella.
tract, la comarca.
traffic, el tráfico.
train, el tren; la tropa (51).
Trajan, Trajano.
transact, conducir.
translate, traducir.
transportation, el trasporte.

trap, la trampa.
travel, viajar.
travel, s., el viaje.
traveler, el viajero
traverse, atravesar.
tread, s., el paso.
treasure, el tesoro.
treat, tratar.
treatise, el tratado.
tree, el árbol.
tremble, temblar.
trigger, el gatillo.
troops, las tropas.
tropical, tropical.
true, verdadero ; *it is* —, es verdad.
trunk, el baúl.
truth, la verdad.
try, intentar (36, 46) ; — *to*, tratar de (40, 56).
Tuesday, el martes.
tunnel, el túnel.
turn (*bend*), s., el recodo ; *in* —, á su turno.
turn (*become*), VN., hacerse ; — *out*, salir.
turtle, la tortuga.
twilight, el crepúsculo.
two, dos.
ugly, feo.
umbrella, el paraguas.
unapproachable, inabordable.
unbroken, seguido.
uncertain, incierto.
uncle, el tío.
uncommon, extraordinario.
under, bajo, debajo de (§ 193).
understand, comprender entender (29).
undertake, emprender ; — *to*, encargarse de (44).
unexplored, inexplorado.
unfortunate, desgraciado.
unhappy, infeliz.
unhealthy, malsano.
unit, la unidad.
unite, unir.
United States, los Estados Unidos.
unjust, injusto.
unknown, desconocido.
unless, á menos que.
unlucky, desgraciado.
unnavigable, innavegable.
unnecessary, no necesario.
unparalleled, incomparable.
unpleasant, desagradable.
unquenchable, inapagable.
until, hasta, hasta que (§§ 286, 910); — *now*, h. ahora.
untiring, incansable.
unusual, extraordinario.
unwary, incauto.
Upper Magdalena, el Alto Magdalena.
uprooted, arrancado de raíz.
upside down, *to turn* —, poner patas arriba (43).
upstairs, arriba.
urchin, el chicuelo.
urgent, apremiante.
use, s., el uso.
use, VA., usar.
useful, útil.
useless, inútil.
utter, VA., pronunciar.
utterly, absolutamente.
valley, el valle ; la vega (58).
value, el valor.
vanquish, vencer.
vary, variar.
vast, espacioso.
vegetable, ADJ., vegetal.
veil, el velo.
velvet, el terciopelo.
verb, el verbo.
vessel, el buque.
vestibule, el vestíbulo.
victim, el víctima.
Vienna, Viena.
view, la vista.
village, el pueblo.
Vincent, Vicente.
vine, la vid ; *running* —*s*, plantas trepadoras.

vineyard, la viña.
violate, quebrantar.
violent, violento ; recio (41).
voice, la voz.
volcano, el volcán.
vowel, la vocal. [un v.
voyage, el viaje ; *to take a* —, hacer
wade, vadear.
wages, el sueldo.
wait, esperar.
wag, el chocarrero.
waiter, el mozo.
wake, VA., despertar.
walk, S., el paseo ; *to take a* —, dar un p.
walk, VN., caminar.
walking, S., el andar; la marcha (51).
walking, ADJ., ambulante.
wall, la muralla ; (*of house*) la pared.
walnut, el nogal.
waltz, el vals.
wander, vagar.
want, S., la necesidad ; la privación (36).
want, VA., querer.
war, la guerra.
War Department, el Ministerio de Guerra.
warehouse, el almacén.
warm, cálido (20) ; caluroso (42).
wash ashore, arrojar sobre la playa.
waste, S., la desolación.
water, el agua (*f.*) ; — *course*, la vía fluvial.
water, VA., bañar.
watch, S., el reloj.
watch, VA., mirar.
watchful, vigilante.
waver, vacilar.
way, la vía.
weak, flojo (19) ; débil (55).
weakness, la flaqueza.
wear, VA., llevar.
weather, el tiempo.
wedding, la boda.
week, la semana, ocho días. (§ 394.)
welfare, el bienestar.
well, S., el pozo.
well, ADV., bien ; — *-educated*, b. educado ; — *-known*, b. conocido.
west, el oeste.
western, occidental.
wet, ADJ., mojado.
wheat, el trigo.
when, cuando; (*in questions*) cuándo.
where, donde; (*in questions*) dónde.
whereas, mientras que.
while, mientras, mientras que.
white, blanco.
whole, entero.
wholly, enteramente.
why, porqué.
wickedly, malvadamente.
widow, la viuda.
widower, el viudo.
wife, la mujer, la esposa.
wild, (*scenery*) ágreste ; — *beast*, la bestia feroz.
willing, *to be* —, querer.
win, ganar.
wind, S., el viento.
wind, VN., serpentear.
wind up a clock, dar cuerda á un reloj.
window, la ventana.
windy, *it is* —, hay viento.
wine, el vino.
winter, el invierno.
wipe, enjugar.
wisdom, la sabiduría.
wise, sabio.
wish, querer ; desear (50).
withdraw, alejarse.
within, dentro de ; (*time*) durante.
without, sin.
withstand, resistir á.
witness, VA., presenciar.
woman, la mujer.
wonderful, admirable.
wonderfully, maravillosamente.
wood, la madera.
wooded, arbolado.
woods, el bosque, los bosques.

wool, la lana.
word, la palabra.
work, VN., trabajar.
work, S., el trabajo ; (*literary*) la obra ; — *-table*, la mesa de t.
workman, el obrero.
works, la fábrica.
world, el mundo.
worse, peor.
worsted, el estambre.
worth, *to be* —, valer ; *to be* — *while*, v. la pena.
wound, S., la herida.
wrap, VA., envolver.
write, escribir (PP. escrito).
wrong, S., la injusticia ; ADJ , falso.
year, el año.
yesterday, ayer ; — *afternoon*, a. tarde.
yet, ADV., todavía, aun ; *not* —, ya no, todavía no.
yield, ceder.
yonder, allá.
young, joven ; tierno (56) ; — *lady*, la señorita ; — *man*, el joven.
youth, la juventud.
zeal, el afán.
zero, el cero.

INDEX.

☞ References are to sections, unless otherwise specified.

á, prepositional uses of, 1438; used to distinguish the direct object of a verb, 88, 1303–24.
abbreviated proper names, 1267.
absolute clause, 1228.
abusar de, 1149.
acabar de, 855.
accent, 24–42.
accusative, **á** used to distinguish, 88, 1303–24.
acordarse de, 1150.
address, forms of, Lesson XVI.
adjective phrases, 256–9.
adjective pronouns, 159, Chap. IX; used absolutely (without nouns), 455–64.
adjectives, agreement of, 149–55, 1462–74; apocopated, 116–22; inflection of, 105–7; intensified by the prefix **re**, 596; location of, 110–4, 780; used without nouns, 454; — requiring certain prepositions, 1444; — which do not admit comparison, 596; — and pronouns used absolutely, 454–64; — of nationality to denote a language, 109, 156; — derived from geographical names, Appendix.
admirar, 1151.
adverbial expressions of time, 379; adverbial phrases, 184–6.
adverbs, 1400–11; derivative, 178–83; interrogative, 422; of place, 268–70; location of, 188.
age, manner of expressing, 406.
agreement, laws of, Chap. XXX; agreement of adjectives, 149–55.
ajeno, 662–3.
alegrarse de, 1152.
algo, 163; **alguien**, 161; **alguno**, 165; **alguno que otro**, 638.
alphabet, 1–2.
ambos, 649.
andar, 1153.
ante contrasted with **delante de**, 191.
antecedent, agreement of, 1475–7.
antojarse, 1154.
aorist, Chap. IV; contrasted with imperfect, 473–6; contrasted with perfect, 471–2.
aorist pluperfect, 762–4.
apocopation of adjectives, 116–22.
aquí, **ahí**, **allí**, 268–70.
article, definite, 48–50, 211–24, Chap. XXVI; agreement of, 1462–7; derivation of, 437, note; use of, before nouns denoting parts of the body, 478, 488; before proper names and titles, 1336–43.
article, indefinite, 48–9, 218–20, 1344–52.
augmentatives, 1259–66.
aun, 272.
auxiliary **deber**, 1003–25; auxiliary **haber**, 202, 758–66; auxiliary **poder**, 1026–33.
bajar, 261–5.
bajo contrasted with **debajo de**, 193.
birthday, 407.
but, Span. equivalents for, 74.

caber, 1155.
caer, 1156.
cada, 618–20.
can, could, 1028.
capital letters, 44–6.
casar, 1157.
case absolute, 1228.
cierto, 664–5.
cognate object, 804.
colocar, 1176.
como, 273.
comparison of adjectives and adverbs, Chap. VIII; five degrees of, 538; comparison of equality (**tanto, como**), 547–61; of inequality (**más** and **menos**), 540–6; comparison by adverbs, 539; by inflection, 539.
composite adjective expressions, 256–9.
compound adjectives, 260; compound nouns, 254–5; compound prepositions, 145.
comprender, 1171.
con, uses of, 1439.
conditional future, Chap. XVI.
conditions with implied negation, 950–70; use of infinitive in protasis, 1210.
conjunctions, 1412–24.
conmigo, contigo, consigo, 306.
conocer, 1178.
consonantal sounds before the several vowels, 17.
consonants, 16.
correspondence of tenses, 971–86.
cosa as a pronoun, 676–7.
cualquiera, 897–8.
cual, with **tal**, 672.
cuanto, 556–61; as relative, 696.
cuyo, possessive relative, 692–5; interrogative use, 429.
dar, 94, 103, 1158.
dates, manner of expressing, 381–3.
dative of advantage, 321; of interest, 323.
day, divisions of, 384.
days, kinds of, 380; — of the week, 379, 386; of the month, 381, 387.
de, uses of, 1440.
deber, 1003–25.
decir, 95, 104.
dejar, 1159.
demás, 653.
demonstrative pronouns, 437–53; used absolutely, 458–60.
dependence of tenses, 971–86.
derivative adverbs, 178–83.
derivative geographical adjectives, Appendix.
derivatives, formation of, 1271–7.
diacritic accent, 33–8.
dimensions, manner of expressing, 402–4.
diminutives, 1244–58, 1266–9; combined with augmentatives, 1266.
diphthongs, 4–15.
division of syllables, 43.
doler, 1160.
donde, *where*, 123.
Don, Doña, 232.
double letters, 18–23.
drive, 1188.
echar, 1161.
e expanded to **ie**, 14–15.
el cual and **el que**, relatives, 686–90.
ello, 1360–1.
en, uses of, 1441.
enclitic use of personal pronouns, 1365–82.
entender, 1171; **entender de**, 1162.
entero, 617.
entrambos, 650.
entrar, 261–3.
epistolary usages, Appendix.
estar, Lesson X; before a past participle, 210; used in forming the passive voice, 813; used impersonally, 843
ethical dative, 323.
faltar, 1163.
family names, 235.

formation of verbs from adjectives, 1287; from nouns, 1279–86.
fractions, 363–9.
Fulano, 238.
future conditional, Chap. XVI.
future indicative, 274–5; used as imperative, 1199; used for present tense in expressing conjecture, 1195.
future-perfect tense, 277, 765.
future subjunctive, 925–9.
gender, 51; of nouns, 239–46, 1288–98; neuter —, 1353–64.
gerund, 515–31; never a verbal noun, 534; not used as an adjective, 535; — with **estar**, to express continuance, 523.
gerund, compound or past, 517, 529.
gerunds of **estar**, **ir** and **andar** used as auxiliaries to other gerunds, 526.
guardarse de, 1164.
gustar, 1165.
haber, as auxiliary in perfect tense, 202; in other compound tenses, 758–66; impersonal use, 860–70, 878, 882.
haber de, 856–7; **haber que**, 1224.
hacia, 286.
hacer, 95; impersonal use of, 871–81; applied to time, 872–7; applied to weather, 880–1.
hacer falta, 1163; **hacer por**, 1166; **hacer valer**, 1186.
hasta, 286–7.
hay, *there is*, 863; — denoting distance, 866.
home, Spanish equivalent of, 157.
hour of the day, 388.
h prefixed to **ue**, 10, 15.
i changed to **y**, 9–10.
idiomatic uses of certain verbs, Chap. XXII.
imperative mood, 767–74.
imperfect tense, Chap. IV.
imperfect subjunctive with the value of pluperfect indicative, 1202.
impersonal passive, 817–27.
impersonal use of **ser**, 138–41.
impersonal verbs, 838–46.
indefinite numeral expressions, 376–8.
infinitive, 83, 1203–25; as a verbal noun, 146, 532–4; used as imperative, 1225.
inflectional endings of the three conjugations, 1035.
interjections, 1425–34.
interrogative sentences, 52, 82.
interrogative pronouns, 422–36.
intransitive verbs, 800–9; made reflexive, 807–8; used transitively, 805.
inverted order of sentence, 225; after a relative, 285.
ir, 94, 99, 1153; **ir á**, as a future expression, 854.
irregular verbs, inflection of, Chap. XX; alphabetical index of, 1148.
jamás, 729–32.
letter-writing, Appendix.
lo que, 449–52.
llegar á, 1167.
llevar, expressing time, 879; as an auxiliary verb, 209.
maltratar, 1149.
mandar, with infinitive, 126, 1216.
más, comparison by means of, 539; applied to adverbs, 571; as adjective pronoun, 583.
más bien, *rather*, 539, footnote.
material of which anything is made, 71.
may, *might*, 1028.
medio, 368–9.
menester, impersonal use of, 846.
menos, comparison by means of, 539.
meter, 1176; **meterse á, en**, 1168.
mismo, 327–9, 654–9, 796.
model verbs, present indicative of, 83–4; complete inflection of, 1034–41.
months, names of, 379.

mucho, 621–6.
mudar, 1169.
muerto, pp. of **matar** and **morir**, 1143.
must, 1005.
muy, 569, 623–7.
nacer, 1170.
nada, 175, 729–32 ; **nadie**, 169, 729–32.
negative **no**, 67.
negatives, Chap. XI ; apparent duplication of, 722 ; place of, 733–4 ; series of, 755.
neuter article, 224; neuter gender, 1353–64; neuter pronoun **lo**, 340–1; neuter relative **lo cual**, **lo que**, 688–9.
ni, *neither, nor*, 747–55.
ninguno, 169.
no, emphasized by certain words, 722; redundant, 735–8; **¡ No es verdad !** 142 ; **no más que, no sino**, 739; **no poder menos de**, 1033; **no sólo**, 742–3.
nouns, gender of, 1288–98; number of, 1299-1302 ; compound —, 254–5 ; collective, 1451–7 ; several to one verb or adjective, 1460–1; requiring certain prepositions, 1444.
numeral adverbs, 374–5.
numeral expressions, indefinite, 376–8.
numerals, 342 ; cardinal, 343–54 ; collective, 360–2 ; multiple, 370–3 ; ordinal, 355–9 ; partitive or fractional, 363.
object, **á** to distinguish, 1303–24 ; cognate, 804 ; reflexive pronominal, 785–90.
o, expanded to **ue**, 14–15.
ó, *or*, changed to **ú**, 72.
oír, 1171.
ojalá, followed by subjunctive, 937–9.
order of words, 225–6, 775–9.
orthographic peculiarities of Spanish, 128.
otro, 634–7.
ought, 1005.
pagar, 1172.
para, preposition, 504–13 ; **para con**, 1442 *c*.
participial clauses after prepositions, 1233.
participle, past, 196–210, 1226–34; agreement of, 1462–72 ; irregular past participles, 1135–47.
participle, present, 514.
partir, 261.
parts of the body, how spoken of, Chap. V.
pasarse sin, 1173.
passive voice, 810–4 ; reflexive substitute for, 815–30.
past definite tense. See aorist.
past (or perfect) infinitive and gerund, 976.
past participles, irregular, 1135–47.
pedir prestado, 1174.
perfect gerund, 766 ; perfect indicative, 202, 760 ; perfect infinitive, 766 ; perfect subjunctive, 911.
periphrastic verbal expressions, 853–9.
personal pronoun as subject, 56–66.
personal pronouns, 289–341; dative case, 292–7 ; accusative case, 298; prepositional case, 299 ; followed by a noun in apposition, 324–6 ; gender of, 300–2 ; location of, 291, 311, 334–7.
personal pronouns, objective : alternative forms, 1391–9 ; appended to gerund, 527–9 ; enclitic use, 1365–82; redundant construction, 1383–90.
pesar, 1175.
pluperfect tense, 761–3.
plural of nouns, 77–8.
poco, 628–31.
poder, 1026–33.
polite expressions, Appendix.
poner and synonyms, 1176.

ponerse á, 1176.
porción, una porción de, 652.
por, preposition, 489–503, 511–3.
por poco, 1201.
possessive pronoun of the third person, substitute for, 79–82.
possessive pronouns, inflection of, 115; omitted before nouns denoting parts of the body, 478; used absolutely, 456, 462–4.
possessive, substitute for, 70.
power, 1027.
prefixes, 1278.
prepositional case, 299.
prepositions, 189–95, Chap. XXIX; combinations of, 1442; compound, 145, 189; required after nouns, adjectives and verbs, 1443–9; retained after subjunctive, 912–3.
present indicative, 86.
present participle, 514.
present tense substituted for past tenses in narrations, 1191; used as future, 276, 1192.
preterit, special use of the term in this work, 972.
pronoun, logical, 444–53.
pronouns, adjective, Chap. IX; demonstrative, 437–43; indefinite, Lesson XII; interrogative, 422–36.
pronouns, objective personal, alternative forms, 1391–9; enclitic use, 1365–82; redundant use, 1383–90.
pronouns, personal, 56–66, 289–341; two pronouns as objects, 330–6.
pronouns, possessive, 409–21; inflection of, 115.
pronouns, reflexive, 303–5; as object, 785–90.
pronunciation, 2–42.
proper names, shortened forms of, 1267.
propio, 421, 660–1.
punctuation, 47.
que, peculiar uses of, 1416–21; **que**, relative, 281–3, 680; **qué cosa**, *what*, 425; **que no que**, 737.
querer, in asking a favor, 102; in expressing a wish, 965.
querer decir, 1177.
questions, order of words in, 82.
quien, relative, 279–80, 681–5; includes antecedent, 682; **quien . . . quien**, as correlatives, 697.
recordar, recuerdo, 1150.
redundant construction of personal pronouns, 310–2.
reflexive pronominal object, location of, 785–90.
reflexive pronouns, 303–5; dative, 792–3.
reflexive substitute for passive, 815–30, 1215.
regimen of verbs, adjectives and nouns, 1443–9.
regular verbs, inflection of, 1034–41; orthographic changes in, 1042–8.
relative pronouns, Chap. X; agreement of, 708–15; location of, 699–707; with prepositions, 284.
ride, 1188.
romper, pp. **roto**, 1146.
saber, contrasted with **conocer** and **poder**, 1178–9.
saint's day, 407.
salir, 261–5.
salutations, Appendix.
san, santo, 122.
seasons of the year, 379.
seguir, 1180.
semejante, 673.
sendos, 674.
sentir, 1181.
señor, señora, señorita, 227–31.
ser, Lesson X; before a past participle, 210; in forming the passive voice, 811–3; used impersonally, 843.
servir para, de, 1182.
should, 1005.
si, peculiar uses of, 1422–4.

sin, omission of article after, 147.
sino, *but, except*, 739, 741, 757.
siquiera, 746.
sizes of books, 367.
So-and-so, Mr., 238.
sobre, contrasted with **encima de**, 194.
social usages, Appendix.
soler, 1183.
solo, solamente, 632.
subir, 261–5.
subject formed of several neuters, 1461*b*; subject and object, 1303–24; subject and predicate, agreement of, 1458–9.
subjects connected by **con, como**, etc., agreement of, 1461*n*; several joined by **ó**, agreement of, 1461*k*; several joined by **ni**, 1461*l*.
subjunctive mood, 883–943; after conjunctive expressions, 902–10; after a relative, 894–901; after expressions of denial or doubt, 893; after expressions of emotion, 889; after impersonal expressions, 890–2; after indefinite expressions formed with **-quiera**, 896–8; after verbs of causing, 888; subjunctive as imperative, 360, 932–6; contrasted with indicative, 994–1002; contrasted with infinitive, 989–93; expressing purpose, 903; expressing result, 904; in alternative suppositions, 940–2; subjunctive of concession, 908; of denial, 909; of exception, 907; of proviso, 906; of supposition, 905; of wishing, 937–9; subjunctive with indefinite expressions of time, 910.
subjunctive, tenses of: aorist, 917–9; imperfect, 917–9; future, 925–9; future perfect, 930; perfect, 911; pluperfect, 920–1.
substantive combinations, 249–53.
suffixes, 1236–77.
superlative, absolute, of adjectives, 587–92; of adverbs, 593–5; substitutes for, 595.
superlative of adjectives, 573–82; of adverbs, 584–6; of comparison, 572.
stand, 1188.
syllables, division of, 43
tal, 666–72.
tamaño, 678.
tampoco, 743–5.
tanto, 547–64.
tardar en, 1184.
tener substituted for **haber** as auxiliary, 204–5; **tener que**, 858–9, 1224.
tense equivalents, 986.
tenses, correspondence of, 971–86; particular uses of, Chap. XXIII.
terminal dative and accusative, 307–9.
time, adverbial expressions of, 379; divisions of, 379; various words for, 396–401.
titles, definite article before, 236.
todavía, 272.
todo, 598–616; **todo el mundo**, 614.
tomar prestado, 1174.
transitive verbs used intransitively, 805–6.
tras contrasted with **detrás de**, 192.
tratar, 1185.
triphthongs, 4–15.
único, 633.
uno, as adjective pronoun 640–8; used absolutely, 457; **uno que otro**, 639; **uno . . . otro**, 797–9; **uno ú otro**, 647; **uno y otro**, 646; **unos cuantos**, 644.
usted and its substitutes, 313–20.
valer, valerse de, 1186.
varios, 651.
venir, 93, 99.
ver, 96.
verbal idioms, Chap. XXII.
verb, diagram of tenses, 759.
verbs: defective, 1118–34; imper-

sonal, 838–46 ; inceptive, 847–52 ; intransitive, 800–9 ; reciprocal, 795–9 ; reflexive, 784–94 ; transitive, 783.
verbs requiring certain prepositions, 1444.
verbs, irregular : classes of, 1064–1117 ; inflection of, Chap. XX ; aorist stem, 1058–60 ; future stem, 1061–2 ; present stem, 1052–7 ; index of irregular and defective —, 1148.
verbs, regular : inflection of, 1034–41 ; orthographic changes in, 1042–8.
volver á, 1187.
vowels, 3–15.
walk, 1188.
weight, manner of expressing, 405.
wishes, retrospective, 965.
word-making by derivatives, Chap. XXIV.
words common to Spanish and English, Lesson IX.
ya, 271.
y, initial before **e**, 10, 15.
y, *and*, changed to **é**, 72–3.
young animals, names of, 1269.

[300
8203
225